Mining dept.

LIBRARY

OF THE

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

Class

ELECTRO-METALLURGY

NET BOOK.—This book is supplied to the Trade on terms which will not allow of Discount to the Public.

CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO. LTD.

NET BOOK.—This book is supplied to the Trade on terms which will not allow of Discount to the Public.

CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO. LTD.

ELECTRO-METALLURGY.

ELECTRICAL & METALLURGICAL PUBLICATIONS.

ELECTRIC SMELTING AND REFINING: A Practical Manual of the Extraction and Treatment of Metals by Electrical Methods. Being the "Elektro-Metallurgie" of DR W. BORCHERS. Translated by WALTER G. McMILLAN, F.I.C., F.C.S., Secretary to the Institution of Electrical Engineers. With numerous Illustrations and three Folding Plates. SECOND EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. 21s. net.

Contents: Part I.—ALKALIES AND ALKALINE EARTH METALS: Magnesium, Lithium, Beryllium, Sodium, Potassium, Calcium, Strontium, Barium, the Carbides of the Alkaline Earth Metals.

Part II.—THE EARTH METALS: Aluminium, Cerium, Lanthanum, Didymium.

Part III.—THE HEAVY METALS: Copper, Silver, Gold, Zinc and Cadmium, Mercury, Tin, Lead, Bismuth, Antimony, Chromium, Molybdenum, Tungsten, Uranium, Manganese, Iron, Nickel and Cobalt, the Platinum Group.

"COMPREHENSIVE and AUTHORITATIVE."—*Electrician.*

ELECTRICAL RULES AND TABLES (A Pocket-Book of). For the use of Electricians and Engineers. By J. MUNRO, C.E., and PROF. A. JAMIESON, F.R.S.E., M.Inst.E.E. With numerous Diagrams. NINETEENTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. Leather. 8s. 6d.

"Wonderfully perfect; worthy of the HIGHEST COMMENDATION."—*Electrician.*

THE ART OF THE GOLDSMITH AND JEWELLER. A Treatise on the Manipulation of Gold in the Various Processes of Goldsmith's Work, and the Manufacture of Personal Ornaments, etc. For Students and Practical Men. By THOS. B. WIGLEY. SECOND EDITION, Revised and Enlarged.

"An exhaustive fund of information which cannot fail to be of service."—*Jeweller and Metal Worker.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF METALLURGY. By SIR W. ROBERTS-AUSTEN, K.C.B., D.C.L., F.R.S. SIXTH EDITION. Thoroughly Revised by F. W. HARBORD, A.R.S.M.

"No English text-book at all approaches this in COMPLETENESS with which the most modern views on the subject are dealt with . . . will be INVALUABLE."—*Chemical News.*

THE METALLURGY OF GOLD. By T. KIRKE ROSE, D.Sc., Assoc.R.S.M., Chemist and Assayer of the Royal Mint. Including the most recent improvements in the Cyanide Process. FIFTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. With numerous Illustrations. 21s.

"An addition to the literature of Metallurgy, of CLASSICAL VALUE."—*Nature.*

THE METALLURGY OF SILVER. By H. F. COLLINS, Assoc. R.S.M., M.Inst.M.M. SECOND EDITION, Revised and Enlarged.

ALLOYS, AND THEIR INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS. By EDWARD F. LAW, A.R.S.M. With Frontispiece in Colours, and a Beautiful Series of Photo-micrographs. 12s. 6d. net.

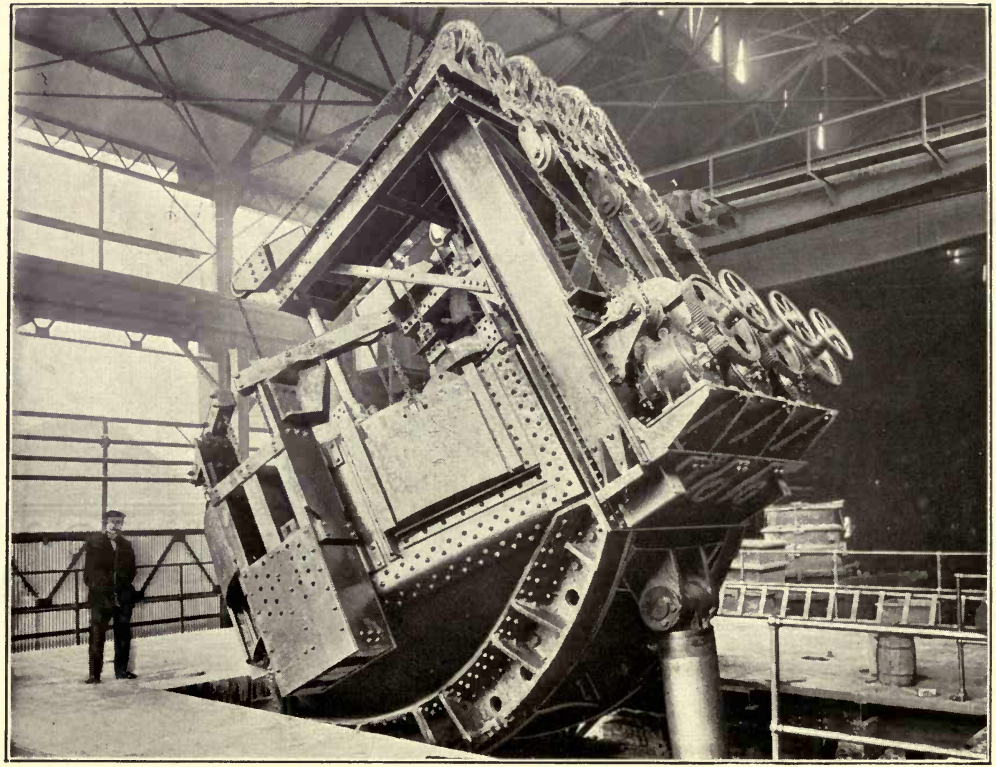
ASSAYING (A Text-Book of). For the use of Mine Managers, Assayers, etc. By J. J. and C. BERINGER. TENTH EDITION, Revised. With Tables and Illustrations. 10s. 6d.

"Really meritorious. May be safely depended upon."—*Nature.*

QUANTITATIVE METALLURGICAL ANALYSIS. Tables for Laboratory Use. By J. J. MORGAN, F.C.S. In Large 8vo. Cloth. 4s.

LONDON: CHAS. GRIFFIN & CO., LTD., EXETER ST., STRAND.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA



Héroult 15-ton electric steel furnace at Chicago. This furnace, fed from an acid Bessemer converter, turned out 180 tons of steel per day.

A TREATISE

ON

ELECTRO-METALLURGY:

EMBRACING

THE APPLICATION OF ELECTROLYSIS TO THE PLATING, DEPOSITING SMELTING, AND REFINING OF VARIOUS METALS, AND TO THE REPRODUCTION OF PRINTING SURFACES AND ART-WORK, ETC.

BY

WALTER G. McMILLAN, F.I.C., M.INST.M.M.,

LATE LECTURER ON METALLURGY IN MASON UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, BIRMINGHAM, AND FORMERLY CHEMIST AND METALLURGIST TO THE COSSIPORE ORDNANCE FACTORIES.

REVISED BY

W. R. COOPER, M.A., B.Sc., A.I.C.,

MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ASSOCIATE MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF CIVIL ENGINEERS.

THIRD EDITION. REVISED AND ENLARGED

With numerous Illustrations.

LONDON:

CHARLES GRIFFIN AND COMPANY, LIMITED,

EXETER STREET, STRAND.

1910.

[*All Rights Reserved.*]

TS670
M3
1910
MINING DEPT.

Mining Dept
M. C

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

In revising this Treatise for a third edition I have adhered as far as possible to the lines followed by the late Mr W. G. McMillan, though it has been found necessary to make considerable alterations. Thus, I have thought it well to omit the greater part of the section dealing with the dynamo, as this is a specialised subject which cannot be treated satisfactorily with brevity. Moreover, there are many text-books available where such information is easily found, and therefore the space in the present volume can be used to better advantage in other ways. The table giving particulars of copper refineries has also been omitted, because it is almost impossible to obtain trustworthy data of equipment and methods in such cases. Generally speaking, electro-deposition has not made any very marked advance during the last few years; nevertheless, many minor alterations and additions have been found necessary to bring the work up to date.

As in previous editions, the field of electric smelting and refining as a whole is dealt with but briefly. It was felt, however, that the subject of electric smelting and refining of iron, which was non-existent at the time of the last edition, is becoming so important that considerable space should be devoted to an account of the present position of this new field.

W. R. C.

82 Victoria Street,
London, S.W.

210341

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

In the following pages I have endeavoured to systematise and explain the various processes of Electro-Metallurgy as far as possible. Believing fully that in teaching and writing upon such subjects a *technological* rather than a *technical* treatment is required, I have tried so to set the matter before the reader that, even if he be a novice, he may be led to take an intelligent interest in any practical work upon which he may be engaged; but I have avoided the accumulation of a mass of unnecessary descriptive detail, which would only tend towards confusion, and which would be dictated by common-sense to any who have grasped the principles involved. In many cases, however, success is in a large measure dependent upon strict attention to mechanical detail; and here I have not hesitated to introduce such instructions as I believed needful to guide the worker in the special operations in hand, while indicating the reasons which should enable him to apply them to processes of kindred character. In short, I have aimed at a combination of theory and practice.

The necessity for at least a fair knowledge of Chemistry and Electricity has led to the introduction of a chapter dealing in an elementary fashion with such laws as are required for an understanding of our subject; but it is not pretended that this chapter shall in any degree supersede the text-books upon these sciences; it is rather intended to lead up to them. In treating of the sources of current, especially the dynamo-electric machine, I have dwelt longer

upon the general theory of construction and use as applicable to all than upon the special modifications adopted by different inventors and manufacturers.

In addition to the journals, the following works among others have been consulted, and my general indebtedness to these authors must here be thankfully recorded:— Fontaine's *Electrolyse*, Gore's *Art of Electro-Metallurgy*, Japing's *Elektrolyse Galvano-plastik und Reinmetallgewinnung*, Napier's *Manual of Electro-Metallurgy*, Roseleur's *Manipulations Hydroplastiques*, Schaschl's *Galvanostegie*, Thompson's *Dynamo Electric Machinery*, Urquhart's *Electrotyping* and *Electro-plating*, Volkmer's *Betrieb der Galvanoplastik mit Dynamo-Elektrischen Maschinen zu Zwecken der Graphischen Künste*, Wahl's *Practical Guide for the Gold and Silver Electro-plater and the Galvano-plastic Operator*, Watt's *Electro-deposition*, Weiss's *Galvano-plastik* and Wilson's *Stereotyping and Electrotyping*. My thanks are also due to the Brush Electric Light Corporation, Messrs Hoe & Company, Messrs Siemens Brothers, and Messrs Townson & Mercer for diagrams of apparatus. I must further acknowledge my obligations to Professor Silvanus Thompson for his kind permission to describe and figure a special form of switch which he has in use.

WALTER G. McMILLAN.

COSSIPORE, CALCUTTA,
September 1890.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY AND HISTORICAL.

Definition of the term Electro-metallurgy—Scope of the Art—The Germ of the Process in Primitive Times—The Growth of Electrical Knowledge—The Invention of the Thermopile, Battery and Magneto-electric and Dynamo-electric Machines—First Attempts at the Electro-deposition of Metals—The Work of Nicholson and Carlisle, Cruickshank, Wollaston, Brugnatelli, Davy, and Bessemer—Becquerel's Experiments on the Electrolytic Treatment of Ores—The Invention of the Daniell-cell the first step towards Electrotypy; De la Rue's Observation, and the Development of Electrotyping by Jacobi, Spencer, and Jordan—The question of precedence among the three Rival Inventors—Murray's discovery of Blackleading Non-conductive Electrotype Moulds—Leeson's and Montgomery's first Elastic Moulds—The later Advances in the Art; the value of the Dynamo and its effect upon the Industry—Electrolytic Ore treatment—Electrolytic Metal-refining—Electrolysis of Fused Substances—Electro-smelting and Refining—Recent Development of the Theory of Electrolysis, ... Pages 1–13

CHAPTER II.

THEORETICAL AND GENERAL.

(*See also Chapter XIX.*)

Matter and Force—Conditions of Matter—Constitution of Matter—Molecules and Atoms—Elements and Compounds—Relative Weights of Atoms—Meaning of the Symbols and of Chemical Formulæ—Valency—Laws of Definite Chemical Combination—List of Elementary Substances—Energy Displayed by Chemical Combination—Effect of Heats of Combination in Determining the Occurrence of Chemical Reactions—The Elements placed in Electro-chemical Series—Transformations of Energy—The Conversion of Chemical into Electrical Energy, and its application in the Galvanic Battery—Re-conversion of Electrical Energy into Chemical Energy—The Theory of Electrolysis or Electro-deposition—Laws Governing Pressure or Electro-motive Force of Battery Currents—The Relation of Current-pressure to the Electro-deposition of Metals from Solutions under varying

Conditions—Electric Conduction—Electrolytic Conduction—Electrolysis of mixed Solutions—The Deposition of Alloys—Quantity and Potential of Currents—Units employed in Measurements, . . . Pages 14–36

CHAPTER III.

Sources of Current.

The Galvanic Battery—The Use of Impure Zinc; Local Action; Amalgamation—The Polarisation of Battery Cells, and its Remedies—Definition of Terms used in speaking of Batteries—The various Single- and Two-fluid Cells—Smee's, Daniell's, Grove's, Bunsen's, the Bichromate, Edison-Lalande, and Leclanché—Practical Hints on the Use of Batteries—The Fittings and Connections of a Battery—Various ways of arranging several Cells; the application of Ohm's Law—Thermo-electric Batteries—The Direct Conversion of Heat into Electricity—The Thermo-electro-motive Force of various Combinations of Metals at different Temperatures; the choice of Metals for Thermo-electric Couples—Clamond's and Gülcher's Thermopiles—The Conversion of Mechanical into Electrical Energy—The Elementary Theory and parts of the Dynamo- and Magneto-electrical Machines—Various Types—Conditions to be observed in using the Dynamo—Accumulators or Secondary Batteries—Use of Public Electricity Supply for Electro-metallurgical Work—Conversion of Alternating Currents into Continuous Currents, and of High-pressure Currents into Low-pressure Currents, ... Pages 37–76

CHAPTER IV.

General Conditions to be Observed in Electro-Plating.

Necessity for Cleanliness—The Proportioning of Current to the Electrolytic Separation to be Effected—The Relation of Weight and Thickness of Deposit to Current-strength and Duration of Process—The Effect of, and means for, altering the Electrical Resistance of the Circuit—The use of Measuring Instruments for Determining Current-strength—The Detector, Galvanometer, Ammeter, and Voltmeter—The Arrangement of Plating-Vats according to Current and Pressure, and other Considerations; Connection in Series and in Parallel—The Choice of Anodes; and the Regulation of the Distance between the Electrodes in the Vat—Necessity for Stirring the Plating Solutions—Motion to be imparted to the Solution, ... Pages 77–91

CHAPTER V.

Plating Adjuncts and Disposition of Plant.

Necessity for Light and Air in Work-rooms—Apportionment of Rooms to Departments of Work—Requirements in the Disposition of Shops—Drainage and Ventilation—Arrangement of Plant for Electro-plating—The Material for, and Form of, Vats, and Manner of Introducing the Connecting Wires—Relative Positions of Electrodes for different kinds

of Work—The Method of supporting Anode Plates—The Systems of Stirring Plating Liquids, and of imparting Motion to the Suspended Objects—The Weighing of the Deposited Metal; Plating-balances—Corrections to be made in using the Plating-balance—The Coating of Wires—Electro-plating large Surfaces—The "Doctor"—The Electro-plating of small Goods in Rotating Drums—Smith and Deakin's Apparatus—The Joints of Lead-lined Vats, . . . Pages 92–107

CHAPTER VI.

THE CLEANSING AND PREPARATION OF WORK FOR THE DEPOSITING-VAT, AND SUBSEQUENT POLISHING OF PLATED GOODS.

The Different Methods of removing Grease and thick incrustations of Dirt—The Chemical Action of hot Alkali on Grease—The Cleansing of Objects from Mineral Oils—The Construction and Use of the Potash Tank—Necessity for dipping in Acid before immersion in the Plating-Vat—The Cleansing of Copper, Brass, German Silver, Iron and Steel, Zinc, Lead, Tin, Britannia Metal, and Aluminium—Electrolytic Cleaning—The Quicking of Metallic Surfaces—The Mechanical Treatment of Metals to be Cleansed, and Methods of ensuring a Smooth and Polished Surface—The Polishing Lathe—The Manner of Bobbing and Mopping—The Uses of Scratch-brushing by Hand and by Lathe—The Process of Burnishing—The Preliminary Treatment of Hard Steel—The Preparation of Objects for Nickeling, . . . Pages 108–123

CHAPTER VII.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF COPPER.

Objects with which Electro-Deposition of Copper is applied—Coating by Simple Immersion—Coppering of small Steel Articles—The Single-cell Process—The Manner of Coating Flat and Spherical Surfaces by Single-cell Deposition—The Battery Process of Coppering—The Battery employed—The various Acid and Alkaline Plating-baths—The Character, Suspension, and Use of the Anodes—The Character of the Copper Deposited; the Strength, Hardness, and General Fitness of the Metal precipitated from various strengths of Solution by different Current-densities—The Process of Deposition—The Manner of preparing the Articles for the Bath, immersing them, noting the Progress of the Action, withdrawing and finally cleansing them—The Coppering of Printing-rollers—Electrolytically formed Tubes—Elmore's Process—Cowper-Coles' Process—Copper Wire by Deposition—Other Applications of the Process, ... Pages 124–141

CHAPTER VIII.

ELECTROTYPING.

First Principles of Electrotyping—Moulding Materials for Printers' and Art Work in Solid and Elastic Compositions, applicable to Plain or

Undercut Designs, and the manner of applying them—Gutta-percha, Bees'-wax, Plaster of Paris, Fusible Metal, Gelatine, and Sealing-wax; and Mixtures in which these are employed—The Manner of rendering the Mould Conductive—Plumbago, Silvered and Gilded Plumbago, Tin- and Copper-powders—Printers' Electrotyping—The Reproduction of Steel Plates; the Arrangement of Baths and Distribution of Current, and General Conduct of the Process—Typographical Matter—The Preparation of the Type; Moulding; Black-leading of the Mould, and Deposition of Copper; the final Backing and Treatment of the Electrotype—Treatment of Wood-blocks—Art Electrotyping—The Moulding and Reproduction of Medals, of Busts and Statues, and of Natural Objects—The Special Treatment of Large Statues, in regard to Moulding, Disposition of Anodes and Application of Solution—The manner of ensuring Equalisation of Deposit upon the Moulds—Sundry Applications of Electrotyping—Glyphography, Stylography, Galvanography, Electro-etching, and the like—Manufacture of Copper Reflectors by Electrotyping, ... Pages 142–174

CHAPTER IX.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF SILVER.

The Deposition of Silver by Simple Immersion; the Composition and Use of various Plating Solutions and Pastes—The Single-cell Process—The Separate-current Process—The Battery—The Constitution and Preparation of various Silver-baths—The Conditions to be avoided in Making up and in Tending Plating-solutions—Bright Plating-liquids—The Anodes—The Character of the Metal Deposited under different Conditions—The Stripping of old Silver Coats from Copper, Brass, or German Silver, and from Zinc, Iron, Tin, Lead, and their Alloys—The Final Preparation of the Objects for the Bath—The Suspension of the Goods in the Vats, and Manner of Depositing the Metal—Precautions to be adopted in certain cases—The Use of the Striking-bath—Difficulties encountered in Plating—The Local Thickening of the Film to withstand Wear—The Thickness of Deposit—"Galvanit"—Silver Electrotyping—The Ornamentation of Silver Surfaces by Dead Lustre, and as Oxidised Silver, Antique Silver, or by Satin Finish—Niello Work, ... Pages 175–197

CHAPTER X.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF GOLD.

Advantages of Gold-plating—Solutions and Process for Deposition by Simple Immersion — The Single-cell Process — Battery Methods of Deposition—The Preparation and Characteristics of various Solutions —The Production of Coloured Gold—The Necessary Properties of the Anode—The Character of the Metal Deposited by different Current-densities—The Stripping of old Gold-deposits—The Requirements and Conduct of the Depositing Process—The Gilding of Interior Surfaces—Plating with the "Doctor"—The Thickness of the Films—Dead Gild-

ing—The Treatment of the more Electro-positive Metals—The Gilding of Soldered Goods—Parcel-gilding—The Ornamentation and Treatment of Gilt Surfaces—The Contrasting of Coloured Gilding—The Colouring of Deposited Gold—The Gilding of Watch Mechanisms—The Mechanical Production of the Surface-grain, ... Pages 198–215

CHAPTER XI.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF NICKEL AND COBALT.

The Application and Advantages of Nickel-plating—Difficulties in Electro-nickeling—The Character of the Deposited Metal—The Battery Process for Depositing Nickel—The Nature and Preparation of the Various Nickeling Solutions—Cast and Rolled, Nickel and Carbon Anodes—The Necessity for Stripping old Nickel Coats—The Preparation of Objects for the Bath—The Manner of effecting Electrolysis—Precautions to be Observed—The Finishing of the Plated Goods—Dead Nickel Surfaces—The Electro-deposition of Cobalt—The Solutions used, and the Method of Applying them—The Details of the Process, and the Nature of the Precipitated Metal, ... Pages 216–229

CHAPTER XII.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF IRON.

The Advantages of Iron-faced Engraved Copper Plates—The Depositing Solutions, their Preparation, Maintenance, and Use—The Physical Properties of Deposited Iron—Use of the Term Steel-facing—Stripping old Coats; the Plating Process and Final Treatment of the Work, ... Pages 230–236

CHAPTER XIII.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF PLATINUM, ZINC, CHROMIUM, CADMIUM, TIN, LEAD, ANTIMONY, BISMUTH, AND PALLADIUM; ELECTRO-CHROMY.

Platinising by Simple Immersion—Deposition by Single-cell Process—The Platinising of Silver plates of Smee's Battery—Platinating by a Separate Current—Removing Old Deposits—The Plating-solutions and manner of applying them—The Deposition of Zinc—Comparison of Electro-zinced Metal with so-called Galvanised Iron—The Solutions and their Use; Use of Zinc Dust in the Solution; Anomalies in the Application of the Current—The Character of the Zinc Deposit under various Conditions—The Electro-deposition of Chromium—The Electro-deposition of Cadmium—Electro-tinning; Electrolytically-coated Goods contrasted with Tin-plate—Tinning of Brass Pins and small objects by Simple Immersion—Deposition of Tin by Single-cell and Separate-current Processes—The Electro-deposition of Lead—The Coating of Bodies with Antimony—Disqualifications of the Metal for Plating thin articles liable to be bent—Simple Immersion and Battery Methods of Deposition—The Plating-solutions and the Metals precipitated from them—The Preparation and Properties

of Explosive Antimony—The Electro-deposition of Bismuth—The Electro-deposition of Palladium—Attempts to deposit Aluminium —The Colouring of Metallic Surfaces—Electro-chromy, ... Pages 237–256

CHAPTER XIV.

The Electro-Deposition of Alloys.

The Electro-deposition of Brass—The Solution ; its Composition and Use—The Choice of Anodes—The Influence of the various Conditions upon the Character of the Deposited Brass—The Deposition of Bronze and of German Silver—The Deposition of other Alloys, . . Pages 257–266

CHAPTER XV.

Electro-Metallurgical Extraction and Refining Processes.

Conditions under which the Industry exists — The Electro-refining of Copper—The Theory of the Process—The Behaviour of the various Impurities at the Anode, in the Solution, and at the Cathode—The Solution, Current-density, and General Conduct of the Process—The Disposition of Vats according to the Current employed—Loss of Energy—Modern Systems of Refining—The Electrolytic Extraction of Copper from Ores and Products—Classification of Extraction Processes—Outlines of the Methods employed—The Electrolytic Refining of Lead—Treatment of Base Bullion—The Electrolytic Extraction and Refining of Gold—The Electrolytic Refining of Silver—The Electrolytic Extraction of Zinc—The Electro-reduction of Antimony—The Electrolytic Extraction and Refining of Iron—Recovery of Tin from Tin Scrap—Electro-smelting—The Electric Furnaces of Siemens, Cowles, and others—The Electrolysis of Fused Compounds—The Electric Smelting of Aluminium, Magnesium, and Sodium—The Electro-thermal Production and Refining of Iron—Electrical *v.* Chemical Methods—Advantages of the Electric Furnace —Energy required—Types of Electric Furnace—The Furnaces of Héroult, Keller, Girod, Stassano, Kjellin, and Röchling and Rodenhauser—Electric Welding and Annealing, ... Pages 267–317

CHAPTER XVI.

The Recovery of Certain Metals from their Solutions or from Waste Substances.

Sketch of the Treatment of Residues of Cobalt, Copper, Gold, Lead, Mercury, Nickel, Platinum, and Silver, ... Pages 318–323

CHAPTER XVII.

The Determination of the Proportion of Metal in Certain Depositing Solutions.

Outline of Methods for conducting Electrolytic Quantitative Analysis, and for determining Antimony, Cobalt, Copper, Gold, Lead, Nickel, Platinum, and Silver, ... Pages 324–328

CHAPTER XVIII.

Power Required for Electrolytic Work.

Calculation of Power required for Electrolytic Work—Horse-Power required per Unit Area of Electrode Surface for different Solutions and different Metals—Board of Trade Units of Electrical Energy (Kilowatt-hours) required for the Deposition of Various Metals from different Solutions—Cost of Electricity generated from Batteries and from Dynamos—Cost of Steam Power and of Water Power on the large Scale—Absorption of Power in Conductors—Loss of Electrical Energy by Transformation into Heat in Conductors of different Materials and Sizes, . Pages 329–337

CHAPTER XIX.

Modern Theories of Electrolysis.

Development of the Modern Theories of Electrolysis—Position of the Theory of Ionic Dissociation—The Theories of Solution Pressure and of Osmotic Pressure—Analogy between the Laws governing Gaseous Pressure and Osmotic Pressure in Dilute Solutions—Behaviour of Electrolytes in respect to Osmotic Pressure—The Theory of Dissociation of Electrolytes into Ions when in Solution—The Explanation of Electrolytic Conduction in the Light of the Theory of Ionisation—The Meaning of Electrolytic Solution Pressure—The Application of Modern Theories to the Explanation of the Simple Exchange of Metals, of Simple Galvanic Cells, of Two-fluid Cells, of the Current produced when one Piece of Metal is immersed in a non-homogeneous Solution, and of Electrolysis with Insoluble and Soluble Anodes—The Effect of Secondary Actions in Electrolysis—The Electrolysis of Mixed Solutions and Double Salts, and of the Salts of Complex Acids, Potassium Aurocyanide and Silver Cyanide, etc.—The Effect of Unequal Rates of Migration of Ions in Solutions on the Relative Concentration of the Electrolytes at the two Electrodes—Conditions of Electrolysis, ... Pages 338–362

CHAPTER XX.

A Glossary of Substances Commonly Employed in Electro-Metallurgy.

Rules to be observed in dealing with Acids and other Chemical Reagents—Glossary of Common Substances, ... Pages 363–389

ADDENDA.

Various useful Tables—The Bronzing of Copper and Brass Surfaces—Antidotes to Poisons, ... Pages 390–404

Index, ... Page 405

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

A TREATISE

ON

ELECTRO-METALLURGY.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY AND HISTORICAL.

THE word *metallurgy* is understood to mean the art of working metals—extracting them from their ores and preparing them for application to the varied uses of daily life. By analogy the term *electro-metallurgy*, originally suggested by Smee, might reasonably be expected to imply such extraction and preparation effected with the aid of electricity. This, however, is, strictly speaking, but one section of the subject, and, indeed, regarded from the standpoint of commercial practicability, it is one of the most recent developments of the art; for the economical application of electricity to the recovery of metals from their ores by electrolysis was scarcely possible commercially until the invention of the dynamo-electric machine had placed a cheap source of electric energy at the disposal of the metallurgist. Just as the science of metallurgy also is but a branch of that of chemistry, and becomes elevated from an art to a science in proportion as the laws of chemistry are made to regulate its processes, so the science of electro-metallurgy is dependent on the laws of chemistry and electricity, and will make more rapid progress as the accurate study and application of these laws are made to take the place of the 'rule of thumb' methods, which are the inevitable outcome of the tentative experiments made in the early dawn of an art.

Accepting, then, the broader use of the term, electro-metallurgy may be defined as the science which treats of the application of electrical methods to the separation or to the solution of metals from substances containing them, and (perhaps we may add) to the treatment of metals for certain specific purposes in the arts.

Scope.—Thus the electro-metallurgist may be called upon to deposit metals with any of the following objects:—(1) To obtain a coherent and removable deposit on a mould, the form of which it is desired to reproduce with accuracy; this process is termed *electrotyping*: (2) To obtain a thin, but perfect and adhesive, film upon a metal of different character, in order to impart to it acid- or air-resisting, or æsthetic properties, in which it was naturally deficient; this is known as *electro-plating*: (3) To obtain the whole of a given metal from a substance containing it, the method being used as a substitute for extraction by smelting, or for analytical or refining purposes. It will be evident that in the first two of these, the interest centres in securing the exact condition of deposit which is best suited to the work in hand; whilst in the third, it is of paramount importance that the metal shall be completely separated, leaving no residue in the material from which it was to be extracted. Finally (4), he may be required to dissolve metals, either to remove an existing coat of one metal from the surface of another, or to effect the complete or partial solution of a homogeneous body superficially, as in the case of electro-etching.

Early History.—The history of the art is interesting, but perhaps too much involved to render anything more than the following brief sketch of value to the readers of this volume.

The fact that certain metals become superficially coated with other metals when plunged into suitable solutions was known to the ancients, and such a covering of iron swords and shields with copper by immersion in copper solutions was described by the Greek historian Zosimus in the fifth century. Paracelsus, who lived in the beginning of the sixteenth century (1493–1541), ascribed the apparent change of iron into copper, when dipped into the blue waters of Schmöllnitz in Hungary, to an actual transmutation of metals, a view which found favour even at a much later period. But although these may be considered as the beginnings of electro-metallurgy on the chemical side, it was not until the lapse of two centuries and a half from the latter date that the application of electricity to the deposition of metals became possible. Let us then glance at the gradual growth of electrical knowledge and its adaptation to the requirements of 'electro-deposition.' Such a retrospect cannot embrace any long term of years; for, although the attractive force of rubbed amber was known to the ancients, it awoke only a wondering interest until 1647, when Otto von Guericke first constructed a machine which exhibited the phenomenon in an intensified degree; the unknown force received the name electricity (from *elektron* = amber), electrical machines were gradually improved, and in 1752 Franklin demonstrated the identity of the electric spark with the lightning flash. But, in spite of the marvellous disruptive effect of these 'frictional' machines, the actual quantity of electricity which

could thus be generated was very minute, and could not avail for the deposition of metals from solutions. Its destructive power was derived from the enormous *potential* or 'pressure' at which it acted, and no electrolytic effect could possibly have been observed except by a most careful experimenter actually searching for such a manifestation.

In the year 1786 Galvani made his celebrated discovery that a metal wire at one end touching the lumbar nerves of a recently-killed frog, and at the other the muscles of its leg or thigh, caused a rapid muscular contraction. Finding the same phenomenon producible with the aid of a frictional machine, he was led to connect the two incidents, and to ascribe the former to the action of electricity resident in the animal itself. Volta, on the contrary, finding—as, indeed, Galvani had done before him—that if two wires of different metals touched a single muscle the result was similar, concluded that the electrical energy was due rather to the action of the wires than to any property inherent in the animal tissue. Led on by this assumed production of electricity by contact of dissimilar metals, he constructed in 1799, and described in 1800, the series of zinc and copper discs, separated by moist cloth, which bears the name of the Voltaic Pile. With this pile, for the first time, large currents, compared with those from frictional machines, though of low potential, were obtainable, such as might be used to produce electrolysis. Subsequently, Fabroni in Italy, and Wollaston, Davy, and others in England, showed that corrosion, oxidation, or 'rusting' of the zinc invariably attended the production of electricity in this way, and ascribed the latter to chemical action.

First Electrical Battery.—In 1800 Volta replaced the pile by his 'crown of cups,' in which each pair of copper and zinc plates was separated, not by damp cloth but by salt water placed in a series of vessels, the copper of each intermediate vessel being connected by a wire with the zinc of the next, leaving a free or unattached copper plate at one end of the series and a corresponding zinc plate at the other, these terminal plates being, of course, equivalent to those of the 'pile.' This, then, was the original electric battery, the discovery of which has led to the invention of the art of electro-metallurgy.

Separation of Metals.—In the same year Nicholson and Carlisle succeeded in decomposing water, or, in other words, *depositing hydrogen*, by means of the source of electricity thus placed at their disposal; and in 1803, Cruickshank, of Woolwich, constructed a large battery of considerable power, with which he deposited, or 'revived,' as he termed it, many metals from their solutions, and even proposed the use of an electrolysing current in quantitative chemical analysis. Meanwhile, in 1801, Wollaston had obtained a coating of copper on silver, sufficiently adherent to allow of burnishing, by introducing the latter metal, in contact

with one more oxidisable, into a solution of copper, thus forming a small electric battery in the depositing liquid itself.

In the *Philosophical Magazine*, Brugnatelli, in 1805, described the gilding of two large silver medals by means of the Voltaic pile and a solution of 'ammoniuret of gold,' and also the silvering of platinum surfaces, at the same time directing attention to the gradual solution of the plate through which the electric current entered the liquids. Then Davy, in 1807, made his grand discovery of the alkali-metals, potassium and sodium, by electrolytic isolation.

Magneto- and Dynamo-Electric Machines.—The knowledge of the relation between electricity and magnetism gained in 1820, both by Oersted's researches on the action of the electric current upon a compass-needle, and by the success of Arago in magnetising a steel needle by means of the current, may perhaps be regarded as the primary step towards the invention of magneto-electric machines, the first of which was constructed by Faraday in 1831; it consisted of a copper disc rotated between the poles of a horse-shoe magnet, with the necessary fittings for taking off the current thus generated. In the same year Faraday observed the mutual action of electric currents, and the conditions governing the formation of induced currents, and thus, as it were, paved the way for the subsequent invention of the dynamo-electric machine. Faraday's magneto-electric machine was not sufficiently powerful to have any practical value, but in the following year Pixii produced a machine of this character; and this may perhaps be regarded as the prototype from which the subsequent generators of this class were evolved.

Thermopile.—The thermopile, another source of electrical energy which has been more or less largely used in electro-metallurgical work, especially abroad, owes its origin to Seebeck's observations in 1821 or 1822, that a current is produced by heating a compound bar of bismuth and copper at the junction of the metals, provided that the free ends are connected by a metallic wire.

Ohm's Law.—In 1827, Ohm enunciated his great fundamental law, which governs all electrical work, formulating, as it does, the relation between strength or volume of current, electrical 'pressure,' and the resistance of bodies to the passage of the current. Seven years later, Faraday demonstrated the relation between the strength of the current and the amount of any metal electrolytically deposited by it, and proved that the quantity of electricity flowing in a given circuit could be measured by the amount of metal which it could deposit in a known period of time. It is by the systematic and intelligent application of these laws that the electro-metallurgist of to-day is able to arrange his plant with scientific accuracy, instead of by mere rule of thumb.

Copper-coating by Bessemer.—In 1831, Bessemer had coated articles composed of an alloy of lead, tin, iron, and antimony with a film of copper by simple immersion in a solution of a copper salt; but finding, as he describes in a letter published by Watt and Philip (*Electro-Plating and Electro-Refining*, p. 88), that the metal was not adherent, he tried for, and obtained, better results by placing the objects on a copper, iron, or, better still, zinc tray, and then sinking them in the liquid. In this way he formed a small battery *in situ*, as we have seen Wollaston had done in 1801.

Becquerel's Electrolysis Works.—Becquerel, in 1836, was the first actually to apply the principles of electrolysis to the treatment of natural products for the recovery of the metal contained in them. He even planned out works upon a commercial scale for the treatment of complex minerals containing copper and silver, but they were never erected, owing to the prohibitive expenditure of battery zinc involved in the process.

Daniell Battery.—In the same year a new era was started by Daniell's introduction of his two-fluid battery, which placed a very constant current at the disposal of the electro-metallurgist, and almost immediately produced a ripe harvest of results. De la Rue at once took the first unconscious step in the direction of electrotyping, when he observed that the copper, which is deposited in the cells of the Daniell battery whilst in use, exactly reproduces upon its surface every line or scratch upon the copper plate on which it forms. Intent, however, on other objects, he failed to follow up the line of research thus indicated.

Elkington's Process.—In 1838, the Patent Office Records show that Elkington, who had two years previously protected a process of gilding for copper or brass objects by simple immersion in a solution containing gold, produced a method of zinc plating, analogous in principle to that of Wollaston's, by which the copper, brass, or iron to be coated was immersed in contact with a more oxidisable metal in a solution of that which it was desired to deposit, thus forming a galvanic cell in the depositing bath itself; and so for the first time the deposition of one metal upon another, through the galvanic action produced by the solution of a third, became the subject of a patent specification.

Earliest Electrotypers—Their Rival Claims.—De la Rue, as we have just seen, had already, in 1836, indicated the possibility of copying uneven surfaces by electro-deposition, but had missed the practical application of his discovery. But three years later three individuals almost simultaneously, and it would seem quite independently, publicly described processes of electrotyping. These three were Jacobi of St Petersburg, and Spencer and Jordan in England. The tale of these rival inventors has often been told; it is briefly as follows:—Professor Jacobi

published a method of converting into relief, by galvanic means, even the finest lines engraved upon a copper plate, thus producing a printing surface suitable to the requirements of the printer. An account of this process found its way into the pages of the *Athenæum* on May 4, 1839. On the 8th of May following, Spencer gave notice to the Liverpool Polytechnic Institution of his intention to read a paper before that body on the 'electrotype process'; but this paper was not read until September of the same year. Meanwhile, however, the account of Jacobi's discovery had been copied into the London *Mechanic's Magazine*, and had called forth a letter from Jordan, dated May 22nd, but not published until June 8th, in which he described his experiments in the same field, which were begun in the summer of 1838. He clearly set forth here the method which has since been known as the single-cell process of electrotyping, and claimed the possibility of multiplying engraved plates, typographical matter or medals, by forming galvano-plastic matrices on the object, and using the 'negative' copy thus obtained to reproduce the original form; and he even suggested making tubes by depositing copper around a wire or metallic core which could subsequently be removed.

Strangely enough, neither of these accounts received public attention, and the matter remained unnoticed until the end of September, when Spencer's paper was read. This paper is especially interesting, because it shows how the process of electrotyping was gradually developed in his hands, mainly by an attentive and patient examination into the causes of a series of apparently minor phenomena observed in September 1837, while experimenting with a single voltaic cell, consisting of a copper plate in copper sulphate solution connected by copper wire to a zinc plate immersed in a solution of common salt. The starting-point on the road to the new discovery was the observation that certain spots on the copper plate, which had accidentally been overlaid with molten sealing-wax, received no metallic deposit when placed in the cell; and he was thence led to attempt the formation of designs in relief, for use in the printing press, by coating a copper plate with an insulating varnish and then tracing the desired pattern by scratching the varnish completely away at the required points, and finally building up a deposit of copper upon the portions of the metallic plate thus exposed. While experimenting in this direction, he made the important observation that the nature of the deposited copper was dependent on the degree of 'intensity of the electrochemical action,' or, as we should say, on the current-density, high densities giving rapidly deposited but highly crystalline and friable metal. He now met with difficulties, which, however, were not insurmountable, and even led to further triumphs; he found that the deposited copper would adhere perfectly only to

an absolutely clean surface of the same metal. Thus, when he required to obtain perfect adhesion between the metals, he first cleaned the copper surface with nitric acid, whereas if he wished afterwards to separate the deposited metal from the original plate he coated the latter with the thinnest possible film of bees' wax, previous to exposing it in the battery-cell. The subsequent application of a gentle heat enabled the two plates to be separated with the greatest facility. Next, when using a penny-piece instead of a copper plate, he observed that the inner surface of the copper sheath with which it had been coated bore a perfectly sharp copy, in *intaglio*, of the image and letters which were in *relief* on the coin itself; in this way he obtained matrices from which the original could be faithfully reproduced. Now, ascertaining that copper would deposit as readily upon lead as upon itself, he secured exact copies of coins, of set-up type, or even of wood-blocks, by pressing them upon sheets of lead and depositing copper upon the indented lead matrix so prepared. And finally he found that clay, plaster of Paris, wood, or other non-conducting materials could be covered electrolytically with copper, if they were first coated with a conductive film of bronze-powder or gold-leaf.

It would appear hopeless to determine the question of real priority between the three inventors. Jacobi seems to have been the first to publish an account of his researches, and so far his claim is good; Spencer next declared his intentions to describe his experiments, but was forestalled by Jordan; on the other hand, Spencer claims to be the earliest experimenter in the field, and his investigations appear to have been deeper and more fully developed than those of either Jacobi or Jordan. It is doubtless one of those frequently recurring instances, wherein the progress of knowledge has led several men to a simultaneous but independent development of the same line of thought; and in such cases credit must be ascribed to each, but the palm awarded to the most thorough and painstaking.

Murray's Blackleading Process.—The immediate result of Spencer's paper was the creation of a sudden mania for electrotyping, the simple and inexpensive character of the necessary apparatus enabling amateurs of all grades to vie with the fresh race of operatives which sprang up at the birth of a new industry. Evidence of this is to be seen in the rapidly increasing number of patents which were now applied for in this branch of the arts. With so many workers in the same field, it would indeed be strange if the scope of the work were not quickly and widely enlarged, and existing processes much improved; the year 1840 was accordingly destined to see many improvements effected. The application of the art to the requirements of the printer was in this year made practicable by Murray's discovery that moulds of non-conducting material could be made to take the deposit of

copper by brushing them over with plumbago, so that metallic moulds were no longer essential. In the same year the first-published newspaper print from an electrotype block is believed by Smee to have appeared in the *London Journal*. Nevertheless, Savage's *Dictionary of Printing*, which appeared in the following year, although it contained many good engravings from electrotypes, exhibited a page of 'diamond' type, also printed from an electro-deposited block, but so imperfect that, as Wilson has suggested, we may infer that the art of electrotyping formes of small type had not yet attained sufficient excellence to warrant its general application to this purpose.

In 1840, Mason endeavoured to utilise the current generated by the single-cell electrotyping arrangement in a second depositing cell, and thus to carry on two operations simultaneously; and although this method was not practically adopted, it nevertheless pointed to the possibility of applying a separate current from sources other than Daniell's battery.

Cyanide Baths.—In this year Wright, after experimenting with many solutions, discovered the use of the cyanide bath for the production of thick deposits of gold and silver, in place of the thin films obtainable by simple immersion. The invention was patented and at once put in operation by the Messrs Elkington, who were foremost in this field at the time. At the end of the same year, de Ruolz patented in France the use of similar solutions, not only for gold and silver, but for platinum, copper, lead, tin, cobalt, nickel, and zinc. The following year witnessed the publication of a very complete work on electro-metallurgy by Smee, and this was followed by several others in rapid succession.

Elastic Moulds.—Leeson, in 1842, greatly advanced the application of electrotyping to the reproduction of works of art by the use of elastic moulds made of glue and gum, which thus enabled objects of intricate or undercut design to be faithfully copied and indefinitely multiplied; and by the insertion of leading wires in the mould to distribute the current more uniformly, and hence, to facilitate a higher degree of simultaneity in the deposition. In the following year Montgomery proposed the application of gutta-percha as a moulding medium for slightly undercut objects.

Bright Silver.—From that time the inventions for many years, although numerous enough, had not sufficient novelty to render them worth recording in detail, excepting, perhaps, the important discovery by Milward, in 1847, that the addition of a small quantity of carbon bisulphide to the silver plating baths caused the deposited silver to show no longer a dead or frosted surface, but to exhibit greater lustre and brilliancy.

Cheap Sources of Electricity.—In 1842 and 1843 respectively, Woolrich patented the use of magneto-electric machines, and

Poole, that of thermopiles, for depositing metals; but neither of these seem to have been at the time successfully applied in practice. But the introduction of Pacinotti's dynamo-electric machine, first described by him in *Il Nuovo Cimento* in 1864, of Wilde's magneto-electric machines in the following year, of Siemens' and Wheatstone's more perfect dynamos, simultaneously invented in 1867, and Gramme's machine in 1870, profoundly modified the scope of the art by affording a far cheaper source of electricity than had hitherto been possible. From this time, with the more careful study of the theory of the dynamo, and the consequent improvements in its mechanical and electrical efficiency, there have arisen a host of new machines, constructed especially to satisfy certain specific objects, and approaching much nearer to perfection than did their original progenitors. Dynamo-electric machines are now made to suit the needs of the electro-metallurgist, and thus new fields of labour have been opened, more particularly in the domain of metal refining and smelting; and the readiness with which mechanical energy may now be converted into electrical, renders the utilisation of natural waste water-power thoroughly applicable to these purposes.

Ore-Treatment by Electricity.—The later history of our subject is, in its more important branches, intimately associated with the application of dynamo-electric machinery, and of powerful currents to the treatment of ores, furnace-products, or solutions. Becquerel, as we have seen, failed practically to apply his process for the treatment of ores on account of the expense of the zinc; it therefore remained dormant until 1868, when it was tried in San Francisco by Wolfe and Pioche, who seem, however, to have effected but little. Marchese's method of treating copper mattes (impure fused copper sulphide), by using them as anodes, started a new epoch in 1882, and many modifications of this and analogous processes have since been carried into practice. How far this type of ore-treatment may be able to compete with the older smelting methods, can only be considered in connection with the particular circumstances of each individual case, and will be more fully dealt with later.

Up to the present time, the direct treatment of ores and mattes by electrolysis has not proved successful, chiefly on account of the large proportion of sulphur and other insoluble material which has to be separated. This soon contaminates the bath to an excessive extent, and, moreover, the dissolution of the anode becomes very irregular. The difficulties, however, are probably not insuperable, inasmuch as they are industrial rather than scientific. The case, indeed, forms an apt illustration of the necessity to make long and careful experiments on a fairly large scale before embarking in a costly electro-metallurgical enterprise, which must stand or fall by its financial possibilities. The electrolytic extraction of the copper from matte is quite possible, and may be effected

readily in the laboratory; and it may proceed satisfactorily even on the large scale for a time, but on prolonged use the processes which have been tried have usually been found to be too costly to allow of their competing with the improved methods introduced by modern chemical or metallurgical science. It is therefore customary to prepare an impure copper by metallurgical means, and then to refine this copper electrolytically.

Metal Refining.—The refining of copper by electrolysis is now one of the most important applications of electro-metallurgy. It is practically, however, a modification of the process of electrotyping, and the two arts, therefore, up to a certain point, have a common history. The earliest process of practical importance was that of Elkington, patented in 1865. In principle it is the same as that used at the present time, and is specially interesting as being the first to employ the dynamo for the purpose. Among those who have applied this process on a large scale are Siemens and Halske and Borchers in Germany, and Thofehrn in America; and the magnitude of the industry may be gauged by the fact that in one works alone, the Raritan Copper Works (U.S.A.), the capacity of the plant is 3000 kilowatts, capable of an output of 200 'short' tons per day, while that of the Anaconda Company (U.S.A.) has a capacity of 1790 kilowatts, and is capable of producing 150 tons of refined copper per diem. The electrolytic refining of other metals has been attempted with varying success, but in few cases has it succeeded in displacing the older methods. The Moebius process for treating impure silver in an electrolyte of silver nitrate has been largely employed in America and Germany. The commercial refining of nickel by electrolysis is being conducted on a relatively small scale, and the same may be said of zinc, but the inherent difficulties in the electrolysis of the last-named metal have prevented any very great development up to the present time.

Gold has been deposited from solutions obtained by the action of dilute potassium cyanide liquors on gold ores, and this process, the electrolytic part of which is due to Siemens and Halske, is now a recognised method of gold recovery largely used for the treatment of poor ores and 'tailings' (ores which have already been treated by another process).

But in no case has the electric refining of metals been so successful as in the case of copper. This, no doubt, is largely due to several contributory causes. In the first place, the solution required is simple, cheap, and easily managed; secondly, the precious metals contained in the copper are recovered practically completely as by-products; thirdly, the rate of deposition is comparatively rapid, so that the amount of capital lying idle is not excessive, though much larger than is desirable; fourthly, the copper may be deposited in a reguline condition and almost absolutely pure; and, lastly, there is a very great and ever-

increasing demand for pure copper for conductors for electrical purposes. In addition to these a negative cause may perhaps be found in the relative difficulty and expense involved in obtaining equally pure copper by metallurgical means.

The industrial questions in connection with these processes will be touched upon in Chapter XV.

Electrolysis of Fused Substances.—In another direction, electricity has been applied to the extraction of metals by the passage of a current through a fused salt; it was in this way, in 1854, that Bunsen and Deville reduced aluminium from its combination with chlorine, and recently many arrangements purporting to effect a similar result have appeared in the records of the Patent Office. Electrolytic processes have entirely replaced the older metallurgical methods of extracting aluminium, with the result that the price of the metal fell in twenty-three years from £1 to 1s. 3½d. per pound (in 1901). During recent years the price has sometimes risen considerably. The processes of Hall (patented in 1886), Héroult (1887), and others, now operating so successfully, pass a current of electricity through a bath of a fused salt (usually a double fluoride of aluminium and an alkali metal), in which pure oxide of aluminium is dissolved. The bath is maintained at a red heat without external firing by the passage of the electric current through it, and the alumina is decomposed into aluminium, which is collected, and oxygen, which combines with the carbon block through which the current is passed into the bath, forming gaseous oxides of carbon which escape into the air. The alumina is replaced from time to time as it is decomposed, so that the process is strictly analogous to the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of copper sulphate with an insoluble anode and a copper kathode. In the same way metallic sodium is now almost entirely prepared by electrolysis, Castner's process (patented in 1890) for the electrolysis of fused caustic soda being largely employed in Great Britain, America and Germany, whilst other processes for the electrolysis of melted sodium chloride are also in use. A proposal by Pichou, in 1853, to reduce an ore admixed with a small percentage of charcoal in the electric arc passing between two large electrodes, found a later development in the electric furnace of the brothers Cowles, patented in 1885, for the treatment of ores containing aluminium and other metals.

Latest Advances.—Among the more interesting modern developments in the field of electro-metallurgy are those in which electricity is employed merely as a heating agent, and not in electrolysis. One of the earliest experiments on a small scale in this direction was made by Depretz in 1849; Pichou used his electric furnace for smelting in 1853, and Siemens elaborated a furnace which was used on a comparatively large experimental scale in 1880. In all these the heat of the electric arc was used.

Another type of furnace in which the heat was obtained by the incandescence of a rod of carbon, due to the resistance interposed by it in the circuit of a powerful electric current, was successfully introduced by Borchers in 1880. Since then, the electric furnace has been developed in two directions, first in purely scientific work, where, in the hands of Siemens, Moissan and others, it has been the means of melting metals hitherto regarded as infusible, and of studying the properties of such materials after fusion and solidification ; secondly, it has been extended in size and capacity, and has become a valuable industrial agent, as, for example, in the manufacture of calcium carbide for use in acetylene generators and as a metallurgical reagent for the production of steel, and also in the production of phosphorus.

Nearly allied to this is the use of the current for electric welding and for the local annealing of hard steel plates and the like. Here the metal is raised to a welding temperature mainly by the use of the arc, although in the Lagrange-Hoho and Burton electric forges the heat is largely generated by the passage of the current through a very high resistance, aided in the last-named case by the combustion of the hydrogen set free by the electrolysis of the water in which the pieces are immersed. Several systems of electric welding are now in use, and although they cannot compete with the smith's forge for ordinary work, they have found many applications for special purposes.

The applications of electrolysis to the manufacture of alkali, bleaching powder, chlorate of potash, and in the field of organic chemistry are now increasingly numerous, but these belong rather to the sphere of electro-chemistry than to that of electro-metallurgy, and need not be treated of in this work.

Recent Developments of the Theory of Electrolysis.—In the theory of the subject great changes have been wrought of late years, and the theory evolved by Grotthus, in 1805, and universally accepted until 1887, has since then rapidly lost ground, and is now replaced by explanations based on the investigations of modern electro-chemists. The work of Van't Hoff on the osmotic pressure of substances dissolved in liquid solvents was published in 1887, and showed that, at least in dilute solutions, the dissolved material was subject to laws similar to those governing the pressure and volume of gases. This led to Arrhenius, in the same year, advancing the theory of the dissociation of electrolytes, when in solution, into separate ions, each carrying a charge either of positive or of negative electricity ; and this theory, with the earlier discovery by Hittorf (in 1853) of the actual movement, or migration, of the ions from one electrode to the other, forms the basis of the modern explanations of which a short elementary account is attempted in Chapter XIX.

Conclusion.—The growth of the art on the whole has been rapidly progressive ; a few processes may have been superseded

by furnace-methods, which have proved to be less costly, but the various branches have for the most part steadily gained ground as the work became more reliable and more economically conducted, until the electrotyper and the electroplater in gold, silver, and nickel occupy a quite important position among the manufacturers of the world; whilst the electro-refiner and the electro-smelter, if one may use the terms, have, in certain branches of industry, competed successfully with the chemist and metallurgist, and in some few cases have even obtained a monopoly of the work.

CHAPTER II.

THEORETICAL AND GENERAL.

(See also Chapter XIX.)

It has already been hinted that a right understanding of all the problems involved in the science of electro-metallurgy demands an acquaintance, not only with the manner in which certain forces act upon matter, but with the constitution of matter itself. A brief review, therefore, of a few of the fundamental laws and theories of electrical and chemical science naturally finds a place at this point; although for a full explanation of these subjects reference must, of course, be made to the text-books devoted specially to them.

Matter—Force.—It must be clearly understood, then, that *matter* (that is, anything which possesses *mass*) is variously constituted. It is within our common experience that different kinds of matter exhibit different properties and characteristics, or, as we say, are made of different materials; and it is the object of chemical science to teach us what the materials are and how they behave when brought into contact with one another. *Force* has no material constitution, and therefore no weight, and is only made known to us by its action on matter. *Physical* (or *mechanical*) *forces*, as they are termed, may affect the relative position or the outward shape and appearance of material substances, but *chemical forces* affect the very ingredients of which the substance is composed, and govern the more intimate mutual relationship between different bodies.

Conditions of Matter.—We are conscious that various kinds of matter may exist at different times in certain distinct forms —solid, liquid, and gaseous—but these are solely physical, not chemical, differences (the constitution or component parts of the substance remaining unchanged throughout), and are brought about by physical means, such as alteration of heat or pressure, so that a return to the original conditions is accompanied by a reproduction of the body in its first form. For example—pure water at 15° C. is a liquid, but cooled to 0° C. it becomes solid ice, or heated to 100° C. it is converted into gaseous steam; nevertheless if the ice and the steam be respectively brought back to 15° C.

they will again form a liquid quite undistinguishable from that originally experimented with. We may imagine, then, that water is made up of a vast number of almost infinitesimal particles, all of which are alike and are rapidly vibrating to and fro; and that in ice they are so packed together with shorter paths of vibration that they will not readily separate, thus causing solidity; but that when heat is applied to them, each particle vibrates through a longer distance, and the different units are farther apart and more free to move among themselves, so that they present the mobile characteristics of a liquid; while above the boiling-point the freedom is so great that they actually move away as a gas.

Constitution of Matter.—If now we imagine these minute similar particles to be so small that further subdivision by physical means is impossible, we are figuring to ourselves those penultimate particles which, in the language of the atomic theory, are termed *molecules*. It is with the molecule that the physicist has to deal, and it is on the molecule that physical forces act; but the chemist is able to break up each molecule into a certain limited number of smaller particles, which are supposed by this theory to be indivisible, and are hence called *atoms* (from the Greek a = not, *temno* = I cut). Any molecule may contain two, or a larger number, of these atoms, and the atoms themselves may be similar or dissimilar; there are, indeed, two classes of bodies, the first of which includes those molecules in which all the atoms are alike, while the other group includes those whose molecules are made up of unlike atoms, and the number of these bodies is almost unlimited, because of the endless combinations possible between different varieties of atoms. In the first class both molecules and atoms are of the same ultimate material, so that such a substance can contain but one kind of matter, and is hence termed an *element*. In the other group, although the molecules of any substance are similar, the atoms are not; but each atom being indivisible, and consisting of one body only, is an element, and, therefore, the substance is said to be a *compound* of such and such elements. Thus, if a molecule of water could be made to yield its atoms, it would be found to contain two of a gaseous element, hydrogen, and one of another gas, oxygen, each quite unlike water, and unlike the other; and if two molecules could be so treated at the same time, the two liberated oxygen atoms would, if kept apart from the hydrogen, unite to form a molecule of oxygen, while the four hydrogen atoms would form two molecules of hydrogen.

Atomic Weight.—Now, if it were possible to isolate and weigh a number of atoms, it would be found that all those of the same element would possess equal weight, but that atoms of different elements would have unlike weights; and for all chemical and electrolytical calculations this must be thoroughly understood. Although the actual weighing of an atom is still an impossible

feat, yet by studying the mutual relations of the elements the chemist is able to estimate the *relative*, though not the *absolute*, weights of different atoms.

Chemical Symbols and Formulæ.—Hydrogen, which is the lightest substance known, being regarded as unity, the *atomic weight* of each element is expressed as a multiple of that of hydrogen. Thus, if an atom of hydrogen be regarded as weighing 1, it is found that an atom of oxygen will weigh 16. We do not know in what unit of weight atomic weights are expressed, because we cannot weigh a known number of atoms; but whatever the unit may be we know that if an atom of hydrogen weighs one such unit that of oxygen weighs 16. Since each molecule of water has been shown to consist of two atoms of hydrogen combined with one of oxygen, it is evident that it must contain 2 parts by weight of the former with 16 parts of the latter; and as all molecules of water are alike in composition, it follows that in every 18 parts by weight of pure water there are 2 of hydrogen and 16 of oxygen.

It should be clearly remembered that every true compound, no matter how it is produced, not only contains always the same elements, but contains them in the same proportions. Provided, then, that we are able to determine the nature of the different atoms present in a molecule of any substance, and the proportion in which they are there, we can calculate with precision the percentage of each element contained in it; and, conversely, if we know the proportionate weights of the constituents of a given compound, we can at once determine the number of each kind of atom in the molecule. Hence it is possible to assign a definite chemical formula to every compound; that of water might be written '2 hydrogen : 1 oxygen,' implying that there are two atoms of the former to one of the latter; but in chemical work to write down the names of the elements in full would be both tiresome and clumsy, so that chemists are in the habit of using a system of shorthand notation, which is both simpler and more scientific. It consists in selecting a symbol, usually the first letter, or the first with some specially suggestive subsequent letter, of either the English or Latin name of the substance, to represent each element; and this is understood to stand for, not an indefinite amount, but for 1 atom, and, therefore, so many known parts by weight of the element. Thus 'H' implies 1 atom or 1 part by weight of hydrogen; 'O,' 1 atom or 16 parts by weight of oxygen; 'Fe' (*Ferrum*), 1 atom or 56 parts of iron; 'Sn' (*Stannum*), 1 atom or 119 parts of tin; and so on. By such a system of notation, then, we are able to express both the nature and the proportionate composition of any substance, and so, for example, to ascribe the formula 'H_2O' to water.

It should now be evident that elements can combine with others only in proportions which are multiples of their respective

atomic weights, because no fraction of an atom can enter into the constitution of a molecule. But further than this, the proportionate numbers of each kind of atom in any molecule are no mere arbitrary or accidental figures, but are regulated by definite laws; and it is the fixedness of these laws which enables us to predict the exact weight of any metal which should be deposited by a given current in a known time.

Valency.—We have seen that water contains 1 atom of oxygen united with 2 of hydrogen; but in hydrochloric acid (HCl) there is 1 of chlorine, not with 2, but with only 1 of hydrogen, while in ammonia (NH_3) we find 1 of nitrogen with 3 of hydrogen, and in marsh gas (CH_4) 1 of carbon requires 4 of hydrogen. Here we observe chlorine to be typical of a class of elements which combine with hydrogen in equal atomic proportion, oxygen typical of a class where the ratio is 1 : 2, nitrogen of one where it is 1 : 3, and carbon of one where it is 1 : 4. The terms *monovalent*, *divalent*, *trivalent*, and *tetravalent* are applied to the elements included in these classes respectively. The words monatomic, diatomic, etc., are sometimes used, but those indicating *valency* are preferable. All elements, however, are not capable of combining with hydrogen; and to determine the valency of these, it is simply necessary to ascertain how many atoms of hydrogen are replaced in any compound by the element in question. For example, common salt is a compound of the metal sodium (Na) with the gas chlorine in the atomic proportion of 1 : 1, the formula being NaCl. But 1 atom of chlorine combines with 1 atom of hydrogen in hydrochloric acid, and, therefore, 1 atom of sodium is equivalent to 1 atom of hydrogen, inasmuch as each requires 1 atom of chlorine to combine with it—thus, sodium, like hydrogen and chlorine, is monovalent. This equivalency is clearly seen by the following reaction:—

1 hydrogen, 1 chlorine } added to (1 sodium) yield { 1 sodium, 1 chlorine } and (1 hydrogen);
Hydrochloric acid ,, ,, ,, *common salt* ,, ,,

or putting it in form of an *equation*,

$$HCl + Na = NaCl + H.$$

Again, in oxide of sodium, Na_2O, 1 atom of oxygen combines with 2 of the metal, just as it does with 2 of hydrogen; and by throwing metallic sodium into water, the latter is decomposed and part of the hydrogen is liberated as a gas, while an equivalent of sodium takes its place to form caustic soda. This exchange is thus represented[1]:—

$$Na + OH_2 = NaOH + H$$

1 *sodium* added to 1 *water* yields 1 *caustic soda* and 1 *hydrogen*.

[1] In writing equations, a figure written before a group of symbols means that all the elements symbolised up to the first stop are to be multiplied by the number represented by that figure; while a small figure below the line, to

In both these instances also, therefore, we find evidence that sodium replaces an equal number of hydrogen atoms, and is monovalent.

The atom of the metal zinc (Zn) replaces 2 hydrogen atoms, as is seen in the following equations representing the action of hydrochloric acid and of water respectively upon metallic zinc :—

$$Zn + H_2O = ZnO + H_2$$

1 *zinc* added to 1 *water* yields 1 *zinc oxide* and 2 *hydrogen.*

$$Zn + 2HCl = ZnCl_2 + H_2$$

1 *zinc* added to 2 *hydrochloric acid* yields 1 *zinc chloride* and 2 *hydrogen.*

Zinc is therefore a divalent element.

Similarly, aluminium may be shown to be trivalent, 1 of the metal replacing 3 of hydrogen; or 2 of the metal replacing 6 of hydrogen as indicated—

$$6HCl + 2Al = Al_2Cl_6 + 3H_2$$
$$3H_2O + 2Al = Al_2O_3 + 3H_2.$$

Other elements are tetravalent, pentavalent or hexavalent, according as they replace 4, 5 or 6 atoms of hydrogen in compounds. To save the repetition of the full term monovalent or divalent elements, etc., it is often more convenient to classify the elements as *monads*, *dyads*, *triads*, *tetrads*, *pentads*, or *hexads*.

Now it sometimes happens that a single element may form two classes of compounds, in which the valency of the element is different; but these classes are quite distinct from one another, for although they are interconvertible, yet they do not arbitrarily pass over from the one to the other, but tend to remain separate, even, perhaps, through a long cycle of chemical changes; but one or other of these classes is generally more stable than the other—that is, less liable to change—and is, therefore, the one more commonly met with. Thus, copper (Cu = *cuprum*) forms the more usual group of compounds in which it replaces 2 of hydrogen (CuO = cupric[1] oxide, $CuCl_2$ = cupric chloride) and is generally recognised as a dyad, but it may, under certain circumstances, behave as a monad and form the group of compounds of which cuprous[1] oxide = Cu_2O, and cuprous chloride = Cu_2Cl_2, are typical members. To express the valency of an element, it is therefore necessary to know with which class of compounds we are dealing.

Elements.—In the following table will be found the names of

the right of a symbol, describes the number of those atoms to be taken into consideration. 2HCl means 2 molecules of hydrochloric acid (2 atoms of hydrogen and 2 of chlorine). H_2O means 2 atoms of H with 1 of O; while $3H_2O$ means 3 molecules of water containing 6 atoms of H and 3 of O.

[1] When an element forms two classes of compounds, that class in which the greatest proportion of oxygen or other equivalent substance is combined with it is distinguished by the suffix *-ic* attached to the name of the element, while the other class takes the termination *-ous*. When the name alone is used, the more common group is usually understood—for example, *copper oxide* would imply *cupric oxide*, CuO.

TABLE I.—List of the Elements.

Note.—A number of newly discovered elements have been omitted as they may at present be disregarded from the electro-metallurgical standpoint. The atomic weights are taken from the *Report of the International Committee on Atomic Weights*, 1908. It will be noticed that the atomic weight of hydrogen is not given as exactly unity; this is because it is found that other atomic weights are more nearly whole numbers if that of oxygen is taken as an exact whole number, namely, 16, and is thus regarded as the starting-point. Equivalent weights are found by dividing the atomic weight by the valency, and are here given to the nearest decimal.

Name of Element.	Symbol.	Valency.	Atomic Weight.	Usual Equivalent Weight.	Name of Element.	Symbol.	Valency.	Atomic Weight.	Usual Equivalent Weight.
Aluminium	Al	3	27·1	9·0	Mercury	Hg	2 and 1	200	100·0
Antimony	Sb	3 and 5	120·2	40·1	Molybdenum	Mo	6	96	16·0
Arsenic	As	3 and 5	75	25·0	Nickel	Ni	2	58·7	29·3
Barium	Ba	2	137·4	68·7	*Nitrogen*	N	3 and 5	14·01	4·6
Bismuth	Bi	3 and 5	208	69·3	Osmium	Os	6	191	31·8
Boron	B	3	11	3·6	*Oxygen*	O	2	16·00	8·0
Bromine	Br	1	79·96	80·0	Palladium	Pd	2 and 4	106·5	26·6
Cadmium	Cd	2	112·4	56·2	*Phosphorus*	P	3 and 5	31	10·3
Cæsium	Cs	1	132·9	132·9	Platinum	Pt	4 and 2	194·8	48·7
Calcium	Ca	2	40·1	20·0	Potassium	K	1	39·15	39·1
Carbon	C	4	12	3·0	Rhodium	Rh	3	103	34·3
Cerium	Ce	2	140·25	70·1	Rubidium	Rb	1	85·5	85·5
Chlorine	Cl	1	35·45	35·5	Ruthenium	Ru	4	101·7	25·4
Chromium	Cr	3	52·1	17·4	*Selenium*	Se	2	79·2	39·6
Cobalt	Co	2	59	29·5	*Silicon*	Si	4	28·4	7·1
Copper	Cu	2 and 1	63·6	31·8	Silver	Ag	1	107·93	107·9
Erbium	Er	3	166	55·3	Sodium	Na	1	23·05	23·0
Fluorine	F	1	19	19·0	Strontium	Sr	2	87·6	43·8
Gallium	Ga	3	70	23·3	*Sulphur*	S	2	32·06	16·0
Glucinum	Gl	2	9·1	4·5	Tantalum	Ta	5	181	36·2
Gold	Au	3	197·2	65·7	Tellurium	Te	2	127·6	63·8
Hydrogen	H	1	1·008	1·0	Thallium	Tl	1	204·1	204·1
Indium	In	3	115	38·3	Thorium	Th	1	232·5	232·5
Iodine	I	1	126·97	127·0	Tin	Sn	2 and 4	119	59·5
Iridium	Ir	4	193	48·2	Titanium	Ti	4	48·1	12·0
Iron	Fe	2 and 3	55·9	27·9	Tungsten	W	6	184	30·7
Lanthanum	La	2	138·9	69·4	Uranium	U	4	238·5	59·6
Lead	Pb	2	206·9	103·4	Vanadium	V	3	51·2	17·1
Lithium	Li	1	7·03	7·0	Yttrium	Yt	3	89·0	29·7
Magnesium	Mg	2	24·36	12·2	Zinc	Zn	2	65·4	32·7
Manganese	Mn	2	55	27·5	Zirconium	Zr	4	90·6	22·6

the elements at present known, together with their symbols and valencies, their atomic weights, and their *equivalent* weights. By the latter term is meant the number of parts by weight of an element which are required to take the place of 1 part of hydrogen, or of 1 equivalent of any other element; and these numbers are evidently found by dividing the atomic weight (*i.e.*, the weight of an atom in our relative scale) of the element by the number of hydrogen atoms which are equivalent to it. Thus, when any element interchanges with another in a compound, it is always in the proportion of a multiple of their equivalent weights.

In this table, the names of the more common metallic elements and of those metals which, as such or in compounds, are most largely used in electro-metallurgy, are printed in small capitals, while the non-metallic elements are distinguished by italics.

Heat-evolution of Combinations.—We have used the term *chemical forces* in the earlier part of this chapter, and we must now devote a short time to the observation of the comparative effects produced by various chemical changes and combinations.

It must first be understood that when any chemical combination occurs, heat is usually evolved, owing to the conversion of chemical energy into its equivalent of heat-energy; and that just as given substances always combine in perfectly definite proportions, so each of these combinations is attended by the evolution of a perfectly definite amount of heat-energy. The amounts of heat evolved by different combinations are extremely varied, but that given out during one particular combination is quite constant, no matter in what way the union is effected. Then by comparing all the elements except one as to their behaviour in combining with that one other element, it is possible to arrange them in a series in which the first member evolves the greatest amount of heat during its combination, and the last gives out the lowest quantity. Further, if different individual group elements be taken, and the remaining elements be combined with them, one with one, several of these lists may be compiled, each of which represents the heat-value of the various combinations of the single elements with one of the others. On comparing these lists, it will be found that the main order of the different substances will be approximately the same in all, but that one or two elements may alter their relative position in certain lists, which represent the effect of their combination with special elements for which they have 'great affinity.' Thus, certain elements may be said to be more energetic than others in all combinations, while others may be regarded as, so to speak, more sluggish—evolving far less heat in any reaction in which they may play a part.

By way of example, the following table illustrates the number of heat-units emitted during the combination of certain of the more common elements with oxygen and chlorine respectively. In using this table the formula of the resulting compound is

taken, and the molecular weight is taken in grammes or pounds, or whatever unit may be convenient. Thus in the case of hydrogen we have H_2O as the result. What is termed a gramme molecule of water, 2 + 16, *i.e.*, 18 grammes, may be used. Similarly a pound molecule would be 18 pounds. The heat evolved in the formation of a gramme molecule of water, according to the table, would raise 68,360 grammes of water through 1 degree centigrade. Similarly, the heat evolved in the formation of a gramme pound of water would raise 68,360 pounds of water through 1 degree centigrade. Whatever unit of weight is chosen must be used all through, and the scale of temperature in each case is the centigrade. As another example we see that 65 pounds of zinc combining with 16 pounds of oxygen evolve sufficient heat to raise the temperature of 86,400 pounds of water 1 degree centigrade.

TABLE II.—Showing the Number of Heat-units Evolved in certain Combinations.

Name of Element, and Number of Atoms combining.	Heat-units evolved in Combination with	
	1 Atom of Oxygen, O.	2 Atoms of Chlorine, Cl_2.
Potassium, . . . K_2,	97,200	211,200
Sodium, . . . Na_2,	100,200	195,380
Calcium, . . . Ca,	131,360	170,230
Strontium, . . . Sr,	130,980	184,550
Barium, . . . Ba,	130,380	194,250
Manganese, . . . Mn,	*94,770	111,990
Zinc, ... Zn,	86,400	97,210
Hydrogen, . . . H_2,	68,360	†44,000
Iron, ... Fe,	*68,280	82,050
Tin, ... Sn,	*68,090	80,790
Cadmium, . . . Cd,	*65,680	93,240
Cobalt, . . . Co,	*63,400	76,480
Nickel, . . . Ni,	*60,840	74,530
Lead, ... Pb,	50,300	82,770
Copper, . . . Cu,	37,160	51,630
Mercury, . . . Hg,	30,660	63,160
Silver, . . . Ag_2,	5,900	58,760
Gold, . . . $\frac{2}{3} \times$ Au,	* − 8,790	15,210

* These oxides are hydrated ; the remaining compounds are anhydrous.
† This number refers to gaseous hydrogen chloride.

Law of Selection in Chemical Union.—This table shows that the strongest combination of chlorine with any metal (*i.e.*, the one which evolves most heat in its production) is that with potassium, next is ranked sodium, while zinc stands lower, and silver lower

still, on the list. Now, speaking generally, if there be a limited amount only of an element such as oxygen in a condition to combine with an excess of various metals, the strongest combination will always form first; then, if there be any of the limited element left, it will combine with the element which affords the next strongest combination, and so on. In other words, if a choice of combinations be presented, that which produces the greatest evolution of heat will usually take precedence of all others. By way of example, let us suppose that a limited amount of chlorine is brought into contact in a closed space with an excess of potassium, sodium, zinc and copper. The potassium will have the highest tendency to combine with chlorine, because, in doing so, the greatest amount of heat will be evolved, and potassium chloride will be the chief result of the reaction. When all the potassium is used up, and not until then, if all the metals may be supposed finely divided and well mixed together, sodium chloride will be formed, then zinc chloride, and finally, if there be any chlorine left, copper chloride. Further than this, if any of the pure elements be placed in a fused compound of any element occupying a lower position in the above list, it will tend to liberate the latter element in the metallic state, and itself to take its place in the compound, because in this exchange heat will be evolved; thus, metallic zinc dipped into fused silver chloride forms zinc chloride (because the affinity of chlorine for zinc is greater than for silver, heat being thus evolved in the change) and sets free metallic silver, while, on the contrary, metallic silver is, of course, without action on fused zinc chloride.

Electro-Chemical Series.—A list of elements arranged in such order that any one will thus displace from its compounds any other lower than itself on the list, but will be without effect on any compound of an element occupying a higher place, is termed an *electro-chemical series.* For every group of compounds (oxides, chlorides, sulphates, etc.) such a list may be formed; and the elements at the head of the list are termed *electro-positive*, expressed by the algebraic sign for *plus*, ' + ,' while those at the lower end are *electro-negative* and are represented by the *minus* sign, ' − '; but these terms are purely relative. For example, in the following list, which expresses the electro-chemical order of the elements in relation to sulphuric acid, zinc is less readily acted upon by the acid than potassium, but more so than copper; it, therefore, occupies an intermediate position, and while it is electro-positive in regard to copper, it is electro-negative as compared with potassium. This fact can be readily demonstrated by dipping a piece of zinc into separate solutions of potassium, zinc and copper sulphates; in the two former no action will be observed, while in the latter zinc will slowly be dissolved, and a corresponding deposit of copper will be found on the remainder of the zinc. And it should be noted that for every equivalent

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(32·7 parts by weight) of zinc dissolved, an equivalent (31·8) of copper will be separated, as we have already indicated. The metals as a class are electro-positive, the non-metals electro-negative. The order given below may vary with the conditions; for example, it is not the same for all electrolytes.

TABLE III.—Arrangement of the Common Metals in Electro-Chemical Series.

+		
Potassium.	Cobalt.	Silver.
Sodium.	Nickel.	Platinum.
Magnesium.	Lead.	Gold.
Manganese.	Tin.	Hydrogen.
Zinc.	Bismuth.	Antimony.
Iron.	Copper.	The metalloids or non-metals.
Cadmium.	Mercury.	−

It should be observed that the order of the metals in this list is nearly in accordance with that in the table of heat-evolutions on p. 21, as indeed would be expected from our knowledge of the laws alluded to at that point. The relation of the electro-chemical arrangement of the metals to their heats of combination readily explains also the fact, that in different solutions the order of sequence is not always absolutely identical. It is of great importance to remember this in electro-metallurgical work, especially of an experimental nature, as the numbers representing these 'heats of combination' have in many cases been accurately determined and are published in works on thermo-chemistry; and since, as we shall presently see, electrolytic deposits on metals, which are themselves capable of decomposing the plating liquid, are generally of inferior character, the cause of many a failure might be explained by a reference to thermo-chemical data.

Transformations of Energy.—A few pages back we saw that, during chemical combination, chemical energy is converted into and rendered evident as heat-energy; and the amount of heat thus evolved may be regarded as an exact measure of the chemical energy of the combining elements. All forms of energy are interconvertible, but it is no more possible to *create* energy than it is to produce or to destroy matter; for the manifestation of any form of energy such as heat or electricity, is merely a conversion into it of some other form of energy. In the dynamo-electric machine, electricity is 'generated,' but it is at the expense of an exact equivalent of mechanical energy supplied by the steam engine, and the current of electricity produced may in turn be converted into heat-energy in overcoming the resistance of the incandescent lamps, or into chemical energy by decomposing chemical compounds and precipitating the constituents in the electrolytic bath in circuit. We are not able to convert the whole

of the amount of one kind of energy into any other, where and when we require it, as some portion is generally lost to us in a form which we cannot utilise—as, for example, that which is converted into heat by the friction of the bearings or moving parts of the machinery; nevertheless, no portion of the energy is destroyed, it is simply converted into another form, which happens at the time to be useless to us. In this way, for example, a small fraction of the electrical energy supplied to the plating-vats is lost as heat in overcoming the resistance of the wires carrying the current.

Interconversion of Chemical and Electrical Energy.—Let us suppose that a plate of ordinary commercial zinc is placed in dilute sulphuric acid; it will dissolve, and as it slowly dissolves away, a rise of temperature is observable, due to the evolution of heat, which may be shown by careful experiment to be precisely proportional to the weight of zinc dissolved. If a plate of pure zinc or amalgamated zinc is similarly placed in dilute sulphuric acid, it will not dissolve; if now a plate of copper be immersed in the same liquid, but not touching this pure zinc strip, as in fig. 1, it will neither be attacked by the acid itself, nor will it in any way affect the relations between the zinc and the liquid. But if the two metals be connected by a wire, as shown in fig. 2, the zinc will dissolve; yet the heat-measuring apparatus will show practically no evolution of heat. Either then the heat is not being emitted, or it is being dissipated in some way. But the wire is found to possess new properties; if it is in the form of a spiral, it attracts light particles of iron brought near to its ends, while it influences the set of a compass-needle, and further, if it is very fine, it becomes distinctly warmer than the surrounding air. Here then is the solution of the problem: directly the two plates are connected by the wire a current of electricity is set up, which is regarded as flowing from the zinc through the solution to the copper, and thence from the copper through the wire coil to the zinc again; and this current, meeting with resistance in all parts of the circuit, causes heat to be evolved in all parts by the conversion of electrical energy, but chiefly in the portion which opposes the greatest resistance, namely, in the thin wire. The proof of the existence of this electric current is seen in the magnetisation of the spiral. Two similar pieces of zinc connected in this way would produce no current, but any two unlike metals would give results analogous to those from the copper and zinc.

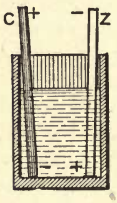


FIG. 1.—Copper-zinc cell, unconnected.

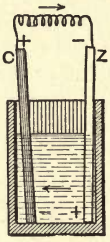


FIG. 2.—Copper-zinc cell, connected.

Hence it may be generally stated that *when two different metals are metallically connected together in a solution which is capable of acting chemically upon at least one of them, an electric current is set up which will pass in the liquid from the more electro-positive metal to the other, and complete the circuit by returning along the metallic connection, in the inverse direction, to the positive plate.* It is further noticeable that the greater the electro-chemical difference between the two metals used, the more vigorous will be the action, the more rapid the solution of the electro-positive element, and consequently the greater will be the heat and electrical manifestation in the connecting wire. This is due to the greater difference of potential between any pair of metals widely separated in the electro-chemical series than that between any pair more nearly adjacent.

Electro-motive Force.—The electric force that causes the current to flow when the plates of a voltaic cell are connected by an external wire, as just described, is called the *electro-motive force*, or, more briefly, the E.M.F. of the cell. There has been much discussion as to where the electro-motive force in a cell is situated, but into this point we need not enter. It will be sufficient here to state that any voltaic cell has an electro-motive force tending to force a current through any external circuit connecting the poles or plates.

Potential Difference.—If a current is flowing through a wire there is a certain electric force or electric pressure between the ends of the wire. In such cases, it is often said that a difference of potential exists between the ends of the wire, just as there is a difference of water pressure between two points along a water-pipe when water is flowing. Such potential difference or electric pressure is of the same nature as electro-motive force, but the latter term is restricted to a source or generator of electric energy, whereas potential difference or electric pressure is due to flow of current, and therefore arises from an electro-motive force as its primary cause. Potential in electricity is akin to pressure in hydraulics, but we need not here inquire into the exact meaning of the term; *difference* of potential is what we are concerned with in practice, just as difference of pressure is generally more important than absolute pressures in hydraulics, and in many ways it is simpler to use the term electric 'pressure,' rather than potential difference. When the plates of a voltaic cell are not connected by a wire, the pressure between the terminals is equal to the electro-motive force of the cell; if a wire is connected across the terminals, the E.M.F. may remain the same (this depends on the character of the cell), but the pressure between the terminals will fall, its value depending on the resistance offered by the wire and by the cell to the flow of current. There will be a potential difference, or a certain pressure, between every two points on this wire, and also between any two points within the cell along the

path of the current. In fact, the E.M.F. is used up, as it were, in giving rise to these potential differences all round the circuit.

Electrolysis.—Following up the investigation of the pair of metals referred to in figs. 1 and 2, it will be remarked that in the case of commercial or impure zinc, bubbles of hydrogen gas are constantly formed upon the surface of the zinc, and that these rapidly find their way to the surface of the liquid and escape into the air; they are due to the decomposition of the sulphuric acid by the zinc, expressed in the following equation:—

$$Zn + H_2SO_4 = ZnSO_4 + H_2$$

Zinc added to *sulphuric acid* yields *zinc sulphate* and *hydrogen*.

The exchange of zinc and hydrogen can readily take place because heat is evolved in the process. If the zinc is pure, there is no such evolution of hydrogen until it is connected by a wire to the copper. But there is this further important difference; in the first case the hydrogen is evolved on the zinc, whereas in the second case it is evolved on the *copper*. This effect, which clearly marks the introduction of new conditions, is a phenomenon connected with the passage of the current through the sulphuric acid. It may be regarded as a simple case of *electrolysis* or electro-deposition.

We have seen that a current of electricity passed through a coil of wire endues it with new magnetic properties; but when it is passed through certain compound liquids it tends to break up the compounds, and to deposit certain of their constituents on the surfaces by which it enters and leaves the solution. Thus in the cell to which we are referring, when the current began to flow, the elements of each molecule of acid (H_2SO_4) that was decomposed were distributed, the hydrogen (H_2) to the copper plate, from which it escaped, and the SO_4 to the zinc plate, with which it at once combined to form zinc sulphate, and this in turn dissolved in the acid liquid as zinc sulphate. It is universally true that when any solution is electrolysed (that is, decomposed by the electric current), the electro-positive element, or metal, is deposited on the plates towards which the current flows in the bath, and by which it leaves the solution; while the electro-negative portion is thrown down on that by which the current enters the liquid. Within the copper-zinc cell the current flows from the zinc to the copper; and, as hydrogen is the electro-positive element of sulphuric acid, it is on the copper that this gas is liberated, while the SO_4 or electro-negative group of elements is set free upon the surface of the zinc.

Had the zinc plate been immersed in a solution of a copper salt (*e.g.*, copper sulphate) instead of in sulphuric acid, not hydrogen but copper would have been deposited upon its surface. Any metal will thus substitute itself for any less positive metal in a suitable solution, and will deposit that metal upon its surface, or

upon any other less electro-positive metal which may stand in contact with it in the same solution. Generally speaking, when two metals, one being electro-positive to the other, are placed separately in a solution, each will dissolve irrespectively of the other, supposing, of course, that the solution is capable of attacking both metals. If the two metals are placed in contact, the dissolving of the electro-positive metal not only continues but is increased.[1] It is for this reason that the presence of platinum assists in dissolving tin in hydrochloric acid. On the other hand, the electro-negative metal does not dissolve so quickly as it did before contact was made; solution may still continue, but it is more or less protected by the tendency of the voltaic couple so formed to deposit hydrogen or a metal upon the electro-negative of the two metals. It is for this reason that the zinc coating in the case of galvanised iron affords some protection even when worn away in parts; any exposed iron is still protected, more or less, by the action of the voltaic couple formed when moisture is present.

But the same law of deposition holds good when a current of electricity is passed through a separate solution, independent of the dissolving cell; we then have a voltaic cell or cells passing current through an electrolysing cell. If the current available have a high electro-motive force, it will effect decomposition in the external liquid as readily as (or more readily than) in the original solution, and will deposit the electro-negative substance on the surface by which it enters that liquid or *anode*, as it is termed, and the electro-positive body, or metal, at the *cathode* or surface towards which it flows, and through which it leaves the solution. In carrying the current, the molecules in the solution split up into two parts called *ions*; one ion, called the *anion*, travels in the opposite direction to that of the current and is deposited at the anode; the other ion, called the *cation*, travels with the current and is deposited at the cathode. The metals, therefore, as a class would be cations, the non-metals anions. The anode and cathode form the *electrodes*.

When a number of different metals are connected together in the dissolving cell, the most electro-positive metal will be acted upon in preference to the others, these latter being more or less protected, as we have just seen. When the most electro-positive metal has been dissolved away, the next electro-positive metal will be more readily attacked, and so on, because the most positive metal evolves most heat during combination, and because that reaction usually occurs which is accompanied by the greatest heat-evolution. Conversely, a current passing through a mixed

[1] It is sometimes wrongly stated that the chemical action previously taking place on the electro-positive metal stops when the two metals are placed in contact. If this were so there would be no local action in a battery when supplying current.

solution will generally[1] deposit first the least electro-positive metal, then the next higher in the series, and finally the most electro-positive; for it should be observed that to decompose a given substance requires an expenditure of energy equivalent to the heat generated in its formation; and just as with a choice of reactions, that *combination* will occur which *sets free the greatest amount* of heat-energy, so when there is a choice of *decompositions*, that will be effected which requires the lowest *expenditure* of energy; and in *electrolysing* (*i.e.*, decomposing by the electric current) a mixed solution, least energy is, of course, needed to break up the compound which evolved least heat during its formation. Zinc, iron, lead, copper, and silver, bound together by wire and placed in a bath of acid, would, therefore, dissolve in the order in which they are enumerated, while a current passing through a solution containing all these metals would deposit first the silver, then the copper, and, finally, the others in inverse order.

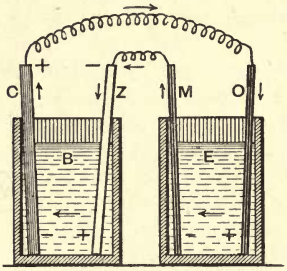


FIG. 3.—Copper-zinc cell connected with electrolysing cell.

In electrolysing a solution, then, by means of a current derived from chemical action, the chemical energy of the battery is converted into electrical energy, and is pumped, as it were, by the electro-motive force of the battery, along a wire to the anode, through the solution to the cathode and thence back to the battery. In the solution it is reconverted into chemical energy during electrolysis, by the separation of the elements contained in the liquid. Let us imagine that the plates by which the current enters and leaves the *electrolyte* (or liquid which is being electrolysed) are made of platinum or any other metal which cannot be attacked by the solution or by the liberated elements; then, if the chemical energy required to dissociate (or drive apart) the elements which are combined in the electrolyte is greater than the chemical energy of the battery-cell, it is evident that no dissociation can occur. Hence there is a practical limit to electrolytic decomposition. There is another point of view from which this phenomenon may be observed, which may serve to make it more clearly understood. Let us suppose that a certain pair of metals, C and Z (fig. 3), are placed in a battery-cell, B, and joined with wires to the platinum plates, O and M, respectively, of an electrolysing cell, E, the solution in this cell being that of some metallic salt. Here Z is the electro-positive metal; so that the current flows in the cell, B, from Z to C, and thence through the wire to the plate, O, on which the negative

[1] Under certain conditions, which will be considered hereafter, p. 32, it is possible to deposit alloys or mixtures of metals from a compound solution.

constituent of the electrolyte would be separated, and then through the liquid to M, which should receive the deposit of metal, and finally returns to the plate, Z, of the battery. But it is evident that as soon as the cathode, M, is completely covered with metal, the electrolytic cell itself will become practically converted into a battery, of which the deposit on M may be supposed the positive metal, and the platinum, O, the negative. The result of this would be a tendency to send a current, produced by the dissolving of the deposit on M, and urged by the electro-motive force of this cell, from M through the liquid E to O, thence through the wire to C, and through the battery solution B to Z, and then again finally to M; in other words, the tendency would be for a current to flow in the opposite direction to that produced by the battery; and if the *opposing electro-motive force* of the new electrolytic cell were greater than the electro-motive force of the battery, the action of the whole arrangement would be reversed until the deposit on M had re-dissolved again. It is, therefore, easy to understand that if the *counter E.M.F.* (or opposing electro-motive force) of the electrolytic cell be equal to or greater than the original E.M.F. of the battery, no decomposition can occur, for any metal deposited would redissolve at once, and would tend to produce a reverse current. Thus the same conclusion is arrived at, that *in order to produce an electrolytic deposit, the decomposing current must have a higher electro-motive force than that which is set up between the deposited metal and the metal of which the anode is made.*

If, instead of insoluble platinum strips, pieces of the same metal that is to be deposited are used, then any current whatever—or rather any E.M.F.—may suffice to decompose the solution; because, although metal is being deposited, and therefore a certain amount of energy is absorbed at the cathode, yet the same weight of metal is being constantly dissolved by combination with the non-metal deposited at the anode; and the energy that is absorbed at the cathode by decomposition is thus exactly counterbalanced by that which is produced at the anode by the re-formation of the original substance. To take the other view of the case, the metal which is deposited is of the same nature as the anode itself, and between strips of the same metal no opposing E.M.F. is produced. The function of the current is simply to provide the means for destroying the equilibrium of the electrolyte, and to transfer, as it were, the metal by degrees from the anode to the cathode. Finally, to illustrate the matter by a practical example:—a solution of copper sulphate electrolysed between a copper anode and cathode. Copper will be deposited on the copper cathode and will still be opposed to a copper anode; no current can thus be produced by the two plates, no counter E.M.F. is set up, and the feeblest external E.M.F. suffices to effect the electrolysis. But if platinum plates be used,

then copper is deposited on the cathode, and thus practically forms a sheet of copper which is now opposed to the platinum anode; at once an opposing E.M.F. is produced, due to copper and platinum in a copper sulphate solution. Now, if the battery producing the current have a higher E.M.F. than this, it will overcome the opposition, and copper will be deposited continuously; but if it have a lower electro-motive force, no deposition can possibly occur, and the platinum cathode remains uncoppered.

When soluble anodes of a different metal from that which is to be deposited are used the case is less simple, owing to the gradual introduction of the metal dissolved from the anode into the electrolyte. Here two classes of problems may arise.

(1) *If the metal of the anode be more electro-positive than that undergoing deposition.*—In this case, provided the cathode is made of the depositing metal, no separate battery is needed, because a simple dissolving cell is formed, and the mere connection of the two plates causes the anode to dissolve, and to deposit the metal from the solution upon the cathode, as in the case of zinc, iron, etc., in an acid solution, which we have instanced on p. 28. But if a separate battery be employed, its current is reinforced by that generated in the electrolytic cell, and the action proceeds more rapidly than it could otherwise do, until the solution is exhausted of the metal which is being separated. When this point is reached the current of the battery will begin to deposit the metal which has passed into solution from the anode, provided the E.M.F. be sufficiently high; but if, on the other hand, no battery be applied, all deposition must cease as soon as the whole of the first metal has been thrown down.

(2) *If the anode be less electro-positive than the metal undergoing deposition.*—Here, provided the E.M.F. of the battery is sufficient to initiate electrolytic action, the required metal will be deposited for a time, but gradually a more electro-negative body diffuses through the liquid as it dissolves from the anode, and will, of course, be ultimately deposited instead of that of which the solution was originally composed.

Electric Conduction.—We have spoken freely of electricity passing through matter, but have not yet noted that it cannot do so with equal readiness in different media. There are many substances which absolutely check the progress of the electric current, and are hence termed *non-conductors* or *insulators*; they comprise such bodies as sulphur, pitch, shellac, glass, ebonite, sealing-wax, india-rubber, gutta-percha, paraffin-wax, oils, and the like; others are poor conductors, such as wood, and allow a certain amount of electricity—especially, of course, that at high potential—to pass through them; while others transmit electricity with facility, and are termed *conductors*. But there is an infinity of grades even among conductors. The metals as a class are the

best, and second, but after a long interval, are acidulated water and aqueous solutions. Of the metals, silver is the best conductor, and perfectly pure copper is a few per cent. lower; regarding the conductivity of these as represented by 100, the relative conductivity of the principal metals is given in the following Table:—

TABLE IV.—Showing the Relative Electric Conductivity of certain Metals.

Name of Metal.	Mean Conductivity.	Authorities.	Name of Metal.	Mean Conductivity.	Authorities.
Silver . .	100·0	B,D,L,M,P,W.	Antimony . .	4·2	M,W.
Copper . .	100·0	B,D,L,M,O,P,W.	Mercury . . .	2·5	B,M,P.
Gold . .	80·6	B,D,L,M,O,P,W.	Bismuth . . .	1·2	M.
Aluminium	55·1	M,W.	Graphite . . .	0·07	M.
Sodium .	37·4	M.	*Alloys, &c.*		
Zinc . .	30·2	B,M,O,W.	Cu with 4% Si	75·0	W.
Cadmium .	23·7	M.	Cu ,, 12,, Si	54·7	W.
Potassium .	20·8	M.	Cu ,, 9,, P	4·9	W.
Platinum .	16·7	B,D,L,M,O,P,W.	Cu ,, 10,, Pb	30·0	W.
Palladium .	16·4	D.	Cu ,, 10,, Al	12·6	W.
Iron . .	16·4	B,D,L,M,O,P,W.	Cu ,, 10,, As	9·1	W.
Tin . . .	15·2	B,M,O,W.	Cu ,, 20,, Sn	8·4	W.
Thallium .	9·2	M.	Cu ,, 35,, Zn	21·1	W.
Lead . .	8·8	B,M,O,W.	Cu ,, 50,, Ag	86·6	W.
Nickel . .	7·9	W.	Au ,, 50,, Ag	16·1	W.
Arsenic .	4·8	M.	Sn ,, 12,, Na	46·9	W.

Physicists have obtained very varied results in measuring the conductivity of metals, probably owing to want of care in selecting perfectly pure specimens; for, remembering that a mere trace of impurity is often sufficient to lower the conductivity (or, in other words, to *increase the resistivity*) of a metal by an altogether disproportionate amount, it is to be regretted that careful analyses of the samples operated upon were not made, and the nature and quantities of impurities published with the result of the physical observations. In this Table, whenever possible, the mean results obtained by Becquerel, Davy, Lenz, Matthiessen, Ohm, Pouillet, and Weiller have been taken; in many cases, however, measurements have been made by only one or two of these, and in others a single result obtained by one of them is so divergent from the corresponding numbers quoted by the others as to point to an error of observation, and to render its omission desirable in calculating the mean: for this reason we have indicated the sources from which the figures have been derived by the initial letters of the observers' names.

The conductivity of liquids is much lower, that of dilute sulphuric acid being 0·00013, and copper sulphate solution 0·0000054, that of silver being taken as 100; while pure water itself is a non-conductor. In passing through any substance, electric energy must always suffer loss, owing to partial transformation into heat in overcoming the resistance of the conductor, which is in its effect similar to that of friction on mechanical energy; hence, for conducting wires, only that material which offers least resistance (or friction) to the path of the current should be used. Silver is, of course, placed out of the field on account of its costliness; but copper, which is practically as good, is readily obtainable, and should, therefore, have the preference over all metals for this purpose unless the circumstances are unusual.

Electrolytic Conduction.—Up to this point we have been dealing with *metallic conduction*, which means that the electric energy is merely transmitted through a substance without producing any other effect than the conversion of a small proportion into heat, due to the resistance of the conductor. But there is another or *electrolytic conduction*, which has only been observed to take place in compound liquids, and in this case the passage of the electric current is accompanied by a decomposition of the liquid; but this decomposition is only made apparent by the separation of the constituents of the electrolyte at the electrodes (*i.e.*, the anode and cathode). This electrolytic conduction may occur in solutions of solid substances (*e.g.*, copper sulphate) or in fused bodies, but it is essential that they shall be compounds (mercury is a liquid conductor, but being an element it cannot be electrolysed and, therefore, conducts metallically), and that they shall be able to conduct the electricity. In electrolysing fused salts it may sometimes happen that the ions dissolve instantaneously in the liquid and, diffusing through it, reunite as rapidly as they are separated; and thus to all appearances the fluid is conducting metallically rather than electrolytically. Fused alloys of metals appear actually to conduct metallically only, as up to the present no attempt to separate the constituents by electrolysis has proved successful, though it is, of course, possible that the re-diffusion of the separated metals just described may account for the failure of these attempts.

The conditions, then, for electrolysis by the battery or dynamo are, that the solution should be able to conduct electricity and that the electro-motive force of the battery used should be in excess of that set up by the separated ions; and, further, that the ions, or at least the cations, should be able to exist as such in the electrolyte without bringing about secondary actions or decompositions.

Deposition of Alloys.—It has elsewhere been stated that when a current is passed through a mixed solution, all the electro-

positive ions appear to take part in conducting the current through the liquid, but that usually only the least electro-positive metal present is deposited, either because the others require a greater expenditure of energy, and are not precipitated at all, or because, if deposited, they exchange places with less electro-positive metals still in the electrolyte surrounding the cathode. Thus, in a solution of zinc and copper it is possible that both metals are deposited; but that the zinc instantaneously acts on the copper solution around and re-dissolves, whilst it precipitates at the same time an equivalent of copper in its place, so that only the latter metal is finally separated. But the deposition of the alloy will appear feasible in any of the following cases:—(1) If the current be so powerful that the secondary action of the more electro-positive metal on the solution of the other have not time to perfect itself; (2) if the particular solution used be of such a character that the more electro-positive metal, when it is separated, cannot chemically attack the solution of the more electro-negative, because the heats of formation of the two salts are so nearly identical that the same electro-motive force is needed to deposit each; (3) if the proportion of the more electro-negative metal in the liquid be so small, compared with that of the other, that the solution around the cathode is exhausted of the former more rapidly than its replacement is possible through diffusion; so that the electro-positive metal, having no possibility of exchanging places with it, remains undissolved. Thus, from a mixed solution of copper and zinc, brass might be deposited if the current were so strong, and, therefore, the decomposition so rapid, that the separated zinc had not time to precipitate the copper around it before it was protected by a further electro-deposit of copper; or if such compounds were selected, that the copper salt could not be decomposed by metallic zinc; or if the quantity of zinc in the solution were so great as compared with the copper that there was insufficient copper in the solution around the anode to take the place of the mass of zinc deposited. It should further be remarked that probably a small proportion of heat is generated in the alloying of certain metals, and that this would provide an additional tendency to deposit the alloy, sufficient, perhaps, to determine its production in certain cases.

The comparative electro-positiveness of two metals in a given solution may be ascertained by connecting the metals by wires to corresponding slips of copper immersed in copper sulphate solution, and noting on which strip a further copper deposit is produced; the slip on which the copper is precipitated will, of course, be that which is joined to the more positive metal; or it may be determined by connecting the plate with a wire, and finding, with the aid of a galvanometer, in which direction the current flows, remembering that outside the solution it must

always pass from the electro-negative to the electro-positive metal.

Units of Measurement.—Before closing this chapter we will refer briefly to some of the units of measurement employed in practical work.

In dealing with electric currents there are two distinct factors to be taken into account—the quantity flowing and pressure. The pressure, we have already seen, is the force under which the current flows. The quantity flowing in electricity is generally termed 'current,' simply. These terms, 'pressure' and 'quantity flowing,' perhaps explain better than any others the sense of the two words in question, inasmuch as they effect a comparison with hydraulic power, which is more tangible, so to speak, and, therefore, better understood. The power of overcoming resistance increases with the pressure in electrical as in hydraulic work; thousands of cubic feet of water may be flowing in a given time through a large pipe (*i.e.*, a large current) with but a slight fall or pressure, and yet but little force is required to check the flow; while a few cubic inches per second conveyed along a small pipe, if only from a sufficient height (*i.e.*, at sufficient pressure), may sweep away every obstacle placed in the path and will thus cause a current to flow, even through a great resistance. Disregarding loss due to heating, the amount of work done by a current at a given pressure is exactly proportional to the flow of electricity in a given time (*i.e.*, to the product of the current into the time during which it is allowed to flow); and this follows naturally from the laws of current-production. A given amount of zinc dissolved in the battery produces a given amount of heat, which is converted into electricity, and can then, in the electrolyte, only yield, at most, its equivalent of chemical energy.

The unit of electro-motive force (pressure), then, is the *volt*, and is roughly equal to the E.M.F. of a single Daniell's cell.

The unit of resistance is the *ohm*, which is equal to that of a column of mercury at 0° centigrade, 106·3 centimetres long and having a mass of 14·4521 grammes, to an unvarying current.

The unit of current is the *ampere*, and is that produced by a pressure of 1 volt when applied to the terminals of a wire having a resistance of 1 ohm. A current of 1 ampere is such that when flowing uniformly in one direction it will deposit 1·118 milligrammes of silver per second if passed through a solution of silver nitrate.

In scientific work the metrical system of weights and measures is adopted.

The unit of weight is the *gramme* (= 15·432 grains); ten, hundred, and a thousand grammes being termed dekagramme, hectogramme, and kilogramme; and $\frac{1}{10}$th, $\frac{1}{100}$th, and $\frac{1}{1000}$th being denominated decigramme, centigramme, and milligramme, respectively.

The unit of length is the *metre* (=39·37 inches), and the multiples and fractions have the same Greek and Latin prefixes respectively as those of the unit of weight.

In cubic measurement a special term *litre* is used to denote the cubic decimeter, or 1000 cubic centimetres (=1·76 pints).

The unit of heat is the *calorie*, and represents the amount of heat-energy which must be expended in order to raise the temperature of 1 gramme of cold water 1° centigrade (or, to be exact, from 4° to 5° centigrade): some authorities use a kilogramme-degree unit, but the gramme-degree system is more general, and is the one adopted in this work whenever it may be necessary to use it. Other units are used in different countries, as, for example, that of the pound-Fahrenheit-degree, intended to adapt itself to the English systems of measurement.

Temperature is generally measured in scientific work by the *centigrade* scale (indicated by the letter C) which denominates the freezing-point of water zero, and the boiling-point 100°, the space between these points being divided into 100 equal degrees. In the *Fahrenheit* scale (indicated by the letter F), largely used in England, the freezing-point is 32°, the boiling-point 212°, the space between them having 180 degrees. In the Réaumur system, adopted widely on the Continent, the freezing-point is zero, and the boiling-point 80°. The first two of these systems alone will be referred to in this book, and on page 399 will be found a Table of Comparison of Temperatures recorded by each. It is often convenient to remember that 9° F. are equal to 5° C.

In addition to these units there are several of practical utility which may be well mentioned.

The electrical unit of quantity is the *coulomb*; if the number of coulombs flowing past a given point in a circuit is large, the current is large. Thus when an ampere is flowing in a circuit one coulomb per second flows past any point in the circuit; if the current is 50 amperes then the number of coulombs per second is 50, and so on.

Neither current alone nor pressure alone is a measure of the power given to any circuit, but the product of the current and the pressure (in continuous currents) in any particular case is a measure of the power. If the current is expressed in amperes and the pressure in volts, the power obtained by the product is expressed in *watts*. If in any circuit a current of one ampere is flowing due to a pressure of one volt, the power in that circuit is one watt; this is equally true over any part of the circuit where the drop in pressure is one volt when one ampere is flowing.

With alternating currents (*i.e.*, with currents which reverse their direction many times a second) the relation is more complicated, because the current and pressure are liable to be what is termed "out of phase." In that case the power is not given by the product of the volts into the amperes. This product

gives the apparent watts, but the actual watts are less, and the ratio of the latter to the former is termed the *power factor* of the circuit. For example, if the true watts were 90 and the apparent watts were 100, the power factor would be $\frac{90}{100}$ or 0·9. Since the apparent power is larger than the real power, it follows that the current or the pressure must be larger than would be the case with continuous current This is a disadvantage, necessitating larger conductors or larger plant, and is of importance in electric furnaces worked by alternating currents.

The English *horse-power* (H.P.) is equal to work done at the rate of 33,000 foot-pounds per minute, or 550 foot-pounds per second, and is thus equivalent to raising 550 pounds through one foot, or one pound through 550 feet in a second. (The French H.P. is 542·48 foot-pounds per second.) The British H.P. is equivalent to 746 watts; or, in other words, 1 kilowatt is equal to about $1\frac{1}{3}$ H.P.

Finally, to connect heat-energy with mechanical work, Joule found that 1 calorie (gramme) is approximately equal to 0·424 kilogramme-metre or 3·066 foot-pounds—*i.e.*, 1 calorie liberated per second is equal to 0·00557 H.P.

The term *current density* is used in electrolysis to represent the current flowing per unit surface of electrode. In England this is sometimes expressed in amperes per sq. ft., sometimes in amperes per sq. in., of anode (or cathode) surface exposed to the current. On the Continent it is more often quoted in terms of amperes per sq. decimetre. In electrolytic analysis amperes per sq. decimetre are commonly quoted, and the symbol $N.D._{100}$ is often used to express this: thus a current $N.D._{100} = 0{\cdot}5$ would mean a current density of 0·5 ampere per sq. decimetre.

As already explained, the unit of power is the watt. If a circuit is supplied with power to the extent of one watt, then the work done in the circuit per second is termed a watt-second or a *joule*. It will thus be seen that a joule is also the work done by a coulomb in passing between two points of a circuit differing in pressure by one volt. The watt is too small a unit of power for many practical purposes, and therefore a unit of 1000 watts, termed a kilowatt, is often used. Similarily, the watt-second is too small for general purposes, and thus the *kilowatt-hour* (*i.e.*, the work done by a kilowatt working for one hour) is adopted, and is known as the Board of Trade Unit, frequently abbreviated to the letters B.T.U. A kilowatt-hour may obviously be the work done by a current of 1000 amperes at 1 volt passing for an hour, or by 1 ampere at 1000 volts, or 20 amperes at 50 volts (or any other combination provided that the number of amperes multiplied by the number of volts is 1000) passing for a like period.

CHAPTER III.

SOURCES OF CURRENT.

Relative Efficiency and Cheapness.—From what has been said in the last chapter, it will be apparent that some other form of energy must be converted into electrical energy in order to yield the current required for electro-plating; and we can now understand why the only electrical current originally available, which was generated from mechanical energy through friction between unlike bodies, although capable of exhibiting wonderful disruptive effects, owing to its high electro-motive force, was useless for electro-metallurgical work by reason of its deficiency in quantity or volume. Then with the invention of the battery, which aimed at the conversion of chemical into electrical energy, currents of low electro-motive force but of comparatively great 'volume' were producible, and these soon found an application in plating and electrotyping. But in nearly all batteries zinc is used up, and as a given weight of zinc can only produce a given (in many instances not very different) weight of deposited metal, it is too costly to be used in some branches of electro-metallurgy. The dynamo-electric machine, which is able to convert mechanical energy directly into a current of large 'volume' but low electro-motive force, is now largely used, not only in this direction, but also as a substitute for battery-power generally, because the combustion of the coal in the boiler of the steam engine takes the place of the oxidation or solution of the zinc in the cell of the battery, and is a far cheaper agent. Nevertheless, as the steam engine utilises only a very small fraction of the total heat produced by the combustion of the coal, some means of directly converting heat into electricity is even now a desideratum; at present, the thermopile does indeed effect this object, but it is not economical, and is not used for the generation of large currents, nor is it extensively employed in any way.

The manner of producing currents by the battery, the dynamo, and the thermopile will be shortly discussed in this chapter.

The Voltaic or Galvanic Battery (*named after Volta and Galvani*).

Principle.—The principle of the galvanic battery has already been explained, namely:—That when any two metals are placed in a fluid which can attack at least one of them, and are connected by any conductor or set of conductors, an electric current is at once set up, which flows within the cell from the more positive metal to the other, and in the opposite direction through the conductors; and that the greater the distance between the two metals on the electro-chemical scale, the higher will be the electromotive force of the cell. Zinc being a common metal, comparatively inexpensive, and, at the same time, very fairly electropositive, is almost universally adopted as the positive element. The electro-negative element and the exciting fluid are, however, frequently varied, such modifications constituting the chief differences between the types of cell commonly employed The electrolyte should be capable, preferably, of only attacking the electropositive metal, and of attacking only when the cell is supplying current, *i.e.*, when the circuit is closed; otherwise there will be much waste of material.

Parts of a Cell.—It must here be explained that in describing a cell, the more oxidisable or electro-positive metal (that, in fact, which by dissolving produces the current) is termed the *positive*, or preferably *electro-positive*, *plate*; but as the current outside the solution starts from the other plate, the terminal of the latter from which the wire is taken to the external circuit is called the *positive pole*. In the copper-zinc cell, the zinc is the positive plate, but the wire attached to it is the negative pole; and the copper, while it is termed the negative plate, becomes the positive pole outside the liquid. This is not likely to be forgotten if the facts be clearly grasped:—(1) That the plate from which the current starts, whether within the solution or without, is invariably designated positive; (2) that the current always starts from the electro-positive element to pass through the invervening liquid of the cell, and always, therefore, starts from the electro-negative element to pass through the wires and outside-connections of the battery; and (3) that the starting and finishing points within the liquid are termed the positive or negative plates, metals, or elements, and the starting and finishing points outside the solution are called the poles. This nomenclature is not followed in the case of secondary cells, as it has been found more convenient to call that plate with the positive pole the positive plate, and similarly in regard to the negative pole and plate. The whole path of the current is called the *circuit*—that in the cell being the *internal*, and that outside, the *external* portion; and any conductive connection between the two plates is said to *complete the circuit*. When the two plates themselves

come into contact within the cell, or they become united, either in the interior of the cell or close to the poles, by any metal which presents practically no resistance to the current, the battery is said to be *short-circuited.* When this short-circuiting takes place in any way while the current is flowing through the ordinary circuit, which probably presents a much higher resistance, nearly the whole of the current is diverted from the desired path, and passes through the easier passage, thereby causing a cessation of work and a great waste of battery-zinc; for when there are two possible paths open to a current, it will divide itself between the two in inverse proportion to their resistances. Thus let us suppose a current of 200 amperes to arrive at a point in the circuit at which a junction is reached, so that it may continue to flow to another point in the circuit, either by one channel with a resistance of 1 ohm, or by a second with a resistance of 99 ohms; the result will be that the path having 1 ohm resistance will carry $\frac{99}{99+1}$th of the current, or 198 amperes, while the other takes the remaining $\frac{1}{100}$th, or 2 amperes.

Local Action on Zinc.—Whenever commercial zinc is used as the positive plate in an acid solution, it must be well *amalgamated* with mercury. Impure zinc dipped alone into acid evolves clouds of hydrogen gas from its surface. This is to be explained by the presence of minute specks on the surface of the zinc of more electro-negative bodies (*e.g.*, lead and iron), which being impurities in the body of the metal and, therefore, in contact with the mass of the zinc, and also exposed to the acid liquid, act (each for itself) as minute independent batteries, with the zinc as the dissolving element, so that from each of them hydrogen is continuously evolved.

This *local action*, as it is termed, is objectionable, because it entails a loss of zinc without any equivalent of work done outside the battery, all the energy being expended in heating the materials of each of these minute and local circuits within the cell; this, of course, represents so much waste. Further, the phenomenon is not merely temporary, for the electro-negative impurities, although perhaps almost invisible, are not attacked by the liquid; and the gradual removal of the zinc by solution only results in laying bare a greater number of them, thus increasing rather than diminishing the extent of the local action during the progress of the discharge. The most obvious remedy is to use only the purest zinc, but this is costly; while the protection afforded to the metal of commerce, by a thin coat of mercury is found to impart equal efficiency and to be more economical. To amalgamate the zincs, clean them well; then with a piece of flannel or sponge tied to the end of a stick, wash them with dilute sulphuric acid (1 of acid to 15 or 20 of water); then pouring a few drops of mercury upon the centre of each, rub it cautiously over the plate until the

whole surface presents a silvery brightness. Mercury will adhere only to perfectly clean metallic surfaces, hence the necessity for the preliminary washing with acid; if, however, the zinc be very dirty or at all greasy, this treatment will not suffice, and it should be first immersed in warm caustic soda or potash solution. This will remove all grease; then, after washing thoroughly in water, the plate should be flooded with the acid and rubbed with mercury as before. An excess of mercury is to be avoided, as it soon penetrates the zinc and renders it brittle. The plate should be often examined, and re-amalgamated as soon as dark spots are seen upon the surface, or when gas is evolved from them during the working of the battery. The acid should not be allowed to touch the hands more than necessary; and if it fall upon the clothes it should be at once neutralised by a drop of strong ammonia, or it will in course of time produce a red stain, and finally destroy the cloth.

Polarisation.—As already mentioned, the earliest form of voltaic cell was the dry pile, which was very ineffective as a source of current owing to its high internal resistance. This was followed by Volta's 'simple cell' consisting of zinc and copper plates in pairs immersed in an electrolyte: for this purpose Volta used salt water, but Davy and others used acid, which gives a much better result. By a 'simple cell' is now generally understood a cell consisting of two metal plates, or a metal plate and carbon, standing in acid, such as dilute sulphuric acid. This is the simplest form of voltaic cell. One of the chief objections to cells of this class is that the hydrogen gas evolved at the copper plate clings to it and cannot readily escape. This formation of hydrogen on the surface of the electro-negative plate is termed *polarisation*, and presents a double disadvantage: first, the mere formation of a film of any gas upon the metal prevents the contact of its whole surface with the liquid, and, by interposing a layer of an insulating medium, reduces the surface area of the plate as much as if a portion of it were coated with an acid-resisting varnish; and in the second place, a far more serious difficulty is found in the tendency of the separating (positive) hydrogen to set up a cell on its own account, in co-operation with any oxygen in solution near the zinc plate, forming what is termed a 'gas cell.' Since hydrogen is electro-positive to oxygen, the E.M.F. so created tends to send a current from the hydrogen on the copper plate through the electrolyte to the zinc; that is, the E.M.F. so set up is in the opposite direction to that of the cell. Thus a simple copper-zinc cell may for the first few seconds of use give a fairly strong current; but as soon as the action has proceeded sufficiently far to give rise to a production of hydrogen on the copper plate, it becomes polarised, and the opposing electro-motive force which is set up greatly impairs the efficiency of the cell.

Reduction of Polarisation.—A large number of voltaic cells have been invented to meet the different requirements of practice, but for the most part with the object of producing either a more or less constant current (that is, a current of uniform strength for a long time), or an intermittent current. In any case, polarisation must be minimised, and this is effected either by mechanical or by chemical means. The mechanical method consists in so arranging the cell that the hydrogen shall escape from the surface of the negative plate immediately it forms; the chemical method seeks to prevent the separation of the hydrogen altogether, by means of substances which combine with it to form harmless compounds, or which cause the deposition of another suitable metal in its place. The latter, or chemical system, of overcoming polarisation has the added advantage that it increases the chemical activity in the cell, and thus adds to the electro-motive force. The substances employed for converting the hydrogen into a neutral substance are usually of an oxidising character and thus effect their object by the formation of water; and this operation may be conducted either by immersing both plates in a single oxidising solution, or by dipping the negative metal only in the oxidant, which must then be contained in a porous vessel placed within that holding the dilute acid and the positive element. The former class are termed *single-fluid cells*, the latter *two-fluid cells*. Other arrangements are possible, but are not used in practice, and will not be dealt with here—for example, those with two liquids (in different compartments) and one metal, or the gas battery of Grove.

Smee's Cell.—Of single-fluid cells in which polarisation is mechanically remedied, the most noteworthy is that invented by *Smee*. In this battery a plate of silver is placed in dilute sulphuric acid between two plates of zinc, but the silver plate is coated superficially with a very thin layer of platinum, so that the hydrogen may escape with comparative readiness from the slightly roughened surface which is thus produced. But even with this device a certain amount of hydrogen must exist on the surface of the silver so long as the cell remains in action. The separation and escape of the gas, however, occur with fair regularity, so that although the electro-motive force rapidly decreases during the first few seconds of use, it then remains constant at a point considerably higher than it would if the zinc were opposed to a pure silver plate, and yet higher than if it were opposed to copper, on account of the greater electro-chemical difference between the two former metals than between the latter. But the mechanical depolariser is palliative only, not remedial.

The annexed sketch of the Smee-cell (fig. 4), shown in section, illustrates its construction. The zinc plate, Z, is doubled, so that it may surround the silver on two sides and thus utilise both surfaces of the latter. It may be formed of two zinc plates

mounted with the platinised silver between them in a wooden frame, which being a very feeble conductor may carry away a minute fraction of the current, but serves to hold the metals in position, so that a quite thin sheet of silver may be employed without fear of its bending out of shape and making a short circuit. The zinc alone dissolves, and requires, therefore, to be initially of fair thickness; the silver plate may theoretically be only sufficiently stout to carry the current without presenting undue resistance, for the E.M.F. of a cell is independent of the dimensions of its elements. The acid, which is prepared by *carefully* (*vide* p. 366) adding 1 volume of strong sulphuric acid with constant stirring to 10 parts of water, is contained in a glass or stoneware vessel of suitable shape. These vessels are generally rectangular, and may be made to hold one pair or any greater number of the zinc and silver plates, which are supported by resting the wooden framework upon the tops of the side walls of the acid trough. The Smee-cells are very weak, the electro-motive force of one being only about 0·47 volt.; and they evolve much hydrogen, the escape of which into the air in a constant succession of minute bubbles, each mechanically carrying with it a trace of sulphuric acid, causes a slightly unpleasant choking sensation in breathing the atmosphere of the room in which they are working. But, on the other hand, they are compact and very simple in construction, and if kept clean are not liable to become disordered; while the escape of the hydrogen produces a peculiar hissing sound, which to the practised ear, may indicate by its varying intensity any accidental derangement either in the cells themselves or in the baths which they are electrolysing. It will cease altogether if the circuit is broken and the current has ceased to flow, or it will grow louder if a short circuit has formed at any point, and so diminished the resistance and increased the activity in the battery, thereby causing a needless waste of current. This cell is still largely used by electrotypers on account of its regularity and simplicity when properly supervised.

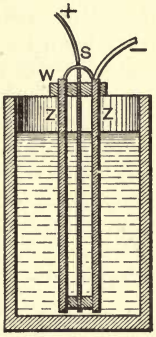


FIG. 4.—Smee-cell.

Daniell-Cell.—The form of battery invented by Professor Daniell is one which, by reason of its constancy, is well suited to electro-depositing work. In it hydrogen is not deposited at all, but is made to displace metallic copper from its solution, by immersing the negative plate in a saturated solution of copper sulphate. If both plates were placed in this liquid, the zinc, being more electro-positive than copper, would at once commence to exchange with that element contained in the solution, a part of the zinc forming soluble zinc sulphate, and an equivalent amount of copper precipitating in a pulverulent or spongy form

on the surface of the remaining zinc. This film, being pervious to liquid, would still allow the copper solution to attack the zinc core, and by 'local action' would even facilitate the exchange of the metals. The battery would be rendered wasteful of zinc, and, indeed, useless. To obviate this, the copper solution with its electro-negative plate of copper is separated from the simple acid liquid containing the zinc by a porous partition of some kind, generally of baked but unglazed earthenware, which will permit diffusion, but not free interchange, of liquids through its pores. This is usually effected by placing the zinc in a porous vessel within the outer cell containing the copper; thus, a 'two-fluid cell' is produced. The action which takes place may be expressed as follows—number 1 representing the condition of the cell when it is standing inactive, number 2 that when the circuit is completed and a current is being generated:—

1. (– Plate) Cu, $\overbrace{Cu.SO_4}$. $\overbrace{Cu.SO_4}$: : : $\overbrace{H_2.SO_4}$. $\overbrace{H_2.SO_4}$, Zn (+ Plate).

2. $\underbrace{Cu, \overbrace{Cu.SO_4}.\overbrace{Cu.SO_4}}$: : : $\underbrace{\overbrace{SO_4.H_2}.\overbrace{SO_4.H_2}.SO_4.Zn}$.

In outer cell. Within porous cell.

These changes or *reactions* may be described in the form of equations thus,

1. In porous cell : $Zn + H_2SO_4 = ZnSO_4 + H_2$.
2. In outer cell : $H_2 + CuSO_4 = H_2SO_4 + Cu$,

or the ultimate reaction of the battery may be summed up in one equation,

$$Zn + CuSO_4 = ZnSO_4 + Cu.$$

Thus, the hydrogen finds its way, as an ion, through the liquid in the pores of the inner cell-wall, exchanges place with the copper, and produces a practical transference of sulphuric acid from the outer to the inner cell; and, as the acid on the one side of the porous division becomes neutralised by zinc, the strength of the copper solution on the other side is rapidly diminished by the deposition of its metallic constituent. The neutralisation of the acid is immaterial, but the complete exhaustion of the copper sulphate sets a limit to the utility of the cell; long before this point is reached, however, the power of the battery is much lessened. As it is chiefly essential that copper alone, and no hydrogen, should be separated, care must be taken to keep the liquid in the inner cell saturated with copper sulphate, by suspending crystals of the solid copper salt (*blue vitriol*) just below the surface of the liquid, so that the solution may be replenished as fast as it is impoverished.

The usual form of the *Daniell-cell* is indicated in fig. 5. It consists of a cylindrical copper vessel holding a saturated solution of copper sulphate, and acts both as a containing vessel and as

the negative plate of the battery. Around the top is a perforated copper, ring-shaped trough, T, which is below the level of the liquid, and is always kept filled with crystals of the copper salt. Within this vessel is the porous clay-cell, P, closed at the bottom but open above, and in this is the amalgamated zinc rod or plate, Z, immersed in dilute sulphuric acid (1 acid : 10 water), or in a solution of zinc sulphate. Instead of using a copper external vessel, a thin sheet of rolled copper may be bent into cylindrical shape and placed in a stoneware or glass jar; the spare crystals are then suspended in muslin bags within the outer cell. The prime cost of this latter arrangement is less; but it must be remembered that in the former the copper is the negative element, and the cylinders are, therefore, in no way injured, but on the contrary are thickened by the gradual deposition of metal while the current is passing, and are not appreciably attacked by the dilute acid contained in them.

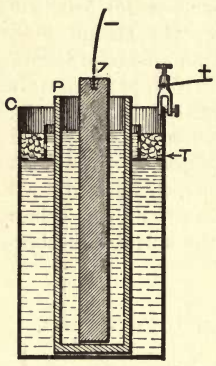


FIG. 5.—Daniell-cell.

Modified Daniell-Cells.—The arrangements for maintaining the supply of copper sulphate crystals are very numerous; for example, Breguet and others have adopted a globular receptacle of glass, which is charged with the salt, filled up with water, and, the neck being closed by a cork with two perforations, is inverted above the inner porous cell, so that the bottom of the cork lies beneath the fluid level within the latter: then as the battery liquid deposits copper it becomes lighter, and floating upwards, becomes displaced by the heavy saturated solution in the flask, while the poorer solution, which has found its way into the receiver, again becomes enriched, and is in turn ready to take the place of a further quantity of impoverished liquor. In this cell the copper is placed in the inner compartment, as in fig. 6: the globe, G, is supported by the neck of the porous pot, while between the two is inserted a copper tape, C, which serves for the negative element. Around the porous cell is a bent cylinder of zinc in sulphuric acid; the current is led away by the wires marked + and − attached to the copper and zinc respectively. Somewhat similar to this is the Meidinger-cell, in which a flask containing the crystals dips into a small cup containing the copper plate, resting on the bottom of a glass vessel, the diameter of which is enlarged to contain the zinc cylinder at a point somewhat above the upper portion of the cup. In Kuhlo's cell a copper vessel is used which carries the perforated trough outside instead of

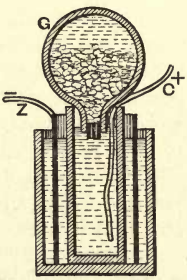


FIG. 6.—Daniell-cell (Breguet's form).

inside, and the zinc is enclosed in parchment paper instead of in a porous cell.

Other modifications in shape may be made. In the pattern adopted by the Post Office authorities, a long teak-wood trough, coated inside with some water-resisting varnish, such as marine glue, is divided into a number of compartments by alternate divisions of slate and porous earthenware. It contains the zinc and dilute acid in divisions 1, 3, 5, and the remaining odd numbers; and the copper as copper sulphate in the even divisions, 2, 4, 6, etc. It is simply a conveniently compact and portable arrangement of a battery of several cells. Large Daniell-cells may be made horizontal instead of upright, and without porous divisions, provided they are allowed to rest undisturbed in a position where they will not be subjected to any considerable amount of vibration, the difference in the specific gravities of the solutions employed sufficing to keep them in their required relative positions, more particularly if the cells are in constant use. If a cell of this kind is kept out of use the copper sulphate gradually diffuses to the zinc. A simple form of such a gravity battery is shown in fig. 7. A wooden trough of convenient size, say 14 ins. long by 10 wide and 3 high, is lined with insulating varnish, and provided with a glass partition, G, near to one end, which must reach to the top of the trough, but only to within a quarter of an inch of the bottom. On the bottom rests a large sheet of thin copper plate with a narrow strip attached to it, which, passing under the glass partition, is bent up within the smaller compartment to form the positive pole, C. Above this plate, and resting on wooden brackets in the sides of the trough, is a stout grid or plate of cast zinc with perforations to allow of the escape of any gas which might be formed through incorrect working; this should be well insulated from the copper and kept at a minimum distance of a half an inch from it. A zinc strip attached to the grid serves for the negative pole, Z. A dilute solution of zinc sulphate, to which a few drops of sulphuric acid have been added, is poured into the trough until the zinc is covered; the small compartment is then filled with copper sulphate crystals, and these, gradually dissolving, form a heavy solution which, finding its way beneath the glass partition, covers the floor of the vessel to the height of an eighth or a quarter of an inch. The zinc is, therefore, now in a dilute zinc sulphate solution, the copper in a strong copper sulphate solution, and the battery is ready for use. The crystals in the smaller division

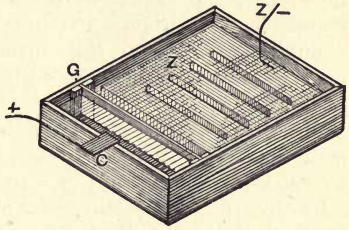


FIG. 7.—Gravity battery.

must, of course, be renewed, as they gradually dissolve away. If well attended to, this form of the Daniell-cell will yield good results, but it is essential to avoid all agitation which would tend to mix the solutions and bring copper-bearing liquids into contact with the zinc; a parchment-paper tray to receive the zinc plate will minimise this risk, but in any case the grid should be carefully removed from time to time and cleansed from any copper deposited upon it.

Indeed, in all forms of the Daniell-cell the zinc plates should be constantly inspected, as not infrequently splashes of copper liquids find their way into the zinc compartment; then, a portion of the copper is deposited on the zinc by simple electro-chemical exchange, and local action being set up, a certain amount of zinc dissolves and more copper is separated. As soon, therefore, as a blackish deposit is observed upon any portion of the zinc, it must be removed, and the surrounding liquid examined; even the merest shade of blue colour in the solution indicates the presence of copper, and points to the necessity for its renewal. When copper is thus found in the zinc compartment the porous cell should be most carefully examined, as it may have become cracked, and would thus permit a comparatively free interchange of liquids.

Kelvin's (Thomson's) Tray Battery is a gravity Daniell-battery somewhat similar to the above, but so arranged that a number of trays can be placed on top of one another. The zinc grid is made with upwardly projecting lugs on which the next tray of the series is stood. The zinc itself stands on porcelain insulators, and there is no compartment (such as that shown in fig. 7) for copper sulphate crystals. Such batteries are used largely in telegraphy.

The Daniell-cell has an electro-motive force of about 1 volt, varying with the strength of the acid, the nature of the solvent and the like, from 0·98 to 1·08 volts. The E.M.F. usually accepted is 1·079 volts. It is well suited for electrolytic work, especially on account of the extreme constancy of the current, but requires greater care and attention than the Smee-cell, to which, however, it is in many respects preferable.

Grove-Cell.—In the *Grove-cell* a different depolarising system is adopted. Instead of substituting metal for the gaseous hydrogen, Grove used a medium containing an excess of oxygen which oxidises the hydrogen into the innocuous compound, water, as rapidly as it is deposited upon the negative plate. This medium is nitric acid, the chemical action being represented as follows:—

1. In outer cell: $Zn + H_2SO_4 = ZnSO_4 + H_2$.
2. In inner cell: $H_2 + 2HNO_3 = N_2O_4 + 2H_2O$.

Or in one equation—

$$Zn + H_2SO_4 + 2HNO_3 = ZnSO_4 + N_2O_4 + 2H_2O.$$

Zinc. Sulphuric acid. Nitric acid. Zinc sulphate. Nitric peroxide. Water.

The nitrogen peroxide (N_2O_4) is a gas which at once dissolves in the nitric acid, imparting to it a red tint at first, and afterwards a deep green colour. It is this gas which, after the acid is saturated with it by the long-continued action of the battery, is seen to come off in the form of dense red-brown fumes possessing a suffocating odour.

The negative plate is not made of copper, which would be vigorously attacked by the nitric acid, but of platinum in the form of foil, as this metal entirely resists the action of the acid. Fig. 8 shows (in section) two Grove-cells set up in series to illustrate the method of connecting them. Within a glass or glazed earthenware outer vessel is the dilute sulphuric acid containing the zinc plate bent into the shape indicated, in order to give a larger surface by surrounding the negative plate, and for

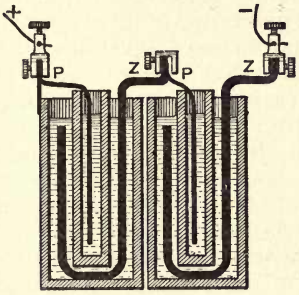


FIG. 8.—Mode of connecting a pair of Grove-cells.

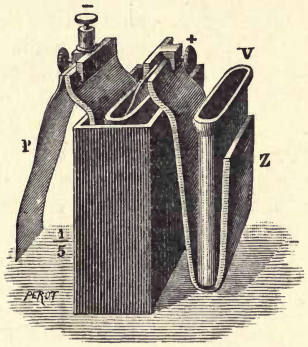


FIG. 9.—Grove-cell (external view).

convenience in connecting with other cells. Enfolded by the zinc is the porous compartment containing the strip of platinum foil, P, in strong nitric acid. The platinum is not attacked when in use, and is only deteriorated by repeated mechanical manipulation in setting up or taking down the battery; but its high value adds greatly to the prime cost of the cell, and for this reason the Bunsen-cell, with its block of carbon in lieu of platinum, is generally preferred for commercial purposes.

Fig. 9 gives a general view of the external appearance of the Grove-cell, showing one element complete, with the attachments of the next platinum plate on the one side, and of the zinc with its porous compartment on the other.

Bunsen-Cell.—The *Bunsen-cell* has the same reaction and, therefore, practically the same electro-motive force as Grove's, viz., nearly twice that of Daniell's (*i.e.*, 1·8 to 1·9 volts). In a circular stoneware jar (fig. 10) is contained the porous cell with its rod of gas-carbon and strong nitric acid, while around the porous pot

is a bent cylinder of zinc immersed in dilute sulphuric acid. The carbons are usually cut from the blocks of the deposit which gradually forms on the interior of gas-retorts, and is known as gas-carbon or retort-carbon. It is extremely dense, strong, and durable; but is sufficiently porous to allow the acid to pass upward by capillary attraction, and so to attack the brass *binding screws*, which form the connection between the battery plates and the wires through which the current is conveyed to its place of application. To prevent this action, D'Arsonval recommends steeping the extreme upper end of the carbon for a short time in melted paraffin, then depositing a thin film of metallic copper on its surface by electrolysis, and plunging the whole of this portion beneath melted type-metal; the type-metal will thus form a covering which is in contact with the carbon at the edges of the joint, and must effectually prevent the corrosion of the binding screw, while maintaining perfect electrical connection between the parts.

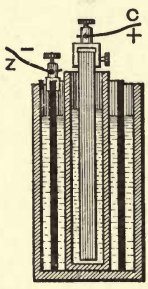


FIG. 10.—Bunsen-cell.

In both Grove's and Bunsen's cells the exciting fluid may be prepared by adding 1 part (by volume) of sulphuric acid to 10 parts (by volume) of water. The nitric acid must initially be highly concentrated, the specific gravity being not less than 1·30 (= 34° Baumé).

The tendency of the reaction is to produce nitric peroxide, which finally escapes as a gas, and water, as we have already seen; thus, not only is the nitric acid constantly being weakened by decomposition, but the remainder is at the same time diluted by the water which is formed. In this manner the strength of the acid rapidly falls off, and its oxidising efficiency is lessened. By the time it has been reduced to a density of 30° Baumé (sp. gr. = 1·26) the electro-motive force of the cell becomes quickly diminished, and when it has reached a strength of 28° Baumé (sp. gr. = 1·23) it is no longer serviceable, and should be at once renewed. These cells present many advantages; they have a high electro-motive force, and are fairly constant for a few hours, but they require to be filled with fresh acids daily. The nitric acid, however, is a constant source of danger in inexperienced hands on account of its extreme corrosiveness; and the red nitrate peroxide gas, which is constantly evolved, is not only disagreeable, but if inhaled for any time or in any quantity is positively injurious. Whenever either of these forms of cell is used it should be placed in a well-ventilated space outside the workroom, outside a window, or in a cupboard provided with the means of discharging the gases into a flue or directly into the outer air. In spite of these drawbacks they are largely used for

nickel-plating and for some other classes of work, especially, perhaps, for those of an experimental nature.

Bichromate-Cells.—Some operators have substituted chromic acid (in the form of a chromate) for nitric acid, because the products of decomposition are solid and remain dissolved in the liquid instead of passing into and contaminating the atmosphere; a suitable solution, proposed by Higgins, consists of 1 part of potassium bichromate dissolved in a mixture of 3 parts of sulphuric acid with 9 parts of water. The disposition of such a cell is similar to those which we have just described.

But it is more usual to use the same liquid throughout, *i.e.*, to use single-fluid *bichromate-cells* in which no porous division is needed, and these have the advantage of a lower internal resistance, though the current is less constant. The best proportions for the exciting fluid are, perhaps, those which correspond to the equation representing its action as follows:—

$$\underset{\substack{\textit{Potassium}\\\textit{bichromate.}}}{K_2Cr_2O_7} + \underset{\substack{\textit{Sulphuric}\\\textit{acid.}}}{7H_2SO_4} + \underset{\substack{\textit{Zinc.}}}{3Zn} = \underset{\substack{\textit{Zinc}\\\textit{sulphate.}}}{3ZnSO_4} + \underset{\substack{\textit{Potassium}\\\textit{sulphate.}}}{K_2SO_4} + \underset{\substack{\textit{Chromium}\\\textit{sulphate.}}}{Cr_2(SO_4)_3} + \underset{\substack{\textit{Water.}}}{7H_2O}.$$

This would require about $3\frac{1}{2}$ oz. of potassium bichromate and $8\frac{1}{2}$ oz. of sulphuric acid to be dissolved in a quart of water. A much more easily prepared solution, however, is obtained by using chromic acid instead of a chromate; for this purpose 11 pints of water may be poured upon 12 oz. of chromic acid, which will be dissolved immediately, and adding, with constant stirring, 1 pint of concentrated sulphuric acid. As the zinc is here actually in the strongly-oxidising solution during the action of the battery, and as a very notable amount of solvent action would take place even when the battery is at rest (though by no means comparable with that which would be set up in a single-fluid nitric acid cell), means must be devised for removing the zincs from the liquid directly the current is broken, as, indeed, is desirable in all acid cells. This is generally accomplished by drawing or winding them up out of the acid. In the bottle-form of this cell (fig. 11) two long strips of carbon, united by a metallic connection above, are fastened (parallel to one another) to a vulcanite stopper, and are there connected with the binding screw +; these form the negative element and pass to the bottom of the bottle; between them is a short thick strip of zinc attached to a brass rod passing stiffly through the centre of the ebonite cork and connected with the binding screw −. The zinc is entirely insulated from the carbon by the ebonite, and may be drawn out of the solution by means of the brass rod as soon as its services

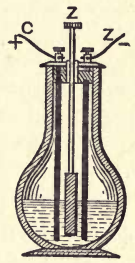


FIG. 11.—Bichromate of potash cell (bottle-form).

are no longer required. In the trough-form of battery (fig. 12) a series of carbon-and-zinc couples are immersed in the acid mixture contained in jars held in a long rectangular trough, from which the couples can be withdrawn when the battery is not in use. These batteries are simple, give a high electro-motive force (1·9 to 2 volts), and have a very low internal resistance; but the chromic solution, although emitting no fumes, is highly corrosive, and, moreover, must be constantly watched, for as it becomes weakened by use the E.M.F. is increasingly affected by polarisation.

Edison-Lalande-Cell. — Another form of cell, known as the Edison-Lalande, has a great advantage over those just described (at least for experimental work), because the current is very constant and the battery is unaffected by standing; in other words,

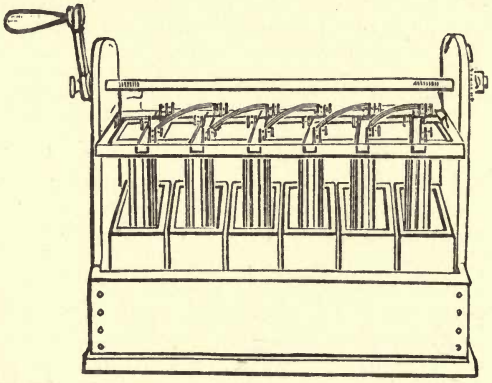


FIG. 12.—Bichromate of potash battery (trough-form).

there is no local action, and therefore the zinc need not be removed when the battery is out of use. There is, however, one considerable disadvantage; namely, the E.M.F. is low, only about 0·75 volt when in action, and the cost of materials is rather high. The cell consists simply of a plate of copper oxide held in a suitable copper frame between two zinc plates and immersed in a 25 per cent. solution of caustic soda. The plates are conveniently attached to the cover of the jar containing the electrolyte, and the latter is covered with a layer of heavy paraffin oil to prevent the formation of carbonate by the action of atmospheric carbon dioxide. When the cell is in action the zinc is attacked by the caustic soda, and the polarising hydrogen reduces the copper oxide to metallic copper. Such cells are made by the General Electric Company (London) in sizes ranging from 150 to 600 ampere-hours; thus the largest size would give, for example, a current of about 10 amperes for 60 hours.

Leclanché-Cell.—The number of other batteries in use for various purposes is immensely large and is yearly increasing, but

only a few are of practical use to the electro-metallurgist. Many are too weak; others are strong at first, but speedily lose their power; while others again, which by their strength and constancy are well adapted to our purpose, are too expensive or too troublesome for daily use under the conditions of the workshop. Thus, to take a single example, the Leclanché-cell, economical enough as to prime cost and in use, gives a current which, at first powerful, rapidly declines owing to polarisation, but almost as rapidly recovers itself when standing at rest; it is thus very suitable for intermittent or irregular work, such as the ringing of electric bells, but is useless for electro-plating.

Practical Hints on the Use of Batteries.—In all dealings with batteries cleanliness in every detail is very desirable. The cells and the metals must be thoroughly cleansed before commencing work; and it is of the highest importance that all metallic connections in the external circuit, such as the junctions of the plates with the binding screws or with one another (when placing them in series) be kept perfectly bright. A film of oxide or tarnish between two surfaces through which a current must pass increases the resistance of the circuit to the passage of the current, and so, while retarding the action of the battery, adds to the amount of electrical energy converted into useless heat, and thus practically wasted. Porous cells must be kept clean; they are apt to become choked with insoluble deposits which add greatly to their resistance; and in the Daniell-battery nodules of copper frequently form upon their surfaces—these must be watched for and removed. When taking a battery to pieces after use, in order to replenish and re-fit it, it is well to soak the porous cells for some time in water, in order to extract the salts contained in them, and never to allow them to become dry until they are thus purified; otherwise they crack.

A fairly pure zinc should always be used; it may be in the condition of rolled sheet, but is more usually cast into the desired shape; in any case the whole surface must be thoroughly, but not excessively, amalgamated. As soon as bubbles of gas are observed to form upon the zinc, it should be carefully examined, as this is a certain sign that some more electro-negative substance is present, which may either be an impurity in the metal itself, when re-amalgamation will remedy the defect, or may be due, as in a Daniell-cell, to a metal deposited from the battery solutions, in which case it must be removed by cutting, scraping, or filing. Old or worn-out zincs should be saved, as they contain much mercury which is recoverable (see p. 320).

No metallic connection between the two plates of a battery, either within or outside the electrolyte, is permissible, because such a connection forms a short circuit, which stops current flowing in the external circuit. Absolute *insulation* (or electrical separation) between the two poles, and between the wires at all

intermediate points in the circuit, must be preserved; and the higher the electro-motive force of the battery, the greater is its power of overcoming resistance, and, therefore, the more carefully must the insulation be ensured. Dry wood, which is a poor insulator for electricity of very high potential, is a good insulator for ordinary battery currents; but when moistened with acid or with any of the battery solutions, it becomes capable of causing very considerable leakage of current.

The battery solutions require careful watching. Any tendency to crystallise or deposit solid matter upon the sides or bottom of the cell must be checked; it may be due to the use of too concentrated solutions at the outset, which is curable by the addition of water, or it may be that they have become saturated and worn out, when they, of course, require to be renewed. The quantities to be used in making up solutions should be weighed or measured; this occupies but little more time, and in the result is more reliable than rule-of-thumb work or mere guess measurements. If the solutions made up from a crystalline salt be turbid, they should be filtered through a blotting-paper cone inserted in a glass funnel (metallic funnels should not be used, as they are liable to be corroded by the fluids passing through them). A circular filter-paper is readily made to fit the funnel by folding it first across one diameter, as shown at A B in division 1 of fig. 13; then on folding it again at right angles, as at C D in No. 2, it has the form of No. 3; now on inserting the finger between the folds of the paper it may be opened out to the conical shape depicted in No. 4, and is thus ready to place in the funnel. If, however, the paper should not fit well into the cone of the latter, it may be refolded along the line, E F, as in No. 5, or along any other suitable line, and may thus be adapted to suit a funnel constructed with any angle at its apex. Strongly-acid solutions, such as those used in the bichromate battery, cannot be thus filtered, as they destroy the paper; but the solution of the potassium bichromate may be passed through a filter before adding the acid to it. If it be necessary to clear any solution which attacks paper, a plug of spun glass or of asbestos may be lightly rammed

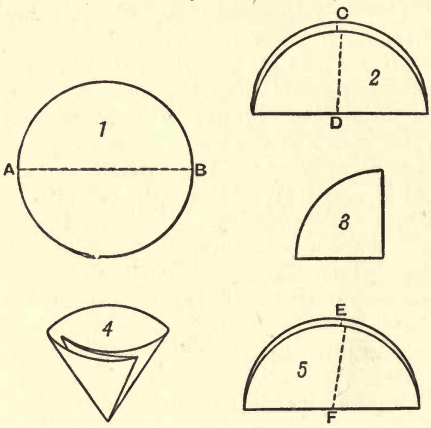


FIG. 13.—Mode of folding filter-paper.

into the apex of the funnel, and will form an efficient filtering medium in lieu of paper.

It is a good plan to place the battery in a chamber apart from, but adjoining, the depositing room, remembering that the greater the length of copper wire to be traversed by the current between the battery and the vats, the greater will be the loss of energy through the resistance of the circuit. By keeping it outside, however, the operator is not annoyed by the fumes or acid spray produced by certain forms of cell; and there is less danger of mistake or of accident in manipulating the battery and depositing solutions. If circumstances compel the double use of the same room, the battery should on no account be placed above or too near the electrolytic vats, but should be fitted up in a place easy of access, and preferably in a ventilated cupboard, as already explained. It will be found convenient to set up the battery in proximity to a sink provided with a good water supply, so that every facility may be afforded for cleansing the different parts when the work of the day is over. In charging two-fluid cells, no drops of the depolarising fluid must be permitted to enter the zinc compartment.

On the Fittings and Connections of a Battery.—It will be remembered that the electro-motive force of a voltaic cell is measured by the heat-energy produced by the combinations taking place within it; hence the size and shape of a cell may greatly modify the volume of current generated by it, but are without influence on the pressure or E.M.F. Other things being equal, the volume of any current may be increased by raising the electro-motive force or by lowering the total resistance of the circuit, as will be more fully explained in the next chapter (*infra*, p. 80); now, the internal resistance of a battery is increased, either by increasing the distance between the two plates, because the current has to traverse a longer distance through an inferior conductor; or by using smaller battery plates, because the cross section of the liquid conductor is thus reduced, and the current has to flow through a narrower channel. By increasing the resistance by either of these methods, the total current must be diminished while the electro-motive force is constant. Conversely, the use of larger plates (that is, of larger cells) or the nearer approach of the plates in the cell, while leaving the pressure unchanged, increases the volume of current by diminishing the resistance to its path; in other words, the output in amperes is increased, but the E.M.F. in volts is constant. With any given type of cell, then, it is possible to alter the current strength but not the electro-motive force; to effect the latter, changes in the chemical conditions are necessary.

Modes of Arranging Cells.—By the use of more than one cell the electro-motive force as well as the current-intensity may be altered at will. If two similar cells be joined, as shown in fig. 14,

copper to copper and zinc to zinc, the electro-motive force is no more altered than would be the pressure per square inch produced by placing two pails of water side by side upon a level floor in place of one; for both the cells are yielding the same pressure of electricity, and the mere coupling them *in parallel*, as it is termed, is only equivalent in effect to increasing the size of a single cell, which as we have seen is without influence on the E.M.F. But if the cells be disposed as in fig. 15, with the copper of one joined to the zinc of the next, and the free elements connected to the main circuit, the current generated in the first cell has to flow through the second, and that of the second through the first, in order to complete the whole circuit, with the result that the total electro-motive force is doubled. This arrangement, which is termed coupling *in series*, is exactly analogous to lifting the one pail of water above referred to and placing it upon the other, when the pressure per square inch on the floor is, of course, doubled. In parallel all the chemical energy of cells is placed upon the same level, and can, as it were, pump the electricity only to the same height; but in series the energy of one cell pumps the electricity to one level, and then that of the second cell starting from this point raises it as high again. And so in setting up any number of cells, if placed all in parallel, the E.M.F. is only that of one cell, but the internal resistance is reduced, as it would be in one large cell of the same type; while if all are arranged in series the E.M.F. will be raised in direct proportion to the number of cells

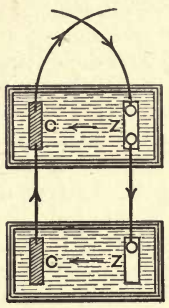


FIG. 14.—Two cells with like plates connected.

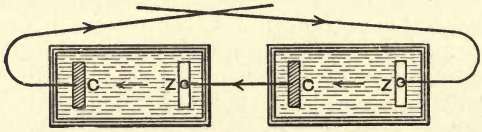


FIG. 15.—Two cells with unlike plates connected.

in use. Intermediate dispositions to suit special requirements may be made by grouping several cells together in parallel, and then uniting this group as a whole in series with other similar groups.

Let us with the aid of the diagram, fig. 16, consider the possible groupings of the six cells, A, B, C, D, E, F, each of which has, let us say, an electro-motive force of 1 volt and an internal resistance of 1 ohm. One such cell, short-circuited by a piece of metal having practically no resistance, would give a current of 1 ampere; for Ohm has enunciated the law that the current in a given circuit is proportional to its electro-motive force, and inversely

proportional to the total resistance, which is expressed by saying that the current is equal to the electro-motive force divided by the resistance, or more shortly by the formula $C = \frac{E}{R}$. In other words, *Ohm's* law may be written for any circuit as amperes $= \frac{\text{volts}}{\text{ohms}}$. When the six cells in fig. 16 are placed in parallel, as shown in position 1, all the coppers are united together, and as a group are opposed to all the zincs similarly united; the E.M.F. is unaltered, and still stands for the whole group at only 1 volt; but the resistance is divided by 6, because there are now six equal internal passages for the current instead of 1, and it is therefore $\frac{1}{6}$ ohm instead of 1 ohm; so that now the volume of the current flowing through a short circuit is $\frac{1\ (\text{volt})}{\frac{1}{6}\ (\text{ohm})}$ = 6 amperes. But if the six cells are joined in series, as in position 2, the E.M.F. is multiplied by 6, and is $6 \times 1 = 6$ volts, while the resistance is also multiplied by 6, and is now $6 \times 1 = 6$ ohms, because now the current has to flow through all the cells in series, and is, therefore, checked by the resistance of each; the current yielded on short-circuiting, is, therefore, $\frac{6\ (\text{volts})}{6\ (\text{ohms})}$ = 1 ampere, or the same as that of a single cell! (Note, however, that this is only on short-circuiting — *vide infra.*) Now, by joining the pairs A and B, C and D, E and F, each respectively in parallel, and connecting the groups A B, C D, and E F in series, as in position 3, the electro-motive force of each parallel pair is only 1 volt; but there are three pairs in series, so that the total electro-motive force is 3 volts; while the resistance of each pair is, of course, half that of one cell, or $\frac{1}{2}$ ohm, and the sum of the three resistances is $\frac{3}{2}$ ohm, so that the ultimate current on short circuit is $\frac{3}{\frac{3}{2}}$ = 2 amperes. And, finally, by arranging the cells, as in position 4, with the

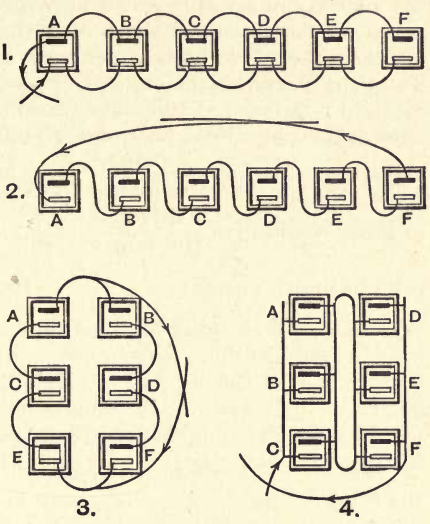


FIG. 16.—Modes of grouping six cells.

three cells A B C in parallel, and united to form a series with the group D E F also placed in parallel, the electro-motive force of each group is 1 volt and the total pressure is 2 volts, while the resistance of each is $\frac{1}{3}$ ohm and the total resistance $\frac{2}{3}$ ohm, so that the resultant current is $\frac{2}{\frac{2}{3}} = 3$ amperes. The current quoted in each case is, as we have stated, that produced when the external resistance is *nil*; but this condition never obtains in practice, and the anomaly of six cells giving only the same current as would be afforded by one is not met with when the external resistance is high, for then the value of the increased electro-motive force is felt. Thus the current from one of these cells acting through an external resistance of 100 ohms (making with the internal resistance of the cell a total resistance of $100 + 1 = 101$ ohms) gives an ampereage equal to $\frac{1 \text{ (volt)}}{101 \text{ (ohms)}} = \frac{1}{101}$ ampere, whereas the six cells in series would give $\frac{6 \text{ (volt)}}{106 \text{ (ohms)}} = \frac{6}{106}$ ampere; thus the current ratio in the two cases is $\frac{1}{101} : \frac{6}{106} = 106 : 606$; that is to say, there is now 5·72 times as much current produced from the six cells in series as there is from one alone. On the other hand, the arrangement of the six cells in parallel, so advantageous on short circuit, is little superior to a single cell when the current is to be passed through so high a resistance as 100 ohms. In this case the total resistance is $100 + \frac{1}{6}$ ohms; the total E.M.F. is 1 volt; the total current $\frac{1}{100 + \frac{1}{6}} = \frac{6}{601}$ ampere; and the ratio of efficiency of 1 cell to 6 in parallel is only $\frac{1}{101} : \frac{6}{601} = 601 : 606$, or 1 : 1·01 instead of 1 : 5·72 as when they are set up in series.

From this it will be seen that to obtain the highest effect from a number of cells, they must be united in series when the external resistance is very high, or in parallel when it is very low. The highest efficiency of all, as regards power, is obtained when the cells are so grouped that the internal resistance of the battery is equal to the external resistance of the circuit. But in electrolytic work there are other considerations to which we will now refer.

Although the coupling-up of cells in series may be desirable as sometimes affording the greatest possible current, such a disposition is by no means the most economical. A certain weight of zinc, in dissolving, produces a certain E.M.F., and in one cell yields a certain current capable of doing a certain quantum of work. And where one cell only is employed, a given weight of zinc, in dissolving, deposits electrolytically a definite equivalent weight of any metal in the plating-baths. But when cells are multiplied in series, an equal amount of zinc dissolves in *each*;

yet only the one equivalent of deposited metal is yielded, the energy developed in the dissolving of the remaining zincs being used in raising the electro-motive force—in pumping the current to a higher level. For example, in the case of the six cells in series in short circuit, the same ultimate current is produced as would be yielded by one cell; but in the former case six times the quantity of zinc is dissolved to produce the same effect. It is clear that economically, the best result is obtained when the smallest number of cells is placed in series which is compatible with the production of the minimum electro-motive force required for the electrolysis; and the disposition of the cells must be governed by the balance of the two considerations—time and economy. In any case when two or more groups of similar cells are coupled in parallel, each group should consist of the same number of cells.

Connecting Screws.—In making electrical connections between the different parts of the circuit, the use of brass binding-screws

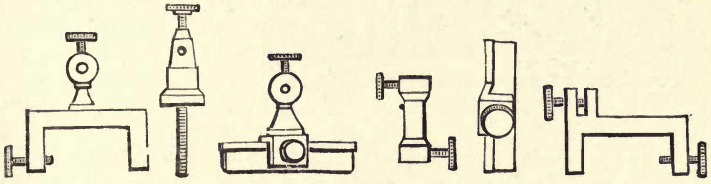


FIG. 17. FIG. 18. FIG. 19. FIG. 20. FIG. 21. FIG. 22.

Forms of binding-screws for batteries.

is advisable; these may be procured of any apparatus-maker and of any shape that may be required. Figs. 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, and 22 illustrate six of the more useful forms.

Figs. 17 to 19 represent the commoner connectors for uniting plates or bars to wires. Fig. 17 is employed in the Bunsen battery to join the carbon block to the terminal wire; but it is equally applicable to the uniting of any thick substance to a wire, the former being held by the screw at the side of the large clamp, the latter by that in the spherical portion above. Fig. 18 may be screwed into a metal block, and is commonly used to join the negative wire to the zinc of the Daniell-cell. Fig. 19 is employed as the terminal binding-screw in a Grove-cell, and will serve to connect any thin sheet to a wire. Fig. 20 illustrates the arrangement for uniting two wires end to end. Figs. 21 and 22 represent systems of coupling plates or blocks, the former as applied to two thin sheets, the latter to a thick block with a thin plate. Other forms may, of course, be devised to suit special requirements, but these will answer most of the purposes to which they may be put.

Switch-Boards.—Often for practical purposes, but for experimental work more especially, it is desirable to have at hand a

rapid method of altering the arrangement of a group of battery cells, so that any desired combination in series and parallel may be obtained. The constant alteration of battery connections is tedious and clumsy; while a switch-board used by Professor Silvanus Thompson is at once simple and efficacious. This instrument is made with a series of binding-screws, and of accurately-ground brass plugs fitting into cavities between adjacent brass blocks, such as those employed in the manufacture of resistance-coils for electrical measurement. Fig. 23 represents a modification of Thompson's switch-board; it is precisely the same as the other in principle, but is of cheaper construction, and may be made by any carpenter. A is a plan, and B a sectional elevation of the board. Two parallel strips of brass plate, p and n, are let into the surface of a varnished board, and are connected each with a terminal binding-screw at the end (+ and −). At even distances along the surface of each brass rod is a series of upright split brass tubes, as at s', s' in the section B; the tubes on p being spaced midway between those on n, as shown. Along the lines, P and N, are similar rows of upright split tubes, s, s, each of which is connected by metal wire, with a corresponding horizontal split brass tube, s'', s'', as at a, b, c, a', b', c', etc. The connection is made as shown in the figure, B; every pair of split tubes, s' and s'', must be perfectly insulated from every other pair, and from the series, p and n; there is, therefore, no brass rod running along the lines, P and N. The upright tubes on the row P correspond exactly to those in the row p; those in N to the others in n; and the space between any corresponding tubes, s and s', and also the diagonal space between s of row P and s of row N, must be equal in every case to those between the tubes on rows p and n. Twelve U-shaped pieces of brass rod, h, h, are prepared of such size that they fit with each limb into one of any adjacent pair of vertical split tubes (the object of the splitting is to give sufficient spring to ensure a tight fit, and therefore good contact); a like number of short straight brass rods are prepared for the horizontal tubes, s'', s''. The necessity for even spacing of the tubes is evident, if the handles, h, h, are to be interchangeable.

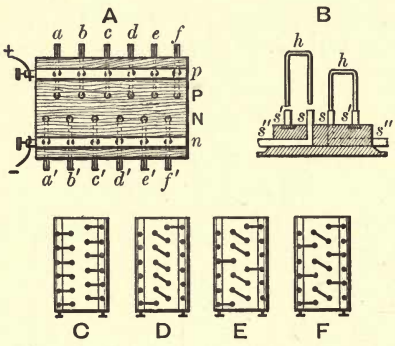


FIG. 23.—Thompson's switch, modified.

Each cell of the battery is now connected by a wire to the apparatus, the positive (copper) pole of the first to the s'' tube,

marked *a*, the negative (zinc) pole to that marked *a'*; the second is similarly attached to *b* and *b'*, the third to *c* and *c'*, and so on, taking care that the positive poles are all connected to one side, the negative to the other, and that the two poles of every cell are attached to corresponding tubes (*a* and *a'*; *b* and *b'*; etc.). The battery wires may be soldered, each to one of the above-mentioned short straight brass rods, to be inserted in horizontal split tubes. Supposing six cells to be thus connected up, no current can flow even if the terminal wires marked '+' and '−' are joined, because each of the tubes, *s*, *s*, is isolated; but by inserting the handles, *h*, *h*, in a suitable manner, the various connections are made in any required fashion, and the current passes through the circuit from the terminal + to that denoted by −.

By connecting every *s* in the P line with the corresponding *s'* in the *p* line, and similarly those in the N row with the others in *n*, the positive pole of every cell is placed in direct contact with the brass strip *p*, the negative with the strip *n*, so that all the cells are in parallel, and can discharge thus through the circuit. This arrangement is shown diagrammatically in plan C. But if only the positive wire of cell *a* is placed in connection with *p*, and only the negative wire of *f* with *n*, and the inner lines of tubes are joined-up diagonally (*a* of line P with *b'* of N; *b* of P with *c'* of N; and so on), the whole six cells are in series, as represented in diagram D; because the copper pole of the first is connected to the outer circuit, while the zinc pole is joined to the copper pole of the next, and so on until the zinc pole of the last is free and is united to the wire of the outer circuit. Diagram E shows the cells, *a*, *b*, and *c*, in series connected in parallel with *d*, *e*, *f*, also in series. Diagram F shows each pair, *a* and *b*, *c* and *d*, *e* and *f*, in series, but the three couples in parallel. Thus, diagrams C, D, E and F illustrate respectively the four possible methods of combining 6 cells, all in parallel; all in series; two parallel groups of 3 cells in series; and three parallel groups of 2 cells in series; and these connections may be altered at will in a few seconds.

A similar board can be made more simply by taking a piece of board, cutting troughs, closed at each end, in place of the brass strips, and cups or holes in place of the split tubes, *s*, *s'*. The main terminals are run into the troughs, and the cell terminals through the board from underneath into the cups. Mercury is then run into the troughs and cups, and connections are made by dropping copper bridge pieces, similar to *h*, into the mercury when desired.

Thermo-Electric Batteries.

The fact, already alluded to in the introductory chapter, that a compound bar, made up by soldering or jointing two unlike metal strips end to end, is capable of producing an electric

current when the junction is alone heated, renders possible the direct conversion of heat into electrical energy. Instruments used to effect this change are termed *thermopiles* or *thermo-electric batteries.* They are simple, but they are not used to any large extent, partly because they are wasteful and partly because they are not very permanent.

Thermo-Electric Series.—Any two metal bars joined as in fig. 24 will give a current always in the same direction when the point of union is heated, or in the opposite direction when it is cooled, more than the rest of the bars. In respect of their behaviour when thus treated the various metals behave very differently, and may be arranged in a thermo-electric series similar to that indicative of their electro-chemical relations. Any single pair of metals gives a constant electro-motive force so long as the difference between the temperature of the junction and that of the remainder of the circuit is constant; and, moreover, in many instances the E.M.F. produced is nearly proportional to this difference in temperature. The actual electro-motive force of any pair of metals is extremely minute compared with that of a galvanic battery, so that a large number of couples must be used to produce an equal effect.

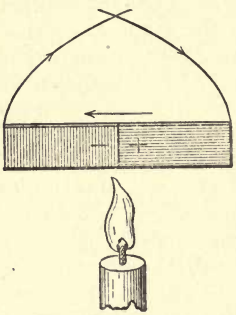


FIG. 24.—Simple thermopile.

In the following table are grouped some of the principal metals with the electro-motive force produced by heating a single couple—made by heating them respectively at their juncture with metallic lead—to a temperature 1° C. higher than the rest of the circuit. The E.M.F. is given not in volts but in *micro-volts* (1 micro-volt is the one-millionth part of 1 volt). In harmony with the electro-chemical system of nomenclature, which designates that metal electro-positive from which the current starts to pass through the liquid in the voltaic cell, a substance is said to be thermo-electro-positive to another when the current passes from it to the second through the heated juncture. In the table, lead is taken as the basis for comparing the others, so that all the metals standing above lead are marked with the + sign, which indicates that the current would flow from them to the lead throught the joint, while with the negative elements the current starts from the lead. The numbers cannot be accepted as absolutely accurate, or universally applicable, because the behaviour of metals in respect to these currents is greatly affected by the presence of impurities, and because the relations between them are disturbed, and in some cases reversed, at different temperatures. The letters M, B refer to Matthiessen and Becquerel, from whose results these numbers are taken.

TABLE V.—Showing the Thermo-electro-motive Force of Various Elements in Relation to Lead, Expressed in Micro-Volts per Degree Centigrade.

Metal.	Observer.	Micro-Volts.
Bismuth, pressed wire	M	+ 89 to 97
Bismuth, crystals	M	+ 65 to 45
Bismuth, ordinary	B	+ 40
Bismuth-Antimony Alloy (10 : 1)	B	+ 64·5
Cobalt	B & M	+ 22
Nickel	B	+ 15·5
German Silver	B M	+ 11·6
Palladium	B	+ 6·8
Mercury	B	+ 3·2
Lead	...	Zero
Tin, pure pressed wire	M	− 0·1
Tin, ordinary	B	− 0·4
Copper, commercial	M	− 0·1
Platinum	B M	− 0·9
Gold	M	− 1·2
Cadmium	B	− 2·4
Antimony, pure pressed wire	M	− 2·8
Antimony, commercial pressed wire	M	− 6·0
Antimony, ordinary	B	− 17·1
Antimony, crystals	M	− 22·6 to 26·4
Silver	M	− 3·0
Zinc	M	− 3·7
Copper, electrolytic	M	− 3·8
Arsenic	M	− 13·6
Iron, pianoforte wire	M	− 22·6
Red phosphorus	M	− 29·7
Antimony-Zinc Alloy (2 : 1)	B	− 99·0
Copper sulphide	B	− 196·7
Antimony-Cadmium Alloy (1 : 1)	B	− 231·9
Tellurium	M	− 502
Selenium	B	− 807

Thus, for example, a cobalt-lead junction might be expected to give an E.M.F. of 22 micro-volts for each degree through which the junction was superheated; and similarly a lead-iron junction would give almost the same E.M.F., but the current would flow in the opposite direction. To determine from these figures the difference of potential between any other pair of metals, it is only necessary to deduct the stated E.M.F. of the more negative metal from that of the other, for example:—(1) When both metals are positive: a nickel-palladium pair should give a current of $15{\cdot}5 - 6{\cdot}8 = 8{\cdot}7$ micro-volts per degree, passing from nickel to palladium through the junction; (2) when one is positive and the other negative: a nickel-zinc junction should give $15{\cdot}5 - (-3{\cdot}7) = 15{\cdot}5 + 3{\cdot}7 = 19{\cdot}2$ micro-volts, flowing from nickel to zinc; and (3) when both are negative: a platinum-silver couple should show $-0{\cdot}9 - (-3{\cdot}0) = 3{\cdot}0 - 0{\cdot}9 = 2{\cdot}1$ micro-

volts, the current starting from the platinum. If the junction be superheated 100° instead of 1°, these numbers must of course be multiplied by 100; thus the nickel-zinc pair should yield an E.M.F. of 1920 micro-volts or 0·001920 volt, so that it would require 521 of these couples heated to 100° C. to give the E.M.F. equal to that of a single Daniell-cell. Some authors arrange the metals in the opposite sense, designating those negative which are here termed positive and *vice versa*.

Neutral Point.—A peculiarity of these couples has already been mentioned, namely, that the E.M.F.'s often vary disproportionately to the rise of temperature. It may so happen that a

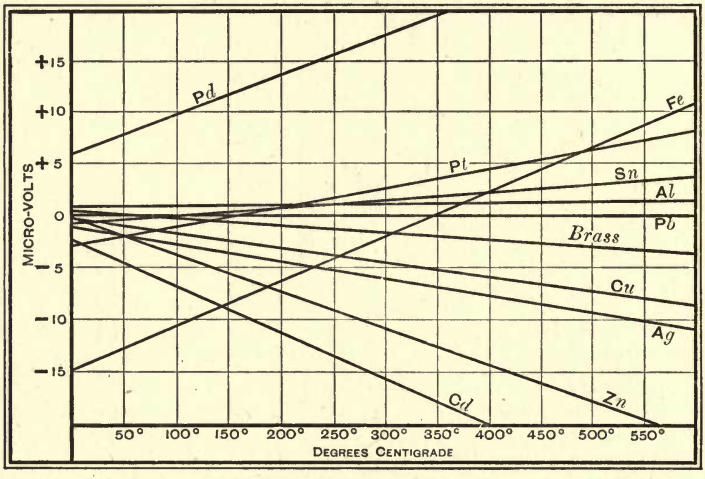


FIG. 25.—Thermal E.M.F. of metals, per degree C., or thermo-electric powers at different temperatures.

pair of metals giving a very low E.M.F. per degree at ordinary temperatures will give a comparatively high E.M.F. at high temperatures, while another couple which started well may gradually fall off as heat is applied, until at a certain temperature (varying with the metals, and known as the *neutral point*) there is no E.M.F., and, therefore, no current; yet, on continuing the application of heat, an E.M.F. is again set up, but it now tends to drive the current in the reverse direction. The behaviour of metals in this respect is best seen by reference to fig. 25. Lead is here adopted as the standard of comparison, because, unlike most other metals, hot lead in contact with cold lead produces no difference of potential. To ascertain from this table the electromotive force produced by a difference of 1° C. between the hot and cold junctions at any given temperature of the circuit as a whole, it is only necessary to find the vertical line corresponding

to the required temperature, and then, noting the points at which the sloping lines representing the two metals cross it, to read off the difference in micro-volts between them with the aid of the scale on the left-hand margin. Thus, for example, an increase in temperature from 0° to 1° in the warmer junction of an iron-copper couple, the rest of the circuit being at 0°, gives an electro-motive force of $-1-(-15)=14$ micro-volts, but a similar rise from 100° to 101°, the circuit being at 100°, only gives $-2-(-11)=9$ micro-volts, and from 200° to 201° only $-3-(-6)=3$ micro-volts, in all these cases the current flowing from copper to iron through the juncture. But a rise of temperature from 260° to 261° produces no current, this being the neutral point of these two metals (their respective lines cross here), while if the two junctions of the copper-iron pair were at the temperatures of 350° and 351°, there would again be an E.M.F. of $0-(-5)=5$ micro-volts, but the current would now be flowing from iron to copper. With some pairs of metals there is practically no neutral point; palladium and iron give a constant rise in potential for each increment of temperature, while with others the neutral point is below the zero on the Centigrade scale, so that the higher the temperature to which the one joint is heated, the greater the efficiency of the pair — *e.g.*, palladium and cadmium.

Further, the total E.M.F. of a circuit may be readily calculated from this diagram. Of course, if the rise in potential were strictly proportional to the increase in temperature, it would be only necessary to discover the difference in temperature between the two junctions of the metal and multiply it by the number of micro-volts stated per degree, but such a procedure would evidently give very misleading results. To estimate the total E.M.F. from the table, find the diagonal lines representing the two metals, ascertain the *mean* temperature of the two junctions of the couple, and mark the points at which the two diagonal lines respectively cross the vertical line representing the mean temperature, then multiply the number of micro-volts between these two points by the number of degrees difference between the two temperatures, and the result is the required E.M.F. Thus, it may be required to know the actual E.M.F. of an iron-copper couple of which one junction is at 200° C., the other at 100° C. The mean temperature is 150° C., and the difference of potential between the metals at this point is (per degree) $-2{\cdot}5-(-8{\cdot}5)=6$ micro-volts. The required E.M.F. is, therefore, $6\times(200-100)=600$ micro-volts or 0·0006 volt.

Another most important point, clearly brought out by this diagram, is that when the neutral point of any pair of metals is above zero Centigrade, not only does an increase of temperature yield no proportionate return in the value of the E.M.F., but as soon as the temperature of the hot end has exceeded that of the neutral

point, there is an actual decrease of current, because the E.M.F.'s at the two junctions are tending in opposite directions. A single instance—that of lead and iron—will serve both to illustrate and explain this phenomenon. The neutral point of these two bodies is approximately 350° C.

TABLE VI.—Illustrating the Total E.M.F. Produced by an Iron-and-Lead Couple at Different Temperatures.

Temperature.		Total Micro-Volts produced under these conditions.	Increase of Total E.M.F. per 100°.
At Cool Junction.	At Hot Junction.		
Centigrade.	Centigrade.		Micro-Volts.
0°	100°	12·8 × 100 = 1280	1280
0°	200°	10·7 × 200 = 2140	860
0°	300°	8·6 × 300 = 2580	440
0°	350°	7·5 × 350 = 2625	45 (per 50°)
0°	400°	6·4 × 400 = 2560	− 65 (per 50°)
0°	500°	4·3 × 500 = 2150	− 410
0°	600°	2·1 × 600 = 1260	− 890
0°	700°	0 × 700 = 0	− 1260

The maximum current is thus produced at 350°, thence it decreases to zero at 700°, and would then begin to increase again, but in an inverse direction. The important bearing of this inversion upon the choice of couples for the production of thermo-electric currents and on the temperature to which they should be submitted is at once evident.

Mode of Arranging Thermo Couples.—A variety of thermo-piles has been proposed, differing in the metals employed, in the construction, and in the manner of applying the heat. The essentials are that the two metals shall be as far apart in the thermo-electric series as possible, that there shall be no chemical or physical reason (too great fusibility or oxidisability) against the use of either, and that they shall be conveniently arranged so that the one point of juncture may be superheated as compared with the other. The simplest method of arranging a series of couples, so necessary where each pair produces but an infinitesimal electro-motive force, is that shown in fig. 26. The rules which apply to the fitting up of galvanic batteries in parallel or in series hold good equally with thermo-electric batteries.

Clamond's Thermopile.—A thermopile at one time popular was that of *Clamond*, in which metallic iron is united to an alloy of antimony and zinc (combined preferably in the ratio of their atomic weights, viz. :—122 : 65 or nearly 2 : 1). Fig. 27 shows the arrangement of ten couples in circular form : strips of tinplate, P, are generally employed for the iron element, and good contact

between the two metals is ensured by bending the strip into a narrow loop at one end, placing this portion in a mould, and pouring the melted alloy around it, so that it is actually embedded in the casting; thin plates of mica are inserted externally between the metals to insulate them at all except the desired points of contact. Each block, N, may be about $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches long by $\frac{3}{4}$ inch thick, but the dimensions may, of course, be greatly varied; they are arranged radially with a central space, H, between them through which the heat is applied to the junctions, J. The different pairs are arranged in series by bending the free end of each tin-plate strip and soldering it to the external edge of the adjoining block next in regular succession, a break, B, being left at one point by which connection with the external circuit is made.

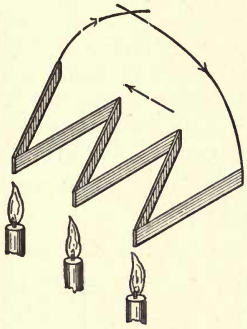


Fig. 26.—Simple thermo-electric couples.

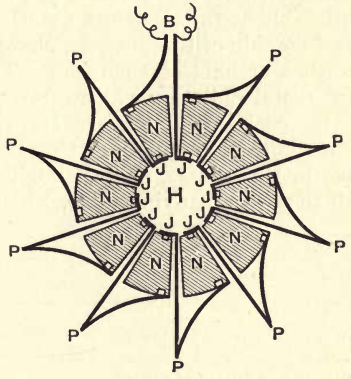


Fig. 27.—Ten thermo-electric couples in circular form (Clamond's pile).

By this arrangement the points to be heated are brought to a central focus, while the cool junctures are placed at the outside, where they are most free to radiate away all excess of heat conducted through the metal blocks. Generally there are ten pairs in the circle, and several tiers of similar circles are piled one upon another, but insulated from each other by a layer of cement composed of powdered asbestos moistened with a solution of potassium silicate. All the pairs in each row are in series, and each tier is placed in series with the preceding one, so that the resulting electro-motive force of a pile of ten tiers of ten blocks each would be 100 times that of a single pair. The source of heat is usually coal-gas, which is burned at jets from a perforated earthenware tube placed upright in the central cavity. In some forms of this pile the top of the cavity is closed, and a thin sheet-iron tube is inserted between the centre pipe and the metal couples, leaving a space above, so that the products of combustion are led down through the annular space outside the iron lining, and are passed

away through a flue at the bottom, the object being the economy of a greater proportion of the heat from the burning gas. Charcoal or coke may be substituted for coal-gas when necessary. A battery of 6000 pairs, arranged in series and heated by coke, has been found to give an electro-motive force of 109 volts (equal to 100 Daniell-cells) with a total internal resistance of 15½ ohms. This description illustrates the principles on which a practical thermopile depends; but, owing to the fact that more convenient sources of electrical energy are easily obtainable, the Clamond pile has gone completely out of use, and this remark applies also to Noé's pile.

Gülcher's Thermopile.—The only thermopile that is at present obtainable, as far as the author is aware, is that due to Gülcher. As seen in fig. 28, it consists of two rows of small bunsen burners (noticeable at the right-hand end) above which are the elements, on either side of the burners, clamped together by screws bearing against a bracket at each end. The elements are supported by sheet metal radiators which serve to keep down the temperature of the cool junctions. On the right-hand side is seen the gas connection for supplying the burners. These thermopiles are made in three sizes, and their characteristics vary in accordance with the accompanying table, which is due to the makers:—

Size.		1	2	3
No. of elements . .		26	50	66
E.M.F.	Volts	1½	3	4
Intensity of current (when the external resistance is equal to the internal one)	Amperes	3	3	3
Internal resistance . .	Ohms	·25	·50	·65
Approx. consumption of gas per hour, about . .	Cubic feet	2·6	4·9	6·4
Price . .		£6 7 6	£12 0 0	£14 15 0

But even at best the thermopile is very wasteful, and it is questionable whether more than 1 per cent. of the heat-energy expended is recovered in the form of electricity; indeed, Fischer found by experiments, conducted in 1882, that only 0·3 to 0·5 per cent. was utilised. Nevertheless, the study of the subject is very fascinating, because there is a direct conversion of heat into electricity; and, although at present an almost prohibitive loss is involved, increase of knowledge may be attended by the production of a higher efficiency; the simplicity and convenience of the arrangement would probably then ensure to it a wide applica-

tion as a source of electricity for electro-metallurgical purposes where only a small amount of power was required.

The Dynamo.

In the generation of electric energy the choice lies between the oxidation or solution of zinc in a battery, and the oxidation of coal, gas or oil, with the conversion of chemical energy first into mechanical energy, and thence by dynamo-electric machinery into electricity; but here also a large percentage of loss is incurred in the first stage of the conversion, owing to the waste which is inevitable even in the best constructed steam-, gas- or

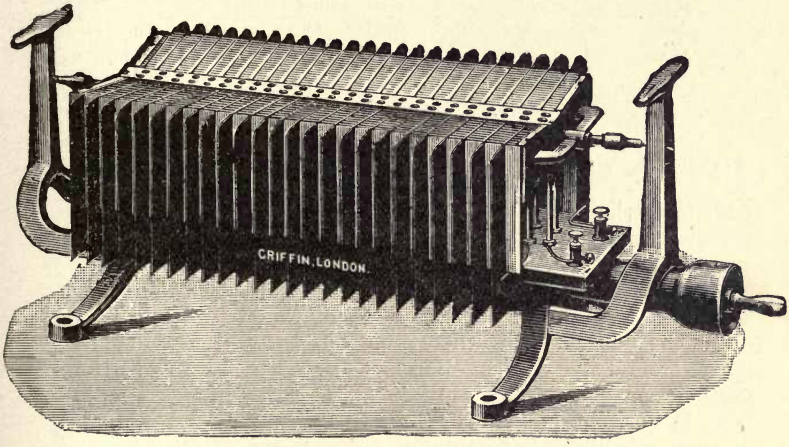


Fig. 28.—Gülcher's thermopile.

oil-engine. Where, however, a steady and constant water-supply is available for actuating water-wheels or turbines, the dynamo is an economical machine, which may convert a very large proportion of an otherwise waste form of energy into useful electricity.

The prime phenomenon on which the dynamo depends is the production of electro-motive force in electric circuits which are caused to move in a magnetic field.

Principle of the Dynamo.—It is customary to regard the space in the neighbourhood of a magnet as being filled with magnetic lines of force. Such lines are not tangible; they are but a conception, due to Faraday, but nevertheless an extremely useful conception. If iron filings are sprinkled on a sheet of paper and this is laid on a bar magnet, the paper being then tapped lightly, the filings will arrange themselves in curved lines from pole to pole, and at once indicate the magnetic lines of force as shown

in fig. 29. This does not mean that there is necessarily a line of force to each line of filings, but the filings show the general curvature that such lines would take, and in order to obtain a mental picture of what is going on we consider the space to be filled with such lines, crowded together where the field is strong, and more or less separated where the field is weak.

Now, it was found by Faraday that when a coil of wire was moved or rotated in a magnetic field so as to cut the lines of force, and so that the number of lines embraced by the coil varied, an E.M.F. was produced in the coil. The direction of the E.M.F. depends on the direction of the field and on the direction of motion of the coil. Suppose now that we have a rectangular coil of wire A B C D (fig. 30) between two magnet poles, a north pole N and a south pole S. The usual conception is that the magnetic lines pass from the north pole across to the south pole (in this case we may say practically straight across). Now, if the coil is vertical it will embrace a maximum number of lines, but a very slight movement either way round the axis E F will not cause any lines to be cut; there will therefore be no E.M.F. produced by motion just where the coil is vertical. But as it moves round it will cut lines more and more rapidly for a given speed of rotation, until it becomes horizontal (when the rate of cutting will be a maximum), and will then cut them less rapidly until a vertical position is again reached after half a revolution. In this particular case, then, the E.M.F. becomes zero twice every revolution, and has maximum values twice every revolution, at times midway between the times of zero values. It must be remarked, however, that the E.M.F. is not in the same direction during both the half-revolutions; thus if it is in the direction from A to B during one half-revolution, it will have the direction B to A during the next half-revolution. Consequently the E.M.F. reverses twice every revolution and is known as an *alternating* E.M.F., and would give rise to an alternating current in any circuit connected to the coil. Since alternating currents cannot be used in ordinary electrolysis, this alternating E.M.F. in the dynamo is converted into a *continuous* E.M.F. by a device called a *commutator* which we shall now describe briefly in its

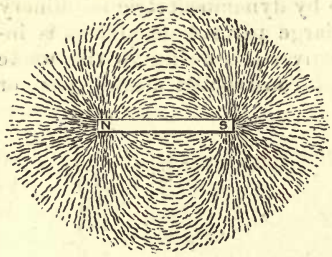


FIG. 29.—Bar-magnet lines of force.

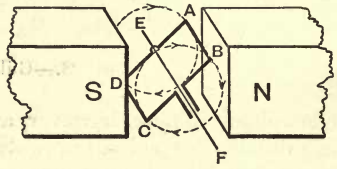


FIG. 30.—Production of E.M.F. in magnetic field.

most elementary form. The commutator for a single coil, C D E F, is arranged as shown in fig. 31, and consists of a metal tube split into two equal parts lengthways, the two halves being fastened around a small cylinder, but well insulated from one another; one half is attached to one end of the loop wire, the second half to the other. Copper strips or *brushes*, B B′, are fixed to the frame of the dynamo, so that they press lightly upon the split cylinder at points diametrically opposite to one another; as the tube is divided equally, and as the brushes are parallel, it follows that whatever the position of the cylinder, both brushes are never in contact with the same section simultaneously. To the brushes are fastened the wires connecting with the external circuit, so that any current generated in the coil flows first to one section of the split tube, thence to the brush in contact with it, and so around the outer circuit to the other brush, then through the second section of the tube to the other end of the coil of wire, and so completes the circuit. Now, provided the rotation of the coil around its axis, A A, be always in the same direction, and both the brushes and the breaks in the commutator tube be at the highest and lowest points in the circle, at the moment when the reversal of current takes place, the current in the main circuit flows continually in the same direction; because the brushes come in contact with different sections of the commutator directly the current is reversed, and the same brush is always connected with the descending side of the coil, the other brush always with the ascending portion, no matter whether it be C D or E F. Supposing, for example, the coil is rotating from left to right as indicated, C D is now descending and brush B is touching section G, and the direction of current may be supposed to be (C-D-E-F-H)-B′-circuit-B-(G-C), etc.; this direction continues until a half-revolution is completed and the side E F is uppermost; now as E F begins to descend, the current tends to flow in the coil in the reverse direction, thus, F E D C; but at this instant the commutator also shifts, and section G is now in contact with the brush B′ (instead of with B) and H with B; now, then, the current flows through the circuit in the direction (F-E-D-C-G)-B′-circuit-B-(H-F), etc., and so on. It is very clear, then, that in spite of alterations in direction of the current in the coil, the current invariably flows from the brush B′ to the outer circuit, and from the outer circuit through the brush B, to whichever section of the commutator happens to be touching it;

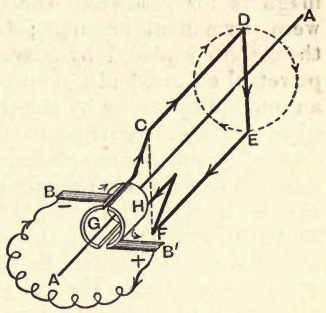


FIG. 31.—Commutator for a single coil.

B′ is, therefore, as much the positive pole of the system we have been describing as the binding-screw attached to the platinum plate is the positive pole of the Grove-battery.

Parts of a Dynamo.—In the actual dynamo the number of these coils is multiplied, and the methods of arranging them various, the whole system being known as the *armature*. Thus, in electric generators of this type, there are two main parts, the *field-magnet* and the *armature* (including the commutator); and the different types of machine are made by varying the construction of one or both of these. It should be noted here that the electro-motive force of a dynamo may be raised (1) by increasing the number of lines of force cut by the rotating rings (*i.e.*, by using a stronger magnet), (2) by increasing the number of coils in the armature, or (3) by increasing the speed of its rotation.

Types of Dynamo.—In the earliest types of dynamo the magnets for producing the field in which the armature rotates were permanent magnets; but as the dynamo was developed these were replaced by electro-magnets in order to obtain more powerful effects, and the current for these was supplied either by an outside source or by the dynamo itself. As to which method of supplying the current is the better is a matter of convenience, depending on circumstances. If the current is supplied by the dynamo itself, there are two main methods in which the current may be used. (1) The whole of the current passing through the armature and through the external circuit may also be passed round the field magnets, so that the greater the current required the greater also is the magnetic field produced. Consequently the E.M.F. of such a dynamo varies with the current that is taken from it. For this and other reasons *series* dynamos, as they are termed, are unsuitable for electrolytic work. (2) The other method is to let the dynamo supply current to the field circuit as though it were an external circuit in parallel with any other circuit to which we wish to supply current. The field circuit is simply connected up to the two brushes, and such a machine is said to be a *shunt* dynamo. This kind of dynamo gives a more or less constant E.M F., whatever the load, any drop in the E.M.F. when the current required is heavy being generally compensated by a 'field regulator' which varies the resistance in the field circuit. Dynamos of this kind are therefore suitable for electrolytic work, and they are always used for this purpose.

The usual characteristic of dynamos for electro-metallurgical work is that they are required to give large currents at low pressures as compared with dynamos for electric light and power; for example, hundreds or thousands of amperes may be required at pressures ranging from quite a low figure, say 10 volts, up to 200 volts or more, the pressure depending entirely on the purpose for which current is required and whether vats can be conveniently run in series. Fig. 32 illustrates an interesting example,

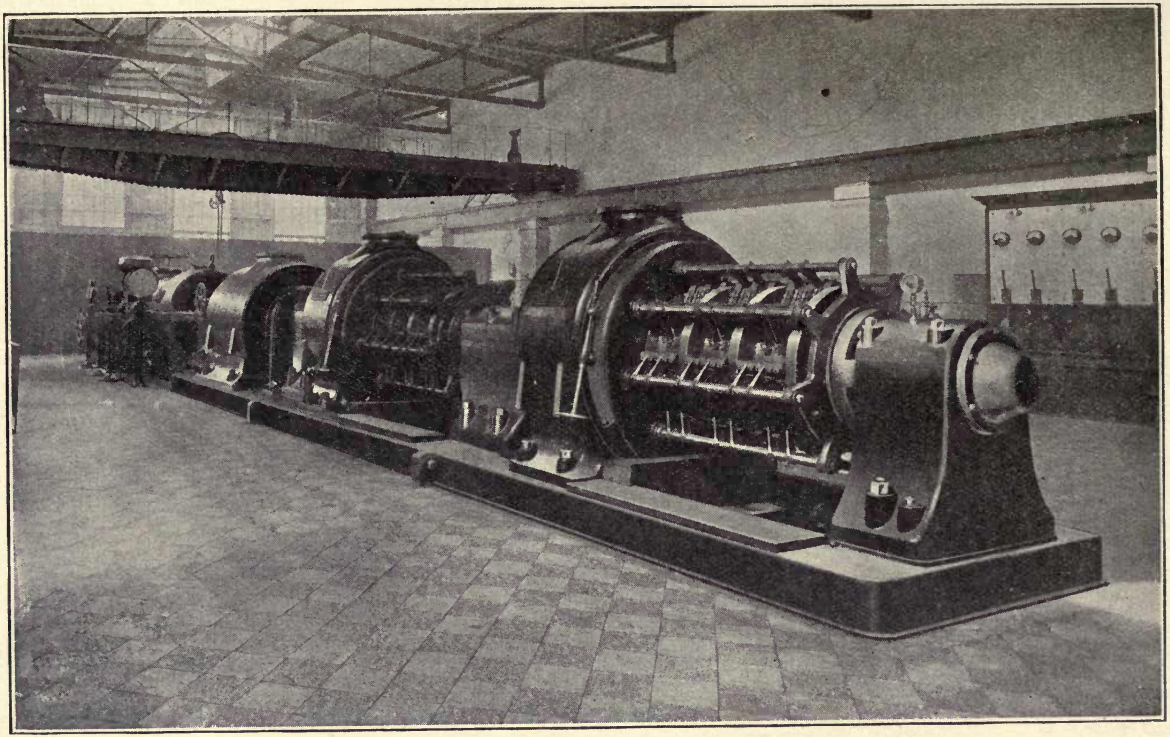


FIG. 32.—1000-kilowatt three-phase generator and two 540-kilowatt 120-volt continuous current generators, coupled to a steam turbine. (Brown, Boveri & Co.)

and refers to a turbine set made by Messrs Brown, Boveri & Co. for the Austrian Chemical and Metallurgical Company in Aussig, Bohemia. It is a steam turbine, and drives a 1000-kilowatt three-phase generator, as well as two generators for electrolytic work. The two latter are seen more particularly in the illustration; they are each of 540 kilowatts at 120 volts and thus give

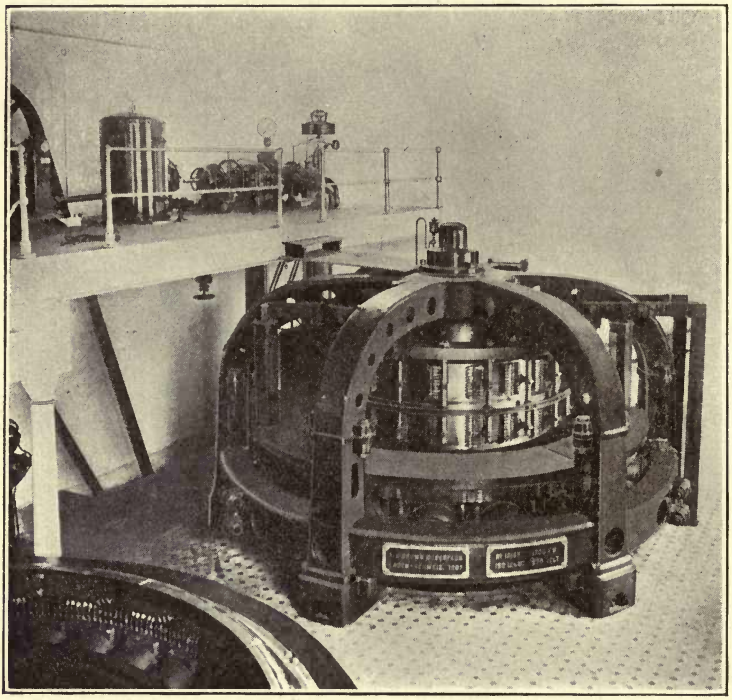


FIG. 33.—Water-driven electrolytic generator giving 1700 kilowatts at 220 volts. (Brown, Boveri & Co.)

4500 amperes. It will be noticed that the brush gear is very heavy so as to collect this relatively large current without sparking or undue heating. In fig. 33 is illustrated a dynamo supplied by the same firm to the Kellner Partington Paper Pulp Company of Norway. This machine gives 1700 kilowatts at 220 volts, which is equivalent to 7700 amperes. It is coupled to a vertical water turbine and is proportionately much more massive than the other machine, because it runs at 150 revolutions per minute as compared with 1260 revolutions in the case of the steam turbine set just mentioned.

We do not propose to go further into the details of dynamos, because it is impossible to treat the subject sufficiently in a few pages to serve any useful purpose; the reader is therefore referred to the many treatises now obtainable on dynamo-electric machinery, or text-books on electrical engineering, if he desires further information.

Instructions as to the Management of Dynamos.—In itself the dynamo is a simple machine and should give but little trouble or difficulty, provided that a due amount of attention is paid to its installation and superintendence. It should be firmly set on good level foundations, in a position where it is not likely to be exposed to contact with any of the liquids employed in the shops, nor to acid fumes or dust. It is best located in a dry place, enclosed in a box of wood or glass which may be easily removed for purposes of inspection, and which has openings cut in its side to provide for the passage of the engine belt or for the shaft of the pulley; it should be in a room adjoining the plating-room, but as near as possible to the vats, in order to minimise the loss of energy due to the resistance of the wires. If erected in the shop, it must be in a place removed from splashings, and must be constantly examined. It must be kept scrupulously clean in every part; the bearings must always be well lubricated with good oil, as the speed of shaft rotation is usually very high (500 to 1000 revolutions per minute), but excess of oil, and especially leakage of oil into the armature or on to the commutator and brushes, must be rigidly guarded against. By the action of internal currents, as well as by friction, the machine is liable to become overheated, and may even be seriously damaged through the burning of the insulating material upon the wires; the temperature of the fixed portions should, therefore, be ascertained while current is being generated by feeling them carefully with the hand. With fair usage the only part needing special attention is the commutator or collector. The brushes must be perfectly flat; if they are of copper gauze, when they become ragged or turned up at the tips they should be clamped in a wooden holder and filed carefully; they should rest with a gentle pressure upon the commutator; insufficient pressure combined with an uneven commutator will induce sparking at the brushes, which causes much wear and tear of the parts, whilst excessive friction will wear away the collecting bars unevenly and ruin the brushes, at the same time producing more or less copper dust. The brushes should also touch the commutator at opposite ends of a diameter; they are generally set on a frame or 'rocker' by which they are maintained exactly opposite to one another, and by which they may be kept in any desired position. Should the dynamo spark at the commutator, the position of the brushes may be altered backwards or forwards by shifting the rocker until a neutral or sparkless position for the

brushes is found; this position is liable to vary according to the current taken from the dynamo. The commutator may be very slightly greased before commencing the day's work, preferably with a little grease or vaseline applied with the finger; cloth or cotton should not be used, as fibres may be left behind, and it is essential that no foreign substance find its way to this portion of the machine. Oil must never be applied in any quantity, and the grease only in very minute proportions (they add to the resistance), while black lead or mercury, which some operators have applied to the surfaces, must be avoided altogether, as the latter gradually amalgamates the copper and renders it very brittle, while the former gives a slightly conductive film to the insulating space between the bars of the collecting ring, and so impairs the electrical efficiency of the machines. The brushes must never be lifted out of contact while the dynamo is running and the current passing; the insulation may be, and the commutator certainly will be, damaged by the sparking caused by such treatment, which, moreover, may be a source of danger if the machine is provided with but a single pair of brushes. If there are several pairs of brushes a single brush may be removed or replaced by a skilled attendant without difficulty. Irregularities in the commutator bars, or undue pressure, or sparking at the brushes will gradually wear the shaft to an oval or uneven shape; this fault should be watched for and rectified at once by turning in the lathe to true circular section; such a course should not, however, be necessary for several years.

The dynamo may be driven by any regular source of mechanical energy; either the steam-, gas-, hot air-, or petroleum-engine (or, of course, water-power) may be used, the only requirements being sufficiency of power and uniformity of speed. Frequently spare power is obtainable from an engine used for other purposes, and may be applied with advantage, unless great irregularities in speed are caused by frequent variations in the amount of power absorbed by the machinery to which it was originally adapted.

Accumulators or *Secondary Batteries*, which are so largely used in other branches of electrical engineering, may be also employed in electro-metallurgical installations; but, generally speaking, little benefit will be derived from their use.

Secondary Batteries.—The great advantage of the accumulator is that it converts the electrical energy of the dynamo, at times when it cannot be directly applied, into another form of energy (chemical) which may be, as it were, stored up until a more convenient moment has arrived for its re-conversion into electricity. Several kinds of secondary batteries have been brought before the public, but almost the only one in general requisition is that originated by Planté and afterwards modified by Faure and others. It consists of two lead plates opposed to

one another in dilute sulphuric acid. On passing a current through this constantly in the same direction, the anode plate, by which the current enters the solution, becomes superficially converted into lead peroxide (PbO_2) by the oxygen liberated at its surface, and this, being insoluble in sulphuric acid, remains *in situ*, the action penetrating deeper and deeper into the plate by proper treatment. The cathode is unaltered by the hydrogen, but in practice it consists largely of spongy lead. On the cessation of the current, two plates are opposed in the solution, one of metallic lead, the other practically of lead peroxide; on completing the circuit these act like a *primary* (or ordinary voltaic) battery, the clean lead plate (electro-positive) is superficially converted into sulphate, which, like the peroxide, is insoluble, while the peroxide (electro-negative) gives up its excess oxygen and becomes also converted into sulphate. When both peroxide and metal have attained to the same condition the action ceases, but on re-charging by a dynamo, the original arrangement is restored, the sulphate at the anode taking up oxygen and becoming peroxide, that at the cathode being reduced to the state of metal by the hydrogen liberated upon it. It is thus rehabilitated and is ready for use again, and this cycle of changes may be repeated indefinitely. Now, instead of forming the cell from two clean plates, the positive and negative plates are generally coated with pastes of red lead and sulphuric acid and of litharge and sulphuric acid respectively; cavities are frequently made on the surface of the lead with the object of affording a larger surface, and, more particularly, of maintaining the oxide pastes in position. Plates thus prepared are quickly converted electrolytically into spongy lead and lead peroxide respectively on the surface, and do not require the frequent repetition and reversal of charging which is found necessary to ensure sufficient penetration of the oxide into the substance of the pure metallic sheets. In use, these cells are exactly analogous to ordinary batteries and obey the same laws as to generation and distribution of current —indeed, they are practically nothing but an unusual form of galvanic battery; but they should not be allowed to discharge themselves completely nor should they be subjected to unduly heavy currents, such as would occur if they became suddenly short-circuited. The electro-motive force of each cell is equal to about 2 volts.

Use of Public Electricity Supply.—Most towns have now a public electricity supply for lighting purposes and for power; but this supply is usually at a pressure of 200 volts or more, which is far too high for direct use in electrolytic vats, unless many are coupled in series, which, for plating purposes, is practically out of the question. Moreover, in many towns the current is alternating, and therefore useless to the electro-metallurgist. Such currents may, however, be readily utilised. For example,

if the current from the supply mains be continuous (not alternating) and at a pressure of 200 volts, it may be passed through a number of accumulator cells (say 80) joined up in series. The cells, being thus charged together, may be separated and used individually, so that a pressure of 2, 4, 6, 8 or more volts may be obtained for any purpose by using 1, 2, 3, 4 or more cells. Such a method, however, is not very desirable, because the cells are apt not to get uniform treatment and therefore some of them may deteriorate.

A simpler method than this may be used with advantage, and is applicable alike to continuous and alternate current systems; it depends on the fact that a dynamo when reversed becomes a motor; that is to say, if a current of electricity be sent through the brushes, and thus through the armature of a dynamo, the electrical energy will become re-converted into mechanical energy, and the armature will rotate and will act as a motor. Motors specially wound to suit any continuous or alternating current can be procured, and may be placed on the main town circuit, and used to drive an electro-plating dynamo by means of a belt; or the two dynamos (motor and generator) may be mounted on the same shaft, in which case the couple are frequently called a *motor generator*; or they may even be made, by special winding, to use the same field magnets, and are then practically one machine, often known as a *rotary converter*. With an arrangement such as any of the above, the current from the town supply mains may be converted into a current of low E.M.F., suitable for electro-plating, and of correspondingly greater volume. Except for the loss in conversion, the total watts remain the same, so that what is lost in volts is gained in amperes. It should be unnecessary to point out that a plating dynamo cannot be used as a motor on the town supply mains as it would have been made for too low a voltage.

CHAPTER IV.

GENERAL CONDITIONS TO BE OBSERVED IN ELECTRO-PLATING.

Absolute Cleanliness Essential.—In electro-metallurgical work there is one prime necessity which cannot be too often or too strongly insisted upon, and that is, absolute cleanliness in every particular. Neglect of cleanliness in the electric generator, and in the connections throughout, causes the current to be deficient and the resistance of the circuit to be increased; neglect of cleanliness in making up the baths introduces impurities into the solutions, and the character of the deposit suffers accordingly; neglect of cleanliness in preparing the articles to be plated for their plunge into the depositing-vat ensures an irregular and non-adhesive coating; neglect of cleanliness after the plating is accomplished is likely to cause rapid tarnishing or rusting of the deposit. In short, want of cleanliness is the cause to which the largest proportion of electrotypers' and platers' troubles may be referred. And in respect of non-adhesiveness of a deposit, it should be noted that the articles to be treated must be *chemically clean*; a trace of grease, producible by mere handling, suffices to ruin the coating, because the precipitated metal will adhere only to perfectly pure metallic surfaces, and the merest film of foreign matter, invisible perhaps to the eye, prevents this adhesion, or weakens it to so great an extent that very slight friction may cause separation to take place.

As also Careful Adjustment of Currents.—It is further essential that the current shall be correctly proportioned to the work required from it, and, if for this reason alone, it is to be regretted that old 'rule-of-thumb' methods find very general favour. Apparatus for measuring the current is comparatively inexpensive, and the first outlay in instruments will soon be found to repay itself in the greater security insured against accidents due to careless work or imperfect knowledge, and in the immediate and certain indication of a failure in any part of the circuit, which may prove most detrimental to the work if allowed to remain unremedied, but which, if attended to in time, might exert no evil influence. An *ammeter* (=amperemeter) for measuring the strength of current to every bath, or to every

series of baths placed in parallel, with a *voltmeter* for determining the fall in the pressure of the current between the electrodes, should be used in all large installations in which it is desired to produce good work of uniform character, or where varied work is undertaken. It is true that an experienced workman may know by inspection whether his baths are in good order; but the best workman is not infallible, and the use of measuring apparatus substitutes certainty for uncertainty, besides enabling the foreman to ascertain at a glance the conditions of work at any moment. Where, too, a partial failure has occurred, the remedial measure to be adopted may often be indicated, and the current be at once restored to its original strength by adjusting the resistance of the circuit until the ammeter returns to its first position.

TABLE VII.—Showing the Average Current-Densities Suitable for Depositing Certain Metals.

Metal.	Amperes.		Volts between Anode and Cathode.
	Per Sq. Decimetre of Cathode Surface.	Per Sq. Inch of Cathode Surface.	
Antimony	0·4 – 0·5	0·020 – 0·030	1·0 – 1·2
Brass	0·5 – 0·8	0·030 – 0·050	3·0 – 4·0
Copper, acid bath	1·0 – 1·5	0·065 – 0·100	0·5 – 1·5
,, alkaline bath	0·3 – 0·5	0·020 – 0·030	3·0 – 5·0
Gold	0·1	0·006	0·5 – 4·0
Iron	0·5	0·030	1·0
Nickel, at first	1·4 – 1·5	0·09 – 0·10	5·0
,, after	0·2 – 0·3	0·015 – 0·02	1·5 – 2·0
,, on zinc	0·4	0·025	4·0 – 5·0
Silver	0·2 – 0·5	0·015 – 0·030	0·75 – 1·0
Zinc	0·3 – 0·6	0·02 – 0·04	2·5 – 3·0

A current which is either too strong or too weak gives unsatisfactory deposits, the most suitable strength in any instance depending upon the nature of the metal which is being deposited and that of the bath from which it is separated. A very weak current causes a slow and in some cases a bad deposit, while a very intense current renders the metal non-adhesive, and may even reduce it to a pulverulent form. In the preceding table are given the density and electro-motive force of the currents which have been found by careful operators to be best suited for depositing the commoner metals; but such general statements must be regarded only in the light of a guide; every bath will be found to have its own most suitable current value, which

will probably differ but little from those given above, but which may be readily determined, once and for all, by the use of the bath.

Electro-Chemical Equivalents.—In dealing with electro-depositing arrangements, Ohm's fundamental law that the current in amperes is proportional to the electro-motive force in volts divided by the resistance in ohms ($C = \frac{E}{R}$, see p. 55) must be borne in mind. The weight of metal deposited in a given time is dependent solely on the volume (amperes) of current passing through the solution. A *coulomb* of electricity (*i.e.*, 1 ampere passing for the space of one second of time), according to measurements made by Lord Rayleigh, deposits invariably 0·000010352 gramme of hydrogen; of any other metal it will deposit this fraction of a gramme multiplied by the equivalent weight of the metal, that is, by the atomic weight divided by the valency of the metal as it exists in the solution. Thus, a coulomb of electricity precipitates per second from silver cyanide

$$0{\cdot}000010352 \times \frac{108}{1} = 0{\cdot}001118 \text{ gramme of silver, or}$$

$$0{\cdot}000010352 \times \frac{63{\cdot}5}{2} = 0{\cdot}000328675 \text{ gramme of copper from a}$$

solution of copper sulphate; while from a solution of a *cuprous* salt it would deposit twice the last-named weight of copper, because in this class of compounds, copper is monovalent, and the atomic weight is therefore divided by 1 instead of by 2. The figures obtained by thus multiplying the coulomb-weight-value of hydrogen by the equivalent weights of the elements are termed their *electro-chemical equivalents*, and afford the data from which the electro-plater may determine the coulombs which he will require to deposit a known weight of any metal, or to obtain a given thickness of coating upon a known area of surface. These numbers are collected together in a tabular form on p. 390; where also will be found the weights of the commoner metals, expressed both in grammes and in grains, which should be deposited in one hour by a current of 1 ampere, together with the thickness of the deposits produced in the same period of time by a current of 1 ampere per square decimetre, and per square inch of anode- and cathode-surface. The number of grammes precipitated per hour is calculated by multiplying the electro-chemical equivalent, or grammes per second, by 3600 (the number of seconds in the hour). The thickness of deposit is found from the weight deposited per hour, taken in connection with its volume;—a cubic centimetre of any metal weighing, in grammes, the number which represents its specific gravity (for example, the specific gravity of electrolytic copper being 8·914, 1 cubic centimetre weighs 8·914 grammes). From this table, then, may be found approximately the time required to produce

either a given weight or a given thickness of deposit, provided that in the former case the strength of current, and in the second both current-strength and total area of cathode be known. The most accurately known electro-chemical equivalent is that of silver, namely 0·001118, and it is therefore best to use this figure in calculating other equivalents.

Alteration of Resistance.—Since the current depends upon the E.M.F. and the resistance, to increase the strength of current (and hence, also, the rapidity of deposition) either the electromotive force must be increased or the resistance reduced. Of these alternatives, the latter is more readily modified than the former, and it is usual, for this reason, to introduce into the path of the current an arrangement of wires forming an added resistance, which may be thrown in or out of circuit at pleasure, and will thus produce a commensurate effect on the current-strength. Any alteration of the relative positions of the electrodes in the bath produces a change in the electrical resistance and, therefore, demands thoughtful attention, especially when measuring instruments are not available to indicate the extent of the derangement.

Whenever an anode (or cathode) is removed from the bath, the conducting surface through which the current enters (or leaves) the solution is diminished, and the resistance is consequently increased; or when the anode is removed to a greater distance from the object being plated the current has to traverse a more extended length of the solution, which is a very inferior conductor, and the resistance is again increased. In each case the volume of current is correspondingly diminished, and the alteration is at once detected by the retrogression of the pointer upon the scale of the ammeter, or current-measurer. It sometimes happens that the electrodes touch beneath the liquid, or become connected by a fragment of metal, broken off perhaps from a faulty anode or a bad cathode-deposit; the current then ceases to pass through the solution, and finds its way through the short circuit; electrolytic action is of course stopped, but outwardly there may be nothing to indicate the casualty, except in a few instances the behaviour of the battery, which may show signs of unwonted activity; here again the ammeter at once gives the alarm, because the diminution of resistance, owing to the substitution of a metallic for a liquid conductor, causes a great increase of current; it should be observed that this increase of current is accompanied by a greater consumption of battery-zinc, of which none is doing useful work; not only is the whole energy wasted, but the deposit may even be seriously damaged. All this serves to emphasise the necessity for applying measuring-apparatus at any time, but especially when dynamos are used, as they are more liable than batteries to be injured by short-circuiting or unfair treatment.

Again, since increase of resistance is attended by a decrease in current-strength, the resistance of the circuit must be minimised

in every possible way; the generator must be placed as near to the vats as may be convenient, the copper connecting-rods or leads must be as thick and as pure as possible, and all surfaces of contact, through which the current has to flow, must be perfectly clean and bright, while the electrolyte-solution itself should be chosen with a view to high conductivity. Conversely, all wires must be prevented from mutual contact, except at the desired points of connection, otherwise a short circuit or leak may be set up which permits practically the whole, or at best a large portion, of the current to return by the negative wire to the generator, not only without having done its appointed work, but with introduction of inconvenience and waste by its conversion into heat principally within the battery itself, which now imposes the principal resistance.

Resistance Boards.—The arrangements which are employed to introduce additional resistance into the circuit are usually made of wire, which must not be too thin, or they will become overheated by the passage of the current; they may be constructed of copper, brass, or German-silver wire, of electric-light carbons, or (for large currents) of moderately thin hoop-iron. Of the three former, German-silver is the least conductive and therefore the best, brass standing second. A length of 20 inches of German-silver wire, or 10 yards of copper wire, either of No. 20 Birmingham wire-gauge, or a foot length of a carbon $\frac{3}{10}$ of an inch in diameter, should each afford a resistance equal to about the quarter of an ohm. Fig. 34 illustrates a convenient method of arranging several coils of wire. The circuit is broken at one point, and the two ends of the conductor are connected to the system of resistance wires at MC and MC′; the wire is mounted on a wooden frame (if the E.M.F. is only low) by stretching it alternately over the metal pins A, G, B, H, C, I, D, J, E, K, and F, of which A is attached to MC. The pins are so arranged that the handle H_1, which alone is attached to MC′, may be moved upon its axis from contact with the MC rod at A, until it touches the buttons B, C D, E, or F successively. Each section of the wire from A to B, from B to C, and so on, should have a resistance of (say) half an ohm. H_1 consists of a flat brass rod with a wooden holder around the free end; while it rests at A, the current flows through it directly from MC to MC′ without meeting with any appreciable resistance, but as soon as it is shifted to B, the current has to pass

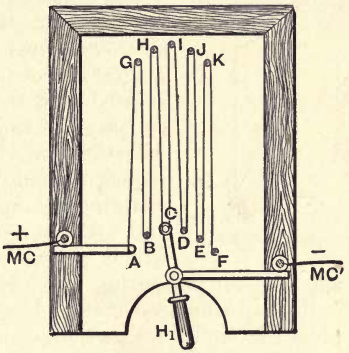


FIG. 34.—Mode of arranging resistance board.

through the section of wire passing from A over G to B, and so meets with a resistance of $\frac{1}{2}$ ohm; by moving the handle until it rests upon C, the resistance of the length of wire B H C is added to that of A G B, and thus a total of 1 ohm is now inserted; similarly each successive move adds an extra $\frac{1}{2}$ ohm until, when H is resting upon F, the added resistance is $2\frac{1}{2}$ ohms in all; finally, by shifting the handle beyond the position F, the current is broken altogether. This instrument serves, therefore, as a *switch* to start or break the current, and as a regulator to control its strength. Platinoid and 'Eureka' wire are other alloys used for resistance.

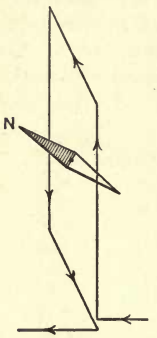


FIG. 35.—Simplest galvanoscope.

Galvanoscope.—Of the measuring and detecting instruments available, the *galvanoscope* or *detector* is one of the simplest: it is simply a magnetic needle surrounded with a coil of insulated wire through which the current is made to pass; it cannot well be employed for actual measurement, but may sometimes be useful in indicating the direction of the current, and thus enabling the operator to determine at a glance, and without reference to the battery or dynamo, which of two wires should be connected to the anode of the depositing-vat. This it does in obedience to the law, indirectly due to Oersted, that a current flowing in a circuit, placed around a magnetic needle in a plane perpendicular to that in which the latter is free to turn, causes the needle to set itself at right angles to the coil (fig. 35), the south pole being on that side of the coil from which the current appears to circulate in the direction of the hands of a watch. This arrangement will, perhaps, be better understood by the self-explanatory diagram (fig. 36). But for ordinary electro-plating currents even a detector is unnecessary; a common compass-needle held in its case above or below the wire through which the current is passing suffices to indicate its direction by turning on its pivot with the north pole facing to the left or to the right. For this experiment the wire should extend from north to south so as to be parallel to the normal direction of the magnetic needle. Ampère's rule by which the direction of current may be determined (and this rule applies equally to the last-considered example of a coil of wire) is, supposing a man to be swimming with the electric current, inside the wire, head first, and with his face turned towards the magnetic needle, the north pole of the latter will set so as to be on his left hand. Prof. Jamieson's mnemonic rule is also simple and reliable here; it will be readily understood in reference

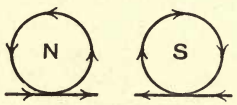


FIG. 36.—Illustrating polarity of coils.

to figs. 37 and 38. If a compass-needle be placed on one wire through which a current of unknown direction is flowing and the right hand be placed on the other side of, and with the palm next to, the wire, so that the thumb points in the direction taken by the north pole of the needle; then the current will always be found flowing (from positive to negative) from the wrist towards the fingers. Thus, if in a wire the current run from north to south, the compass-needle will place itself with its north-seeking end pointing east when the compass is held beneath the wire, and pointing west when it is above it.

Galvanometers.—For rough measurements, elaborations of the compass-needle detector are often employed, and are termed *galvanometers*, though ammeters and voltmeters are much more convenient and should be preferred. As the galvanometer, however, still survives, we will give some description of this instrument. These are of many kinds, but all depend on the fact that a stronger current always causes a greater deflection of the needle than does a weak current. In its simplest form the galvanometer is like the galvanoscope; it consists of a number of coils of wire surrounding a delicately-poised compass-needle, which is attached to a thin vertical wire passing through a circular card, and carrying above the surface of the latter a light horizontal index-needle or pointer; the card is firmly attached to the coils, and is divided up into degrees, so that the angular motion of the pointer produced by a given current may be measured accurately. The angle traversed by the index is not, however, proportional to the strength of the current, and the instrument must be graduated by ascertaining the varying angles of deflection produced by currents of known strength; for the same volume of current always registers the same number of degrees upon the scale. The extent of the deflection is regulated by the resultant of the two forces—one the directive force of the earth, which tends to set the needle north and south, and the other that of the current, which tends to place it equatorially. In using this instrument the index must first be allowed to come to rest under the action of the earth's magnetism alone, the coils (and the card with them) are then gradually shifted until the index points to the zero of the scale, then the current is passed around the

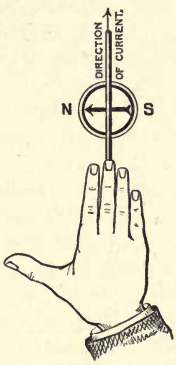


FIG. 37.

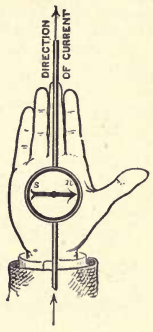


FIG. 38.

Direction of electric currents.

coils, and the angle through which the pointer has turned is measured as soon as equilibrium is restored. It is often inconvenient to be obliged to alter the position of the galvanometer, so that the needle is initially north and south; and an *astatic pair* is with advantage substituted for the single needle; that is to say, two needles equally magnetised are fixed, one at a short distance above the other, but pointing in reverse directions, so that the north pole of the upper one lies above the south pole of the lower. The wire coil is wound around the lower needle only; the object of this arrangement being to eliminate terrestrial magnetism, by causing its opposite directive action on the two needles respectively to produce equilibrium, while it does not interfere with the relation of the needles to the current, because, although they are reversed in position, one lies above and the other beneath the upper portion of the coil, so that the effect of the current is also reversed. Since the earth's field is ineffective, a permanent field magnet is placed so as to affect one of the needles more than the other, and thus to give the necessary control. In addition to eliminating the action of the earth's field and weakening the control, the astatic needle has the advantage of providing two needles instead of one to be acted upon by the magnetism of the current, and the instrument is thus made more sensitive. The method of fixing the astatic galvanometer is shown in fig. 39; the two needles are attached to a pointer which rotates above the fixed cardboard scale, the whole system of moving parts being suspended by a single filament of raw (unspun) silk. This galvanometer must also be graduated.

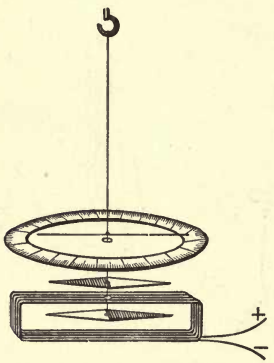


FIG. 39.—Astatic galvanometer.

The type of galvanometer known as the 'tangent galvanometer' gives deflections following a perfectly definite law, but this instrument is never now used commercially, and, therefore, we shall not describe it.

Ammeters and Voltmeters.—Where actual measurements of current or pressure are required, ammeters and voltmeters are now universally used. They depend for their action upon the magnetic effect of a current passing through a coil, more or less like the galvanometer just described, or sometimes upon the heating effect of a current. An instrument for measuring current is called an *ammeter* (or amperemeter) and is graduated in amperes; the resistance of such an instrument is made as low as possible so as to avoid loss of pressure in the ammeter. An instrument of the same kind, wound so as to give the same effect

with as small a current as is practicable, and thus wound to have a high resistance, is used to measure pressure and is known as a *voltmeter*. It is graduated in volts, and the object of high resistance is to avoid the waste of energy that would take place by using a large current merely to indicate pressure. These two instruments are now so simple, compact, and inexpensive that they are within the reach of all users of electricity, and should certainly be included in the plant of every electro-metallurgical works. The ammeter is placed in the main circuit, and thus the whole of the current passes through it, and may be read off at any time; where several baths are arranged in parallel with one another, and the current is divided between them, an ammeter should be included in each section, in order that the operator may be sure that every vat is receiving its due proportion of current. The voltmeter will indicate the difference of potential between any two points of the circuit, but it is usually connected as a shunt, or across from one wire to the other ('parallel' with the vats) in close proximity to the electrodes in the vats; the resistance of the coils is so great, as compared with that of the baths, that only an infinitesimal portion of the current passes through them, and the distribution to the baths is unaffected. It is customary to attach a small press button on a switch to the stand of the instrument, so that it is only thrown into circuit at the moment when the observation is made, and thus the instrument is not kept in use unnecessarily. A single voltmeter may be made to suffice for a small installation.

Arrangement of Baths in Electro-plating.—In arranging the baths and selecting solutions the operator must be guided entirely by the class of work which he proposes to undertake. The necessity for pure solutions of high conductivity has already been insisted upon. The chemicals employed should be the purest obtainable, and the water should, if possible, be distilled, otherwise rain-water must be used. The solutions must be made up carefully to the required strength, and watched well, and occasionally tested while in use to ensure that they do not sensibly vary in composition, or become excessively alkaline or acid. Moreover, they must be suited to the nature of the substance which is receiving the deposit; if this latter metal should of itself decompose the solution, unaided by any external current, the resulting deposit will probably be non-adhesive. Hence if a very electro-positive metal is to receive a coating of one which is highly electro-negative, it should first be covered with an intermediate metal from some solution which it cannot readily decompose, this metal, in turn, being of such nature that it will not break up the electrolyte of the ultimate metal to be precipitated. For example, in coating iron with silver, a preliminary film of copper may be given in the copper cyanide bath, and the coating of precious metal is readily deposited upon this.

The vats should be thoroughly cleaned out from time to time to prevent the accumulation of slime, which always tends to collect, owing to dust and accidental impurities derived from the air, and to insoluble impurities contained in the anodes, that remain as a precipitate in the liquid after the rest of the metal has dissolved. The current should be switched on as soon as the objects are introduced, or there will be a tendency for the basis metal to dissolve into and contaminate the bath before it can be covered with a protecting film; this frequently renders the introduction of resistances necessary when first placing goods in the vat, in order to avoid using an excessive current, as will be explained in dealing with silver (see p. 194).

Arrangement of Baths in Series or Parallel.—When several baths are used on the same circuit, they may be arranged either in series or in parallel with one another; but for miscellaneous plating the latter method is superior, although, in a few instances, when the work is quite uniform, as, for example, in electrotyping plates for printers, it may sometimes be advantageous to couple the vats in series, especially if a dynamo be used as a generator. The two systems may, of course, be combined, two or more in series, with two or three baths in each, being arranged in parallel. When insoluble anodes are employed, it must be remembered that the electro-motive force required for the decomposition will be as many times higher than is required for one couple as there are baths in series. Two vats in series require twice the pressure needed for one, three vats demand thrice the pressure, and so on. When the anode is soluble and is made of the metal which is being deposited, the increase of E.M.F. is not great, but the resistance is, of course, multiplied. Placed in parallel, the resistance is diminished as the number of vats is increased, while the pressure required is constant. Figs. 40 and 41 show diagrammatically the arrangement of vats in parallel and in series respectively. B is the battery; V is the voltmeter, which may be thrown into circuit when required for use by means of the switch, S; A is the ammeter, of which there is one in each parallel circuit (with it may conveniently be a set of resistance wires); and E represents the electrolyte or plating-vat.

It was shown on p. 56 that battery-cells coupled in series caused the solution of equal quantities of zinc in each cell, although altogether they could not deposit more than one equivalent of metal in the plating-bath, so that five times as much zinc was dissolved to precipitate one pound of silver when five cells were placed in series as when one cell alone was made to do the work. Conversely, in electro-deposition a given current with sufficient electro-motive force will deposit in each vat as much metal per unit of zinc dissolved in the battery as would be precipitated in a single vat. Just, therefore, as in the battery, coupling in series gives an increase of pressure and of power to

do work rapidly, so a similar arrangement of plating-baths involves a great absorption of pressure, and to a corresponding extent increases the time required to deposit a given thickness of

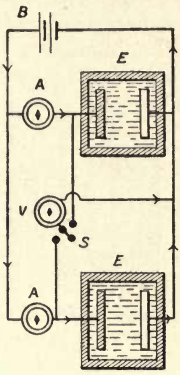


FIG. 40.—Parallel arrangement of vats.

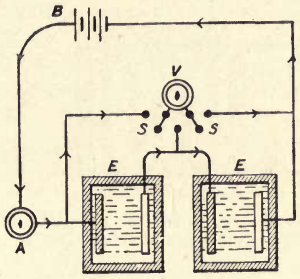


FIG. 41.—Vats arranged in series.

Note.—In these two figures one voltmeter is so arranged that, with the aid of the switch, S, it may be used for either vat at will, and will thus show the difference of potential between either pair of electrodes. In fig. 41 two switches are necessary (as shown) unless the voltmeter used is capable of measuring deflections on either side of zero. One ammeter is used to each bath.

metal. The economy of power, apparently promised by the precipitation of an increased weight of metal per unit of zinc dissolved, is thus discounted by the inconvenience of a slow deposit. A further objection to the series system as applied to the plating-baths is that they become inconveniently inter-dependent, for any increase in the resistance of one bath, as when a large article is removed from it, reduces the current-volume in the whole circuit. It is true that even when the parallel arrangement is adopted, an alteration of resistance in one vat also influences the current-strength of the whole system, but the effect is scarcely appreciable owing to the large aggregate surface presented in the different electrolytes; the added resistance in one bath merely causes a greater volume of current to flow through the others, while on the other

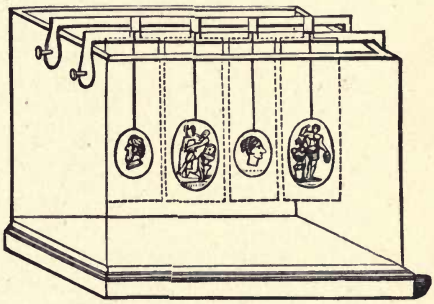


FIG. 42.—Plating-bath. Parallel arrangement of articles.

hand it tends to diminish the total current. Where, then, the articles to be plated may be of every conceivable size, and the superficial areas are difficult to estimate exactly, the parallel system is preferable; but when the articles present a fair uniformity of surface, and the current has sufficient potential, the alternative method may be substituted. For similar reasons it is best to hang the various articles in each bath in parallel with

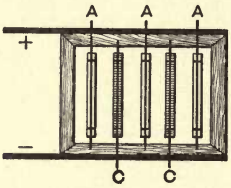


FIG. 43.—Plating-bath. Parallel arrangement of articles.

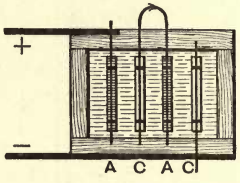


FIG. 44.—Plating-bath. Arrangement of articles in series.

one another, as shown in figs. 42 and 43, not in series, as in figs. 44 and 45, in which the current enters the electrolyte by one anode, passes to its corresponding cathode, and thence by a wire connection to the next anode, and so on.

Choice of Anodes. — In the matter of anodes stress has already been laid upon the necessity for their absolute purity and complete solubility in the electrolyte; this latter condition is, however, a question to be more particularly regarded in the

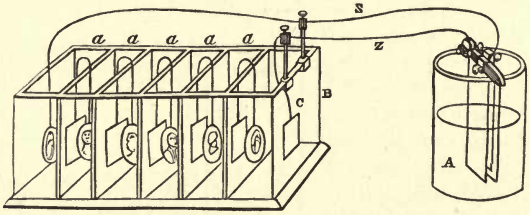


FIG. 45.—Plating-bath. Arrangement of articles in series.

selection of the constituents of the bath. Unless under the action of the current the anodes dissolve freely in the liquid, the latter must become impoverished and change rapidly in composition; this is always a source of trouble and annoyance, and where the use of an insoluble or imperfectly soluble anode is unavoidable, small quantities of that salt of the metal which is undergoing electrolysis (or of metallic oxide) must be added from time to time to make good the loss due to deposition. Cast anodes will often be found more soluble than the rolled metal, as they are more porous and open in grain, and, therefore, more

readily attacked by the liquid; in some cases they may even be found to become spongy and friable, a condition which should of course be avoided, and which indicates the desirability of substituting the rolled sheet. When there is any difficulty in obtaining pure metal for anodes, the rolled material may generally be preferred, because the cast plates may contain a large percentage of foreign substances, which would escape detection on merely examining the exterior of the block, whereas any considerable addition of impurities would in many instances cause the metal to break up as it passed through the rolling machinery, so that the mere fact of a metal being in the form of rolled sheet is often a guarantee of at least a fair degree of purity. Cast-iron should on no account be used; it always contains three or four per cent. of the insoluble substances, carbon and silicon, with other bodies, such as manganese, phosphorus and sulphur; some at least of these are necessary to render it sufficiently fusible to melt in the cupola-furnace. Anodes should usually be of larger size than the cathodes to which they are opposed, so that the greater surface exposed to the solvent action of the electrolyte may compensate for the slower rate of solution as compared with that of deposition.

Spacing of Electrodes—Polished Cathodes.—It has been seen that the resistance of a bath is higher when the electrodes are small, and that it increases as the distance between them is more extended; thus economy is effected by plating many objects simultaneously in parallel, and also by minimising the distance between them and their corresponding anodes. But there are objections to approximating them too closely—first, they are more liable to come in contact or to be united by a fragment of metal, and thus to produce short-circuiting; and, secondly, if the surface of the object is irregular the deposited metal is liable to be of unequal thickness, because a current passing between points at unequal distances tends to deposit most rapidly upon those portions of the cathode which most nearly approach the anode. By increasing the space separating the two surfaces the irregularities of either have less influence on the deposit, because they are small as compared with the mean distance between them. This difficulty is chiefly experienced in electrotyping, where strong deposits of uniform thickness are required. In depositing copper when the solution is strong and at rest, small projections and striated markings may be observed, which increase in extent as the current is maintained. Marks and scratches on the cathode do not become obliterated, but rather accentuated, as the metal is deposited over them; great care must, therefore, be taken that the surface to be coated is not only thoroughly cleansed, but that all tool- or file-marks are completely removed, as there is no remedy when once deposition has begun.

Homogeneous Solutions necessary.—Another difficulty inherent in the process is, that a current long continued with the solution at rest produces a gradual local alteration in the density of the latter. At the anode, metal is constantly dissolving into the surrounding liquid, which thus becomes heavier, bulk for bulk, than the remainder of the bath, and sinks to the bottom; while at the cathode the liquid is denuded of metal, and from its lower specific gravity rises to the surface. In this manner a very gentle but sure circulation occurs in the vat, producing an undue proportion of metal in solution at the bottom, and of acid at the top. The effect of this is that thicker deposits form on the lower portions of goods immersed in the bath, owing largely to the higher conductivity of the strong solution and the greater proportion of current flowing through it; moreover, a kind of local action may be set up in the deposited copper plate, which is resting in two practically different solutions, with the result that the upper portion of the plate in the acid solution tends to dissolve, and to deposit a corresponding proportion of copper upon the lower half. It is probably the steady flow of liquid over the surface of the cathode which gives rise to the striated markings above referred to. The only remedy is to keep the solutions thoroughly mixed by stirring or gently shaking them in any suitable way, and this precaution should never be omitted when thick deposits are required, which necessitate a comparatively long exposure in the bath. The solutions must also be kept free from suspended particles such as are apt to become detached in the form of slime from the anode, because the settling of these particles on the cathode is one of the principal causes of the rough nodular formation on the surface of electro-deposited metals.

Having seen the causes which operate to produce failure in electro-plating, it remains to be seen how they are avoided in practice.

Motion of Solution.—The circulation of the electrolyte not only ensures the homogeneity of the solution, but enables a higher current-density, and therefore a higher rate of deposition, to be used, by bringing a greater number of metal ions into contact with the cathode in a given time. By employing a very rapid flow of the solution around the cathode, the rate of deposition (for example, of copper in refining or in electrotyping) may be enormously increased. Thus, in certain copper depositing processes, recently introduced, jets of the electrolyte are directed upon the surface during the whole period of electrolysis, with the result that a current density of over 100 amperes per sq. ft. may be used, as against 10 amperes per sq. ft., which not long since was, with ordinary methods of depositing, considered a high density. By using strong solutions and a proportionately high current-density, with rapid motion of the electrolyte, Sir

J. W. Swan has deposited good copper with current-densities higher than 1000 amperes per sq. ft. There are various methods of causing circulation of an electrolyte, such as purely mechanical means, or by pumping air into the electrolyte, or by actually pumping the electrolyte itself from one part of the vat and re turning it to another. Another method of obtaining a similar end is the rotation of the cathode, to which further reference will be made when the electro-deposition of copper is considered in detail.

CHAPTER V.

PLATING ADJUNCTS AND DISPOSITION OF PLANT.

Light and Pure Air.—In arranging an electro-plating establishment, due regard must be had for light and ventilation; with insufficiency of the former bad work is almost sure to result, as it is not easy to judge when the pieces are sufficiently stripped, polished, cleaned, or quicked, and the progress of the deposition cannot be watched with the requisite amount of care; it is often necessary to stop a process immediately upon the appearance of certain signs, indicative of imperfect cleansing or the like, and it is of the highest importance that these characteristics should be noted at once, which cannot be done if the light be deficient. Badly-ventilated rooms are productive of ill-health and disease to the workmen; this maxim, applicable, indeed, to all rooms in which men live or work, must be specially regarded in rooms where batteries or cyanide plating-solutions are in use; the acid fume or spray given off by most batteries is most penetrating and injurious to health, even when considerably diluted with air, as it is likely to be found even in a large room, if it be insufficiently provided with means to carry off vitiated air and supply fresh in its place; moreover, the cyanide solution becomes slowly decomposed by the carbonic-acid-laden air of towns, and evolves the deadly prussic acid gas—in minute proportion, it is true, but amply sufficient to become prejudicial to the well-being and comfort of the operator, when breathed continuously for any considerable period of time.

Arrangement of Rooms.—At least three rooms should be available, if possible, for the purposes of the art. In the first of these the mechanical operations of cleansing and polishing are carried out; these give rise to the production of more or less dust, and should not, therefore, be conducted in the same room with the plating-vats. Again, the engine driving the machinery should be in a separate chamber, apart from the dust of the polishing-room on the one hand, and from the fumes of the vat-room on the other, the power being communicated to the lathes and other machine tools by shafting running between the two rooms. When the dynamo is the source of electric energy, it should be placed in the

engine-room, but as close as possible to the baths in the adjoining chamber, so that there may be no great loss of energy owing to the resistance of the copper conducting wires or *leads* to the passage of the electric current. But if batteries be employed, they should be carefully isolated from each of the three rooms above mentioned; if a fourth be not available (a small one will suffice), a corner of the vat-room should be partitioned off, the chamber or cupboard thus formed being provided with a separate outlet into the open air, or, better still, into a chimney, so that all fumes may be at once and completely removed; a sink and a supply of fresh water may be fitted in this room with advantage. Care should be taken to have sufficient room and good light to ensure easy attention to the cells, and this remark applies particularly to batteries of accumulators, which only prove unsatisfactory if not carefully looked after. In the third or vat-room are the potash and all other baths used in chemically cleansing the pieces, together with those devoted to plating; an ample supply of water must be available in this department, and a steam-pipe should convey steam from the boiler—if one be used—to the potash-tank and steam-heated vessels. Here the various pieces of furniture should not be crowded together, but an ample margin of space should be left so that the operator may not be cramped for want of room. When more than one plating process is employed, each should be kept to itself, and in large establishments a separate room may be set apart for each.

It is, of course, impossible to lay down any general plan for the disposition of the plant of an electro-plating shop, because it must be arranged and modified, not only to suit the work to be performed, but also the floor-space, shape, and position of the rooms available. But, to sum up, it may be taken as a general rule that mechanical works should be isolated from chemical, that the battery in the one case, or the dynamo and motor in the other, should be separated from both, that in each room the various classes of work should be kept distinct, but that where consecutive processes have to be followed, the arrangements for conducting them should be so placed that, when one stage of the work is completed, the articles may be conveniently transferred into position for the next operation.

Drainage of Floors.—The floors should be of stone, asphalt, or concrete, or they may be covered with lead sheet so that they may readily be kept clean, and be non-absorbent of the acids and chemical reagents splashed upon them: wood, besides being constantly wet, is liable to become rotten by the action of these substances. Trapped gullies or sinks should be placed at suitable points flush with the floor; they should not communicate with the house-drains directly, but should discharge into a pipe which runs outside the house, and delivers *into the open air* above a second trapped gully communicating with the sewers or drains.

In this way the floor may be kept from accumulations of liquid, and may be readily and perfectly cleansed by flooding it with water, and then sweeping it into the gullies by means of india-rubber 'squeegees' or brooms; at the same time, there is no danger of sewer-air contaminating the atmosphere of the room (a fertile source of danger), because there is no direct communication with the drain. Pipes from sinks should discharge into the open air after a like manner.

Ventilation.—To ensure the purity of air, it is not well to trust simply to the ventilation of the room by doors and windows, but a systematic arrangement should be adopted, such as that of Tobin. Several ventilators should be made immediately below the ceiling of the room, by removing a brick, passing a tube through the wall, and bending it upwards in the open air (it may be shielded from rain by a cap placed a few inches above the exit); if possible, one of these ventilating-tubes should pass into a disused chimney-shaft. The vitiated air is thus carried away, and pure air must be admitted at the floor level to take its place; this may be done by carrying two or three pipes through the wall close to the floor, and bending them up in the interior of the room to a height of five or six feet. Fresh air is delivered by them in a manner which does not give rise to draughts. Entering cold, it flows up these pipes and gradually distributes itself over the chamber, where, becoming heated, it rises to the roof and finds an exit through the upper row of ventilators.

The guiding principles for the sanitary and safe conduct of an otherwise unhealthy occupation are expressed in a few words by saying—ensure abundance of light, water, and fresh air.

Arrangement of Plant for Electro-Plating.

The vats and apparatus used in cleansing are described in Chapter VI.

Vats.—The vats employed to hold the solution for electro-plating should be considerably larger than the largest object to be coated in them, and must be made of, or at least lined with, some material which will resist the acid liquid that may be placed in them.

Glass is by far the cleanest and best, but is rarely used, except for very small work, on account of the initial expense and the risk of fracture. For very small objects glass vessels may be had in one piece, as circular trays or jars; but for large articles, the bath should be made by joining five plates of sheet glass of the requisite sizes with marine glue, or white lead, or other cement, protected on the inside by a varnish made of asphalt dissolved in benzoline; or of gutta-percha in benzene or in carbon bisulphide; or, in fact, by any water- and acid-proof mixture. The glass should be supported by an outer frame of wood. Slate similarly

arranged is a good substitute for glass; but though less brittle, it must still be used with care. For small work stone or earthenware glazed troughs are readily obtainable and are very convenient.

Lead presents the advantage that it is readily formed into any shape. A tank made of this material should be supported beneath and around by a wooden case, so that it will not be subjected to the stress of a mass of liquid within. All the joints in the lead-lining [1] should be made by autogenous soldering—that is, by melting together the two edges of the lead sheet, instead of uniting them with soft solder, which would set up galvanic action with the lead if it came into contact with the electrolytic solutions. But even when united into one continuous leaden trough, the metal should be completely protected in every part by a good layer of acid-resisting varnish, to prevent the decomposition of the liquid by the lead through simple exchange. Iron tanks also are very largely used, and, indeed, almost universally so for hot solutions. These also, being constructed of a highly electro-positive material, must be carefully preserved from attack by the solutions, either by varnish, or, better, by a good coating of enamel, which, since it is a fused complex silicate, forms practically a tank of glass, so long as it remains intact; but as soon as the enamel is chipped and the surface of the iron is laid bare, its use must be discontinued until a new coating can be given.

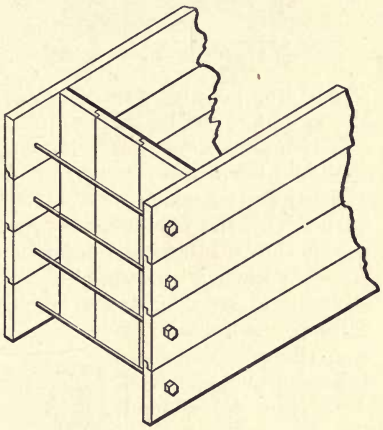


FIG. 46.—Plating-vat.

Wood is abundantly used, and, being a cheap material, easily worked, is especially well adapted for vats of unusual shape which may have to be constructed for one particular class of temporary work. These tanks are best secured at the ends by bolts and nuts, as shown in fig. 46, which serve to hold the sides firmly pressed against the end pieces. As wood alone is very absorbent, they should be lined with gutta-percha or any other water-proof material, and must be carefully watched so that they may be re-lined as soon as leakage into the wood is observed. Wooden vats are sometimes lined with thin lead sheet autogenously soldered, and this inner case may be varnished, or may be again lined with varnished wood. A mixture of 10 oz. of gutta-percha

[1] But see also page 107.

with 3 oz. of pitch and 1½ oz. each of stearin and linseed oil, melted together and well incorporated, has been found to afford a good protective covering to lead or wood.

The tanks for hot solutions are best made of enamelled iron, and may be set over a small fire-grate in which charcoal is burned, or better—because the heat is more under control—over a series of Bunsen burners of the ordinary upright form, or in the shape of horizontal rings; or they may each be surrounded with an outer jacket, the intervening space being filled with waste steam, which is often available in large works and may be economically applied. Iron tanks are often made of thin metal, and, if of large size, should be supported by strong iron bearing bars beneath, to prevent them bulging when the weight of the liquid is applied.

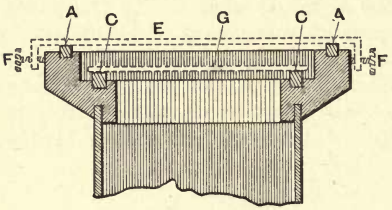


FIG. 47.—Rim of plating-vat.

Vat-Connections.—Of whatever material the vat is constructed it should be provided with an insulated rim around the top, to carry the wires which conduct the current to the objects in the bath. This rim is best made of well-painted wood fitting on to the top of the bath, and the outer portion should be at a higher level than the inner, as indicated in fig. 47, which with fig. 48 illustrate the general arrangement as adapted to an iron vat. Around three sides of the raised portion there runs a short brass or copper rod, A, ending in a binding screw, B, attached to the positive pole of the battery. Around the corresponding three sides of the inner or lower level platform is a similar rod, C, insulated completely from A and from the bath by the woodwork of the frame, and terminating in the binding-screw, D, attached to the negative (zinc) pole of the battery. Resting on the two sides of the rod, A, may be placed any number of cross-rods of brass or copper, E, which can be held firmly in position by the screws, F F; from these are suspended the anodes, which are thus placed in direct connection with the battery. Lying upon the lower rods, C, similar cross-bars serve to support the cathodes or objects to be coated. Any reasonable number of electrodes may be thus suspended in the same bath, the current flowing always from the

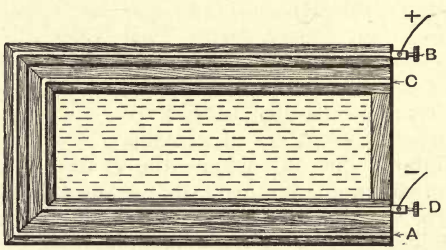


FIG. 48.—Rim of plating-vat.

anodes to the cathodes in parallel. When both sides of an object are to be coated, the anodes and cathodes must be placed alternately; such an arrangement has been shown in fig. 43, where A A represent anodes and C C cathodes; here both sides of the anode are used and dissolved, as the current flows from them in either direction to the cathode next adjoining. But where a deposit is required on one side only of a plate, as in printers' electrotyping, one anode may be placed between each pair of cathodes set back to back (fig. 49), so that both sides of the former are used, but only that side of the latter which is nearest to its corresponding anode.

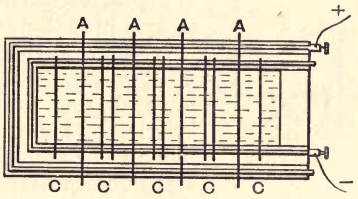


FIG. 49.—Arrangement of plates for electrotyping.

Connection of Electrodes.—Other methods of connecting the electrodes with the battery are used, but that just described presents many advantages: thus the distance between an anode and cathode may be adjusted at will, and either may be removed from the solution, examined and returned without disturbing the remainder, and without any manipulation of binding-screws; the anode may be instantaneously transferred to a cathode rod at the beginning or end of an operation, if desired, to control the current (see p. 194); and the anode supporting-rods are held firmly in position by the external screws—a similar arrangement, but of *internal* screws, may be applied to the cathode rods if required.

Suspension of Anode Plates.—The anode plates are suspended from the cross-rods by suitable hooks. The anodes may conveniently have a perforation in each of the upper corners, through which the suspending hooks are passed; but as they are liable to dissolve irregularly, even when every precaution is used to ensure uniformity of liquid, the lower corners should also be perforated, so that the plates may be suspended alternately from opposite sides. They are sometimes hung so that they project above the surface of the liquid, and the supporting wires, not being immersed, are, therefore, not liable to corrosion and ultimate destruction by solution; but the plates themselves will then have a shorter life, for they are most vigorously attacked at the line of uppermost contact with the liquid, and will be worn away at this point while the remainder of the plate is still sound; moreover, the portion of metal above the water line is practically wasted. They are frequently made, therefore, with projecting perforated lugs, either at each corner, or only at two, as in fig. 50; these alone project above the solution, and, while protecting the supporting wire from destruction, minimise the amount of useless anode surface outside the liquid. To obviate the destruction of

the suspending hook, without permitting any portion of the anode to remain above the bath, some operators use but one side of the anode to face the objects which are being coated. On the back reversed hooks are fastened by which the plate is suspended, as in fig. 51; the hooks are thus protected from dissolving by the anode which intervenes between them and the cathode, except in the space between the top of the plate and the surface of the liquid, which space should, therefore, be made as short as possible.

FIG. 50.—Mode of suspending anode plate.

Agitators.—The necessity for keeping the electrolyte in motion to ensure uniformity in composition when a thick deposit is required has been dealt with already; the manner of effecting it must depend upon the appliances at command. Stirring by hand is frequently relied upon, but it is liable to be accidentally omitted, and, being necessarily intermittent, allows time for partial separation to occur between two consecutive stirrings. Mechanical agitation, which is more certain in its effect, may be applied by such devices as working a small screw-propeller slowly at one end of the bath; or by blowing air into the solution constantly,

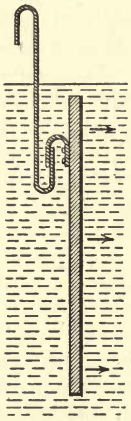


FIG. 51.—Mode of suspending anode.

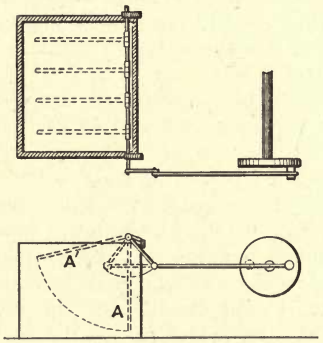


FIG. 52.—Von Hübl's agitator.

through a tube passing to the bottom of the vat, by means of a fan-blower, or by an agitating arrangement such as that used by v. Hübl in the electrotype baths of the Austrian Military Geographical Institute.

In this system a glass rod, A (fig. 52), is fastened to a crank-shaft connected with an eccentric or with any suitable device for imparting a reciprocating or to-and-fro motion, so that at each reciprocation the rod is moved through the arc of a circle,

from its original position at A to that represented by the dotted line A′, and is then returned to its first place at A. Such a rod is placed between each pair of anodes and cathodes, all the rods or beaters being attached to the same crank-shaft which runs the whole length of the vat, so that they may all be actuated by the same mechanism. The motion of the beaters need not be very rapid—from 10 to 30 strokes a minute amply sufficing. The use of this or any similar device presupposes the existence of steam- or water-power and machinery in the shops; where this is not available, manual power must be substituted in connection with any suitable mixing appliance, which must be set in motion at frequent intervals. Whatever motion is given must be sufficiently vigorous to ensure thorough mixture of the solution, but without disturbing the relative positions of anode and cathode, and the mechanism must be so applied that it in no way lessens the facilities for examining the progress of deposition.

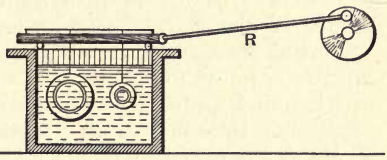
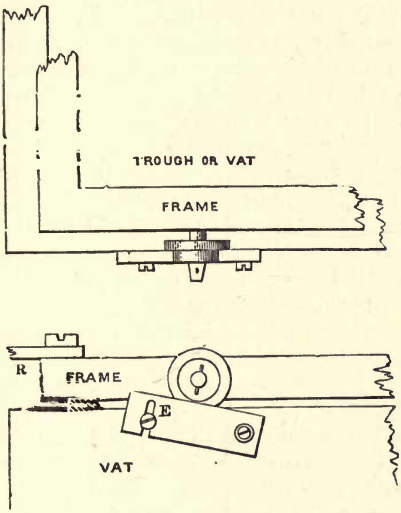


FIG. 53.—Mode of attaching sliding-frame.



FIGS. 54 and 55.—Mode of attaching sliding-frame.

Motion of Cathodes.—Silver and some other metals require a gentle motion to be imparted to the objects upon which they are being deposited. This may be done by enclosing the suspending rods of the objects within a wooden frame which is caused to move to and fro above the solution by means of an attachment to an eccentric. The frame may be suspended above the vat, or it may be caused to slide upon the edge of the bath.

Figs. 53, 54, and 55 illustrate a convenient method of fixing the sliding frame; it is supported on wheels placed at the corners, each wheel rolling upon an inclined plane E (fig. 55), which may be set at any angle by means of a screw. The rod R thus imparts the necessary backwards and forwards motion to the system, so that, at every stroke, a double action occurs, and the

frame with the objects suspended from it moves in a horizontal direction by virtue of the pull of the rod R, and in a vertical direction on account of the inclined plane, the extent of the latter motion being controlled by the screw which determines its angle of inclination. The frame with the objects should be caused to slide backwards or forwards once in about two or three minutes, through a distance of 2 or 3 inches.

Plating-Balances.—In plating with precious metals it is frequently required to deposit only a given weight upon the various articles; and, although this may be approximately accomplished by calculating the time required to deposit a given weight of metal with a known current-strength and upon a known superficial area,[1] with the aid of the table given on p. 390, it is safer when absolute accuracy is required to use a plating-balance, by which the weight of metal deposited may be determined as the operation proceeds. In this instrument, a metal frame for carrying the cathode-rods is substituted for one scale-pan of a large balance of the ordinary description. The frame is supported from the beam of the balance by metallic connection, while the pillar of the scale is connected with the negative pole of the battery, so that electric communication is made through the parts of the balance. Having attached the objects to the frame and immersed them in the solution, they are counterpoised by placing weights in the opposite pan of the balance until equilibrium is restored, and the frame and the objects are suspended freely, the former, of course, above and the latter in the solution; an extra weight, equal to that of the metal which is to be deposited upon all the objects in the aggregate, is now added to those already in the scale-pan, and the current is switched on until the deposited metal, just overbalancing the added weights in the pan, turns the scale in the opposite direction—an action which may be indicated automatically by causing the pointer or beam of the balance to release the hammer of a small gong or to make contact with an electric bell.

Roseleur's Plating-Balance.—Roseleur has introduced a more elaborate balance by which the current is automatically cut off as soon as the beam of the scale is turned, so that the electrolytic action ceases directly the required amount of metal has been deposited; this was effected by making electrical contact, not with the pillar, but by attaching a platinum wire to the arm of the balance which supports the weights, and arranging underneath it a cup of mercury connected with the negative pole of the generator, into which cup it dips to such a distance that, as soon as the arm is raised by the reversal of the beam, the wire is

[1] When it is only desired to deposit a total weight of metal, and not a certain weight per square inch, the superficial area of the objects may be neglected; all that is required to be known is the mean strength of current applied, in amperes.

lifted out of the mercury and connection between cathode and battery is permanently broken. All the knife-edges of this balance work under mercury, in order to prevent overheating of these parts by the current flowing through them, and at the same time to lessen friction and obviate the corrosive action of acid fumes.

In the balance diagrammatically indicated in fig. 56 the current does not traverse the beam at all, but enters by a contact screw attached to the supporting-rod of the cathode-frame. The objects are suspended in the bath from the flat cathode-rod, C, in the usual way; then when these have been counterpoised by introducing weights into the pan, P, and the extra weights representing the total mass of metal to be deposited have also been added, the beam will turn, so that the arm, A′, rests on the stop, R′, which is rigidly attached to the pillar of the balance to prevent an excessive amount of play; at the same time the point of the screw, S, in the supporting rod of the cathode-frame, should just make good contact with the block, M, at the end of a spring, attached to a suitable fixed support, and connected with the negative pole of the battery; the spring must, of course, be insulated from the pillar and all parts of the balance. Through this connection the current passes from the bath to the return-wire of the battery; both S and M should, therefore, be tipped with platinum, which remains untarnished under all conditions, and, therefore, secures good contact. If the extremity of S do not actually touch M, or if it press so hard upon it that the spring is bent, adjustment may readily be made by turning the milled head of the screw: the adjustment should be so made that when the balance is in exact equilibrium the points are just touching; so that when the beam rests upon the stop, R′, the spring becomes slightly bent and ensures perfect contact; but when it rests upon the corresponding stop, R, contact is entirely broken, and a space of at least the $\frac{1}{16}$ of an inch separates the two platinum surfaces. The current now flows through the circuit from the positive pole of the battery to the anodes, which rests as usual upon the sides of the vat, thence through the solution to the cathodes upon which it deposits the precious metal; and from the cathodes it traverses the supporting-rod, the screw, S, and the spring, M, and returns to the negative pole by the wire, W. As soon as the weight of

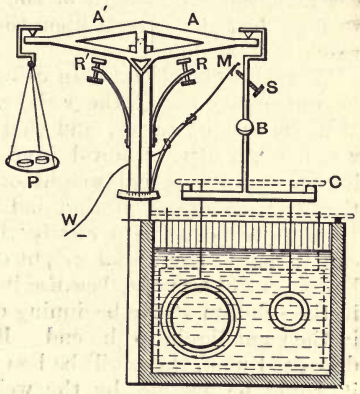


FIG. 56.—Balance.

metal precipitated is equal to that added to the pan, P, the balance comes to equilibrium and remains poised between the stops R and R′; but the current is still flowing because S is not yet withdrawn from M; then, as soon as a slight additional amount of metal is deposited, the beam comes over and rests upon the stop, R, and, contact being broken, no further electrolytic action can ensue. The cathode supporting-rod is made in two pieces joined by a ball-and-socket joint, B; any disturbance of the knife-edge of the balance caused by the necessary slow reciprocating motion imparted to the frame is thus obviated. The motion is imparted by an inverted fork, running between horizontal guide-rollers, which spans the edge of the frame at the central point on one of its sides, the fork being, of course, attached to an eccentric rod; the length of the fork may be so arranged that as soon as the balance rests upon the stop, R, the frame falls out of reach of its action.

Weight Corrections.—In using any of these balances, it must be remembered that the weight of a substance in water is less than its weight in air, and that the plated article will appear to weigh more after removal from the solution than it did when immersed; the actual weight of silver deposited by balance is, therefore, in excess of that indicated by the weights in the pan. It is quite possible to rectify this error in making the needful calculation. The initial weight of the objects to be plated may be left out of account, because it is counterpoised while they are in the solution at the beginning of the operation, and they remain in the same liquid to the end. But the weight of silver (or gold) deposited upon them will be less while it is in the solution than it would be outside, by the weight of an equal volume of the liquid. For example, the specific gravity of silver may be taken at 10·6; that is to say, 1 cub. in. of silver weighs 10·6 times as much as 1 cub. in. of water; thus 10·6 oz. of silver, weighed in the air in the usual manner, would show only 10·6 – 1·0 = 9·6 oz. if it were weighed while immersed in water. But the specific gravity of the solution is more than 1 as compared with water; regarding it as 1·1, the weight of the 10·6 oz. of silver becomes 10·6 – 1·1, or only 9·5 oz., if counterpoised while suspended in this liquid, and this is equivalent to a loss of over 10 per cent. Therefore, strictly speaking, to obtain an aggregate deposit of 10 oz. of silver upon a batch of articles, only 9 oz. need be placed upon the scale-pan. For gold, similar calculations may be made, but the loss is not so great owing to the higher specific gravity of gold (= 19·3), so that the ratio of its weight in air to that in water is 19·3 : 18·3. In the same way, for other metals the weight in the pan should be divided by the fraction:—

$$= \frac{\text{specific gravity of the metal}}{\text{specific gravity of metal} - \text{specific gravity of solution}}.$$

We are not aware that these calculations are often made in practice, and the thickness of silver deposited must, therefore, always be perceptibly greater than that intended—certainly an error on the right side from the consumer's point of view. A certain loss may be incurred in subsequent polishing processes, but this should not be greater than would be compensated for by the small excess of metal which is required to overcome the friction of the balance and bring the beam over to the opposite side.

Should any articles or anodes accidentally fall into the plating-vat, they should be carefully picked out by means of a long wire, bent at one end into hook-shape, or by a pair of light tongs, which may be made of brass, previously coated with the metal which is being deposited, or with some more electro-negative

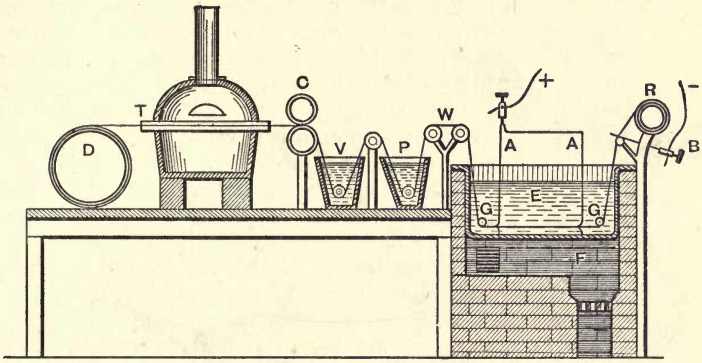


FIG. 57.—Roseleur's wire-gilding arrangement.

metal; the bare arm should not be introduced, because of the risk of blood-poisoning which may be caused by the contact of recent wounds with the plating-liquid.

For special classes of work special vats and special arrangements of all kinds may have to be made, and herein lies the scope for the inventive skill of the operator. But, with a knowledge of the principles laid down in works on electro-metallurgy, there should be no serious difficulty in dealing with the various problems which may be presented.

Roseleur's Wire-Gilding Process.—Among these special arrangements, the method adopted by Roseleur for gilding iron by a single continuous process is especially interesting; a diagram of the plant is given in fig. 57. The tin-coated and well-cleaned wire is slowly uncoiled from a reel, R, and passed to the drum, D, on which the finished wire is ultimately wound, and whose rotation causes the wire to travel through the various stages of the process. First it is passed into the hot gold-bath, E, heated by the furnace, F, and is maintained beneath the liquid by the

glass rollers, G G; here, by the current supplied through the platinum-wire anodes, A A, and pass through the wire to the connection with the battery at B, the gold is deposited upon it. Passing thence, the gilt wire is guided by two wooden rollers, W, to a cleansing-bath of potassium cyanide solution; from this it is lead into a vessel of clean wash-water, V, and finally between the calico-covered draining rollers, C, to the drying and annealing tube, T, which is maintained at a dull-red heat by a charcoal-furnace. Several parallel wires may, of course, be passed through the same process simultaneously.

Wire gauze, or fabrics of any kind, provided that they conduct electricity, may be similarly coated by passing them beneath a roller in the depositing trough, and winding them finally upon a reel or drum.

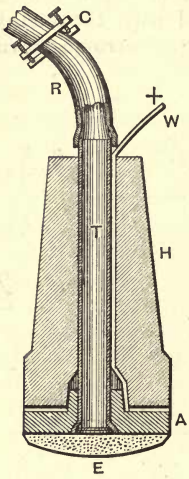


FIG. 58.—Wagener and Netto's 'doctor.'

Wagener and Netto's Doctor.—A device invented by Wagener and Netto for coating surfaces which are too extensive to immerse in a solution may well be noted as an application of ingenuity to the solution of a difficult problem, although it is really only a modification of the apparatus long since known as a 'doctor,' which is used for gilding the lips of ewers and the like (see p. 208). To a hollow wooden handle, H (fig. 58), is attached a circular anode, A, of the required metal perforated in the centre, and connected by a wire, W, with the positive pole of the battery; in close contact with the lower surface of A is a flannel pad, E, held in place by the brass tube, T, which passes through the length of the handle, and, being connected with the india-rubber tube, R, conveys the liquid electrolyte from any convenient receptacle to the pad, E. This pad must be kept constantly wet, and the flow of solution is regulated by the clip, C, upon the india-rubber tube. The surface to be coated is connected with the negative pole of the battery; now, by brushing the apparatus over the surface, electrolytic connection is made between it and the anode, A, through the solution with which the pad, E, is wetted; thus the electrolyte is decomposed and deposits its metal upon the required object, the thickness of film being regulated by the time during which the handle is held over each portion in succession. As the electrolyte is used up, fresh liquid is supplied through the central tube. For very irregular surfaces a long-haired brush, with short anode-wires admixed with the hairs, may be substituted for the sheet-anode and flannel-pad. Care must be taken, of course, as in all electro-depositing work, that the surfaces are perfectly clean before attempting to coat them.

Smith and Deakin's Rotatory Plating Apparatus.—In the plating, especially in the electro-nickeling and brassing of small goods, much time is lost in attaching the wires required to sus-

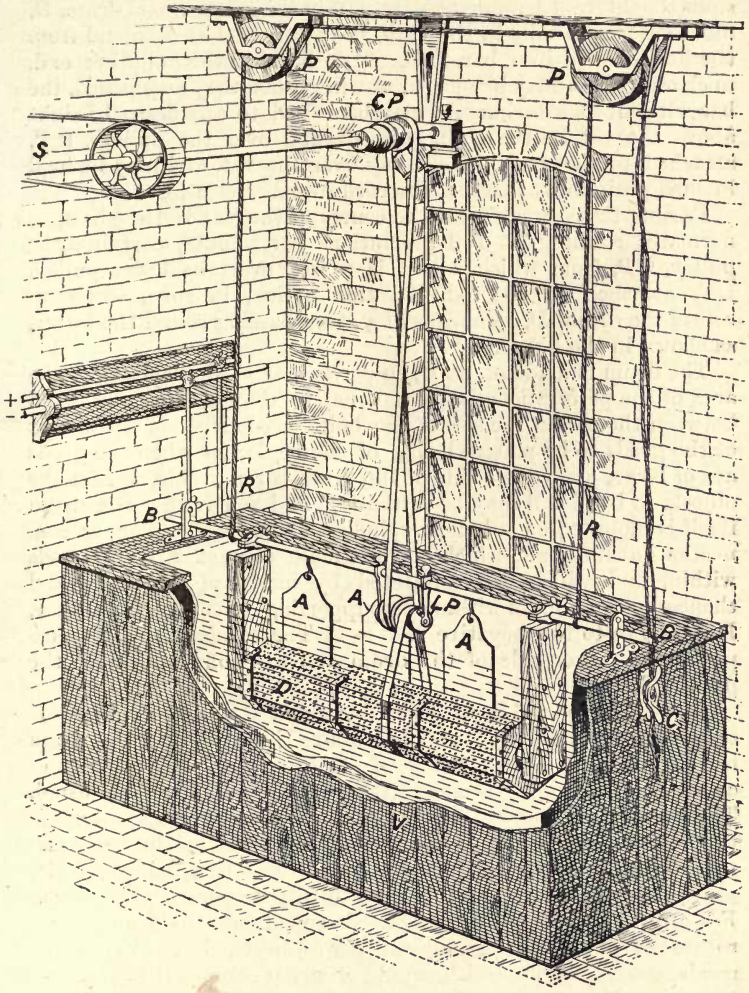


FIG. 59.—Smith and Deakin's rotatory plating apparatus.

pend them in the bath, and in polishing the goods after deposition. By placing the objects to be plated in a revolving drum and at the same time connecting them with the negative conductor from the dynamo, the difficulty has been obviated by Smith and Deakin in their 1896 patent. Fig 59, taken from a

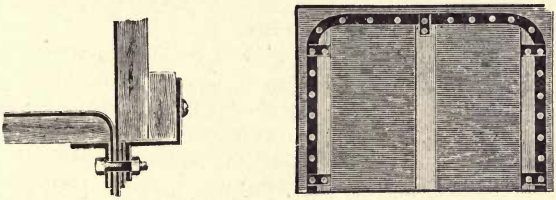
drawing supplied by the Electrolytic Plating Apparatus Company, shows the arrangement in use. V is an ordinary vat (part of the side being supposed cut away for the purpose of the illustration, to show the internal arrangements); within V is a hexagonal drum, D, mounted horizontally in the bath, and supported at each end from the longitudinal iron bar, B B. This bar is held at either end, in clamps which may be opened at will; when they are opened, the bar with all its attachments may be raised to any desired height above the vat by the cord, R R, passing over the pulleys, P P, attached to the roof immediately over the vat, and may be held in such position by bending the cord over the cleat, C.

Passing transversely over the centre of the vat is the shaft, S, normally running at 100 revolutions per minute, carrying the pulley, C P, from which a belt is passed over the lower pulley, L P, attached to the rod, R; this pulley, in turn, serves to rotate the drum, D, by means of a strap passing round the latter, as shown in the figure.

The drum is made of wood, so perforated throughout that the area of the perforations is about equal to that of the solid wood between them, and the size of the holes used depends upon that of the goods to be plated, being, of course, larger when the goods are of larger size. One side of the drum is removable, so that the objects to be plated may be introduced and removed. The drum itself is mounted on a hollow spindle or sleeve with copper connections at intervals, which serve to make contact with the goods within, and which are connected by means of the sleeve and thence by conductors within the supporting brackets to the bar, B B, and so to the negative lead −. The anodes, A A, are suspended on either side of the drum and are connected with the positive lead +.

In use the bar, B B, with the drum and attachments, is raised out of the vat, and supported just above the top rim; the drum is then half filled with the goods to be plated, which must, of course, be thoroughly cleaned with potash, and dipped as usual. The removable side is then fastened in place, and the whole is lowered until the drum is completely immersed in the bath, and the bar, B B, is gripped in its clamps. The belt being started, rotation is commenced and kept up until the operation is finished. For ordinary small goods, without sharp corners, the drum should rotate at about 55 revolutions per minute, but with heavy goods, especially those with square or sharp corners, it is preferred to reduce the speed to from 3 to 6 revolutions. The current-density and E.M.F. used, and hence the time required for plating, are the same as in the ordinary process. When the coat is sufficiently thick, the rod, B B, and the drum are again raised and supported above the vat; a tray is placed under the drum, the loose side is removed, the goods are turned out on to the tray, and are then washed and dried out without further treatment.

In this process the use of a polygonal instead of a circular rotating barrel causes the goods to be constantly turning over upon themselves so long as they are in the bath; it is therefore practically impossible that they should show anything corresponding to wiring-marks, such as are caused by surfaces remaining in contact and not becoming properly coated; moreover, as their relative positions are constantly changing, there is no fear of a permanent bad contact causing one piece to receive an insufficient contact. But it is not only in this direction that the apparatus is useful: the constant friction of surface against surface as the pieces tumble one upon another causes them to be constantly burnished, and in the end the goods are delivered in such a condition that they do not require to be polished. It is obvious that, in order to produce a good burnish, the goods must have freedom to move as the barrel rotates. If the drum be more than half filled, therefore, or if it be run at the lower rate of rotation, they will come out in such a condition that they will require



FIGS. 60 and 61.—Joints of lead-lined vats.

to be coloured—that is, finished by mopping, as explained on p. 122. When it is not desired that the pieces should be finished during the plating process, the barrel may be completely filled.

It should be unnecessary to remark that in any one operation all the goods under treatment should be of the same metal; if, for example, brass and iron ware be placed in the barrel together, there would be a danger of the iron becoming attacked to some extent before it is sufficiently protected by a film of metal. It is recommended in using this process to deposit nickel or brass directly upon iron or steel without an intermediate coppering. In nickeling, the patentees prefer to employ a somewhat alkaline solution at a density of 1·057 (8° Bé), and at a temperature of over 60° F.

Joints of Lead-lined Vats.—Figs. 60 and 61 illustrate a simple method of making the joints of lead-lined wooden vats without having recourse to autogenous soldering. It was used successfully at the Casarza Copper Extraction Works. It will be seen that one sheet of lead is bent over at right angles outside the wooden side of the vat, whilst the sheet on the cross side is extended beyond the wood. Iron angles are attached to the wood, and the wood and lead are held firmly together by a series of bolts and nuts.

CHAPTER VI.

THE CLEANSING AND PREPARATION OF WORK FOR THE DEPOSITING-VAT, AND SUBSEQUENT POLISHING OF PLATED GOODS.

In this chapter it is proposed to treat of those adjunctory processes and arrangements which, not being purely electrolytic, and being common, moreover, to all branches of deposition, are less conveniently dealt with in the chapters devoted to electro-plating with the metals individually.

Objects must be Clean.—We have constantly urged that too much stress cannot be laid upon the necessity for absolute cleanliness in all operations, but this is especially to be observed in the preparation of the plate or object to receive the deposit, because the merest speck of tarnish, oxide, or grease—such as may result from merely fingering it—suffices to prevent the adhesion of the coating-metal at the points affected; the whole work may be ruined, the deposit may have to be removed, and the precipitation repeated from the beginning. Cleansing processes are, therefore, essential in every case; frequently, as when a bright deposit of a hard metal (*e.g.*, nickel) is sought for, it is necessary also to give the highest possible polish to the articles before immersing them in the depositing-vat. There are two systems of cleansing, chemical and mechanical, which must be varied to suit the metal which is to be coated.

Removal of Grease.—This is usually the first operation to be performed. Large amounts of oily or fatty matter should be removed by rinsing thoroughly in two washes of benzene. The benzene must be kept in tightly-closed vessels maintained in a cool position, as far as possible from any furnace or from artificial lights (excepting, of course, incandescent electric lamps) on account of its rapid evaporativeness and dangerously-inflammable nature. Benzene and benzoline exert merely a solvent action upon the grease, and so extract the greater portion of it. On removal from this liquid the goods should be well rubbed with a soft cotton cloth if they were originally very dirty, and may often receive a further dip into fresher benzene with advantage. The last trace of grease is removed by a more chemical treatment, such as immersion in boiling caustic potash solution. If the pieces

were not in bad condition at the outset, the mere application of the potash may suffice; indeed, it may be used alone in any case, but the time required for the treatment must then be extended in proportion to the amount of fatty matter to be removed.

The action of hot alkali on animal or vegetable oil, fat, or grease is to convert it into a soap. The fatty matter is a combination of a fatty acid with glycerine, and is not soluble in water; but, on heating with a caustic alkali, such as potash or soda, the fat is decomposed, the fatty acid combines with the alkali to form a soap, and the glycerine is set free. As both the soap and glycerine are capable of dissolving in water, it is obvious that the greasy mass, after saponification (as the soap-making process is termed), can be completely washed away in the excess water of the dip. The soap or soapy water must, however, be thoroughly rinsed off in fresh water before immersing the object in an acid dip, because acids decompose soap, combining with the alkali, and setting free the fatty acid which, being practically insoluble, would be almost as objectionable as the original grease. Hence the swilling away of the soap is as important as is the dip in potash itself.

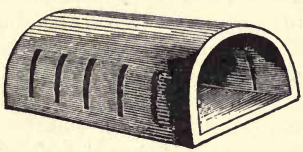


FIG. 62.—Muffle-furnace.

It must be remembered that the mineral oils and greases (paraffin, petroleum, vaseline, and the like) are chemically quite unlike the fatty oils, and are not decomposed by alkali, so that a potash or soda dip is useless for the cleansing of objects coated with such an oil, or with a mixture containing a mineral oil. Benzene or mineral naphtha dissolve them perfectly, and this treatment, in conjunction with scrubbing with lime, should be resorted to whenever this difficulty is met with.

The organic dirt is sometimes removed by heating the objects to dull redness on charcoal, or, preferably, in a *muffle*-furnace, which consists of a small fireclay oven (fig. 62), about 6 to 12 ins. long by 4 or 5 ins. wide and high, in which the objects are placed, so that they do not actually come into contact with the fuel, the burning charcoal or coke being built up around the muffle in a suitable furnace, and there is, therefore, no liability of their becoming injured by the impurities from the heating agent. All grease and other organic matter is thus completely destroyed, but the surface becomes covered with a film of oxide which must be thoroughly removed in the subsequent acid dip; this usually imparts a dull or frosted surface to the metal, so that polishing should be resorted to before plating if a bright surface is ultimately required, especially when the covering metal is so hard that it will not itself admit of polishing. After this polishing the objects must be rapidly passed through the potash-vat, and again through the acid-baths, to ensure perfect cleanliness prior to the

actual plating operation. The heating process being really one of annealing, rolled, hammered or worked metal becomes softened and so far altered in character that many articles, such as spoons, forks, or dessert-knives, which are purposely left unannealed, and, therefore, hard, are rendered practically useless; this alteration is indicated by the loss of the characteristic metallic ring that should be emitted by striking the object in its hardened condition. It is, of course, unnecessary to remark that bodies which have a low fusing-point, such as tin, lead, pewter, Britannia metal, and the like, cannot be submitted to the fire treatment. This method is not, therefore, of universal application, and, indeed, is rarely, if ever, to be preferred to the other processes here described.

The potash-tank is best constructed of wrought-iron, which may be heated by setting it over a gas stove or charcoal fire, but more conveniently, when a supply of steam is available, by forcing the steam through a spiral or series of iron pipes placed within the vessel and close to the bottom. As the final stages of the cleansing process should be conducted as close to the depositing-vats as possible, so that no time may be wasted between the operations, it is frequently convenient to utilise steam, which has been previously employed in a steam-jacket or coil of pipes, for heating the latter vessels whenever the plating-solution is to be worked hot. In this case the pipes in the potash-tub may be perforated, so that the steam and condensed water may pass into the liquid itself, which is thus maintained in constant motion, while the amount of water lost by gradual evaporation is compensated for. Such a system of heating compares favourably with the direct application of solid, liquid, or gaseous fuel, inasmuch as there is a greater choice of materials from which to construct the containing vessel. When external heating arrangements are adopted, the vat must be of fairly thin metal, to minimise the loss of heat-energy, and must be carefully supported to avoid strains from the weight of the liquid; but with internal steam-heating by coils of pipes, whether closed or perforated, any material which will resist the chemical action of the hot alkali is available, and the tank may have any convenient size, thickness, or shape. An extension of the steaming system, much to be recommended, is to continue the solid-walled pipe from the potash-vat into a second vessel, there discharging the steam from the orifices of a perforated pipe into the water, which is used for rinsing the pieces after removal from the alkaline solution.

The cleansing liquid is a 5 or 10 per cent. solution of caustic potash or caustic soda in water; if these be not available, sodium carbonate (washing soda) may be substituted, but its effects are not comparable with those of the caustic alkali, and it demands a far more protracted steeping of the articles to be cleansed. Since the caustic alkalies gradually become carbonated by the

absorption of carbonic acid from the air, and since they also become gradually saturated with greasy matter, forming soapy substances by combination with them, fresh potash (or soda) must frequently be added to restore the strength of the bath; this precaution must be most carefully observed, as the bath soon becomes useless for its work, and the process then begins to give unsatisfactory results. To check this formation of carbonates by exposure to the air, the potash-vats should be closed with a tightly-fitting cover whenever they are not in use, and are not being heated. The caustic alkalies readily attack tin and lead and allied metals, and for this reason a prolonged potash dip must never be given to any objects made entirely, or in large part, of these metals (pewter, Britannia metal, and similar alloys), or to any which are joined by tinman's soft solder, which is an alloy of tin and lead; if applied at all to these bodies, the dip must be momentary; but whenever practicable it should be avoided altogether, inasmuch as a rapid dip does not afford sufficient security for that absolute cleanliness and freedom from grease which is quite indispensable. For such metals, and for any which it is undesirable to heat to the temperature of the boiling alkali bath, a very thorough treatment with benzene or any simple solvent of fat may suffice; or the pieces may be carefully rubbed by means of a brush with a paste of very finely-crushed whiting and water, taking care that neither the fingers nor any greasy material be allowed to come into contact with the cleaned surfaces.

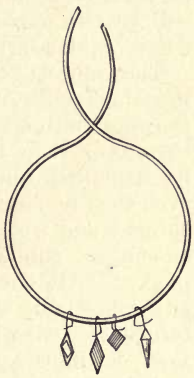


FIG. 63.—Copper dipping-wire.

FIG. 64.—Earthenware dipper.

In using the potash dip, the small pieces should be slung upon copper wires if convenient (fig. 63), or held in perforated bowls of glazed earthenware (fig. 64), or in a copper wire sieve (larger articles are suspended singly from suitable hooks), and must be allowed to remain in the bath, with frequent agitation, for a space of time ranging from half a minute to ten minutes or a quarter of an hour, according to the amount of impurity to be removed. On completion of this treatment the articles are immediately plunged into a large volume of hot water; and, after this preliminary rinsing, are rapidly and thoroughly washed by passing through successive wash-waters, which may be used cold; they should then be transferred at once to the acid-baths, and thence to the plating-vats. From the moment they enter the potash-tank, they

must on no account be touched with the fingers or with any surface that may be oily or greasy. The reason is not far to seek. Oil and water are not miscible, and if even the smallest patch be ever so slightly greased, water will be repelled from that point, so that the acids cannot effect the work required of them, nor will the electrolytic solution be able to come into contact with the metal surface, with the result that this portion will be left uncoated, or at best covered with a non-adherent deposit which forms on the greasy matter.

The object being removed from the potash-vat, and now unstained with grease, the liquid in the plating-baths can make the most intimate contact with its surface in every part; and, therefore, when the current is passed, the required metal may be deposited uniformly over the whole article; but it would even then be found to have little or no adhesion to the surface covered and would strip off when subjected to a very moderate amount of rubbing—most probably during the final polishing process. All objects which have been exposed to the air for any appreciable time after polishing are covered with a film of tarnish or rust, which is insoluble in potash and may be so thin as to be imperceptible, but which, by interposition between the two surfaces, prevents true metallic contact and consequently destroys adhesion. This film must, therefore, be most carefully detached, which is best accomplished by immersion in a bath of acid, or of a solvent suitable to the metal under treatment. The acid dip constitutes the final preparation for the plating-bath, and should leave a chemically-clean surface for the reception of the coating metal. After washing, tarnishing again takes place by unnecessary exposure to the air; and it is thus important that the object should be transferred with the highest rapidity from the acid-bath to the wash-waters, and from these to the electrolytic solution.

Copper, *brass*, *German silver*, and other alloys, of which the chief constituent is copper, are, as already indicated, cleaned and brightened by dipping into acid after removal from the potash solution. The common nitric acid of commerce, which emits red fumes and is known in the trade as *nitrous acid*, is very generally used for the acid dip; it consists of nitric acid in which lower oxides of nitrogen are dissolved, and the waste nitric acids from used Grove's or Bunsen's battery cells are not unsuitable for the work. It is used undiluted; the articles to be dipped are slung on wires or in the baskets already described; baskets of platinum-wire mesh are sometimes used for small articles, and as they are quite unattacked by the acid, and therefore neither weaken nor contaminate the liquid, they are to be preferred to all others; the prime cost alone is against them, but they soon repay this expenditure by their indestructibility and by the greater comfort and saving in their use. Since the acid exerts a powerful action

upon the metal of which the articles are made, and the film of oxide is instantaneously cleared from the surface, the plunge into acid must be but momentary; the objects are then rapidly transferred to a vessel containing a large volume of water, and are afterwards washed again and again, the last time in quite clean water. It is false economy in electro-plating to stint wash-waters at any stage. Another acid dip, sometimes used in preference to the above, is made by mixing together, little by little and with the utmost care, equal volumes of strong sulphuric acid and water, and adding to each gallon of the mixture one pint of the common *aqua fortis* (nitric acid) of commerce. The subsequent manipulations are similar to those already described. A dead or dull surface may be given by plunging the article, previously dipped in nitric acid, into Roseleur's mixture of 200 parts of yellow nitric acid, 100 of oil of vitriol, and 1 part of common salt, together with from 1 to 5 parts of zinc sulphate (white vitriol), which should be made up the day before it is required for use. After remaining in this liquid for several minutes (from five to fifteen or even twenty) the articles are removed, plunged momentarily into a bright-dipping bath, to restore a certain amount of the brilliancy which is generally too thoroughly removed in the dead dip, and are then rinsed as usual.

A bright lustre is given by placing for a few seconds in a mixture of the yellow nitric acid and oil of vitriol in equal parts, with 0·5 per cent. of common salt; like the last, this mixture should be made up the day before it is required, or earlier, in order that it may be quite cold when required. Instead of this solution, a mixture of 1½ to 2 parts of sulphuric acid with 1 part of an old nitric acid dip is frequently used; after mixing these acids, they should be put aside to cool, and decanted from any crystals of copper sulphate which may be formed by the action of the vitriol upon the copper contained in the old *aqua fortis* (due to the partial solution of the objects that have been immersed in it). Small proportions of hydrochloric acid or of sodium chloride, which by contact with the vitriol liberates hydrochloric acid, or of lamp-black are sometimes added to this solution.

Potassium cyanide, dissolved in ten times its weight of water, is often used instead of the acid dip for brass, especially when it is essential that the original polish upon the article should not be destroyed, as in the preparation of the objects for nickel-plating. A longer immersion in this liquid is to be recommended because the metallic oxides are far less readily soluble in this than in the acid dips. In all cases the final cleansing in water must be observed.

Iron and steel articles, which have been thoroughly polished, are dipped first into the boiling potash solution, and then, when thoroughly cleansed from grease, into a pickle consisting of water

containing 10 per cent. of sulphuric or nitric acid or 25 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. Iron is vigorously attacked by acid, and by long immersion becomes unevenly dissolved and pitted. Cast-iron and steel also are liable to have a film of carbon and other insoluble impurities on the surface after pickling. Some operators therefore prefer, when possible, to substitute for pickling a mechanical process, such as that described on p. 117. When the metal is covered with oxide or scale, as after forging or heating to redness, more vigorous measures are needed to effect their removal; the objects are first suspended for two or three hours in a bath of dilute sulphuric acid (2 or 3 per cent. of acid for wrought-iron or steel, about 1 per cent. for cast-iron), which dissolves a little of the oxide and loosens much of the remainder, so that, after washing well with water, it may, for the most part, be detached by scouring with very fine sand. A second dip into the acid usually removes the last portions of scale; but, if necessary, the process must be repeated until the pieces are perfectly clean.

Zinc is first passed through the potash-bath, which exerts a distinct solvent action upon it, so that the process must be expedited, and is next dipped for a few minutes into water containing 10 per cent. of sulphuric acid; the mixture of acids used for bright-dipping brass (50 sulphuric acid, 50 nitric acid, and 0·5 salt) is sometimes used, but as it violently attacks the zinc, the operation of dipping must be rapidly effected, and the subsequent washing must be immediate and thorough. After treatment by either of these processes, scouring with fine sand and clean water must be resorted to, which has the effect, *inter alia*, of obliterating the black lines that indicate the position of solder after dipping in the acids.

Lead, *tin*, *Britannia metal*, and the like are very rapidly passed through the potash-bath, or, as already described, are scoured with whiting and water subsequent to cleansing in benzene, if this be necessary by reason of extreme greasiness. They should be polished finally by rubbing with lime, even after the potash dip; they then require only to be well rinsed in water to be ready for the electrolytic vat.

Aluminium articles are not easily plated. Burgess and Hambuechen recommend that the article be first cleaned in dilute hydrofluoric acid until it is suitably roughened; then rinse in running water, dip for a few seconds in a mixture of 100 parts sulphuric acid and 75 parts of nitric acid (both concentrated); rinse again and transfer to a zinc-plating solution. The latter consists of a mixture of zinc and aluminium sulphates, slightly acidified, to which is added 1 per cent. of hydrofluoric acid in the equivalent amount of potassium fluoride. A current-density of 10 to 20 amperes per sq. ft. is used. After a deposit of zinc has been thus obtained, a coating of any other metal may be deposited.

All acid pickles used for different classes of work should be

kept distinct from each other, so that one metal may not be dipped into a solution containing a more electro-negative metal, which would deposit upon it by chemical exchange. For example, zinc or iron must not be immersed in a pickle which is used for cleansing copper articles, because a certain amount of copper gradually dissolves into the liquid as successive objects are dipped, and this copper tends to deposit upon the more electro-positive metals afterwards brought into contact with it.

Electrolytic Cleaning. — During recent years electrolytic methods of cleaning have come into use. The method of the Vereinigte Elektricitäts Aktien Gesellschaft of Vienna is to use a solution of a salt of one of the alkali metals; if the object to be cleaned is of aluminium or zinc it is made a cathode, whereas if it is of iron or copper it is made an anode, carbon being the other electrode in each case. In the former case an aluminate or zincate is formed, and when this diffuses sufficiently to meet the acid formed at the anode it is decomposed, and the hydroxide of the metal is precipitated; in the second case, a salt of the metal is formed, and this diffuses until it meets the caustic formed at the cathode, when precipitation again occurs. Thus the metal is regenerated, and the dissolved metal is collected as a precipitated hydroxide.

C. J. Reed has found the electrolytic method of pickling iron as cathode in dilute sulphuric acid effective under the following conditions: temperature 60° C., specific gravity of acid 1·25, and current-density about 70 amperes per sq. ft. If the current-density is low the iron becomes attacked, and the scale consisting of Fe_3O_4 is reduced but slowly; whereas if the current-density is high the solvent action on the scale becomes very rapid and the chemical action on the iron is entirely prevented. Under these conditions the heaviest scale is removed in two or three minutes.

For cleaning iron and brass articles, H. S. Coleman recommends a potash-bath, preferably hot. This may be contained in an iron tank which is made the cathode, the articles to be cleaned being the anode. With a current-density of 8 amperes per sq. ft., any grease and dirt is readily removed in five to ten minutes, but a stain is left; the latter is removed by reversing the current for a short time (thirty to forty seconds) as soon as the stain appears. It was found that work was cleaned thoroughly in all parts in one-third the time occupied by the old method of scouring by hand, and thus the electrolytic method was adopted. This method has the further advantage that the articles are not handled after the cleaning, but being already wired up they are merely passed through water and dipping solutions, and are at once ready for the plating bath.

Quicking.—Many articles are 'quicked' before being subjected to the operation of depositing other metals, especially silver and

gold, upon their surfaces. This simply consists in giving them a superficial amalgamation by the deposition of a thin film of mercury, in order that many metals, which alone would deposit the coating-metal from the plating-liquors by simple immersion, may be rendered practically incapable of so doing, the resulting deposit being more adhesive and of better quality in consequence.

But quicking is also often resorted to in order to increase the adhesiveness of deposited metals on objects which would have no action on the bath; for the mercury, being but little liable to tarnish by oxidation, retains a bright surface when exposed to the air for a period which would suffice to produce a film of oxide upon an unquicked surface, and thus prevent adhesion. Moreover, the solvent action of the mercury on both surfaces (especially on gold and silver) tends to unite the two metals in the most intimate contact, and may even, by interamalgamation, form a superficial alloy which would thus make adhesion perfect.

The principal metals so treated are copper, brass, German silver, and the like, previous to gold- and silver-plating, and zinc prior to nickeling. The quicking-solutions more commonly used are: the per-nitrate or proto-nitrate of mercury, the strength ranging from 1 to 2 oz. per gallon (Roseleur recommends 1 part of mercuric (per-)nitrate and 2 of sulphuric acid to 1000 parts of water); or the cyanide of mercury, which is made either by adding a solution of potassium cyanide to one of a mercury salt (nitrate, chloride, or sulphate), until no further precipitate is produced, allowing the cyanide of mercury to subside, washing it two or three times with water by alternately stirring it up, allowing it to settle and pouring off the clear liquor from the precipitate, then dissolving it in a further quantity of potassium cyanide and diluting with water; or by dissolving mercuric (per-) oxide directly in potassium cyanide solution.

The objects are merely dipped into these solutions, when metal is superficially dissolved from them and mercury is deposited in its place by simple chemical exchange. The duration of the dip, never much more than momentary, is governed by the amount of mercury to be deposited, which in turn depends upon the thickness of the object to be plated and that of the coat to be applied. Usually a thick object and a thick coating demand, or at least permit, a heavier mercury deposit than thinner ones, which are more liable to become brittle, and for which a mere momentary immersion will suffice. The character of the basis-metal[1] also influences the time required for mercury-deposition, inasmuch as the electro-positive metals have a more rapid action than those which are more electro-negative. Zinc, especially, requires

[1] The word *basis-metal* is here applied to the metal which forms the object or base upon which an electro-deposit is ultimately to be given; the term *base-metal*, though more euphonious, has a second signification which might prove to be misleading.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

careful quicking, as it not only deposits the mercury with rapidity, but is very readily penetrated by it, and is rendered brittle in consequence. The quicking-bath should be of such a strength that copper plunged into it becomes immediately covered with a silvery-white metallic film. The use of old or dilute solutions should be discontinued when they begin to yield a dark or almost black deposit of mercury, which is worse than useless, because the electro-deposited metal refuses to adhere to it. If the liquid be too strong, or contain too large an excess of free nitric acid, a similar result obtains; it is, however, easy to decide to which cause failure is to be attributed.

If the pieces have not been properly cleansed, the quicking-solution will give an irregular, patchy or discoloured film, instead of a clear silver-like uniform coat, owing to the presence of foreign bodies such as grease or oxide.

Mechanical Treatment.—Scouring with sand or pumice is best conducted on a wooden board placed above a tub containing the water or liquid to be used. The scouring brush should be made with moderately hard bristles (hogs' hair is generally preferred), and is used by plunging it into the water, withdrawing it, shaking gently to remove the excess of the liquid, dipping in the powdered pumice-stone, and at once rubbing it over the whole surface of the object. To yield good results, the brush must be constantly charged with the powder, but while keeping it thoroughly moist, excess of water is to be avoided; the dipping into water and powder may thus have to be frequently repeated if the object be at all large. When the scouring is not to be followed by a potash dip, the pieces should not be touched with the bare hands, and both brushes and powder must be examined to see that there is no trace of greasy matter attached to them.

In preparing metal for the chemical treatment previous to actual electro-deposition, the pieces should be polished at least in part; as a rule, however, it will be found that the coating-metal adheres less satisfactorily to a surface which is perfectly polished than to one which is in a slight degree, it may be almost imperceptibly, roughened. Nevertheless, the polishing must be so far completed that all marks of the file or tool are obliterated, and the whole surface has only a regular, and hence almost invisible, roughness; for it is difficult to remove file-marks or scratches afterwards from the plated article without cutting through the coating, or at least rendering it dangerously thin.

Deep irregularities must first be removed, and this may necessitate the use of a file; the marks of the latter must now be erased by rubbing with some material such as emery; and this in turn leaves finer markings, still too coarse to be left untouched, and which necessitate the use of polishing tools. Of these the most successful are those which are caused to revolve rapidly in one plane by suitable mechanism, and which not only economise time,

but have a perfect regularity of action and produce true parallelism of the fine lines scratched by them. It is well known that the best surface is always obtained when the polishing tool is passed over it uniformly in the same direction, and that any motion which produces cross-lines, no matter how fine they be, and thus gives rise to cross-reflections of light, destroys the evenness of the appearance. Hand-polishing is especially liable to produce these cross-lines, and thus entails a greater expenditure of time and care.

Polishing-Lathe and Dolly.—The lathe-action is generally used for polishing; discs or *bobs* of stout leather, usually hippopotamus- or walrus-hide, about half-an-inch to one inch in thickness, and four or six inches in diameter, are rotated rapidly on the lathe-spindle by means of a treadle like that of a lathe or of a grind-stone, and while thus in motion the workman with one hand firmly presses the object to be polished against the lower side of the leather bob, while with the other he allows a gentle stream of fine sand to fall upon the top of the disc as it revolves towards him from above downwards. Trent sand is usually deemed most suitable for the work; it may be used repeatedly. The pieces may be first treated with fresh rough sand to obliterate the deeper markings, and afterwards with worn sand, which has been used many times. For this purpose the bobs should make 1500 or 2000 revolutions per minute, but this is a high rate of rotation to be maintained by a treadle action, and is, therefore, more satisfactorily communicated by steam-power. Fig. 65 shows a bench power-spindle suitable for this purpose; the base of the stand is bolted firmly to a strong table or bench; the spindle, S, has a screw at either end, to which the bobs, B B′, are firmly attached; and between the forked arms of the stand, which carry the bearings, D D, of the rotating spindle, are fast-and-loose pulleys, one of which is keyed firmly to S at A, so that when connected with a large pulley on the main shafting in the shop by means of a leather belt, it acts as a driven pulley and imparts the required motion to the bobs; the other is free to turn loosely upon S at C, so that when the belt is shifted to it from the driving pulley, it alone rotates, and the spindle remains at rest. A lever must be conveniently placed to shift the belt from the one pulley to the other at a moment's notice. Two workmen may use such a tool simultaneously; one standing at B applies the coarse sand only, and when the object is thus sufficiently treated, hands it on to the second operator at B′, who finishes it

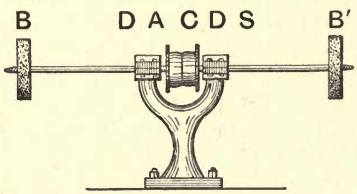


FIG. 65.—Bench power-spindle.

with the finer sand. Even now the metal is not absolutely bright, but requires a final polish with a finer material, which may be given by bobbing the article with a little fresh, finely-crushed quicklime (Sheffield lime is particularly well suited to the work) mixed with a little oil. The lime should be thoroughly caustic, and as it rapidly absorbs both carbonic acid and moisture from the air, it must be stored in air-tight closed boxes as soon as possible after burning, and should only be removed from these a little at a time as required for use. The last polish of all is given by a small quantity of lime applied without oil by the projecting edges of a series of calico rings clamped one upon another in a wooden holder with a central hole, by which it is screwed to the lathe-spindle in place of one of the bobs. This instrument is known as a *dolly*. Or a mop may be used for colouring the goods (see p. 122).

FIG. 66.—Short wire brush.

Scratch-brushing consists in submitting the surfaces of articles to the polishing action of a number of fine wires set on end. The wire selected for this purpose must be harder than the metal to be treated by it, or it will have little or no action, and may even cover its surface with a thin film of metal worn off from the wires by attrition; when, for example, nickel is scratch-brushed with brass wire the surface becomes quite yellow in tint; it must not only be relatively hard, but must also be actually and intrinsically rigid and stiff, so that the points shall not be readily bent over out of shape when in use. Hard-drawn thin brass wire, which may be made partially or wholly soft if required, by suitable annealing, is the usual material for scratch-brushes, but occasionally steel, or even spun-glass, may be employed for treating extremely hard surfaces.

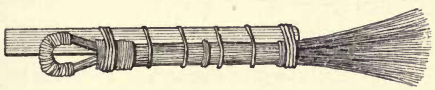


FIG. 67.—Long wire brush.

Hand scratch-brushes are about 6 or 8 ins. long, and are made by firmly binding a large number of wires in the middle so that they form a compact bundle, with the ends free for the space of half an inch to an inch. One end is then dipped into soldering fluid (hydrochloric acid, in which as much zinc as possible has been dissolved) and then into a ladle of melted soft solder, firmly to unite the various wires and so form a solid brush; the whole is then mounted on a wooden handle for convenience, with the free ends of the wires extending beyond the handle, as in fig. 66. Occasionally a double length of the wires is taken, and they are simply bent over upon themselves and bound round the centre, leaving a loop at one end, and are afterwards mounted as before on a wooden handle (fig. 67); but it is less easy to produce

regularity in the laying of the wires by this means. Either of these brushes may be used upon small surfaces; for large areas,

FIG. 68.—Wire scrubbing-brush.

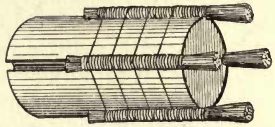


FIG. 69.—Machine brush.

the wires are mounted in handles in the form of a scrubbing-brush, as shown in fig. 68.

When the motion is to be applied to the brushes by machine power—and this method is to be preferred to hand labour—a number (4, 6, 8 or more) of hand-brushes may be mounted on the periphery of a wooden drum, as indicated in fig. 69; or a better form is made by setting the wires radially in a circular handle, so as to form a disc of from 5 to 6 ins. in diameter (fig. 70). Both forms of circular brush are mounted on the spindle of the lathe, or on that driven by machine power, shown in fig. 65.

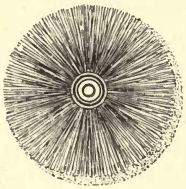


FIG. 70.—Rotary machine brush.

For surfacing the interiors of vessels, a brush of the shape indicated in fig. 71 is useful, or on an emergency an old hand scratch-brush may suffice, the wires of which have become turned over at the points.

In using any of these brushes, a liquid lubricating medium is employed; this is most generally stale beer, but many other liquids, such as crude tartar dissolved in water, diluted vinegar, or decoction of soap-wort, are supposed by some operators to produce a better effect, and are, accordingly, substituted for it. The brushes are useless when the ends of the wires have turned over upon themselves; if they cannot then be straightened by means of a wooden mallet, the extreme tips must be cut off by a sharp metal chisel. The circular lathe-brush should be mounted upon the spindle, sometimes on one side, sometimes on the other, so that the direction of rotation is reversed, and the wires strike the object alternately with different sides of their surfaces; thus the latter are not unduly bent in one direction. It is essential that the wires be kept in good order, and an occasional dip into potash to remove grease, or into the acid dip to remove oxide, may have to be resorted to.

FIG. 71.—Wire brush for inner surfaces.

The hand-brush is used by holding it in the same manner as,

and imparting to it somewhat the motion of, a paint-brush. The lathe-brush is mounted upon a spindle, and should be arranged with a small reservoir above to contain the lubricating fluid, a small pipe with a tap serving to conduct the solution from this to a point immediately above the rotating brush, upon which the drops fall at intervals; the piece is held firmly underneath the brush, but slightly on the side nearer the operator, so as to meet the wires as they descend. Around the brush is a metal screen to prevent splashings produced by the rapid rotation, and beneath it is a tray with an overflow pipe conducting to a receptacle placed below, to retain the waste solution for use again.

The operation of scratch-brushing is had recourse to after deposition, in order to brighten the dull deposit; sometimes even at intervals during the process to secure a good coating; sometimes beforehand to brighten the object finally before immersion in the plating-vat. Whenever it is used prior to or during deposition it is obvious that every trace of the lubricating liquid must be washed away before placing, or replacing, the article in the bath.

When a large amount of work has to be handled, more particularly if the objects to be cleaned are of iron, or if the surfaces are so shaped that they cannot be conveniently reached with brushes, sand blast is preferable. Wooden wheels, covered on the edge with leather which is coated with emery, are also used for grinding.

Burnishing.—This is a process finally applied to polishing silver and some other deposited metals, and consists in rubbing the whole surface under considerable pressure by a very hard and, at the same time, highly-polished surface; it may be effected after scratch-brushing the articles, or is often used as a substitute for this latter operation. The burnishing tools are usually made of steel for the first or *grounding* process, and of a very hard stone, such as agate or blood-stone, for finishing.

These tools must be kept in the highest degree polished by rubbing them vigorously with very finely-crushed crocus- or rouge-powder on a strip of leather, fastened upon a piece of wood which is placed in a convenient position upon the working bench. The burnishers are of various shapes to suit the requirements of different kinds of work, the first rough burnishing being often accomplished by instruments with comparatively sharp edges, while the finishing stages are accomplished with rounded ones. The annexed sketch (fig. 72) illustrates a few of the patterns commonly employed. Soap suds may be used to lubricate and moisten the burnishers.

Silver-plated goods may be readily polished by submitting them to the action of the lathe-bobs, such as those already described, or of wood covered with leather, or of brushes, upon which is maintained a small quantity of tripoli-powder mixed with a few

drops of oil. The last polish is given, either by the application of rouge by constant rubbing with the fleshy portions of the hand, or by a dolly, termed a *mop*, in which swan's-down is substituted for the calico between the wooden clamps (see p. 119), using with it the finest possible paste of rouge-powder, entirely free from gritty matter, which would destroy rather than improve the existing polish. This mopping is commonly known as *finishing* or *colouring*, and gives the final perfect polish.

The results of scratch-brushing and burnishing are quite different, and each system has its own special advantage. Electro-deposited metal is always crystalline, however close the texture may be; and being thus made up of an aggregation of minute crystals, the light falling upon it is not evenly reflected, but is more or less scattered by the varying facets of the crystalline surface; and thus, although metallic, it has a *dead lustre*. Scratch-brushing followed by buffing, or bobbing, has the effect of very slightly flattening the projecting portions downwards upon the surface, but mainly of grinding them off until they are level with the lowest portions, and so, a perfectly even and uniform surface being produced, light is reflected as it were from a mirror; but no practical alteration of the physical condition of the coating results. Burnishing, on the contrary, scarcely effects any grinding of the irregularities, but rather produces the level surface by flattening the raised portions into adjacent cavities, so that the pressure exerted tends to fill up any pores or inter-crystalline spaces, and so to yield a more solid coat. Thus burnishing produces a denser, more durable, and more solid covering, but the colour and general appearance is somewhat less satisfactory, possibly because the irregularities are merely rounded off and not entirely effaced, so that the surface is not so absolutely true as that yielded by good buffing and dollying.

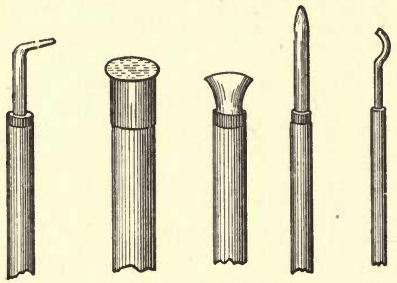


FIG. 72.—Burnishers.

Steel, which is too hard to be polished by the methods given above, should be rough-polished with the emery-wheels, then *glazed* by the action of bobs of wood covered with leather, to which a mixture of the finest emery-powder with oil is applied. A strip of a soft alloy of lead and tin is sometimes substituted for the leather upon the bob. The finishing polish is administered with the best crocus-powder.

For *nickel deposits* the object should be thoroughly polished so as to obliterate tool marks. At the same time, as above pointed

out, the polish must not be too good, or the nickel will not adhere properly, and will be liable to strip. Iron or steel objects to be nickel-plated may with advantage be placed in boiling potash, removed, and allowed to cool without swilling. They may then be polished well with fine sand and water, which cleanses them mechanically from soapy matter, and leaves very fine scratches into which the preliminary coating of copper keys so that it adheres well. The objects may be coppered without an acid pickle, and after coppering they are well swilled, polished again with sand and water, and nickeled immediately.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF COPPER.

It is frequently necessary to give a coating of copper to metals, chiefly to those, such as iron, which are more electro-positive, occasionally with the object of imparting to them the external characteristics of copper, but more often in order to enable them to receive a good deposit of a less electro-positive metal. But by far the most extensive application of electro-plating with copper is to be found in electrotyping, or obtaining *facsimile* copies of various objects for the use of the printer or sculptor. The (acid) copper solutions present fewer difficulties in management than perhaps those of any metal, permitting at once a wider range of current-strength and a greater variation of bath-composition.

Coating by Simple Immersion.

Iron.—Iron is practically the only metal that is coated with copper by simple immersion, and only small articles of this body are usually so treated. An acid solution of copper sulphate, made by dissolving about 2 oz. of the blue salt in a gallon of water, and adding about 1½ to 2 oz. of sulphuric acid, may be employed with advantage, but considerable latitude is permissible in the proportions adopted. The deposition of the copper upon the surface of the iron is almost instantaneous, and, indeed, a long exposure in the solution produces a slimy precipitate which has almost no adhesion to the basis-metal; such a deposit, Roseleur recommends, should be mechanically consolidated and attached by rolling, if the metal be in the form of sheet, or by passing through the dies of a wiredrawer's plate, if it be in the condition of wire. Before dipping any iron or steel article into the copper solution, it must be thoroughly cleansed by plunging it consecutively into the caustic alkali liquids and the suitable acid dips, or by an alkali-dip followed by scouring, as described in the last chapter; then, when thoroughly cleansed, it is immersed in the copper-bath.

Steel Pens.—Steel pens may be coppered superficially by treatment in the liquid already described, but are more satisfactorily

coated by thoroughly stirring them, after cleansing, in sawdust moistened with a solution of half an ounce of copper sulphate with a like weight of sulphuric acid per gallon of water. The mixture is usually effected in a barrel or drum mounted upon a horizontal axis. The long hexagonal drum outlined in fig. 73 is a convenient arrangement for this purpose. It is mounted so that it may be turned on its horizontal axis, the pins at either end resting in bearings upon the upright supports; one side is hinged, so that it may be opened to admit or discharge the damp sawdust and pens, and when closed is held in position by a suitable catch. An improvement upon this form may be made by substituting short lengths of tube for the pins at the ends of the drum, and instead of causing them to rotate within bearings, passing a fixed rod completely through the drum, so that the tubes turn upon this rod which is held firmly by the uprights, and which carries fixed arms within the drum. Thus, on rotating the latter, the contents are turned over, and are more thoroughly mixed together by the arms or beaters stationary within it. The fixed rod and beaters should be made of brass or of iron completely sheathed in copper. In using the apparatus, it is first half-filled with the moistened sawdust, then the pens are introduced; the lid is closed and fastened in place, and the drum is rapidly rotated on its axis for a few minutes, until it is judged that every pen has been thoroughly coated, when it is stopped with the door at the lowest point, and this being opened allows the contents to fall upon the floor. The mixture is now placed on brass sieves, the mesh of which is of such size that it passes the sawdust through, but retains even the smallest articles that have been treated; the sieves containing the latter are now plunged twice or thrice into fresh water, and the washed pens are transferred to a second rotating drum, in which they are dried by contact with hot, clean, and dry sawdust, which is subsequently separated from the finished nibs by means of sieves.

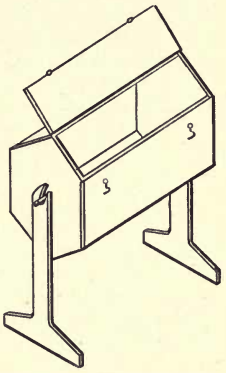


FIG. 73.—Mixing-drum.

Other solutions for coppering by simple immersion have been recommended, and notably those of Kopp, who coats iron in cupric chloride containing a little nitric or hydrochloric acids; and Puscher, who treats brass by exposing it to a solution of copper sulphate and ammonium chloride.

Obviously in all these processes the deposition of the copper is due to an exchange of a more electro-positive metal (*e.g.*, iron) for the copper contained in the solution; thus the latter gradually accumulates a large quantity of iron, while it loses a corresponding

amount of copper (56 of iron being equivalent to 63·5 of copper); and for this reason the bath must be watched to ensure that it is maintained at approximately the right strength.

The simple immersion process is not strictly electrolytic, but merges into a *single-cell* process when, as by Weil's method, a piece of zinc is placed in contact with the metal to be coated, to facilitate the deposition of the required metal from a solution which is tardy or inactive.

Single-Cell Process.

Weil's Process.—Weil's process, which he has used for coppering cast-iron pieces, even of large size, consists in dissolving 5½ oz. of copper sulphate, 13 oz. of soda-lime (containing 50 per cent. of caustic soda), and 24 oz. of potassium-sodium tartrate in each gallon of water, and in submitting each piece of iron, with a fragment of zinc attached to it, to the action of this solution. The zinc, being in metallic connection with the iron, sets up a current as it dissolves in the liquid, and deposits the copper, therefore, not on itself but upon the iron, to which it is electro-positive; the duration of the immersion may range from a few hours to several days, as the deposition proceeds very slowly.

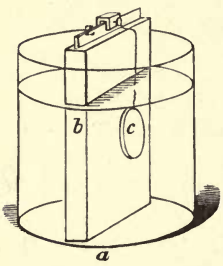


Fig. 74. — Single-cell depositing apparatus for one object.

The single-cell process was actually the source of all the others, for by its aid the art of electrotyping was first accomplished. In its simplest form it is well represented by the arrangement of Weil's which we have just described, but a porous cell is almost everywhere used to contain the zinc, so that it shall not be immersed in the copper liquid. Fig. 74 illustrates a depositing apparatus of this type; the outer jar, *a*, which may be made of glass or earthenware, is filled to about two-thirds of its height with a nearly saturated solution of copper sulphate, and contains an inner cell of porous earthenware, *b*, closed at the bottom, within which is a plate of zinc, *z*, standing in a moderately strong solution of common salt or sal-ammoniac, or, preferably, of dilute sulphuric acid. In the latter case the zinc must be amalgamated; the liquids in the two cells should stand at the same level. The zinc plate should project above the porous pot, and have soldered to it a piece of copper wire, which serves to connect it with the object to be electrotyped, *c*. Thus a species of Daniell-cell is formed, in which the zinc, dissolving in the acid liquid of the porous cell, deposits copper upon the conductor in the outer jar; and crystals of copper sulphate should be suspended in the liquid at the upper portion of the outer cell, to replace the metal deposited

from the solution upon the negative plate, just as they are in the ordinary battery-cell.

Several objects may be coated simultaneously without detriment to the working of the cell; all must, of course, be attached to the zinc, and they may be suspended around the central zinc plate, as indicated in fig. 75; the arrangement here figured on a small scale may be made of any required size by substituting wooden vats for the glass containing-vessel, and using porous cells and zinc plates of corresponding dimensions. In all the methods of deposition which we have been considering, one face only of the object is turned towards the zinc, and that face alone will receive a deposit of copper; this is suitable enough when it is only required to produce an electrotype from a coin, the two sides of which are separately treated; but when an object is to be completely covered with copper, prior to receiving a coating of a different metal, some such arrangement as that sketched in plan in fig. 76 is to be recommended. The object is suspended in the centre of the tub containing the copper solution from two cross-rods which rest on a circular wire connecting all the zincs in their separate porous cells, these being arranged around the circumference of the containing-vessel. In this manner the object to be coppered is completely surrounded with zincs, and the deposition proceeds with equal regularity on all portions. Porous diaphragms may be made of parchment-paper or of plaster of Paris, but are less satisfactory in use, and should only be adopted as a temporary substitute for the unglazed earthenware cells upon emergency.

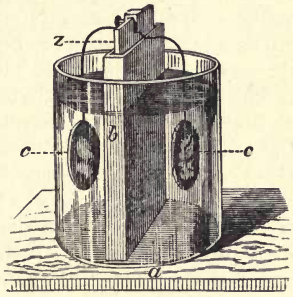


FIG. 75.—Single-cell depositing apparatus for two objects.

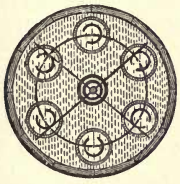


FIG. 76.—Arrangement for electrotyping all surfaces at once.

The single cell would seldom be used in practice when a separate battery-plant could be obtained, because it is more clumsy in its arrangements, the process is less under control, and the solution gradually becomes exhausted of copper unless well tended.

DEPOSITION BY BATTERY; OR SEPARATE-CURRENT PROCESS.

The principle of this process has already been fully explained; a current of electricity is passed from a copper plate (anode) to the object which is to be coated (cathode), both being immersed in a solution containing copper; a quantity of copper, depending

entirely on the strength of the current, is thus dissolved from the anode, and an equal amount is deposited upon the cathode. Such details as strength of current, duration of process, composition of bath, and disposition of plant must be determined by the character of the work under treatment. In the remainder of the chapter it is proposed to treat first of the electro-deposition of copper generally, then as applied to the covering of iron, brass, or other metals for protective, ornamental, or other purposes; while the electrotyping of printers' plates and art-electrotypy will be dealt with in a separate chapter.

The Battery.—The battery employed is very frequently that of Smee, which is a favourite with printers' electrotypers; the Daniell and bichromate, or modifications of them, are, however, also largely used. For the acid copper-baths a comparatively weak current of low electro-motive force is required, and any attempt to hasten the deposit by increasing the battery-power will result in defeat, owing to the production of brittle and crystalline or spongy copper. The alkaline bath requires a higher electro-motive force, such as would be provided by two, or even three, Bunsen- or bichromate-cells in series; but the volume of current must not be excessive, on account of the lower solubility of the anodes in the solution, which would lead to a portion of the ions deposited at the anode escaping without combining with copper, and this in turn would result in a lower rate of solution than of deposition, and so to a gradual impoverishing of the liquid. The number of cells to be used must depend upon the quantity of the work; with the acid copper-solution they will all be arranged in parallel and should be increased in number as the area of cathode surface is multiplied. A dynamo may, with great advantage, be substituted for the battery, but it must have a very low electro-motive force, and must, of course, be selected to suit this class of work.

The Solutions.—For coating metals which are less electro-positive than copper, and for the production of electrotype-plates, a simple solution of 1½ pounds of copper sulphate and ½ pound of concentrated sulphuric acid in each gallon of water, will be found to give excellent results with a current of about 1 ampere per square decimetre (= 0·064 ampere per sq. in., or 9·3 amperes per sq. ft.) of cathode surface. The bath should be made up by placing the weighed quantity of crystallised copper salt in a suitable vessel, and pouring upon it about four or five pints of boiling distilled or rain water, and stirring until the crystals have quite dissolved. If the solution be not now perfectly clear, owing to the presence of insoluble impurities in the copper sulphate, it must be filtered by passing it through a cone of blotting-paper fitted into a glass funnel (see p. 52), which will remove all mechanical impurities. The remainder of

the water, necessary to make up the solution to the volume of one gallon, is now added cold; and when the mixture is thoroughly cool, the sulphuric acid is cautiously added in a gentle stream, while the liquid is briskly stirred with a glass rod, or if glass be not at hand, with a clean wooden stick or a length of copper rod. Iron must on no account be used, nor may iron or zinc containing-vessels be employed to hold copper solutions, because these metals deposit a portion of the copper and contaminate the liquid by passing into solution themselves. Iron vessels, protected internally by a sound coating of enamel, may, of course, be used, but glass, glazed stoneware, or even wood is preferable, unless the enamel is frequently examined, to ensure that the iron is nowhere exposed to the solution.

For treating metals such as zinc and iron which, being more electro-positive than copper, would take a non-adhesive deposit in the acid solution we have just described, recourse must be had to a special bath. In the following table are given the percentage compositions of a number of different copper solutions which have been advocated by various authorities. It will be seen that the majority of these take advantage of the solubility of copper cyanide in the solution of potassium cyanide, while the remainder, for the most part, use copper oxide dissolved in alkaline liquids containing salts of tartaric acid. The chief variations are due to the substitution of copper acetate or of verdigris for the sulphate, and of the single tartrate of potash or soda for the double tartrate (of the two metals together), and in the addition of varying proportions of other substances which play a minor part in the action of the bath.

Of all these liquids, the bath of Roseleur is, perhaps, the most generally useful, as it is equally applicable to all metals, and may be worked at any desired temperature. It is best prepared by working up $3\frac{1}{4}$ avoirdupois oz. of copper acetate into a thick paste with a little water; then an equal weight of sodium carbonate crystals is added, with about $1\frac{1}{2}$ pints of water, and the whole is well stirred for a few minutes. An exchange thus takes place between the sodium carbonate and the copper acetate, with the result that the water contains copper carbonate in suspension and the sodium acetate in solution; $3\frac{1}{4}$ oz. of sodium bisulphite are now added in a second $1\frac{1}{2}$ pints of water; and finally the remaining 5 pints of water, containing $3\frac{1}{4}$ oz. of potassium cyanide, are introduced. The pale yellow-coloured precipitate produced on the addition of the bisulphite will be gradually dissolved on stirring with the cyanide, and should completely disappear after a few minutes, leaving a practically colourless solution. Should it not be so, a little more of the potassium cyanide must be added by degrees, until decolorisation is perfect. Failure in the first case is probably due to the use of more than usually impure potassium cyanide. If necessary, the

TABLE VIII.—Showing the Composition of Copper Baths, recommended by various Authorities.

				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	
				PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.															
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Bath.	Most suitable Temperature (F.).	Copper Acetate.	Copper Carbonate.	Copper Cyanide.	Copper Sulphate.	Potassium Cyanide.	Sodium Sulphite.	Sodium Bisulphite.	Ammonia (·880).	Caustic Soda.	Sodium Carbonate.	Potassium Carbonate.	Sodium-Potassium Tartrate.	Sulphuric Acid.	Cupro-Cuprie Sulphite.	Pure Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
1	....	Electrotype	Cold	..	..	..	150	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	50	..	1000	Dissolve 5 in 800 of 15; 1 and 8 in 200 of 15; mix.
2	Dépierre	Zinc rollers	..	14	..	..	..	20	..	..	8	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
3	Hossauer	..	113°–122° or cold	..	..	$8\frac{3}{4}$	..	34	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	*Vide* this volume, p. 141.
4	Japing	,,	..	14	..	..	..	20	12	..	8	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 5 and 6 in 800 of 15; proceed as above (Dépierre).
5	,,	,,	..	..	..	..	76	76 to 108	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in 450 of 15; mix with 5 dissolved in rest of 15.
6	Kasalowsky	..	Warm	20	..	..	..	28	8	..	12	..	20	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 5, 6, and 10 in 800 of 15; mix with 1 and 8 in 200 of 15.
7	Langbein	Iron and steel	..	$17\frac{1}{2}$	..	..	..	22	..	$17\frac{1}{2}$	..	..	$21\frac{1}{4}$	..	..	..	..	1000	*Vide* this volume, p. 141.
8	,,	..	Cold	..	..	..	..	22	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	$10\frac{1}{2}$	1000	*Vide* this volume, p. 141.
9	Roseleur	..	Hot or cold	20	..	..	..	20	..	20	..	..	20	..	..	..	..	1000	*Vide* this volume, p. 129.
10	,,	Iron and steel	Cold	19	..	..	..	16	..	20	14	..	40	..	..	..	..	1000	
11	,,	,,	Hot	20	..	..	..	22	..	8	12	..	20	..	..	..	..	1000	
12	,,	Cast-iron, tin, zinc	Hot or cold	14	..	..	..	16	..	12	8	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
13	,,	Zinc	Nearly boiling	18	..	..	..	22	..	4	6	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
14	Watt	,,	110°–130°	..	..	..	50	125	..	..	excess	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in 250 of 15, add excess of 8, and 250 of 15, add slowly (stirring) 5 in 500 of 15.
15	,,	Iron, zinc, &c.	..	..	..	..	12·5	37·5	..	..	12·5	..	..	25	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in water, add 8 and 11, then 5, and decant.
16	Weiss	Zinc	..	20	..	..	..	25	..	20	12	..	25	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 7 and 10 in 500 of 15 (=*a*); dissolve 5 in rest of 15 (=*b*); dissolve 1 in 8 (=*c*). Mix *a* and *c*; add *b*; boil and filter.
17	,,	Zinc, tin, lead, iron	..	..	..	..	30	25	..	20	..	..	65	..	..	..	..	1000	
18	Weil	,,	..	..	.	..	35	..	..	..	..	80	..	..	150	..	..	1000	

NOTE TO TABLE.—Cyanide of potassium containing 95 per cent. of pure salt is understood; if a less pure article be used proportionately more must be added The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various ingredients. *q.s.* = *quantum sufficit*.

bath should be finally filtered. When the bath is used hot (say at 65° C.), the quantity of copper may be increased and a stronger current may be used. Very good hot coppering baths may be made by Gore's formula (preparing the copper cyanide chemically), or by simply dissolving copper carbonate (which may be purchased) in a solution of potassium cyanide.

The alkaline baths require more careful watching than the acid liquors, owing to the comparative insolubility of the anode; if, on examination after use, the strength is found to be greatly diminished, it may be restored by adding to it a sufficient quantity of a copper cyanide solution prepared as follows:—A solution of sodium carbonate is added to one of copper sulphate until no further precipitate or cloudiness is observed on the addition of another drop of the soda solution. The mixture is allowed to stand until the copper carbonate which forms has subsided; the clear liquor is now poured off, and potassium cyanide solution is added until the whole of the slimy powder is redissolved to a colourless fluid. Or the cyanide solution may be added to bought sodium carbonate made into a paste with water. If, on the other hand, the use of too large anodes has charged the bath too highly with copper, it will have a bluish colour, which must be discharged by the addition of a sufficient quantity of potassium cyanide. The appearance of a white or pale brown precipitate on the anode indicates the necessity for a further addition of copper salt, which Roseleur recommends should in this case consist of the ammonium-copper acetate, formed by adding excess of ammonia to a solution of copper acetate, so that a perfectly clear intense blue liquid results; this liquid should be added little by little, until the blue shade produced by it in the solution disappears only with difficulty; any excess of copper may, of course, be neutralised by adding potassium cyanide. The use of much ammonia in hot baths is to be avoided on account of the pungent ammonia gas that is evolved. Where possible soda or potash should be substituted.

The acid baths are almost invariably used cold, for if allowed to become warm the resistance is diminished and the current may then be too intense to give a good deposit; the others are with advantage warmed—some even to boiling, as indicated in Table VIII. See pp. 98, 99, as to the necessity for stirring the solution and for the methods of stirring.

The Anodes.—These should be of the purest quality only; for electrotyping in all its branches it is well to use only electrotype-copper—that is, metal which has already been electro-deposited from a pure solution. If this cannot be obtained when required, the best rolled copper should be used, as it is likely to contain fewer impurities than the cast metal. The impurities in commercial copper are for the most part insoluble in the bath, and, therefore, gradually cover the anodes with a dark grey or black

slime, which accumulates on the surface as the copper dissolves, and by degrees becomes detached and sinks to the bottom of the bath; but remaining for a time suspended in the solution, especially if the bath is agitated as it should be, it tends partly to become attached to the cathode, and so to give rise to difficulties in deposition. The composition of the slime will manifestly depend upon the brand of copper used and the impurities which it contains; an analysis of a specimen by Maximilian, Duke of Leuchtenberg, in 1848, gave—33 per cent. of tin; 25 of oxygen; $9\frac{1}{4}$ of antimony, and an equal percentage of copper; $7\frac{1}{4}$ of arsenic; $4\frac{1}{2}$ of silver; $2\frac{1}{2}$ of sulphur; $2\frac{1}{4}$ of nickel; 2 of silica; $1\frac{1}{4}$ of selenium; and 1 of gold, with smaller proportions of cobalt, vanadium, platinum, iron, and lead. Other samples would contain bismuth in addition to the above. When this slime appears upon the anodes, they must from time to time be removed from the bath, rapidly washed with water, and returned.

The anodes in the case of copper should present approximately the same surface as the cathodes; any considerable departure from this rule will, on the one hand, cause an excess of copper to pass into the bath, especially if a very acid solution be employed; or, on the other, it will give rise to a decrease in the strength of the solution.

The Character of the Copper Deposited.—The copper deposited electrolytically may vary according to the conditions of working, from a loose black powdery deposit—such as results from using a strong current or weak solutions, or whenever hydrogen is deposited simultaneously with the copper—to a minutely crystalline, highly tenacious reguline metal, when the current is well proportioned to a solution of the right strength. The physical condition of the copper is a matter of prime importance to the electrotyper who, unlike the electroplater, is required to produce a thick deposit which must be sufficiently tough, pliant, and tenacious to withstand a considerable amount of rough usage, receiving at first no support from backing metal. The experiments of v. Hübl, to whom reference has been made in an earlier chapter, are of extreme interest in consequence of the light which they throw upon the relation of strength and toughness of electrotype-copper to the conditions of the depositing-bath.

Several points are clearly brought out by these tables, notably the disadvantages attending the use of weak and neutral solutions and of very weak or very strong currents. Thus, with a 5 per cent. solution, no current higher than 1 ampère per square decimetre may be used on account of the resulting deposition of hydrogen, while with a 20 per cent. solution the current-density may even rise to 3 or 4 amperes per square decimetre without ruining the deposit; further, the addition of acid to the weaker solution can alone render it fit for use, while even with the stronger solution it enables a smaller current to be employed successfully.

TABLE IX.—Showing the Effect of Varying Current-Strengths on the Copper Deposited from Neutral Copper Sulphate Solutions (*von Hübl*).

Intensity of Current in		Deposit from Solution with 5 per cent. Copper Sulphate.		Deposit from Solution with 20 per cent. Copper Sulphate.	
Amperes per sq. inch.	Amperes per sq. decimetre.	Appearance.	Character.	Appearance.	Character.
0·013	0·2	Very coarse crystals.	Very brittle.	Very coarse crystals.	Exceedingly brittle.
0·026	0·4	Coarse crystals.	Brittle.	Coarse crystals.	Very brittle.
0·052	0·8	Rather coarse crystals.	Fairly good.	Rather coarse crystals.	Very brittle.
0·193	3·0	*	*	Exceedingly fine grain.	Excellent.

TABLE X.—Showing the Effect of Varying Current-Strengths on the Copper Deposited from Copper Sulphate Solutions containing 2 per cent. of Free Sulphuric Acid (*von Hübl*).

Intensity of Current in		Deposit from Acid Solution with 5 per cent. Copper Sulphate.		Deposit from Acid Solution with 20 per cent. Copper Sulphate.	
Amperes per sq. inch.	Amperes per sq. decimetre.	Appearance.	Character.	Appearance.	Character.
0·013	0·2	Small crystals.	Somewhat brittle.	Small crystals.	Somewhat brittle.
0·026	0·4	Small crystals.	Good.	Small crystals.	Good.
0·052	0·8	Very small crystals.	Good.	Very small crystals.	Good.
0·077	1·2	*	*	Exceedingly fine grain.	Excellent.
0·258	4·0	*	*	Exceedingly fine grain.	Excellent.

* *Under these conditions hydrogen is evolved with the copper, and the deposit of the latter is, therefore, worthless.*

Very weak currents are clearly to be avoided, because they give a coarsely-crystalline and brittle deposit, while dilute solutions are more readily overburdened with current, so that the copper is spoiled.

In a second series of experiments, v. Hübl determined the maximum current-density which may be safely applied to the acid copper-solutions under certain varying conditions. See Table XI., page 134.

In a third series, the breaking weight, elasticity, and stretching-power under tensile (or pulling) stress were determined: new acid baths containing from 10 to 20 per cent. of copper sulphate, and old baths with from 5 to 20 per cent., were alike submitted

to the action of currents of different strengths. The conclusions which may be drawn from his results are :—

(1) That the actual strength of the deposited copper increases as the current-density rises from 0·61 to 3 amperes per square decimetre.

(2) That the amount of extension at the moment of rupture, under tensile stress, diminishes as the intensity of the current is increased between these limits.

(3) That the highest limit of elasticity is exhibited by copper deposited by a current of from 1 to 1·5 amperes per square decimetre.

(4) That the elasticity alone is practically affected by variations in the strength of the solution between 10 and 20 per cent. of copper sulphate, the limit of elasticity of the deposited metal increasing with the percentage of copper in the bath.

TABLE XI.—Showing the Maximum Current-Density for Electrotyping (*von Hübl*).

Composition of Solution.	With Solution undisturbed, Amperes		With Solution in gentle motion, Amperes.	
	Per sq. decimetre.	Per sq. inch.	Per sq. decimetre.	Per sq. inch.
15 per cent. copper sulphate, neutral	2·6 to 3·9	0·168 to 0·252	3·9 to 5·2	0·252 to 0·335
15 per cent. copper sulphate with from 2 to 8 per cent. sulphuric acid . .	1·5 ,, 2·3	0·097 ,, 0·148	2·3 ,, 3·0	0·148 ,, 0·193
20 per cent. copper sulphate, neutral	3·4 ,, 5·1	0·219 ,, 0·329	5·1 ,, 6·8	0·329 ,, 0·439
20 per cent. copper sulphate with from 2 to 8 per cent. sulphuric acid . .	2·0 ,, 3·0	0·129 ,, 0·193	3·0 ,, 4·0	0·193 ,, 0·258

Thus, to quote actual figures, in a new 20 per cent. bath containing 4 per cent. of acid, a current of 0·61 ampere per square decimetre yielded a copper which broke under a stress of 18·0 tons per square inch after stretching 27 per cent. of its original length; while a current of 2·22 amperes per square decimetre deposited a metal which required 23·6 tons per square inch to fracture it, but which only extended 16 per cent. In an old solution of equal strength, a current of 1 ampere per square decimetre produced a deposit which gave way at 17·2 tons per square inch, with 26·4 per cent. elongation; while the copper thrown down by a current of 2·5 amperes ruptured at 18·7 tons per square inch, at 25·1 per cent. increase of length; and that precipitated by 4 amperes per square decimetre yielded at only 15·3 tons per square inch under a stretch of 19·4 per cent.

The highest breaking stress in the whole series of trials was that of 23·6 tons per square inch above recorded; the greatest

extension was 33 per cent., shown by a metal deposited by a current of 1 ampere per square decimetre from a solution containing 15 per cent. of copper sulphate and 3 per cent. of sulphuric acid; but the breaking stress of this specimen was only 17·3 tons per square inch.

Some of these samples of copper may be said to compare not unfavourably even with good rolled copper, such as would ordinarily be used for engraved plates, which are required to withstand severe stress in the various processes to which they are to be applied.

Electro-plating with Copper.—The objects to be coated are first thoroughly cleansed by the methods indicated in the last chapter. Cast-iron articles are especially liable to contain particles of sand and other non-metallic impurities embedded in the surface; these must be carefully looked for and removed before the treatment there described. On removal from the last acid dip, the pieces must be thoroughly washed and at once suspended in the copper-vat, by means of copper wires or hooks slung from the cross-bars attached to the negative (zinc) pole of the battery. The method of suspension will, however, depend upon the size and shape of the pieces, and upon the skill and ingenuity of the operator. Large objects may be hung individually from the cathode-rods, but the wires must be attached to portions of the object where they will not leave permanent marks upon the finished work; or they may be rested in wire-slings; or, if very heavy, they may be allowed to stand on the floor of the vat with conducting wires attached underneath; but in this latter case no deposit can, of course, form upon the bottom of the object, which must be treated subsequently, if necessary; light articles which are perforated in any part may be slung on copper wires. The methods of supporting the pieces are obviously innumerable; but it must always be remembered that whenever they are hung from wires, their position must be slightly shifted from time to time to prevent the formation of wire-marks due to imperfect coating at the points of contact. The objects should be momentarily removed from the vat for examination soon after the deposition has commenced, for at this time imperfect cleansing will be clearly evident, so that if the coating be incomplete the cause may be at once detected and the defect remedied. Finger- or-grease-marks, produced by handling after cleansing, can thus be removed by washing the pieces in water, immersing for a moment in the potash-vat, rinsing, dipping in the acid liquor, once more rinsing, and finally replacing in the copper-bath, when, the clean surface being restored, the action proceeds in due course. Small articles may also be coated by placing them in a perforated porcelain ladle (fig. 64, p. 111), on the bottom of which rests a coil of copper wire attached to the negative pole of the battery, so that they form a continuous cathode by mutual contact; in this ladle

they are plunged into the copper-vat and constantly agitated until the required thickness of metal is obtained; the anode should in this case take the form of a cylindrical sheet of copper surrounding the ladle, or it may be a disc of copper-plate, which is placed above the ladle after its introduction into the bath.

All portions of any object which are not to receive a coating of copper should be painted over with an insulating varnish (p. 388), which may be removed subsequently.

The duration of the process depends upon the thickness of deposit required; for most objects treated in this way—whether iron or zinc to be subsequently silvered, silver to be gilded, or iron which is to receive a coating, either protective or ornamental —a very thin wash will suffice, such as might be imparted in a period ranging from a few minutes to an hour. The alkaline baths that would generally be used for this class of work are slower in action than the acid baths.

On removing the work from the vat, it must be dipped into three or four successive wash-waters; as each piece is transferred to the washing-tank it carries with it a notable quantity of copper solution from the bath, so that the water in the first tub should not be frequently renewed, but should be allowed to remain until, many articles having been treated, it has become gradually charged with copper; it is then poured into a different vessel, so that the dissolved metal may be recovered from it. Even the second tank receives a gradual addition of copper, and it is well to allow this also to accumulate until the solution in the first tank is discharged, when this liquor may be substituted for it. The water in the third and fourth tanks should be very frequently renewed, and, since they should contain no more than a trace of copper, may be discarded. On leaving the last wash-water the objects should be free from copper solution, and, after drying, are ready for the market. They may be dried in ovens heated to the temperature of boiling water, or in hot box-wood sawdust if they be small enough to render such a process practicable. When the articles are receiving the copper coat merely as a preliminary to the deposition of other metals, they should, if possible, be transferred directly from the final washing-tank of the coppering process to the depositing-vat of the metal next to be deposited. This system is to be recommended because, exposed to the air of towns, copper is most liable to receive a sulphur-tarnish which ordinary potash and acid dips might fail to remove completely.

The difficulties likely to arise in the process of deposition, and the methods by which they may be evercome, have been treated of in the earlier portion of this chapter, dealing with the solutions and anodes.

Sundry Applications of Copper Deposition.—Thick deposits of copper for various purposes are now made by means of the dynamo-electric machine.

An interesting example of such a process is seen in Wilde's system of applying a thick copper coat to iron printing-rollers. The roller is first covered with a thin film of copper in the alkaline bath, and being thus protected it may afterwards be safely treated in the more rapidly-acting acid solution. For this purpose it is placed on end, mounted upon a vertical insulated axis in the acid copper-vat, and is connected at top and bottom with the negative pole of the dynamo; within a short distance from it is mounted a copper cylinder of about the same size, which is connected with the positive pole, and, therefore, plays the part of anode. The two cylinders are simultaneously rotated upon their axes at a moderate pace, and a gradual transference of copper from anode to cathode takes place. In this way an even thickness of deposit is obtained over the whole surface; uniform along the length of the roller, by reason of the motion imparted to the bath, which maintains an equal density of solution throughout; and uniform as to its diameter, because the rotation constantly brings fresh surfaces opposite the anode. Moreover, a high rate of deposition, or, in other words, rapid work, is permissible, because of the motion in the bath; for we have seen (p. 90) that a bath which is well agitated will take a stronger current than one which remains tranquil. Additional means for securing a thorough mixture may be employed by adapting a small propeller-blade to a shaft run by the same machinery that actuates the rollers.

Watt, in his treatise on Electro-Deposition, describes a plant which was used for a similar purpose by the Electro-Metallurgical Company of London. The rollers were dipped into potash solution contained in a steam-jacketed cylinder 15 feet high and 3 feet in diameter, and a preliminary wash of copper was imparted by an alkaline copper bath in a similar tank. The anodes used in the acid bath consisted of copper billets 4 inches square and 12 feet long, while the tank itself was capable of holding 60,000 gallons of solution.

A third method which has been successfully utilised for coppering rollers consists in slowly rotating them on a horizonal axis about 12 or 18 inches below the surface of the bath, and between two curved copper anodes fixed on either side and nearly meeting beneath the cylinder.

Tubes of any size, shape, or section may be gradually built up in a similar manner, and, if the current be properly proportioned to the strength of the solution, should not be greatly inferior to ordinary solid-drawn copper tubes, and would, doubtless, be, on the average, stronger than the common brazed tubes so frequently employed. Straight tubes may be built up upon a well-polished iron mandrel or core, which may be subsequently withdrawn, the surface of the iron being black-leaded to prevent the adhesion of the two metals; bends and unusual shapes may, of course, be

formed by employing a moulded core, such as is described in the next chapter, made of fusible materials, which can afterwards be removed by the application of a gentle heat. When, however, the tubes are required to withstand a high fluid-pressure either from within or from without, the utmost care is required to guard against the formation of a largely-crystalline deposit, because, the grain of the metal being 'open,' it would be more or less porous, and would give rise to leakage of liquid through the tube walls themselves.

The Elmore process for making copper tubes, which is now worked on a large scale at Leeds, as also in Germany and France, is of interest on account of the method adopted and the fact that high current-densities may be used. In this process the copper is deposited on to a rotating mandrel of a diameter equal to the internal diameter of the desired tube. Simple deposition in this way would produce but a poor result. The essential feature of the process is that the deposit is submitted to a burnishing action, an agate burnisher being mechanically pressed upon the tube as it rotates, and travelling up and down the tube as the process proceeds. Every part of the deposit is therefore acted upon, and the layer of copper at any point only increases about $\frac{1}{30}$ of a millimetre before it again passes beneath the burnisher. The effect of the burnisher is not merely to maintain a good deposit but to increase the tensile strength very materially in much the same way as rolling and drawing. The resulting copper has ordinarily a tensile strength of 25·5 tons per square inch, but this figure may become as high as 42 tons by suitably adjusting the conditions. A further advantage of the process is that the current-density, which in refining is usually about 10 to 20 amperes per square foot (1 to 2 amperes per square decimetre) may be 30 amperes per square foot when the electrolyte is not circulated, and as high as 200 amperes per square foot with circulation.

A process of another kind for the production of seamless copper tubes has been developed by Sherrard O. Cowper-Coles. This consists in rotating a mandrel rapidly in a vertical position while deposition is taking place upon it. Rotation in this way was patented by Henry Wilde so long ago as 1875, but Cowper-Coles has emphasised the fact that a certain critical speed is necessary for the best effect. The peripheral speed should not be less than 1000 feet per minute, but it is not clear whether centrifugal force has anything to do with the effect or not. Briefly, the advantages of rotation are: (1) agitation of the electrolyte so that its impoverishment is avoided, (2) a burnishing effect is produced due to the friction between the cathode and the surrounding liquid, (3) foreign matter is prevented from settling on the cathode, (4) air-bubbles, and consequent nodules, cannot form on the cathode, and (5) a uniform thickness of copper is ensured. High

current-density is permissible; in fact, 200 amperes per square foot (21·5 amperes per square decimetre) is the most economical current-density, and this may be increased up to 500 amperes per square foot by increasing the rate of rotation, though there is then greater loss of energy.

The method of carrying out this process is indicated in fig. 77. The vat is annular, and the cylindrical mandrel is so supported that there are no bearings in the electrolyte. The mandrel is copper coated, highly burnished and treated chemically so as to ensure the easy removal of the deposited tube. The anodes, of

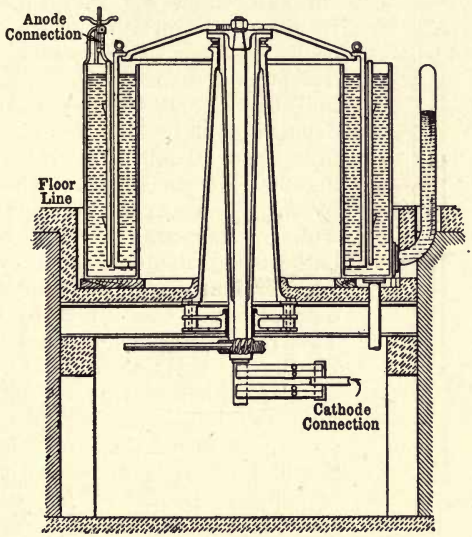


FIG. 77.—Section of vat for depositing copper sheets on rotating mandrel (Cowper-Coles' process).

crude copper, are placed round the mandrel with intervening spaces, and are seen with wedges attached in fig. 77; they are fed forward as the copper dissolves away by acting mechanically on these wedges, as shown in fig. 78. The distance between anode and cathode varies from $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch or thereabouts, and, this distance being small, a voltage of only 0·8 volt at the terminals is necessary when working at 200 amperes per square foot. The copper tubes are removed by slightly expanding them by rolling; but in the case of sheets a narrow insulating strip is fixed down the mandrel so that a tool can be inserted.

Messrs Langbein & Company of Leipzig appear to be using a process in which a mandrel is rotated at about 20 revolutions per minute, and a frictional effect is obtained by the attrition of siliceous matter suspended in the electrolyte.

An application of copper deposition which has suggested itself to the electrician is the coating of an iron or steel wire with any desirable thickness of copper, for overhead telegraph-wires, so that the full advantages of the greater strength of the steel may be combined with the higher conductivity of the copper. To this end the American Postal Telegraph Company have arranged a series of copper baths at their works, through which the iron wire is passed by means of rotating drums until sufficient metal has been deposited. Twenty-five large dynamos were used to actuate 200 baths, and these were capable of depositing daily 500 lbs. of copper per mile upon 20 miles of steel wire, weighing 200 lbs. per mile, the time occupied by any point upon the surface of the wire in traversing the whole chain of baths being about 60 hours.

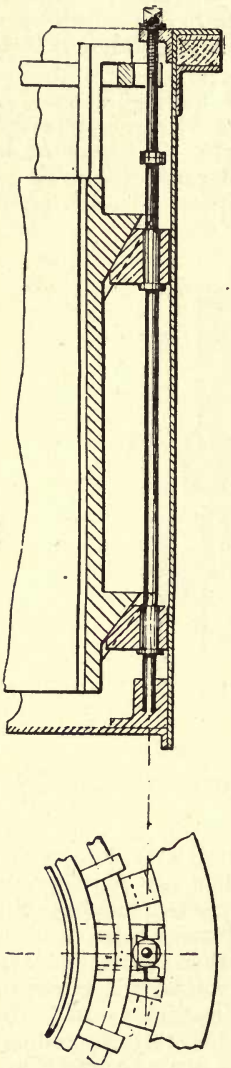


FIG. 78.—Plan and section of an anode in Cowper-Coles' process, showing arrangement for adjusting distance from mandrel.

Several attempts have been made to obtain copper wire direct by deposition. The Elmore Company make wire by cutting up their electrolytic copper tube spirally. Sherard Cowper-Coles uses the following ingenious method. A spiral scratch is made the whole length of a mandrel which is to receive the deposit of copper. Copper is then deposited to the desired thickness; the scratch just referred to is reproduced on the deposits and causes weakness in the copper all along this line, with the result that the copper can be pulled off quite easily in the form of strip as shown in fig. 79. By making the scratch of suitable pitch, the strip can be obtained of any desired width; the pitch is so chosen as to give a square section for the strip, which is finally drawn into wire.

The number of uses for thick deposits of copper is endless, and very many other applications unenumerated here have been successfully carried into effect—as, to take a solitary example, the formation of copper rings upon small cylindrical shells (projectiles) to enable

them to take the grooves of the gun. The process for producing these thick coatings is, as we have seen, very simple, but presents the extreme disadvantage of requiring a great expenditure of time to yield any considerable depth of deposit.

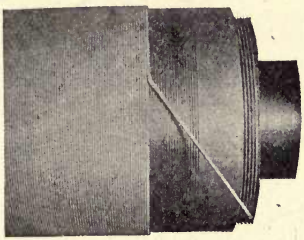


FIG. 79.—Copper strips being unwound from mandrel after deposition (Cowper-Coles' process).

The use of the dynamo is almost an essential to the work—the continual wear and tear of the batteries, and the worry of continual inspection and renewal, added to the expenditure of costly zinc for producing the current, renders the application of the galvanic cell practically impossible.

Notes to Table VIII.—Hossauer (formula 3) dissolves the copper cyanide in the potassium cyanide dissolved in 300 parts of the water, filters, and then dilutes with the remaining water. This bath is stated to work well at 113°–122° F., but if used cold it requires a strong current.

Langbein strongly recommends formula 7. To prepare the bath, dissolve the crystallised sodium carbonate in 700 parts of the water (warm), add the crystallised bisulphite gradually to prevent violent effervescence, and then add with vigorous stirring the neutral acetate of copper. Dissolve the cyanide in the remaining 300 parts of water (cold), and mix the two solutions when the first is cold. Siphon off the clear liquid. If the bath is not colourless, add a little more potassium cyanide. A pressure of 3 volts is used with electrodes 10 cms. apart, and a current-density of 0·35 ampere per square decimetre.

Langbein has introduced the use of cupro-cupric sulphite, and states that it gives a beautiful warm colour and a very adherent and dense deposit on iron and steel. For formula 8 dissolve the cyanide in half the quantity of water given, then the cupro-cupric sulphite, and add remaining water. As an alternative $3\frac{1}{2}$ parts of ammonia-soda may be added.

CHAPTER VIII.

ELECTROTYPING.

THE object of electrotyping is the production of an exact *facsimile* of any object having an irregular surface, whether it be an engraved steel- or copper-plate, a wood-cut, or a forme of set-up type, to be used for printing; or a medal, medallion, statue, bust, or even a natural object, for art-purposes.

In all cases a reversed mould of the object is first obtained, and upon this the copper is electrolytically deposited to a sufficient thickness. It was very early discovered (p. 5) that metal deposited upon an uneven surface, and then wrenched apart from it, exhibited in reverse an absolutely perfect reproduction of every irregularity or line upon the surface of the original, and that by depositing a second coat upon this new surface, a re-reversed image of the first surface was obtained which, as to minuteness of detail, defied distinction from the original. Hence impressions from a single printing-plate or block may be repeated an indefinite number of times by retaining the original plate merely as a means for producing any number of duplicate copies, and not taking press-copies directly from itself. Works of art from the chisel of the sculptor or the tools of the moulder may thus be similarly multiplied, or the process may even be substituted for that of the foundry in obtaining statues from the sculptor's model. So delicate, accurate, and refined is the copy, that the finest grain of wood, even the peculiar sheen of satin wood, is perfectly imitated, and it is even possible to reproduce the daguerreotype photographic image with its infinitely minute gradations of light and shade.

In all classes of electrotyping, then, the first step is to obtain a cast, intaglio, or negative impression of the object, in which the projecting portions of the original become depressions, and *vice versâ*. Occasionally it is possible, and often it is preferable, to effect this by rendering the surface of the object somewhat dirty, and depositing a sufficient thickness of copper or silver upon it directly, to enable the two surfaces to be separated without fracture or distortion of the deposited plate. Thus a faithful negative is obtained which is not adhesive to the unclean surface

and may be readily detached; it is then ready to receive a coating upon itself, and this on removal is found to be a true copy of the original in every respect, so that it may be substituted for it—as, for example, in the printing-press. But it frequently happens that the original subject would be spoiled if placed in the depositing-bath, or that it has undercut surfaces, which would prevent the deposited coat from being detached; in such cases, and, indeed, more usually, casts of the object are first taken in a suitable moulding material, which, having been rendered a conductor of electricity, at least superficially, receives the deposit in the form that is to be substituted for the original.

Moulding Materials.

For moulding, any material may be used which is capable of taking accurate impressions of an object, and which is not so brittle or so soft at ordinary temperatures as to be broken or bent out of shape during subsequent processes, provided that it is a conductor of electricity, or may be made so superficially; and provided, also, that it neither injures the object to be moulded from nor is affected in any way by the solutions in which it will be placed. The principal materials employed are gutta-percha, bees'-wax, plaster of Paris, fusible metal, gelatine, or sealing-wax, or compositions in which these bodies are used, in conjunction with others added to modify their properties in some desired manner.

Gutta-percha and Compositions in which it is used.—Gutta-percha is usually obtained in the market in the form of stout sheet, into which it has been manufactured from the crude masses imported from abroad. It should be of good quality, otherwise the foreign impurities present in it are liable to ruin a cast, if at least any of them should be present on the surface which is to receive the impression. It is a non-conductor of electricity, and possesses the property of becoming so plastic at the temperature of boiling water that it may be pressed into the finest lines of an uneven surface; on cooling *in situ* it again becomes rigid, and thus preserves a faithful and permanent impression of them, while remaining sufficiently elastic to allow of its being used for reproducing work that is slightly 'undercut.' Heated to a temperature of 95° to 100° C. (203° to 212° F.) in water, or, better, in an oven warmed by a hot-water jacket, a piece of gutta-percha may be pressed on to any surface which it is desired to reproduce. The surface of the cast thus obtained requires only to be rendered conductive, and is ready to receive the metal by electro-deposition. Gutta-percha contracts considerably on cooling; in order to ensure a good impression, it should, therefore, be allowed to cool in contact with the original object, so that no superficial contraction can possibly occur by reason of the intimate

contact between the two irregular surfaces, which prevents the sliding of the one upon the other.

Where the very finest lines are to be reproduced with precision, as in the copying of engraved steel-plates, a mixture of gutta-percha with not more than about half its weight of fatty matter is frequently used; this is 'thinner' than the gutta-percha alone, and may even be melted and simply poured over the plate. Such a mixture is:—

Gutta-percha, ...	66 parts by weight,
Lard, ...	33 ,, ,,
Russian tallow, ...	1 ,, ,,

The lard should be refined by melting in an earthen pot or pipkin and pouring it into hot water, when the fat remains fluid upon the surface of the water, while the mineral impurities sink to the bottom of the vessel; on cooling, the lard solidifies and may be removed from the water. The tallow should be similarly treated. Then the gutta-percha is cut into small strips, mixed with the requisite quantities of the other materials and melted slowly in a porcelain dish, or in an oven, which should be maintained at the lowest temperature compatible with complete fusion of the mixture. The mass is thoroughly incorporated by stirring, and is ready for use at once. These mixtures must not be overheated, as the gutta-percha at high temperatures becomes brittle and useless.

The Russian tallow is often omitted from the mixture, and many operators use linseed or other oils in preference to lard. The addition of a little plumbago is to be recommended; it facilitates the production of the conductive film required for electro-deposition. Gore recommends, for moulding from medals and coins, a mixture of two parts of gutta-percha and one of marine glue, which must be thoroughly incorporated, and is then used in the plastic state like gutta-percha alone.

Gutta-percha is best adapted to copying plates, medallions, coins, or medals which are not too deeply undercut. To effect this, it is made plastic by heating to 100° C. (212° F.) as described above; a sufficiently large fragment is now carefully rolled and kneaded in the hand until it forms a quite uniform sphere without visible lines or seams; then, while still plastic, the ball is rested on the centre of the medal, and pressed into place with the thumb, while the fingers gradually flatten it and extend the material outwards and downwards, beginning at the centre, until it completely covers the whole surface; it is then placed under gentle pressure until cool, when it will be found that the surfaces will part without effort, and the gutta-percha intaglio will be ready for the next process. The medal should be well brushed with plumbago before moulding to prevent adhesion, and the fingers should be thoroughly moistened or rendered slightly oily, or they will be liable to cling to the gutta-percha. Very large

surfaces cannot satisfactorily be treated in this manner, and it is expedient in dealing with them to render plastic a sheet of gutta-percha, slightly larger than necessary to cover the plate; then, placing it upon the surface, it is pressed into intimate contact throughout, beginning from the centre and working outwards as before, in order to prevent the entanglement of air-bubbles between the two surfaces, which would prove fatal to the sharpness of the impression. The plate and mould are finally allowed to cool under a gentle and even pressure.

When the fluid mixture is employed, the medal or plate is surrounded with a narrow rim of paper or thin metal placed on edge, beyond the limits of the part to be copied, and the melted material is poured slowly on to the centre and allowed to flow gently from this point over the whole surface, where it should be permitted to remain for several hours to ensure that it is completely set.

Either the gutta-percha alone, or the composition made from it, may be used over and over again, but after a long period of use, when so much plumbago has accumulated in it that it becomes hard and brittle, it is necessary to add a sufficient quantity of fresh gutta-percha (or composition) to regenerate it for use.

Bees'-wax and Compositions in which it is used.—Bees'-wax is very largely used in various compositions, and, indeed, is the usual basis of mixtures for electrotyping set-up printers' type. As a general rule, the ordinary yellow bees'-wax of commerce is sufficiently good for the purpose; but as the presence of some of the commoner adulterants increases its tendency to crack on cooling, especially in cold weather, some operators have preferred to melt the wax in a pipkin and to add to it about one-tenth of its weight of white lead (lead carbonate); after stirring, the excess of lead is allowed to separate and collect at the bottom, when the melted wax, still retaining a small quantity of lead, is poured into slabs and may be remelted at will. The presence of the lead has the twofold advantage of checking the liability to crack and of increasing the specific gravity of the composition, so that it sinks readily in the depositing-vats. As a general rule, however, this precaution is unnecessary.

Usually the wax is not employed alone, but is mixed with stearine, Venice turpentine, or other bodies which tend to prevent the cracking of the moulds. For taking electrotypes of printers' formes in the usual way with the aid of pressure, an excellent mixture is made by melting together and stirring well:—

Bees'-wax,	85	parts by weight.
Venice turpentine,	13	,, ,,
Plumbago,	2	,, ,,

The composition is then poured into flat trays, and, when nearly set, the typographical plate is pressed upon its surface

in a manner to be described hereafter (p. 159). Many other mixtures are, of course, used, different workers adopting their own formulæ. Thus, Urquhart recommends the same ingredients as above, but mixed in the proportion of 87·3 : 9·7 : 3 for this class of work, or in the proportion of 80·5 of wax, 27·9 of mutton-suet, and 1·7 of graphite for moulding when pressure may not be applied, on account of the fragility of the original object. Good mixtures may be made, according to the formula used by Volkmer, by melting together 70 parts of wax and 30 of stearine, or to that preferred by Watt, consisting of 70 of wax, 26 of stearine, and 4 of litharge or flake-white. For medal-work Walker was in the habit of using 69½ parts of spermaceti with 15¼ each of mutton-suet and bees'-wax. For certain uses many operators have introduced rosin into the composition; Weiss employs a mixture of 62 of bees'-wax, 28½ of mutton-suet, and 9½ of rosin to produce a replica from a statue, the first cast of which has been made in an elastic composition attackable by water, as will be explained later; and a mixture of 50 parts of wax, with 50 of rosin, and from 3¾ to 5 of a solution of phosphorus in carbon bisulphide (1 of phosphorus in 15 of bisulphide), was recommended by Parkes for the preparation of specially-conductive moulds.

In using melted wax to prepare matrices from medals and the like, it should not be poured on until it is nearly solidifying; then (having previously slightly oiled the surface of the object, surrounded it with a strip of paper or metal placed on edge, and rested the whole upon a gentle slope) the wax should be gently poured upon the lowest part and allowed to flow with an even motion over the whole surface; as soon as it is set, the containing rim should be removed, because the composition adheres to it somewhat strongly, and the contraction due to cooling may cause the wax to fracture at the centre. Then, after standing for one or two hours, the impression may be safely detached from the original.

Plaster of Paris.—Only the finest quality of plaster should be used, which has not been overburnt, is very finely ground, and has been stored in a well-covered jar or bottle, so that it shall not have deteriorated by exposure to moist air. But, even at the best, it is not to be recommended in comparison with the materials enumerated above. In applying it, the object is first thoroughly well covered with an almost imperceptible film of oil, by means of a soft rag or a tuft of cotton-wool; then, having surrounded it, if necessary, with a paper rim, the plaster is made into a thick cream by sprinkling it into a sufficient body of water, and without loss of time a small quantity is poured upon the surface of the object, and with great rapidity brushed into every corner or line by means of a moderately hard brush to prevent the formation of air-holes by entanglement of air in the

liquid; then, immediately, the remainder of the paste is poured over it and allowed to remain until it has completely set, when it may be removed in the usual way. The plaster must be free from grit, and must be well mixed with sufficient water, or it will set too rapidly to allow of the treatment above recommended; but in any case the operations must be conducted very quickly, as the cream speedily assumes a pasty and semi-solid condition.

The matrix so prepared is porous and absorbent, and is not ready to be placed in the bath of copper-liquor until it has been waterproofed, which is usually effected by saturating the whole surface with wax or solid paraffin. The mould, if small, may be simply rested on its back in a shallow tray of melted wax, which must be insufficient to cover it completely, until the latter has penetrated through to the face by capillary action; it is then removed and cooled. Large moulds may be superficially covered by pouring the melted wax over the whole surface and then transferring them to an oven or hot closet, until the layer of wax just melts and becomes absorbed by the plaster.

Fusible Metal.—Certain alloys melt at a temperature below that of boiling water, and may, therefore, be used to obtain casts from the most delicate objects, or even from organic bodies, such as animals, fruits, and flowers; but, although the casts obtained in this manner are very sharp and accurate, the process is rarely employed because of the expense entailed by the waste, however slight, incurred in the constant use of a costly metal. The principal so-called fusible metals are compounded as follows: —

TABLE XII.—Showing the Compositions of Certain Fusible Alloys.

Name of Alloy.	Percentage Composition.				Approximate Fusing-point.
	Bismuth.	Lead.	Tin.	Cadmium.	
Newton's . .	50	31·25	18·75	...	202° F.
Rose's . . .	50	25	25	...	201°
Lichtenberg's . .	50	30	20	...	197°
Darcet's . .	50	20	30	...	197°
Wood's . .	50	25	12·5	12·5	141°
Lipowitz's . .	50	27	13	10	140°

Any of these may be used, but those with the lower melting-point are naturally to be preferred. The metals should be thoroughly mixed by long stirring while still fluid; and they may

even with advantage be poured into slabs and remelted several times with the same object in view; the necessity for perfect alloying will be recognised when it is remembered that the melting-point of any of the four components alone is far higher than that even of Newton's alloy, the numbers being approximately, lead 533°, bismuth 515°, tin 442°, cadmium 608° F. The melted alloy may be poured upon the surface of the object to be copied; or, for the treatment of medals and coins, it may be run into a shallow tray; then, when nearly solidifying, any dross upon the surface is removed by skimming with a piece of card, and at once the medal is dropped upon the surface and pressed in this position until the fluid has completely set, which it should do almost immediately. No difficulty should be experienced in separating the two surfaces or in obtaining successful results after a few trials. The addition of mercury to reduce the fusing-point of the alloy, which is recommended by some operators, should not be practised, but it is especially to be avoided when gold or silver objects are being treated, as both these metals have a very strong tendency to amalgamate or take up mercury, and in so doing to alter in appearance. The special recommendation to the use of matrices of fusible alloy is that they are metallic, and are, therefore, conductors of electricity, requiring no treatment before placing in the bath beyond rendering them slightly dirty on the surface to prevent adhesion of the deposit. The metal of old moulds may, of course, be remelted as often as desired.

Elastic Moulding Material. — When objects in high relief are deeply undercut, none of the moulding materials hitherto mentioned can be successfully applied, because it is not possible to detach the cast from the original without fracturing the one or the other. A special material, which shall possess so much elasticity that it may be drawn over projecting portions unhurt, and yet on its release return completely to its original form, must, therefore, be sought. Such a material may be made by mixing gelatine with sugar or treacle, the latter substances preventing the cracking of the substance on drying.

The mixture originally used by Parkes was made by soaking 80 parts of glue in cold water over night, or for several hours, until it became perfectly soft; then, pouring off the water, it was melted in a hot-water jacketed arrangement, similar to an ordinary glue-pot, and, when quite fluid, 20 parts of common treacle were stirred in. Busts and statues may be readily copied with the aid of this mixture, but it has the inconvenience that it swells up when wetted, and cannot, therefore, be safely placed in the depositing-vat without special preparation. To render it capable of resisting the liquid, the hardening power of potassium bichromate on gelatine is utilised, the matrix being immersed for a short time in a 10 per cent. solution of the bichromate and then placed in direct sunlight until dry; or 2 per cent. of tannin may

be added to the moulding-mixture before casting, to render it waterproof, in which case the bichromate process may be dispensed with. It is not, however, safe to rely upon these waterproofing mixtures, but when the elastic composition must of necessity be used, a reproduction of the original object should be made in wax composition, and then from this a second matrix should be prepared in plaster of Paris, from which the wax may be melted away without injuring the delicacy of undercut portions. The manner of accomplishing this is described on p. 167.

Sealing-Wax.—Sealing-wax is only employed for very small work, such as the reproduction of seals or signets, and is, therefore, rarely required in practice. It is applied by melting a portion on to a sheet of card or metal, and, after breathing lightly on the signet, taking an impression as in sealing a letter.

Rendering the Mould Conductive.—Having obtained a mould in any of the above materials (with the exception of the fusible alloys), it is necessary to cover it with a film, which will enable the surface to conduct electricity sufficiently well to receive the first deposit of copper uniformly. If it were convenient, the covering of the surface with a superficial metallic layer would obviously be the most satisfactory method, and where it is desired to produce an especially fine reproduction of a delicate design, this is frequently done. Parkes' system of metallising the moulds consisted in preparing the matrix with the special material, containing phosphorus dissolved in carbon bisulphide, described on p. 146; then, on dipping this mould into a solution of silver nitrate, the phosphorus present on the surface reduces silver to the metallic state, and thus coats the whole with a superficial but continuous layer of metallic silver. Now, on dipping the matrix into a solution of gold chloride, a partial exchange of gold for silver takes place, and the whole design is covered with an almost imperceptible film of metal, which is capable of conducting the current and depositing copper in the finest lines and interstices.

The more usual—practically the universal—method is to brush the best and most finely-ground plumbago thoroughly into every detail of the design. Plumbago or black-lead of the best quality is a sufficiently good conductor, but the lower grades are proportionately inferior in this respect. The utmost care must be taken to rub the plumbago with a fairly hard brush into every corner of the mould, for it must be remembered that any point which remains untouched can receive no deposit of metal, with the result that the electrotype-copper will prove defective or covered with pin holes. The plumbago is best applied by sprinkling the fine powder over the whole surface to be covered, and then rubbing it persistently in with circular strokes from the brush until the whole presents the uniform characteristic sub-metallic dead-black appearance of black-leaded articles.

A wet process has been introduced by Knight in America, so as to avoid the dirt and dust of the usual dry process, an emulsion of graphite and water being pumped over the mould.

By soaking 100 parts of the plumbago in 10 parts of silver nitrate dissolved in 200 of distilled water, drying and exposing the mixture to a red heat in a crucible, well protected from the action of the air by a fire-clay cover, the silver nitrate is first absorbed by the plumbago, and by the ignition is converted into metallic silver, and thus the black-lead becomes most intimately mixed with the best conductor known, in the finest state of subdivision. It may be similarly gilt by treating 100 parts with 2 parts of gold chloride dissolved in 200 of ether; simple exposure to light followed by gentle heating in an oven then suffices to metallise the gold. But these methods are costly, and the materials can be used only once, for as soon as they are spread over the surface of the matrix, it is practically impossible to recover the precious metal; they are, therefore, rarely met with in practice.

Other metals may be obtained in a finely-divided state. Adams proposed to use powdered tin upon the surface of the moulds. This is prepared by briskly stirring melted tin with an iron rod just as it reaches its solidifying-point; so that the tin is broken up into globules, each of which is coated with a pellicle of oxide that entirely prevents its union with contiguous particles. The whole of the metal is now poured on to a sieve of the finest muslin or wire mesh, the portion which passes through being retained for use, while the remainder is remelted and again treated in the same way. A still later plan is to stir up the globules with water, allow them to stand for one or two seconds in order to give the heavier particles time to subside, and decant the water, with the finest grains still in suspension, into a second vessel, where it is allowed finally to subside. The clear liquid is then poured away, and the tin powder is dried for use.

A process invented by Knight is used in America. The mould is well cleaned with water delivered from a rose jet, and is then flooded with a solution of copper sulphate. A small quantity of the finest iron filings is now sprinkled over the surface with the aid of a pepper-castor, with the result that a spongy deposit of copper is reduced over the whole area by exchange with the metallic iron, and may be made to form a continuous film by brushing the surface during the time of precipitation. Wahl has accidentally found that pure iron, obtained by reducing ferric oxide in hydrogen, does not give an adhesive copper, owing, as he thinks, to the extreme rapidity of the exchange, the comparatively large though still minute grains of the filings giving a slower reaction than the chemically reduced iron, so that the copper is reduced in actual contact with the surface of the matrix itself during the time of brushing.

Printers' Electrotyping.

The principal applications of electrolysis to the requirements of the printing-trade are to be found in the reproduction of engraved steel or copper plates, of wood-blocks or set-up type. For the last-named purpose, electrotyping has a keen rival in the process of stereotyping, which is more largely in favour in England for heavy newspaper or book work; but for copying wood-blocks or engraved plates, electrotyping stands alone in the field, the other processes being inapplicable, or productive of inferior results.

Engraved Plates.

Steel Plates.—Steel plates carefully engraved have a very high value, and as they are slowly worn away by repeated use in the press, in spite of the hardness of the material, their faithful reproduction by electrolytic means effects an immense saving when a large number of impressions are required from one design. Thus, the steel plate may be preserved intact, and any number of copper replicas may be formed, each of which, when steel-faced, is as lasting and as clear as the original, so that impressions may be multiplied to any degree.

Steel plates which are to be stored are usually coated with wax to preserve them from oxidation, and the first step towards obtaining an electrotype is, therefore, the complete removal of the wax. This may be ensured by boiling the plate for ten minutes in a strong solution of caustic potash (but not, of course, in the same bath that is used for cleaning plates previous to electro-deposition), then rinsing thoroughly with water, and finally rubbing with a soft rag moistened with benzene. The plate may now itself be made the cathode in an *alkaline* copper-bath, by which means a reversed plate or negative will be produced; or a suitable moulding material, preferably the mixture of gutta-percha, lard, and tallow recommended on p. 144, may be used to produce a non-metallic matrix, which is then rendered conductive as to its surface. The mould, whether made by casting or by electrolysis, is finally suspended as the cathode in an acid copper-vat, until a sufficient thickness of metal has been deposited to fulfil the requirements of the original plate.

In making metallic matrices from valuable steel plates, it is safer not to undergo the risk of spoiling them by suspending them at once even in an alkaline copper-bath, because the slightest trace of solvent action on the steel will be clearly shown by the rounding-off of the finer lines, and by the consequent want of sharpness and brilliancy of texture in the resulting engravings. This may be avoided by the expedient of taking a silver matrix from the plate by electro-deposition (see p. 196), and then detaching the silver and depositing copper upon it so

as to form a reproduction of the original plate; then, from this in turn, a second matrix is obtainable, but this time in copper. The steel plate may not be required again, except to renew its replica in copper, in case of accident; and the silver plate, having fulfilled its mission, may be brought again into use at once by remelting, so that there need be no large stock of a costly material lying idle.

Copper Plates.—Whenever a copper plate is to be electrotyped with the same metal, care must be taken to prevent adhesion between the two surfaces, the process being, in fact, the exact reverse to that of covering one metal with a firm coating of another. A film of foreign matter must be interposed, sufficient to prevent adhesion without so far impairing the electrical conductivity of the surface that it refuses to receive any deposit. The surest method of accomplishing this is to impart the thinnest possible wash of silver to the surface by a momentary immersion in a silver-bath, which may be done without sensibly affecting even the finest lines of the engraving; then by pouring over the silvered surface a small quantity of water containing sufficient tincture of iodine to give to it a pale sherry colour, and rubbing lightly with a cloth or with cotton wool, a scarcely visible film of silver iodide is formed upon the surface, which will guarantee an easy parting of the plates. When the plate to be copied is not particularly valuable, and the silver treatment is deemed unnecessary, it should be rubbed gently with turpentine containing a small quantity of bees'-wax in solution; on the spontaneous evaporation of the liquid, a mere trace of residual wax will be distributed evenly over the whole plate, and will usually suffice to prevent adhesions; but if the engraved lines are numerous and fine, the former method is to be preferred.

Having prepared the plate to receive the deposit upon its face, the back must be well painted with a water-resisting and non-conductive varnish, so that there shall be no tendency for copper to deposit where it is not required; common copal-varnish answers the purpose very well, and is readily removed at any time by means of turpentine. The plate is now ready to be suspended in the bath, and must be gripped by some metal support which will serve to suspend it from the cross-rods of the bath, and thus to open electrical communication with the battery. Rings or bent wires may be soldered lightly to the back (before coating it with the insulating varnish); or, when there is danger of buckling the plate by the heat necessary to this treatment, the plate may be rested on two or more S-shaped copper strips, bent upwards into hook-shape at the bottom to receive it, and downwards at the top that it may be hung upon the cathode-rods. Or a sliding-frame, such as that sketched in fig. 80, may be made to grip the plate. This consists of an upright of varnished wood, with a fixed cross-piece of the same material

near the lower end; the cross-piece is made with a longitudinal groove to support the plate; and along the bottom of the groove is a strip of clean copper, to which are soldered at the ends two copper wires insulated, except at the joint with the strip, by means of an india-rubber sheath, and these passing out of the solution above are unsheathed and bent into hook-form, thus serving at once to support the whole arrangement, and to make connection between the plate and the battery. Sliding on the upright rod is a similar grooved cross-bar above the former, but with groove reversed; this may be fixed in any position by a screw at the back, and is merely intended to clamp the plate firmly in position, and to press it into contact with the copper strip in the lower groove; the insulated wires pass through the upper support, and thus act as guides. In using this apparatus no wires need be soldered to the plate; the upper cross-bar is made to slide upwards, the plate is placed with its lower edge upon the copper strip, and the upper groove is brought down upon its upper edge, and is then clamped in position. The whole frame is now suspended in the bath from the cathode-rods above; connection is thus made with the battery, and deposition at once commences.

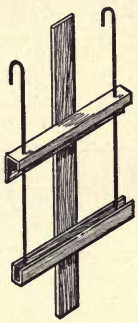


FIG. 80.—Electrotype-plate supporter.

All pairs of electrodes placed in the bath in parallel must be approximately equidistant, for reasons which will shortly be explained.

Arrangement of Baths and Plates. — With metallic plates of known area, most of which are probably of the same size, the plates in any bath, or the baths themselves, may be arranged either in parallel or in series, according to the strength of the current and at the will of the operator. If the dynamo be giving, let us say, 5 volts pressure (the electro-motive force of batteries may be altered by adjusting the arrangement), then as each pair of electrodes requires only from 0·7 to 1·0 volt, either five baths, each with all its plates in parallel, may be placed in series; or five pairs of plates in each bath may be arranged series-fashion, all the baths being now in parallel; but if the electro-motive force at the brushes of the dynamo be 2 volts, two baths would be placed in series, and so on. Having determined the number of couples which should be connected in series to suit the available *current-pressure*, the distribution of plates in parallel will depend upon the relation of the aggregate surface of such plates to the *volume* of the current. It has been seen that a current of from 1·7 to 2 amperes per square decimetre (or from 0·11 to 0·13 ampere per square inch) is most suitable for copper-deposition in the acid bath (when the liquid is kept in motion and of correct density). If there be, let us say, 20 equal pairs of plates with a total cathode area of 400 square inches, and all the couples are

placed in parallel, the best current ranges from $400 \times 0{\cdot}11 = 44$ to $400 \times 0{\cdot}13 = 52$ amperes; but if the E.M.F. be 2 volts, so that the plates are divided into two groups, each consisting of ten pairs of electrodes, and these two groups are placed in series, a current of only 22 to 26 amperes is needed, because only half the total surface is arranged in parallel, while if the voltage be 4, the 20 pairs of plates are subdivided into four groups in series with five parallel couples in each; and the current required will be only 11 to 13 amperes, and so forth. All this follows, of course, from the law explained on p. 86, that a given current deposits the same weight of metal in every cell placed in series. It will be observed that the product of amperes multiplied by volts is in all these cases the same, showing that the total number of watts evolved (in other words, the work done) is practically identical under all conditions, and the different dispositions are only to be made in order to suit the current to the work.

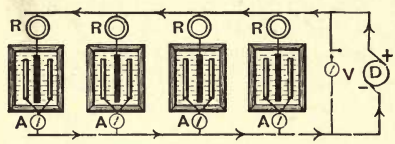


FIG. 81.

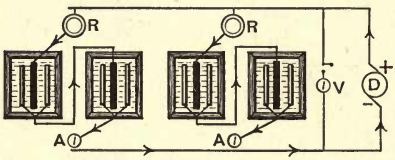


FIG. 82.

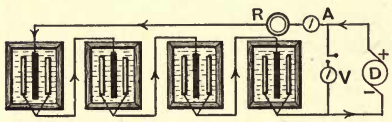


FIG. 83.

FIGS. 81 to 83.—Modes of arranging plates.

To make this quite clear, the following diagrams are constructed to illustrate the disposition to be observed in the cases of four cathode-plates, each measuring 40 square inches, this being equivalent to four plates each 8 inches by 5.

In fig. 81, the electromotive force at the dynamo brushes is 1 volt; all four plates are, therefore, arranged in parallel, presenting a total of $4 \times 40 = 160$ square inches of surface, which will require (say) 20 amperes (at 0·125 ampere per square inch).

In fig. 82, the difference of potential is supposed to be 2 volts. The plates are now placed in two series of two parallel pairs each: the total surface in each group is now $2 \times 40 = 80$ square inches, and the current required is 10 amperes.

In fig. 83, the initial pressure is 4 volts, so that all plates are disposed in series, each one presenting an area of 40 square inches; the total current demanded is thus only 5 amperes.

The arrangement of ammeters, resistance frames, and voltmeters, marked respectively A, R, and V, is shown for each of the above dispositions of baths.

When batteries are used, it is best to arrange them in parallel, which will also require a parallel grouping of the plates, because of the low electro-motive force of a single voltaic cell; nevertheless with Bunsen- or bichromate-cells, each of which gives an E.M.F. of nearly two volts, the battery-elements should be placed as before in parallel, but the electrodes in two large-series groups. It is impossible to lay down any fixed rule for the number of cells of any battery required to accomplish a given work, because the volume of current depends upon the condition of the battery, upon the temperature, and upon the internal resistance of the battery itself, and the latter varies greatly according to the strength of the exciting liquid (and the depolariser, when one is used) as well as on the external resistance in the circuit, due to that of the copper-baths and connecting wires. By the use of an ammeter all doubts upon questions of current-strength may be solved, and the operator will know precisely the value of the current with which he is working. When an ammeter is not available, recourse should be had to the table given on p. 390; from this it will be found that 1 ampere should deposit 18·26 grains of copper in an hour; a current of 0·12 amperes per square inch of cathode-surface should therefore deposit about 2·2 grains of copper per hour on every square inch of plate, or 35 grains upon a plate about 4 inches long by 4 inches wide. To ascertain the average current-strength by this means, a deposited electrotype-plate should be weighed carefully after drying; the weight, expressed in grains, divided by the number of hours which were required for its deposition gives, of course, the weight deposited per hour; and this number, divided by the superficial area of the plate in square inches, gives the weight of copper deposited per square inch per hour. Finally, this last number, divided by 18·26 (the weight of copper per ampere per hour), is the average strength of the current per square inch expressed in amperes.

To consider an example: *a plate* 5 *inches by* 4 (=20 square inches area) *is deposited in* 10 *hours, and has then increased by* 500 *grains; find the average current-density per square inch of surface.*

The weight divided by the number of hours

$$=\frac{500}{10}=50.$$

This number divided by the area in square inches

$$=\frac{50}{20}=2{\cdot}5.$$

So that 2·5 grains were deposited on each square inch every hour.

This number divided by the copper equivalent of 1 ampere in grains

$$=\frac{2{\cdot}5}{18{\cdot}26}=0{\cdot}137.$$

Therefore, the current-density = 0·137 ampere per square inch.

From a simple calculation of this description, at least a rough estimate of the relation of current-density to cathode-area may be made, and the disposition of the apparatus in subsequent work governed accordingly.

Character of Copper Deposits.—Adjustment of Current.—Further indications are made to an experienced observer by the character and rapidity of the deposit. A film of copper should be observed to cover the whole surface of the metal plate immediately it is placed in the bath, and this copper should have a rich reddish-yellow colour; a dark-brown deposit usually indicates a more or less spongy copper and too strong a current; while any indication of gas evolution at the cathode is a sign of the current being far too powerful, and will certainly be accompanied by a pulverulent coating; on the other hand, a tardy formation, and a copper possessing an extremely pale shade of colour, shows that the current is too weak. With measuring apparatus at command, it is only necessary to divide the indicated current by the total area of the cathode-plates placed in parallel, and to compare the quotient with the prescribed number of amperes per unit of surface, to know in which direction and to what extent there is error in the pressure applied.

To regulate the current is then a simple matter; if the current is too strong, greater electrical resistance must be added to the circuit, either by increasing the distance between each pair of electrodes, or by introducing one or more wires of the resistance coil. The latter is the safer method; if the former be adopted, all the anodes (in parallel) must be shifted equally, or some of the cathode-plates will be nearer to their respective anodes than others, with the result that the local resistance is decreased, and the proportion of current passing through them is increased, and with it the amount of deposit; some plates may thus be receiving an excessive current, while others are insufficiently served. Should the current be too weak, either the anodes must be brought nearer to the cathodes, if this be consistent with safety, or a plate may be removed from the bath, thus distributing a slightly diminished current over a much smaller area, and so giving greater current-volume per square inch; or the battery-power must be increased, unless there were at first added resistance in the circuit from the wire coils, when it will, of course, suffice to remove or reduce this extra resistance. In causing the plates to approach, care must be taken to prevent their forming a short circuit by coming into contact.

The current having been adjusted, the electrolytic action must be allowed to proceed steadily, with frequent agitation of the liquid in the bath, until a sufficient thickness of deposit has been attained. This may be ascertained by removing the plate from the bath and rapidly turning up one extreme corner very slightly, by carefully inserting the edge of a thin-bladed penknife between

the two surfaces. The actual thickness required depends upon the treatment which the plate is to receive subsequently; if it is to be backed or strengthened by another metal, the thickness of stout writing-paper will suffice; but if the plate should be required to depend upon its own unsupported strength, then the depositing should be continued until it is from $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ of an inch thick, which may require from ten days to a fortnight to accomplish.

The precipitation completed, the plates must be separated by gently inserting the edge of a fine chisel between them on each side, and applying gentle pressure; if they should not part readily, the chisels must be removed and re-inserted at fresh points—at the ends, for example—and this operation must be repeated until success is achieved. Often the rapid warming of one plate by the sudden application of hot water, followed by an immediate application of the chisels, will effect the separation of a refractory pair of plates. Force must on no account be used; it will only result in bending and spoiling one or both of the plates. But usually there should be little difficulty encountered in removing the deposit from the original surface.

The plate has now only to be cut square and finished by mechanical means; it may also be coated with a thin film of hard iron, nickel, or brass by processes to be described in the chapters dealing with these metals, in order to impart to it higher resisting qualities than the softer copper alone possesses.

Typographical Matter.

When 'formes' of type set up for printing are sent to be electrotyped, they must first be carefully examined to see that they are properly prepared for moulding; for success in this branch of work is only secured by patient attention to details.

Preparation of Forme.—In the preparation of the forme by the compositor, due regard must be had to the requirements of the process. In the first place, only strong wrought-iron chases must be used for holding the type in place, thin, cast-iron, or wooden chases being liable to give way under the intense pressure applied in moulding; screw chases are to be preferred if available. The type and rules should be made with a fair amount of bevel, so that a better impression is given to the wax. All the spaces between the letters and all furniture should be high; low spaces cause much trouble, because the wax is forced deeply into them and, on withdrawal from the mould, stands unprotected, and because the cavities formed by the letters are so deep in the wax matrix, that it is only with difficulty that they receive a good coating of copper; and this is a worse evil than the former, inasmuch as it causes weakness of deposit at the very point where strength is most needed. And, lastly, the leads between the lines should be square, not bevelled, as the wax becomes forced into

the fine space made by the bevel, and cannot be removed cleanly, so that extra labour is demanded in the subsequent distribution of the type. If wood-blocks are present in the page they must be exactly type high; if less than this they must be brought up to the required level by packing slips of paper beneath them; it is preferable that they should be if anything a trifle higher than the rest of the page, so that they may give a sharper impression in the printing-press.

When the type has been set up in weak chases, they must be carefully removed by 'dropping' upon an imposing-surface, and others must be substituted. If the spaces are low, the forme must be planed (made perfectly level) and *floated* by pouring over it a thick cream of plaster of Paris, which must be well rubbed into the spaces by hand, and the excess removed by means of a hard brush applied while it is still pasty; then, after thoroughly drying, it is again brushed to remove every trace of plaster from the angles of the letters. The forme must now be firmly locked; and at this stage a proof should be taken, that accidental slips or errors may be finally detected and rectified. The surface of the type is then thoroughly cleansed from dirt and stale ink by brushing with potash solution (followed by water), or with benzene, while wood-blocks are similarly cleansed with benzene or turpentine alone. The forme is now dried and brushed over with fine plumbago applied with a soft brush; the whole surface should thus be perfectly glazed, but all excess must be carefully removed from the finer lines and from the beards of the letters. The plumbago coat not only assists the separation of the type from the wax-mould, but by leaving a trace of the black-lead on the latter, helps to ensure it being thoroughly coated before it is placed in the copper-vat.

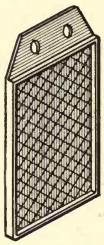


FIG. 84.—Moulding-box.

Preparation of the Wax Surface.—Meanwhile the wax should have been prepared to receive the impression. A cast-iron moulding-box (fig. 84) is gently heated; it is in reality only a tray of sufficiently great external dimensions with shallow sides of about a quarter of an inch in depth all round, and with a continuation of the bottom-plate on one of the shorter sides for about 3 inches beyond the box, to allow of its being supported by hooks from the conducting rods of the bath. It is then filled with the wax-and-turpentine composition formulated on p. 144; this should be quietly melted in a steam-heated vessel, and poured into the box placed upon a level surface until the latter is filled to the brim. Air-bells forming on the surface during cooling are removed at once by a touch with a hot iron rod. If the contraction which occurs during solidification reduces the surface-level, more wax must be added before the former is quite set, as it is better

that the composition should overflow than that insufficient should be used, while, if the contraction cause the material to crack away from the side of the box at any point, the fault may be made good by the careful application of a warm iron rod. In short, it is necessary that a perfectly smooth, level, and unbroken surface of wax shall be presented after solidification. This surface is then dusted over with the finest plumbago, which is lightly brushed in with a soft brush; the excess being removed, the box is ready for taking the impression of the type. In place of these iron boxes, brass cases of the same size and shape have come also into use; these have a special 'electric connection gripper' which serves to suspend the mould in the solution, and at the same time to make connection with the surface of the mould only, and not with the metal box containing the wax, the back of which, therefore, does not require the protection of stopping-out varnish, as does the iron tray above described, to prevent the deposition of copper where it is not required. Steam-heat should be applied to melt the wax, as it affords less danger of overheating and burning the composition; this is readily done by using two concentric pots joined air-tight at the rim, the inner one containing the wax, and the space between the two being utilised for the steam; two pipes, therefore, communicate with the outer jacket, one to introduce the steam, the other to carry it off. Waste steam may often be utilised thus.

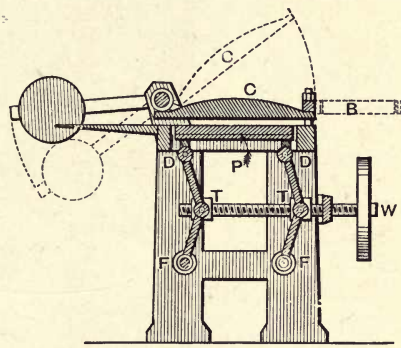


FIG. 85.—Toggle-press.

Taking the Wax Impression.—The next process consists in carefully placing the forme of type, face downwards, upon the centre of the wax surface and submitting it to intense pressure. For this purpose, either a hydraulic or a toggle press is usually employed; the action of the former is too well known to need further description, that of the latter is indicated in the sectional diagram (fig. 85). The counter-balanced swing-cover, C, closed in the drawing, is indicated by dotted lines in its open position for the purpose of introducing the mould and type between it and the rising pressure-plate, P; these having been brought into place, the cover, C, is brought down into a horizontal position and retained there by the movable bar, B. On turning the hand-wheel, W, the pressure is applied to the two >-shaped toggle-joints, T T, which are pivoted at their centre and held by the framework, beneath at F F, and attached to the plate at D D,

the result of the pressure being that the >-shaped jointed bars tend to straighten, and being constrained from moving at their lower ends, thrust the plate carrying the mould with great force upwards against the cover, and in so doing press the face of the type into the wax. The pressure must be gradually, steadily, and evenly applied, until, for large surfaces, it may amount in the aggregate to several tons. Excessive pressure renders it almost impossible to separate the forme from the wax without damaging the latter, whilst an insufficient pressure does not give the depth necessary for printing to prevent the inking of the paper in the spaces

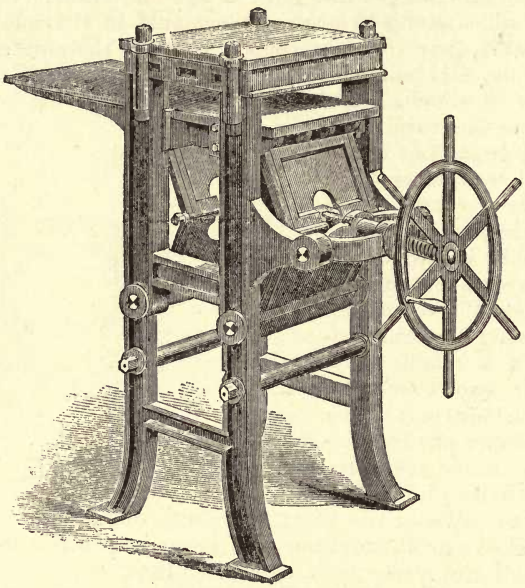


FIG. 86.—Hoe's toggle-press.

between the letters; the mean between the two pressures is soon learnt by experience, and may be judged with tolerable accuracy by the force applied on the hand-wheel or pump of the press.

When the pressure is released and the press opened, the surfaces of mould and type must be separated by inserting bent screw-drivers gently between them at either end, and applying slight leverage until they are almost disengaged; after similar assistance, applied if necessary at the sides also, and when the forme is quite free of the matrix, the latter is removed by lifting it vertically upwards; it must be inspected to ensure that it is perfectly sound in every part.

Trimming the Wax Impression.—All the wax which has been forced up around the sides or into deep spaces must now be

carefully pared away with a sharp knife, and other spaces, the levels of which are so dangerously near to that of the type face that there is danger of their printing off with the type when they have been electrotyped, are filled up by means of a heated knife (fig. 87) or a *building-tool* (fig. 88). These tools are heated to a temperature a little above the boiling-point of water, so that a fragment of wax placed against them melts, and passing down to the point of the tool, may be run on to any desired point. This is a critical operation, which requires much care and no little skill to accomplish satisfactorily.

FIG. 87.—Building-knife.

Black-leading the Impression.—The surface must now be most completely black-leaded. This is done by sprinkling a quantity of the finest plumbago over the whole, and then gently stippling and beating it into the wax by means of goats'-hair brushes. The great volume of black dust produced is very unpleasant, and many operators use black-leading machines, which not only prevent the scattering of dust, and consequent loss of valuable material, but effect a more certain covering of the matrix, which will be recognised as a matter of vital importance when it is remembered that a small area of surface insufficiently coated will give rise to a flaw in the electrotype plate, while even a speck will produce a pin-hole. The black-leading machine (fig. 89) is a large rectangular frame with a box beneath, a cover over the whole, and a trellis-table to support the wax matrix; a reciprocating motion is imparted to the table by a hand-wheel placed outside the case, but connected with the necessary mechanism within; and this serves also to produce a vertical reciprocating or dabbing motion to a brush which extends across the whole table at its centre. On sprinkling the mould with a fair supply of plumbago, placing it face upwards on the table, and actuating the hand-wheel, the wax cast will be drawn to and fro beneath the moving brush, which will force the plumbago into every interstice; the excess of black-lead falls into the box, while the cover prevents the escape of dust into the air. The cover may be made of glass, so that the progress of the operation may be watched, as far as the dust will permit; occasionally even the hand-brushing is conducted under a shade, but this is not altogether satisfactory, as the operator is somewhat cramped in his position, and, therefore, less able to ensure thorough work.

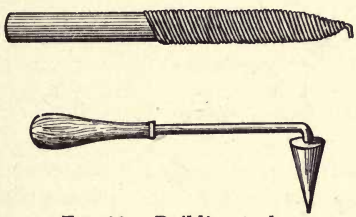


FIG. 88.—Building-tools.

The silvered or gilt plumbago, the tin-powder or the precipitated copper process for metallising the mould, may be used here if desired. Any system which necessitates the use of phosphorus is to be avoided, because this element may render the copper superficially brittle, and this defect is fatal to work that has to withstand the wear of the printing-press.

When the mould is thus rendered superficially a conductor of electricity, every portion which is not required to receive a coating of copper—for example, the back of the frame and the edges of the wax—is painted over with melted wax by means of a soft brush.

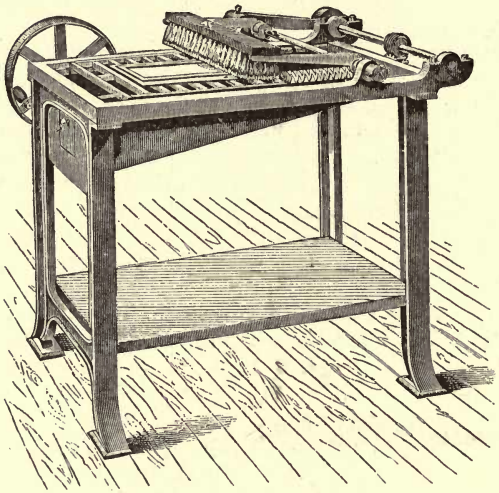


FIG. 89.—Hoe's black-leading machine.

Making Electrical Contact.—It is now ready for the electro-depositing process. Electrical connection must first be arranged for by embedding a framework of warm copper wire around the wax edge of the mould, then black-leading the surface of the wire to ensure good contact with the plumbago coating upon the wax; and attaching the end of the wire itself to the cathode-rod of the bath. Sometimes the end of the wire only is embedded, but then the depositing action of the current has to spread itself over the whole of the plumbago surface from one point; whereas, by using the frame, it starts simultaneously from the whole circumference and gradually covers the surface towards the centre. When the electric contact gripper is used no further trouble need be taken.

The smaller cavities in the wax would remain filled with air if plunged at once into the copper-vat, especially as the plumbago

has a somewhat repellent action upon water until it is once wetted; and as any air space of this kind prevents deposition locally by destroying contact between the wax and the solution, the mould is finally prepared for the bath by placing it in a tray and flowing an ounce or two of spirits of wine over it, to facilitate the wetting of the plumbago, then filling the tray to a depth of about 3 inches with water, and directing a high-pressure jet of water upon the surface from a *rose* held at a height of a few inches above the surface. After washing in this way for a minute or two, the surface should be inspected in various lights while still under water; any air-bells yet adhering to the surface of the wax are thus at once seen, and the washing must be continued until they have disappeared.

Depositing the Copper.—The tray of wax is at once transferred to the acid copper-bath, in which it may be suspended after the manner recommended for steel-engravings. It is advisable to increase the electro-motive force of the current employed beyond the normal at first, in order to force the copper deposit over the comparatively weak-conducting surface afforded by the plumbago. Copper should be deposited immediately on the exposed metallic surfaces of the conducting wire, and should gradually spread from this until the whole surface is covered, when the potential of the current should again be reduced; the metal should then continue to precipitate evenly over the entire plate until it has attained to a thickness of the $\frac{1}{100}$ up to the $\frac{1}{32}$ of an inch, which is generally adequate. Progress is tested as in depositing upon metallic plates, by gently lifting one corner with a penknife; from four to fifteen hours usually suffice. When sufficient copper has been deposited, the frame is removed, rinsed with water, rested upon a level or slightly-sloping board, and suddenly flooded with hot water on the back of the newly-deposited metal; this immediately releases the latter from the wax so that it may be detached at once (every precaution being taken against bending it) and examined by holding it up to the light. If many holes be visible the plate should be discarded; if only a few, and these small ones, they may be made good in the next process. The wax matrix can rarely, if ever, be safely used a second time. These electrotype-plates will be subsequently strengthened by '*backing-metal*,' hence they need not be so strong intrinsically as those which have to bear the strain of the press unsupported; and, therefore, a more intense current may be used than is permissible—for example, in the reproduction of engraved plates; but on no account must the current be so intense that hydrogen is deposited with the copper, for not only is the metal itself weak (even if it be coherent at all) under these circumstances, but the clinging of the bubbles of gas to the work is certain to produce pin-holes in the plate. With a 20 per cent. solution of copper sulphate,

slightly acidified and constantly agitated, a current of 0·2 to 0·225 ampere per square inch (3 or 3·5 amperes per square decimetre) is quite the maximum that should be adopted. For work which will be carefully used a thin deposit may suffice, such as might be deposited by 0·13 to 0·16 ampere per square inch (2 or 2·5 amperes per square decimetre) in three or four hours; but for plates which may have to withstand rough treatment or long wear, fifteen or twenty hours may be given.

Backing the Copper Sheet.—After examination, the trace of wax which adheres to the copper is removed by a rinsing with caustic potash solution, followed by a thorough washing with water. The next operation is to protect the thin shell with a strengthening metal. The back of the copper sheet is painted over with a solution of zinc chloride containing a little sal-ammoniac (ammonium chloride) or borax; it is then rested on an iron tray which is suspended in contact with the surface of melted backing-metal. Granulated tin-lead alloy or foil containing 50 per cent. of each of these metals is then placed upon the copper sheet, and the heat is continued until the white metal has just melted—not higher, lest the copper become oxidised. The tray is now removed to a level place and a small ladle full of backing-metal, which has been well skimmed, is slowly poured over the surface, commencing at one corner, until a depth of about one-eighth of an inch is attained. It is then allowed to cool. The backing-metal is an alloy of 91 per cent. of lead, 5 of antimony, and 4 of tin (by weight); it should not be overheated —a temperature of about 600° F. is suitable. A rough practical test is to dip a scrap of white paper into the molten bath, when it should become only just discoloured, any stronger signs of scorching showing that the temperature is too high. The object of the preliminary coating with tin and lead is to ensure a sound union between the copper and the backing-metal, such as could not otherwise be guaranteed.

After subdividing with a circular saw, if necessary by reason of the treatment of separate blocks or pages upon the same plate, the copper is examined with a steel straight-edge, and if not truly level, the positions of defective portions are marked on the back: it is then straightened by gentle blows with a polished hammer, taking every care that the face be not damaged. After obtaining a plane surface, the excess of backing-metal is shaved off in a specially constructed lathe or hand shaving-machine; it is then trimmed and again tested with the straight-edge; irregularities are again rectified, and it is finally reduced to exactly the required thickness (usually that of a small pica) by a hand planing-machine; after finally bevelling at the edges it is mounted on wood, type high.

Any backing-metal which has found its way to the surface through pin-holes in the copper may generally be removed,

unless the soldering-fluid has also penetrated, and so caused the two clean metallic surfaces to unite. Unevennesses and defects of this character must be set right by a competent workman with a knowledge of engraving, to whom the final examination of the finished plate should be entrusted.

Gutta-percha composition-moulds from type-formes are treated in the same manner as wax-impressions.

Wood-Blocks.

Wood-blocks, like typographical matter, may be copied by wax; but, since they are liable to be damaged by extreme pressure, it is safer to mould them in gutta-percha rendered plastic by heat, or by pouring the melted gutta-percha and lard mixture over them as described on pp. 144, 145; then, after rendering them conductive, they are electrotyped, trimmed, backed, planed, and mounted in the same way as those produced from wax-matrices.

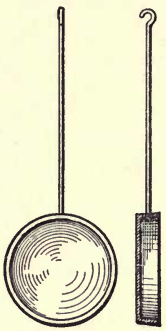


Fig. 90.—Copper trays.

Art Electrotyping.

In this group may be arranged the reproduction of medals, medallions, busts, and statues, or objects of vegetable and animal origin and the like. Among the principal points to be observed are the choice of a suitable moulding-material, and the carrying out of the casting on the one hand, and the arrangement of the anodes in the bath on the other.

Moulding.

Medals.—Medals, coins (or medallions if metallic) may be coated directly with copper after the manner of copying engraved steel-plates, the copper-matrix then being used to electrotype upon, provided that they are not in any degree undercut. Only one side can be treated at a time, and the back must be protected by a stopping-off varnish, while the face is brushed over with the solution of wax in turpentine, already described, to prevent adhesion. If possible, the connecting wire should be soldered lightly to the rim of the medal; but as this is rarely allowable, the object may be slung in a wire loop, or it may be placed in a copper tray as described by Urquhart, and depicted in fig. 90; these trays are made of thin sheet copper painted on the outside with Japan black to prevent local deposition, but left bright inside to make connection with the medal; they are supported in the bath by the hook shown above, the medal being merely

fitted into the bottom of the tray. They may be made of various sizes to take any coin or medal of which a copy may be required. When the object is slung from a wire loop, its position must be shifted from time to time to prevent the formation of wire-marks. Medallions made of a non-conducting material must be made conductive by plumbago or thin metal 'leaf,' a process which is rarely admissible.

It is usually safer, in any case, to prepare a mould from the medal in preference to taking an electrotype-matrix. To this end the medal is rubbed lightly over with plumbago by means of a brush to which a circular movement is given; it is then placed upon a flat surface, preferably protected on the under side by a disc of chamois leather, if there be designs on both sides and the 'relief' of the lower one is nearly as high as its surrounding rim; it is then moulded with plastic gutta-percha or with the fluid composition, as explained in the section dealing with moulding materials. Either of these methods can be recommended, but any of the other materials described in the beginning of this chapter may be employed as there directed. The mould is then rendered conductive with plumbago or metal and is ready to be electrotyped, the methods of doing which have been already dealt with in full.

Busts and Statues.—The moulding may be first effected in the elastic composition (see p. 148) by placing the object, slightly oiled on the surface, if permissible, within a box with tapering sides slightly greased, and gently pouring in the warm liquefied mixture, until the object is covered and the box completely filled, taking care that no air-bells form upon the surface of the former during the operation. The whole is now allowed to stand in a cool place until solidification is complete, when the box is removed, and the composition is cut through to the statue or bust from top to bottom, with the aid of a sharp knife, along a line previously determined by the shape of the object to be the most convenient. Being elastic, the mould may now be opened out and withdrawn from the object, even if it be somewhat sharply undercut; once removed, it returns to its original shape by virtue of its elasticity. The interior cavity, which, of course, has taken the form of the moulded object, may be hardened and waterproofed as above described, and then coated with a conductive film and subjected to electrolysis; but, owing to the difficulty in rendering it completely water-resisting, and to the fact that wherever liquid may penetrate the mould will swell out of shape, it is not advisable to adopt this plan. It is better to prepare a special wax-composition by melting together a mixture of bees'-wax, rosin, and Russian tallow, in the proportions of 50 : 40 : 10 respectively, and pouring this, just at the moment before it sets, into the hollow space within the elastic mould, which should be re-closed for the time in its original

containing-box; the wax-mixture must not be too hot, or the two compositions will unite and the whole operation will be ruined. When the wax has solidified throughout, the mould is stripped from it, and an exact wax-reproduction of the original bust should result. This in turn is placed in a suitable box, and the space around is filled with a cream of plaster of Paris, which must be allowed to harden; it is then removed from the box, dried and heated over a trough, in an oven or stove, to a temperature sufficient to melt the composition from the interior: the side of the plaster block, which had been in contact with the bottom of the box, and upon the surface of which the base of the wax-object is visible, is, of course, placed downwards, so that as the wax melts it runs into the tray prepared for its reception. A small proportion of the wax is absorbed by the plaster, and thus renders it non-absorbent. The interior of the cavity in the plaster is now rendered conductive by black-leading or metallisation, and is ready for the electrolytic process. When, however, the whole plaster-mould is to be immersed in the vat, the outside must also be waterproofed by painting it with wax and subsequently applying heat; and it is desirable also in this case to cut a small aperture through the plaster at the highest part of the object (the top of the head in the case of a bust) so that a constant circulation of the electrolyte may be effected during the time of deposition; this channel also must be made impervious to water.

A similar but shortened process is applicable to the copying of models moulded in wax, if the original may be destroyed—the operation is taken up at the second stage of the above cycle, the plaster being poured around the object at once, leaving only an opening at a convenient point, through which the composition may be melted out, and the copper solution and anode introduced. When the original wax-model may not be sacrificed, the longer process of taking a first impression in elastic composition must be resorted to, but the fracture of projecting portions of the brittle wax must be carefully guarded against.

Other systems of moulding are also in vogue. Lenoir's method for reproducing statues in a manner approaches in principle to that of the foundry. He moulds the figure in gutta-percha in a sufficient number of different parts, the sections being so disposed and marked that when united together they form a complete mould of the object; the different internal surfaces are black-leaded and then fitted around a skeleton-anode of wire; a convenient number of apertures are made above and below to afford communication between the exterior and interior of the mould, for connecting the anodes with the battery, and for the circulation of the solution; and the arrangement is ready for electrolysis. A knowledge of the moulder's art is very valuable, if not indispensable, in determining the most suitable method of dividing up the surface of the statue into sections.

Large statues moulded in plaster have been copied by rendering them impermeable to liquid, coating the whole exterior with plumbago, and then immersing them as cathodes in an acid copper sulphate bath, until a thickness of about one-sixteenth of an inch of copper has been deposited. They are then cut through at suitable points, where the marks of the joins will be least conspicuous on the finished reproduction, and the plaster being completely removed, the outside is joined to connecting wires and covered with stopping-out varnish, and the inside is rendered dirty by the turpentine solution of wax, or by painting with dilute ammonium sulphide, which gives a superficial tarnish of copper sulphide; the excess of the ammonium sulphide must be washed away, and copper is then deposited upon the different sections of the copper matrix individually; when a thickness of copper of at least one-sixth of an inch, but preferably a quarter or even a third of an inch, has been acquired, the thin copper mould is stripped away, and the separate portions of the electrotyped statue are mechanically finished off and fitted together to form the complete figure.

The mould having been prepared and rendered conductive by any of these processes, it is finally arranged to receive the deposit of copper; the main point now to be observed is that the anode shall be as nearly as possible equidistant from every part of the cathode-surface. If this be not attended to—for example, in electrotyping statue-moulds—the chief recesses in the mould will receive the thinnest deposit of metal, whereas they will afterwards be subjected to the greatest wear, being the most prominent portions of the finished surface, and should, therefore, by preference have increased rather than diminished thickness. This matter needs careful consideration, and the ingenuity of the workmen may often be taxed to find the best possible arrangement. For shallow-cut metals or plane surfaces with no design in high relief, a flat anode placed at some little distance may suffice; for reasons fully given on p. 89 the electrodes must not be allowed to approximate too closely. But for surfaces which are raised at any point, and which, therefore, produce deeply-cut moulds, the anode-surface should be dished out into an approximate representation of the mean lines of the original object. It may then be placed nearer to the cathode, and thus impose less resistance in the circuit. But in dealing with statue-moulds, the problem is more difficult. Lenoir meets it by using an anode of thin platinum wire, bent backwards and forwards into a framework or skeleton of the figure—of course, of smaller size, so that there shall be no danger of contact with the plumbagoed mould. The mould is then built up around this (*vide supra*), and the whole of the cavity is filled with the copper-solution; the metal is deposited, and the wire-skeleton is finally removed by withdrawal through one of the cavities in the plaster. Planté used a

similar skeleton composed of perforated lead sheet, fashioned roughly into the required shape, and this, being comparatively inexpensive, was left within the statue when the process was finished. When the statue is moulded in sections, there is, of course, less difficulty in adapting a suitable anode.

The lead and platinum anodes do not dissolve in the solution; the strength of the latter must be kept up by adding crystals of copper sulphate from time to time, as the copper which it contains initially becomes exhausted. It is mainly for this reason that apertures must be provided in the mould-walls for the circulation of the liquid, which may be maintained by placing a muslin bag or copper-wire box, containing crystals of copper sulphate, above the head-aperture, as this produces a gradual downward flow of heavy liquid containing fresh supplies of copper salt. Another result of using insoluble anodes is that a current with higher electro-motive force is necessary to effect the deposition (see p. 29); and, again, when platinum is used, oxygen gas is evolved, and for this reason the head-aperture must be at the very highest point to allow the gas to escape, otherwise an accumulation of gas forms at the summit of the figure, so that the mould will not be in contact with the solution, and from that time can there receive no further deposit of metal. The lead anode, especially at first, combines with and thus absorbs a large proportion of the oxygen to form lead peroxide; and, in proportion as this is formed, less electro-motive force is required, because the heat of the lead undergoing oxidation is a substitute for that of the copper dissolving at the anode in ordinary electrotypy. When copper anodes are used it is more than ever of importance that they should be of the purest electrotype-copper, to prevent the formation of insoluble mud, which would deposit upon the interior surfaces of statue-moulds, and give rise to much inconvenience

Care is needed to ensure that the anodes at no time short-circuit the current, and stop the process by coming in contact with the cathodes. This is especially liable to happen in electrotyping statues or busts, because the slightest movement may alter the relative positions of the surfaces inside the moulds, and it is impossible to watch the progress of the deposition. Lenoir has suggested that the outside wires of his platinum skeleton should be encircled by an extended spiral of india-rubber filament, which is an insulator; but, although for a time this would be successful, it is probable that by the gradual growth of the deposit the precipitated copper might creep up to the anode and effect contact at some point at which it happened originally to approach the cathode too nearly. Such short-circuiting would, of course, be fatal to the deposition upon all the moulds which might happen to be in the same circuit; Lenoir, therefore, introduced into the circuit of each individual mould

a short length of thin iron wire sufficient to carry the comparatively small current required for the electrolysis, but which would heat, and almost immediately fuse, by reason of its high electrical resistance, if subjected to the much stronger current entailed by a short circuit. In this way the iron acts as a safety-valve, automatically breaking the circuit in the branch in which the accident has occurred, and restoring it to the remaining electrotypes in the bath. It is, in fact, what is known as a fusible *cut-out*, such as are now usually made of lead foil or wire for electric-lighting circuits. The more modern form would answer the same purpose, being made to melt and break the circuit as soon as it is subjected to an undue intensity of current, the thickness of the lead being determined by the strength of the current which is to call it into use.

For this class of work the ammeter should always be employed; it would not only indicate short-circuiting as soon as it occurred by registering the greatly-increased current flowing in the circuit, but it would also show whether the process was taking its normal course. Any undue approach of the electrodes would diminish the resistance and give rise to an increased current, while any break or defect in the wires would be shown by the diminished ampereage recorded by the instrument. It, alone, affords an opportunity of judging of the progress of the work within a closed mould.

Having decided upon the best arrangement of anodes, the method of ensuring the most rapid covering of the mould demands attention. When the matrix or mould is of metal, no difficulty arises, because of its high conductivity; it is only necessary to connect any part of the mould with the generator to ensure an immediate deposition over the whole surface exposed. But when connection is made between the battery and cathode at only one point in a large non-conductive mould, a long time must elapse before the deposit will spread to the more distant portions of the plumbagoed surfaces; but the deposit is more uniform, and the result, therefore, more satisfactory, in proportion to the rapidity with which the mould is initially covered with copper. In order to convey the current to several parts of the mould at once, light guiding-wires may sometimes be temporarily arranged so that their points rest lightly on the plumbagoed surface; these act as so many nuclei or starting-points for the deposit, and, as soon as the copper has spread from them and covered the intervening surfaces, they are no longer required and may be removed. These guiding-wires are specially useful in carrying the deposit into the deeper or under-cut portions of the mould, into which it is often difficult to drive it at the outset, but which continue to receive a deposit when once they have been covered by a better conducting surface than the plumbago. The wires cannot be well arranged in the internal cavities required for reproducing busts

and statues, as they are liable to make contact with, and to disturb the position of, the anodes. They may, however, be sometimes passed permanently through the walls of the mould itself by adjusting them within the casting-box, so that their points rest very lightly upon raised portions of the wax-model (preferably at such points that they may not mar a flat surface on the finished figure by any mark indicative of their position). The several wires are collected into a bundle together outside the mould, and are then connected with the negative wire from the battery. The tip of the wire should be flush with the internal surface of the plaster or composition in the finished matrix, and, being black-leaded, will not adhere to the deposited metal. The deposit may often be coaxed into a refractory corner by using a supplementary anode of stout copper wire or thin sheet, which, being connected with the battery (positive pole), is held temporarily with its surface very close to, but not touching, the part to be covered; thus the local resistance of the solution is much diminished and the deposit is readily started, and, when once formed, will continue to increase without difficulty.

In all art-work of the description to which we have been latterly referring, the conductive film must be of the finest quality in order to transmit the current with the utmost rapidity from the points of original contact to the remainder of the surface. The silvered plumbago offers great advantages in this connection; and if ordinary plumbago be employed, only the best description is permissible.

The finished electrotype generally presents a dirty appearance, owing to the black-leaded surface with which it has been in contact; it may, however, be cleaned by rubbing with turpentine or benzene, sometimes after a preliminary plunge into boiling oil.

Reproducing Natural Objects.—Animal or vegetable objects are often simply coated with a thin film of copper, and used in this condition for ornamental purposes, an additional deposit of gold or silver being added to that of the copper. To effect this, a conductive surface is first formed upon the object to be coated. Warm spirits of wine are shaken with crystals of silver nitrate until no more of the solid is dissolved. The object is then painted superficially with this solution, and placed under a glass bell-jar, or clock-shade, together with a saucer containing a few drops of a solution made by dissolving a small fragment of vitreous phosphorus in an ounce of carbon bisulphide. The vapour of phosphorus evolved reduces the silver nitrate to the metallic state, and thus covers the whole surface of the object with a thin but continuous conductive film of silver, and enables it to receive an electro-deposit of copper of any desired thickness by merely suspending it as the cathode in an acid copper-bath. The greatest care is required in using this solution of phosphorus; it is liable to produce painful sores if it fall upon the skin of the operator and

be not immediately washed off, and to cause spontaneous ignition, even after the lapse of a considerable time, if it evaporate in contact with organic fabrics.

Instead of merely covering the object with a film of copper, it may be reproduced by taking a mould in suitable material, black-leading its internal surface, and electrotyping it in the manner of statues or busts. The copying of any insect or leaf becomes thus a question of moulding.

Many other applications of electro-metallurgy in connection with copper are used, especially in connection with the multiplication of drawings and designs: among processes of this kind that have been proposed may be mentioned—

Glyphography, which requires a flat copper plate to be either coated with two layers of composition, one black, the other white, or, preferably, to be itself rendered black by exposure to ammonium sulphide solution; it is then coated with a white material. The required design is scratched through the wax until the black surface of the copper is visible; when the drawing is complete—which is readily seen, because the lines appear black upon a white ground—the whole surface is coated with plumbago and electrotyped to a thickness of about the $\frac{1}{32}$ of an inch. This is supported with backing-material, like an ordinary electrotype-block, and is ready for printing in the typographical printing-press, the lines of the drawing being, of course, in relief upon a flat surface in the finished plate.

Stylography is somewhat similar as to the mechanical part of the process. The copper plate being covered with a mixture of 67 per cent. of shellac and 33 of stearine, with sufficient lamp-black to render it black, is varnished and sprinkled lightly with silver dust. The latter is then removed along the lines of the intended design until the black composition is seen beneath: the whole is then plumbagoed and electrolytically coated with copper. The lines are not sufficiently raised for ordinary type-printing; a second plate must, therefore, be taken from the first, reproducing the etched lines of the original, and this is used for printing as from an engraved surface.

Galvanography consists in building up a picture in coloured varnish, the gradation of light and shade being given by varying the thickness of this film. After black-leading, the surface is coppered, and, being cleaned with oil of turpentine, is used like the last as an engraved plate.

It is obvious that any of the photo-mechanical printing processes of the present day, in which the printing surfaces in relief are obtained from photographic reproductions of any drawing or suitable object, may also be aided by the sister art of electrotypy: the electrolytic part of the process is practically the same in all, and does not differ from those already instanced, so that it is unnecessary to describe any of them in further detail.

Electrolytic Etching.—By the reverse of these processes the same result is attained. The design is traced on the waxed surface of a copper plate, taking care that etching-tools lay bare the metal in all the lines. The plate is now introduced into the copper-vat in connection with the anode wire instead of the cathode, and the copper dissolves at all places where it is exposed to the action of the solution; but since the whole plate is insulated with the exception of the lines of the etching, it follows that along these only the copper is attacked. The lines may thus be bitten-in to any required depth; the depth may be determined at the will of the operator by adjusting the distance between the electrodes, the points of nearest approach being those which receive the deepest cut. The resulting plate is used precisely as an ordinary etched copper plate; and, indeed, it is such, the processes employed to produce them being identical except in the method of biting-in the lines. To obtain anything but crude results, however, by these processes demands much experience and attention, as it is frequently necessary to stop-out some of the finer lines to prevent further action at different periods of the process, and practice and artistic skill alone can guide the operator in this matter.

An ingenious process for obtaining *nature-prints* of leaves and similar bodies has sometimes been used. The leaf is placed between two plates, one of polished steel, the other of soft lead, and is then passed between rollers which exert a considerable pressure. The leaf thus imparts an exact impression of itself, and of all its veins and markings, to the surface of the lead; and this impression may be electrotyped and the produced copper plate used for printing in the ordinary way.

The subject of reducing copper from its ores and refining the crude metal will be dealt with in Chapter XV.

Manufacture of Reflectors.—The increasing use of powerful electric search-lights for naval and military purposes has led to a demand for a substitute for the heavy, costly and frangible glass lenses hitherto employed. The substitute patented by Cowper-Coles[1] is interesting, not only as an example of a special process of copper deposition, but as illustrating a successful application of electro-metallurgy in a new field. Instead of being refracted through a glass lens, the rays of light are rendered parallel by reflection from an accurately formed parabolic reflector.

To accomplish this, a convex glass matrix is prepared of such shape that its convexity would exactly fit into the concavity of the reflector required. This matrix may be made mathematically true by grinding and polishing, and is ready to serve as the mould for a whole series of reflectors. It is first coated with silver by immersion for half an hour, face downwards, in a silvering liquid, made up of equal quantities of a 0·5 per cent. solution

[1] *Journ. Inst. of Electrical Engineers*, 1898, vol. xxvii. p. 99.

of silver nitrate, a 0·5 per cent. solution of caustic potash, and a 0·25 per cent. solution of glucose. The film of silver is then burnished with cotton-wool and chemically precipitated peroxide of iron, and the mould, which is handled by means of a 'sucker' attached to the reverse side, is clamped to a metal ring, through which connection is made between the silver film and the cathode wires. The ring is supported horizontally by a rotating frame, so that the mould is plunged face downwards in the electrolytic tank containing an acid copper-sulphate bath (copper-sulphate 13, sulphuric acid 3, water 84 per cent.) and suitable anodes. The frame is so attached to its support that the mould may be temporarily tilted, in order that the periphery of the silver shall be immersed before the centre portion. Here it is rotated at first with an applied E.M.F. of 9 volts, and then with a current-density of 19 amperes per square foot, until the silver is well covered with a layer of conducting copper. The edges of the mould are then stopped off by contact with a ring, which prevents deposition on the copper beyond it, and so gives a sharply-defined border to the reflector. When the layer of copper is sufficiently thick, the mould with the reflector adhering to it is removed from the bath, and placed in cold water, the temperature of which is gradually raised to 120° F., whereupon the difference in the expansion causes the separation of the copper reflector, which is then electro-plated on the face with palladium for use, leaving the mould ready for a fresh coating of silver and copper. Palladium chloride is used for the electrolyte; for the deposition a carbon plate, with the edge shaped to the same curvature as the mirror, is used as an anode, and this is oscillated during the process so as to ensure even deposition and agitation of the electrolyte.

CHAPTER IX.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF SILVER.

THE electro-plating of articles with silver was one of the earliest applications of electrolysis, because it produced a material analogous to, but cheaper than, the older 'silver-plate,' in which the base metal was covered *mechanically* with a layer of silver; and even at the present day, when electrolysis is used to obtain coatings of so many different metals for such varied purposes, the deposition of silver must, perhaps, take the foremost place, both in respect of universality of practice and value of results.

DEPOSITION BY SIMPLE IMMERSION, OR WHITENING.

Silver, as compared with most metals, is very electro-negative, and hence all the base metals are capable of exchanging places with it when dipped into a solution of one of its salts. This process is, however, used only to impart the thinnest possible wash of silver, more especially to small articles such as nails and hooks; so thin, indeed, is the film that the name *whitening* is thoroughly descriptive of the process. It is clear that the coat of silver can be but of the thinnest, because, as soon as the metal is covered with the slightest covering of silver, it becomes protected, partially at least, from further contact with the solution.

There are two principal methods of silvering by simple immersion—first, by dipping the article into a solution of silver, either hot or cold; second, by rubbing a semi-solid paste of a silver compound over the surface of the object. For both processes the objects must be clean, and must present bright metallic surfaces to the action of the depositing compound. Formulæ for making-up such silver mixtures are numerous; those principally used are included in the following table, in which they are arranged under the respective class-headings of solutions and pastes.

Immersion Solutions.—It is obvious that since the deposition of the silver is due (and is also proportional) to the amount of the base-metal which dissolves from the object under treatment, the solution gradually becomes exhausted of the former and con-

TABLE XIII.—Showing the Composition of Silver Simple-immersion Mixtures recommended by various Authorities.

				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	
				PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.																	
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Mixture.	Most Suitable Temperature.	Silver Chloride.	Silver Nitrate.	Potassium Cyanide.	Caustic Potash.	Potas. Carbonate.	Potas. Bicarbonate.	Potassium Binoxalate.	Potassium Bitartrate.	Potassium Ferrocyanide.	Alum.	Sodium Carbonate.	Sodium Chloride.	Sodium Thiosulphate.	Ammonia.	Ammonium Chloride.	Levigated Chalk.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
		Solutions.																			
1	Elsner .	..	Boiling	7·5	..	37·5	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	37·5	15	..	60	..	..	1000	Dissolve 1 in 14 and add to rest. Filter.
2	Gore . .	..	,,	..	10	60	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
3	Roseleur	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	64	..	..	..	64	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	
4	,,	..	Hot	..	15	50	..	...	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Pour 2, in 100 of 17, into 3 in 900 of 17.
5	Wahl . .	Buttons, &c.	Boiling	80	..	..	..	80	..	..	..	120	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 5 and 9 in 17, boil, and add 1.
6	,,	Copper & iron	,,	..	4	12	32	..	20	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
7	Watt . .	..	Hot	*x*	..	..	..	..	..	..	80	..	..	..	80	..	..	..	..	1000	
		Pastes.																			
8	Gore . .	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	8	..	2	..	8	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	Add enough 17 to make paste.
9	,,	..	..	15	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	100	..	..	..	*q.s.*	,, ,, ,,
10	Kühn .	..	..	..	40	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	80	..	20	80	1000	Prepare as required, and apply with rag.
11	Roseleur	..	..	2000	..	..	..	..	..	3000	3000	..	..	..	4200	..	..	800	..	1000	
12	,,	Lamp reflectors	..	50	..	300	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	1000	Mix 1, 3, and 17, add enough 16 to make paste.
13	Stein . .	..	..	..	1	3	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	Add enough 17 to make paste.
14	Watt . .	Brass & copper, small goods	..	*x*	..	..	..	..	..	..	*y*	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	,, ,, ,,

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various ingredients.

taminated with the latter; and if the articles are of copper or brass, as they most frequently are, the fact of the contamination, and in some degree its extent, are rendered apparent by the blue colour imparted to the solution by the dissolved copper. Most of the liquids are used hot, and a momentary dip suffices to effect the required purpose. One of the best is No. 3 (Roseleur's), prepared by making up into a paste 1 ounce of silver chloride with 4 pounds each of powdered potassium bitartrate (cream of tartar) and sodium chloride (common salt), then adding a proportion of this to boiling water, contained in a copper vessel, immediately before it is required for use. The articles, held in a copper sieve or porcelain colander, are plunged into the solution, where they become coated instantaneously; but for the sake of security they should be stirred around with a piece of wood or with a porcelain or glass rod; they may then be removed, thoroughly washed by rinsing in two or three vats of water, and dried in hot boxwood sawdust. As this bath works best when old, and consequently highly charged with copper, care must be taken that no pieces of iron or zinc or other very electro-positive metal be clinging to the goods, or a certain proportion of copper will be deposited with the silver, which will in consequence acquire a pinkish coloration.

Cyanide solutions may be made to give a good whitening effect, as indeed may any of those specified in the above table. An interesting process of Roseleur's is not included in this table; the liquid is prepared by slowly adding a solution of silver nitrate to one of sodium bisulphite, until the precipitate, which forms upon admixture, begins to dissolve but slowly in the solution on shaking. The copper or brass objects are dipped into the bath, cold, and immediately become covered with silver by simple exchange; but after this, unlike the behaviour of other solutions, the film continues to increase in thickness, not, however, on account of any further solution of the base-metal, but owing to a chemical action inherent in the bath itself, which causes the deposition of the silver, not only on the metallic objects immersed, but even on the walls of the bath, on glass, or on any substance introduced. This is due to the ready decomposability of the silver salt employed, and to the tendency of surphurous acid to absorb oxygen, which it does at the expense of a portion of the silver oxide, depositing an amount of silver corresponding to that of the oxygen used up. This reaction occurs but slowly in the cold, so that there is time for a gradual building up of the silver into a coherent and adhesive deposit. If the liquid be heated, the action becomes too rapid, and the quality of the coat suffers accordingly.

Pastes.—The use of pastes is especially applicable to the wash-silvering of comparatively large and flat surfaces, such as the dials of barometers, and for the application of local deposits, or even of preliminary protective films to bodies which are subsequently to be plated with an electro-negative metal. The simplest

paste is that made by rubbing together 1 part of silver chloride with 2 or 3 parts of potassium bitartrate (cream of tartar) until they are in a condition of the finest powder, and then working the mixture into a creamy paste by the addition of water. Many operators vary these proportions, or add other ingredients, but the mixture, as it stands, will be found to give excellent results. Roseleur's paste for silvering lamp-reflectors (No. 12 on above list) is rubbed on to the surface with a wad of soft rag, allowed to dry *in situ*, and is then rapidly removed with a fresh piece of soft linen.

In applying the pastes generally, a piece of soft cork or a pad of wash-leather may conveniently be employed. Many of the so-called 'plate-restoring powders' used for restoring a white colour to worn electro-plate, which shows the brass foundation in places, consists of one or other of these mixtures or of modifications of them. Occasionally plate-powders containing mercury are sold; they are, however, fraudulent, for they purport to give a film of silver to the discoloured object, but instead impart one of the less expensive mercury, which is in every way to be condemned, for not only is the mercury itself objectionable, but it is gradually absorbed by the base-metal, leaving the surface dull, while repeated applications cause the object to become brittle and useless.

The thickness of silver on whitened goods is usually so infinitesimal that they will not bear scratch-brushing or any of the ordinary methods of polishing; but friction by contact with dry sawdust in a rotating barrel may be satisfactorily substituted.

Single-Cell Process.

This process is not largely used for silver-deposition, and is quite unsuitable to establishments where there is much work in hand. It may, however, be effected by using an ordinary cyanide plating-solution, containing a porous cell with a zinc rod or plate immersed in potassium cyanide solution, with the usual connections between the zinc and the objects which are being coated in the outer cell. Steele prepared a solution for single-cell work by converting 1 part of silver into silver chloride, washing and dissolving it in 60 parts of water, in which was also placed the mass resulting from the fusion of 6 parts of potassium ferrocyanide with 3 of potassium carbonate. No porous cell was used; the object to be plated was simply connected with a plate of zinc, and both together were plunged into the prepared solution. In a similar manner articles immersed in hot silver-baths have been sometimes treated by simply binding zinc wire around them, so that a greater thickness of deposit would be given than that impartible by simple immersion. The separate-current process may be said to be universally applied to electro-silvering, as the plant may be made of any size, and the process is under perfect control.

The Separate-Current Process.

In working silver solutions with a battery or dynamo-electric machine, the solutions must be well watched, and the current prevented from becoming excessive, as a good fine-grained minutely-crystalline deposit can never be yielded with a high current-density. Resistance-coils should, therefore, be at hand, or some other suitable means of regulating the current under all conditions of the bath, and under all dispositions of the electrodes within it.

The Battery.—The Smee- or Daniell-cells are, perhaps, to be most recommended; the former being arranged in groups of two in series, when more than one cell is employed, so that the electro-motive force may be twice that given by a single pair of the plates. A single Daniell-element gives an electro-motive force very suitable to the work (1 volt), and if several cells are used they should be placed in parallel. Some operators prefer the original copper-zinc cell, probably because its prime cost is less than that of Smee's, owing to the absence of platinised silver. It is, however, less effective, and becomes very badly polarised as soon as its action commences; but, by using a number of couples and plates of large size, it is quite possible to obtain excellent results with it. If a dynamo be used, it should have a very low electro-motive force, because it is less convenient to arrange the silver-baths or the individual electrodes in each series-fashion, than it is in the electrotype-copper vats; the current, moreover, must be under absolute control by the use of measuring-apparatus and resistance.

The Solution.—Most of the solutions used largely in practice have the double cyanide of silver and potassium for their basis; and doubtless the solution of this body in a liquid containing an excess of potassium cyanide constitutes the simplest and best plating-bath for general work. The composition of the principal mixtures suggested is embodied in the following table.

Silver-Baths.—The silver-baths are generally prepared, as required, by dissolving metallic silver in nitric acid, precipitating it with potassium cyanide, washing thoroughly, and dissolving it in excess of the potassium salt. Ten parts of pure silver yield 12·4 parts of pure silver cyanide. The water and all the chemicals used in preparing the solutions must be pure, as the presence of much foreign matter acts injuriously upon the deposit; the potassium cyanide especially should be examined, as it frequently contains only 50 or 60 per cent. of the pure salt (see p. 386). For a like reason it is better to prepare the silver cyanide separately, and to wash it thoroughly, before mixing it with the remaining ingredients of the solution; by simply adding potassium cyanide in excess to the nitrate or chloride of silver, a clear bath is prepared, but it contains, in addition to the silver cyanide,

TABLE XIV.—Showing the Composition of Silver-Baths for Separate-Current Process recommended by various Authorities.

			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
			PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.												
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Bath	Silver Chloride.	Silver Cyanide.	Silver Iodide.	Silver Nitrate.	Silver Oxide.	Silver Carbonate.	Potassium Cyanide (95 %).	Potassium Iodide.	Sodium Carbonate.	Sodium Chloride.	Ammonia.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation, etc.
1	Böttger . .	Cast-iron	..	..	..	15·6	..	..	31·2	..	..	15·6	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in 250 of 12; add 7, and then 10 in 750 of 12.
2	Elsner . . .	..	..	..	..	18	..	..	30	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in part of 12, 7 in rest of 12; mix.
3	Gore . . .	..	..	8·7	..	..	..	..	14	..	..	..	..	1000	
4	,, . . .	To 'whiten'	..	34	..	..	..	..	20·5	..	55	..	..	1000	(Use 3 to 10 Smee-cells in series.)
		To finish	..	10·2	..	..	..	..	30·6	..	..	..	..	1000	(,, 3 to 10 ,, parallel.)
5	Parkes . .	..	..	..	..	..	3·7	..	50	..	..	..	..	1000	
6	Pfanhauser .	..	..	..	..	15	..	..	25	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in 500 of 12; and 7 in rest; mix. Filter, if necessary.
7	,, .	..	..	12·5	..	..	..	..	18	..	..	..	..	1000	
8	Roseleur .	..	..	25	..	..	..	..	28	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 7 in 12, and 2 in mixture.
9	Volkmer .	Steel plates	25	..	..	..	..	..	150	..	..	..	..	1000	
10	Wahl . . .	..	..	31	..	..	..	..	35	..	..	..	..	1000	
11	,, . . .	Striking	..	4·2	..	..	..	..	37·5	..	..	..	..	1000	(Rogers Plating Co., U.S.A.)
		Plating	36·3	..	..	..	..	..	37·5	..	..	..	..	1000	
12	,, . . .	Striking	..	3·3–4·2	..	..	..	..	75–100	..	..	..	..	1000	(Meritens Plating Co., U.S.A.)
		Plating	..	25·4	..	..	..	..	75	..	..	..	..	1000	
13	Watt . . .	..	..	..	..	..	..	9	*q.s.*+*xs.*	..	..	..	..	1000	Mix 6 in 12; add just sufficient 7 to dissolve 6, and then slight excess.
14	,, . . .	German silver	..	..	15·2	..	..	..	*q.s.*+*xs.*	..	..	..	..	1000	(Requires no quicking.)
15	,, . . .	To obtain very white deposits	9·3	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*+*xs.*	..	..	..	..	1000	
16	Weiss . . .	..	9·3	..	..	..	..	..	35	..	35	14	*xs.*	1000	Dissolve 1 (freshly precipitated from 7 Ag.) in 11; add rest of ingredients.
17	,, . . .	Iron and steel	11·1	..	..	..	..	..	44	..	34	..	..	1000	
18	Zinin . . .	..	..	..	..	6·7	..	..	..	500	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4; add 8; use weak current.

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various ingredients. *xs.* = excess.

a quantity of the potassium salt corresponding to the silver compound used, and this is generally objectionable.[1] Thus, for example, on adding potassium cyanide to silver chloride, the silver cyanide is formed which is required for plating, but with it is an equivalent of potassium chloride produced by exchange.

AgCl	+	KCN	=	KCL	+	AgCN.
Silver chloride.		Potass. cyanide.		Potass. chloride.		Silver cyanide.

Again, the proportion of potassium cyanide to silver in the bath, although variable between wide limits, is by no means an indeterminate quantity. Having produced the insoluble silver cyanide, as in the above equation, by the use of one equivalent of potassium cyanide, a second equivalent of the latter is necessary to form the double cyanide of silver and potassium, which alone is soluble in the bath; and in addition to this an extra proportion of the potassium salt (*free cyanide*) must be employed to ensure the perfect solution of the anodes, for a reason which may be stated as follows:—In passing the electric current through a solution of silver-potassium cyanide $KAg(CN)_2$, the double cyanide is broken up into the cation, K, and the anion, $Ag(CN)_2$. The potassium is deposited at the cathode, but, by chemical exchange, displaces from the surrounding solution of the double cyanide an equivalent of silver (which deposits on the cathode) and forms potassium cyanide in the liquid [thus: $KAg(CN)_2 + K = Ag + 2KCN$]. Thus there is a concentration of potassium cyanide around the objects which are being plated. The silver travels in the anion, $Ag(CN)_2$, to the anode, where the ion decomposes into AgCN + CN, and the cyanogen (CN) set free attacks the silver anode to form another molecule of AgCN. Hence at the anode there is formed a double quantity of the insoluble compound AgCN. It is therefore necessary that a good excess of free potassium cyanide be present to dissolve the silver cyanide, and prevent incrustation on the anode. The following two equations show the requirement of the minimum two equivalents of potassium cyanide:—

1. $AgNO_3 + KCN = AgCN + KNO_3$ (washed away).
2. $AgCN + KCN = KAg(CN)_2$.

Thus 108 parts of silver, or $108 + 14 + 48$ $(AgNO_3) = 170$ of silver nitrate, require $2(39 + 12 + 14) = 130$ parts of potassium cyanide (two equivalents = 2CKN); while $108 + 12 + 14 = 134$ parts of the pure silver cyanide (AgCN) require one equivalent, or $39 + 12 + 14 = 65$ parts of the potassium salt, to form the double compound. Thus 108 parts of silver require a minimum of 130 parts of potassium cyanide, and should have, in addition, at least 50 to 75 per cent. extra cyanide, supposing the latter to

[1] Langbein states that experiments show the same results with AgCl as with AgCN. The resistance is less with AgCl, but the bath should be refreshed with AgCN to prevent thick solution and coarse deposit.

be pure; when the commercial salt, containing (say) from 50 to 70 of pure KCN, is employed, the minimum would range from 180 to 250 parts, and the added quantity from 70 to 150. So also 134 parts of silver cyanide call for 65 of the pure potassium cyanide as the minimum allowance.

But, although a certain amount of free cyanide is necessary, a great excess must be avoided, because it would dissolve the anode too freely and increase the strength of the bath, and, worse than that, would tend to produce a somewhat scaly and non-adhesive deposit upon the cathode.

The condition of the bath in respect of free cyanide may be readily tested by withdrawing a little of the liquid in a glass vessel and adding to it a few drops of silver nitrate solution; a precipitate is thus produced which should at once redissolve in the liquid. If it dissolve but slowly even on stirring, it is an indication of a deficiency of cyanide, and the time that elapses before it vanishes completely affords a rough gauge of the amount of free cyanide present. In practice the appearance of the anodes is itself indicative of the condition of the bath; if they are covered with a black deposit during the passage of the current, there is insufficient cyanide present, while if they are quite bright and white, the cyanide is in excess. The best results are obtained when the anodes present a greyish appearance while the current passes, but immediately become white and brilliant when it ceases, showing a complete solution of the thin film upon the surface. A further precaution which may be taken as a check upon the working of the bath is occasionally to weigh the electrodes separately both before and after the process; the loss of weight shown by the anode at its second weighing should be just balanced by the gain upon the plated objects or cathodes. Any departure from this equilibrium indicates either an incorrect ratio of anode to cathode surface, or a wrong proportion of cyanide in the bath; or, thirdly, an unsatisfactory adjustment of the one to the other. But if the surfaces of the electrodes are well arranged (see further on, under *anodes*), a loss of anode-weight unaccounted for by the increase in cathode-weight clearly points to an excess of cyanide in the bath, or *vice versâ*. Such an abnormal action brings about an alteration in the character of the bath, and must be rectified by the addition of cyanide of silver or potassium, as the case may be. Another very useful test may be made by dipping a strip of bright copper into the bath; if it become coated with silver by simple immersion, the liquid contains too much cyanide, and the deposit yielded by it will be bad, especially upon copper articles, or upon coppered objects.

Baths are also liable to alteration by exposure to the air, gradually absorbing carbonic acid, which takes the place of an equivalent of hydrocyanic acid in the bath, so that a certain proportion of the cyanide is removed, and the electrical resistance

of the solution is increased. Fresh cyanide must, therefore, be added from time to time, and these frequent additions, coupled with the gradual accumulation of other substances dissolved from impure anodes, or from the cathodes, give rise to a corresponding increase in the density of the solution. Accompanying the increased density is a greater sluggishness of the solution, and hence a greater tendency to separate into layers during electrolysis, the heavy silver-laden liquid from the anode sinking to the bottom of the vat and accumulating there, while the lighter potassium cyanide finds its way to the top. Thus the electrolytic action becomes irregular; a greater quantity of silver is deposited upon the lower portions of the cathodes while the coating upon the upper part is not increased, but may even be dissolved, after the manner described on p. 90. A similar action is observed in working concentrated, and, therefore, sluggish baths, with an exceedingly weak current from a battery which has 'run down.' Under these circumstances the anode is immersed in a liquid saturated with silver, the cathode in one containing little silver but much free cyanide, and an opposing electro-motive force is thus set up which tends to re-dissolve the deposit. Nevertheless, a moderately (one or two years) old solution will be generally found to give a better deposit than one newly made up, provided that the ratio of free cyanide to silver be rightly maintained; hence a certain proportion of an old plating-liquid is commonly used in making-up a new bath. When this is impracticable, the effect of age may be imitated by boiling the liquid for two or three hours, or by the addition of a few drops of ammonia solution. The evils attending excessive concentration may be remedied by appropriate dilution, except when the extreme density is due to the accumulation of foreign matter; or, within certain limits, by maintaining the cathode-objects in gentle motion, which exposes changing surfaces to the liquid, and also prevents the separation of the latter into layers; or, thirdly, by stirring the liquid well every night after work is over. Even a concentrated solution, however, may conduct well, and may be made to give a good deposit; but a dilute bath has a lower conductivity—and is, therefore, more tardy in action—while the metal will have a characteristic dead-white lustre. The specific gravity of the solution should lie between 1·05 and 1·10, pure water being regarded as unity; Gore lays down the limits between which a good deposit is attainable as 1·036 and 1·116. But the dissolved bodies are not the only impurities which find their way into the solution; insoluble matter from the anodes and dust from the air gradually collect, and when the liquid is kept well stirred, remain in suspension in it, and, becoming entangled in the precipitating silver, produce an uneven deposit. It is, therefore, advisable to filter the solution through blotting-paper from time to time as required.

The worst enemy of the plating-solution is organic matter: little by little it accumulates, and, although exerting no prejudicial influence in small quantities, it is fatal to successful work when a certain limit is reached. The cyanide solution, most unfortunately, is capable of readily dissolving many organic bodies, and the most jealous examination must be made of all objects which are to be introduced into it. Gutta-percha in any form is especially to be avoided; moulds or stopping-out varnishes containing this body should, therefore, be excluded when silver-plating is to be effected in the cyanide bath.

The cyanide solution is generally used cold; for coating small articles, however, or objects made of iron, tin, zinc, or lead, upon which a film of copper has been first deposited, it is occasionally heated.

The bath may be prepared electrolytically, although it is rarely so treated on a large scale, by dissolving $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 oz. of pure potassium cyanide in a gallon of distilled or rain water, and passing a current through it from a large weighed silver anode to a small silver or platinum cathode, the weight of which also should be known, until the excess of silver dissolved into the bath from the former over that deposited upon the latter shows the bath to be sufficiently charged with the precious metal. For this purpose the electrodes are removed from time to time, rinsed, dried, and weighed, until at last the desired strength of solution is reached. Here the large anode is used with a small cathode that the action of the current upon them respectively may be disproportionate; it is required to add to the weight of silver in solution, so that the case is different from that of an electro-plating bath, in which the solution is to be maintained of uniform density, and which, therefore, demands approximate equality of electrode-surfaces.

There is no doubt that the cyanide solution possesses many advantages over other possible baths, and with ordinary care will give but little trouble. The main objection to its use is its highly poisonous character, which always involves risk to the operator, and which renders the atmosphere unwholesome, even in fairly-ventilated rooms. Many attempts have been made to substitute safer solutions, but in no case yet with sufficient success to proclaim the introduction of a serious rival to the cyanide bath. One inventor has used a silver salt dissolved in thiosulphate solution; but this bath, although it is said to give good results, gradually decomposes, especially on exposure to light, and, becoming brown at first, gradually deposits its silver in the form of a black sulphide. Zinin has more recently found that the solution of silver iodide in potassium iodide (No. 18 in the table of solutions) could give very good results with a small current of low electro-motive force. He recommends it especially for the production of thick deposits, as in electrotypy. One practical objection to its use is, of course, the high price of the iodides.

This is not a fatal objection, if the process be a good one, but is certainly adverse to its general adoption.

The metal obtained from the solutions named has a frosted appearance, due to its being built up of an incalculable number of minute crystals, the facets of which disperse the rays of light falling upon them, instead of reflecting them uniformly; but the slightest friction upon the surface suffices to unite the crystals into an even plane, which reflects the light perfectly, and has the lustre of polished silver.

It was early found, however, that the presence of a minute quantity of carbon bisulphide in the plating-vat caused the precipitation of the metal in the bright condition, and although the use of the *bright plating-solution* entails greater difficulties than are met with in the ordinary processes, yet it is largely used for certain classes of work; for example, in those to which it is not easy to apply friction, such as those carrying remote or sharp angles or interior surfaces. In no case, however, is the whole plating-process conducted in the brightening-vat, but the bright deposit is given finally, when an almost sufficient weight of silver has been deposited in the usual way.

Of all the substances which have been recommended as brightening agents for the silver-bath (and these include, *inter alia*, silver sulphide, collodion, a solution of iodine and gutta-percha in chloroform, chloride of carbon, and chloride of sulphur), the only reagent practically employed is carbon bisulphide. A mere trace of this suffices to effect its object, while a slight excess produces spotted deposits and brown stains, probably of silver sulphide, and a large excess overshoots the mark altogether, and often gives a dead-white film.

To prepare the bright-bath, place a quart of an old plating-solution in a large bottle (a Winchester quart bottle, for instance) and add to it 3 oz. of carbon bisulphide with, or without, 1 or 2 oz. of ether, shake vigorously for a minute, and add $1\frac{1}{2}$ pints more of the old solution. Again agitate thoroughly, and allow it to stand for two or three days; there is, at most, $\frac{1}{25}$ of an ounce of carbon bisulphide in each ounce of this liquid. A separate plating-bath must be used for brightening; then every night, after the day's work is done, 1 oz. of the mixture just described is added to every 10 gallons of an ordinary plating-solution, specially devoted to this class of work and contained in the special vat. An ounce of old plating-liquid may be added to the mixture in the Winchester bottle in place of that removed. This quantity (1 oz. per 10 gallons) is the maximum amount of brightening-mixture permissible. If the required effect can be produced with less, so much the better; but on no account should a larger proportion be used, as the risk of spoiling the whole bath would amount almost to a certainty.

The bright-bath requires a stronger current than the ordinary

solution, and it deposits a harder metal, the bright film beginning to show itself at the bottom and gradually extending upwards. Any disturbance of the solution during electrolysis may cause it to yield a dull deposit; a whole batch of objects should, therefore, be prepared for immersion simultaneously, and introduced consecutively with the utmost rapidity possible; then, when a sufficient deposit has been given, which usually requires from ten to twenty minutes, the current is stopped, and the pieces are removed and are at once well washed in clean water.

These liquids have a great tendency to deposit the black sulphide of silver, to check which the cyanide solution is added, as described, to replace the portion added to the bath; the brown stains above alluded to are doubtless traceable to the same cause. If the pieces are not thoroughly washed immediately upon removal from the brightening-bath, they will become rapidly tarnished. Gore has shown, too, that the deposited metal contains appreciable quantities of sulphur, which may, in part, account for the variation in the physical characteristics of the metal.

The Anodes.—The silver anodes must be of the purest silver obtainable; the ordinary standard silver for coinage contains 7·5 per cent. of copper (most foreign currency has even a larger proportion of base metal); it should not, therefore, be used as such, but if it be the only form readily available at any time, fine silver should be prepared by the method described on p. 384. The anode may be of cast or rolled metal, but if the latter be selected, it should be annealed by heating to a dull-red heat, and subsequently cooling it before immersion in the vat, so that it may be softer and more readily soluble. As a general rule, the anode should present an area of surface equal to that of the cathode; but, as will now be readily understood, a somewhat smaller anode surface must be employed when the bath contains excess of cyanide, and a greater area when the cyanide is deficient, the object being always to equalise the action at the electrodes, in so far as it is represented by solution or deposition of metal. The anode should never be suspended in the solution by means of copper-wires (unless they can be so arranged that the copper never comes into contact with the bath), because they dissolve under the action of the current, and, passing into the solution, render it impure. Silver wire has not the same objection; but as it dissolves rapidly, especially at the surface of the liquid, it gradually becomes weakened until it is no longer capable of supporting the weight of the anode. Platinum wire, being quite insoluble, is free from both these objections, and is the best material to use. If copper or even silver supports are adopted, they should be kept from contact with the liquid in the manner explained in Chapter V. (p. 97).

The Vat.—Any of the ordinary vats described in Chapter V. may be employed, except those lined with gutta-percha mixtures,

which are more or less soluble in the cyanide liquid. Enamelled iron lined with thin wood is, perhaps, mostly to be preferred, necessarily so if the solution be heated. The disposition of conducting wires and the manner of imparting a reciprocating motion to a frame, from which the various objects are suspended, so that they may be kept in constant motion, has also been explained in Chapter V. The vats should be considerably larger than the objects to be plated, and may indeed be made of any reasonable size, remembering that a large bulk of solution generally gives a better deposit than a small one, especially in the case of bright-plating baths. When several vats are to be worked from the same battery or dynamo, they should be coupled in parallel, because, as a rule, the work to be silvered is very irregular in shape and size, and under these conditions the series arrangement is less satisfactory. A well-fitting cover may be made for the vat, to preserve it from atmospheric dust when it is not in actual use.

The Character of the Metal Deposited.—Like most other metals, silver, which is deposited by a current strong enough to evolve hydrogen simultaneously, is dark in colour, powdery, and non-adherent; it is in the spongy condition, and is useless as a coating. A weak current, on the contrary, gives a strong, malleable metal, adherent and coherent, and minutely crystalline. Some operators consider the commonly-employed current-density of 0·032 ampere per square inch (0·5 ampere per square decimetre) too high, and prefer to reduce it to 0·013 ampere (0·2 ampere per square decimetre); but for all ordinary work the larger current-density will be found satisfactory, and will, of course, deposit a given weight of metal in a shorter period of time.

The metal should have a pure white colour, any departure from this indicating the presence of impurities. A pinkish shade probably points to the existence of copper in the precipitate. A yellowish shade or tarnish, which is apt to appear upon surfaces that have been for some time exposed after removal from the vat, is probably due to a small percentage of a sub-cyanide of silver deposited with the metal, which gradually changes colour on exposure to light. It is found that a dip into potassium-cyanide solution, or even a stay of two or three minutes in the plating-bath after the current is cut off, suffices to prevent this, doubtless by dissolving the objectionable sub-salt. It has already been stated that the silver deposited by the carbon bisulphide brightening-solution contains a small proportion of sulphur, which is possibly accountable for the alteration of structure indicated by the different nature of the deposit.

The thickness of a coating of silver may vary from an almost imperceptible film to a depth of $\frac{1}{64}$ of an inch on electro-plate, or of $\frac{1}{10}$ of an inch on silver electrotypes.

Owing to its open crystalline nature, the deposited silver, if peeled from the surface on which it is precipitated, lacks the metallic ring emitted by the rolled metal when struck.

The Process of Electro-Silvering.

Brass, copper, bronze, German silver, and similar alloys are best adapted to the electro-silvering treatment; the softer metals —lead, tin, Britannia metal and pewter—though sometimes plated, are less well suited because they are not structurally so capable of resisting the final mechanical treatment of polishing and burnishing; iron and steel, zinc and other metals may also be silvered. But whenever the metal is attacked by the cyanide bath, so that silver is deposited by simple exchange and without the aid of the current, it should receive a thin coating of copper or be subjected to the process of quicking; this coating with mercury is, however, often used, even when the metal has no action on the bath, to render adhesion doubly sure. The explanation of the process is given on p. 116.

Organic matter must as far as possible be eliminated for reasons already given; hollow sheet-metal objects, therefore (brass candlesticks, for example), which are often filled up with pitch-composition, as a support to the thin metal of which they are made, must be gently heated to effect its thorough removal prior to electro-plating; this operation must be conducted with care, because cheap articles are frequently made in several pieces, which are held in place by the composition, and, therefore, become separated when it is removed. All non-metallic handles or appurtenances should be, if possible, detached from objects before plating, because there is not only a risk of their being damaged by the solution, but liquid is sure to penetrate into the sockets and interstices, from which it can afterwards be removed only at the expense of much trouble.

The processes preliminary to the actual electro-deposition are :—

(*a*) Stripping, or removal of an old coat of silver, if any exists.

(*b*) Polishing, if necessary.

(*c*) Cleansing, consisting of—1, boiling in caustic potash to remove grease; 2, dipping in sulphuric acid to remove oxide; and 3, scouring with sand or a dip into a mixture containing nitric acid according to the nature of the metal. (See Chapter VI.)

(*d*) Preliminary coating with copper, if necessary.

(*e*) Quicking, if required.

Stripping.—When old goods are to be re-plated, every trace of the original coating must be removed, in order that the new deposit shall be regular and uniformly adhesive. In the choice of a stripping solution, the operator must be guided by the character of the basis-metal from the surface of which the silver is to be dissolved, as it is essential that the liquid should

not be able to attack this to any serious extent, when it is laid bare by the removal of the precious metal.

For brass, copper, or German silver, a mixture of concentrated sulphuric and nitric acids is generally employed. The most rapid method consists in heating a sufficiently large quantity of strong sulphuric acid in a stoneware vessel, and adding to it, immediately before use, a small quantity of potassium nitrate (saltpetre) or sodium nitrate (Chili saltpetre); this is at once decomposed, a small proportion of the sulphuric acid being neutralised and a corresponding quantity of nitric acid being liberated in the liquid. Such a mixture when used hot is capable of dissolving the silver from the articles, which should be suspended in it by copper hooks or preferably by copper tongs, but should show no very great corrosive effect on the copper or basis metal. Nevertheless, it is not entirely without action: and the process must, therefore, be watched most carefully, especially towards the end, when most of the silver has been dissolved, so that on the disappearance of the last trace of covering metal the article may be removed and plunged into a large volume of water without loss of time. With this object in view, the pieces under treatment should be frequently removed from the liquid for inspection. The extremities of long articles which have not been properly reversed during their first electro-silvering, and the more prominent portions of every object having a thicker coat than the remainder, are denuded last; and it is often advisable so to place the goods towards the end of the stripping-process that only these portions are immersed in the liquid. It is essential that the concentration of the bath be well maintained; any dilution increases its tendency to attack the base-metal, a comparatively small addition of water sufficing to render the action even violent. For this reason the mixture, which absorbs water vapour from the air with great avidity, must be stored in tightly-closed vessels when not actually in use, and the objects to be stripped must be dry when placed in the vat; indeed the introduction of water in any way into the hot sulphuric acid would cause a sudden generation of steam, almost explosive in its violence, so that it is alike dangerous to the operator and destructive to the bath. In course of time the accumulation of potassium bisulphate in the bath (from the decomposition of the saltpetre added each time before use) is rendered evident by the deposition of crystals. When this is observed it will generally be found that so much acid is neutralised that the liquid is no longer serviceable; a fresh quantity of sulphuric acid should then be prepared, the old bath being reserved to recover from it the silver which it contains.

On account of the great care necessary in conducting this process, only one object should be treated at a time, if at least it be of moderate size, for the operation proceeds with great

rapidity. When this is inconvenient, by reason of the number of pieces to be treated, extra precautions must be taken to guard against too prolonged action in any individual case.

With a cold solution the action is slower, and consequently under better control; hence a mixture of 10 parts of concentrated sulphuric acid (specific gravity 1·84) and 1 part of strong nitric acid (specific gravity = 1·39) is often preferred, this being applied at the ordinary temperature of the room. Except that it is not heated, and that a greater number of pieces may be treated with safety, the method of use is the same as that just described; and water and moisture must be equally rigorously excluded.

A different stripping-process must be employed for zinc, iron, lead, tin, Britannia metal or pewter, or for any alloys of these, which would be vigorously attacked by the acid mixture suitable for copper.

This process consists in suspending the articles as the *anodes* in a strong solution (say 10 per cent.) of potassium cyanide, opposite a plate of platinum, copper, or brass, and connecting the former with the positive or copper pole of the battery, so that the process of electro-plating is reversed and the current flows in the electrolyte from, instead of to, the pieces. Thus, the goods being the anode, the silver is dissolved from them and deposited upon the platinum cathode after a time, at a rate depending upon the strength of the current which is being applied. An old silver-bath may be utilised for this purpose, the metal deposited upon the cathode plate being, of course, recoverable. In any case the same solution may be used repeatedly; and the current may be stronger than that permissible for plating, because the object is no longer to produce a good deposit, but to dissolve an old one with the utmost rapidity. But when a strong current is employed, the silver may be deposited in the pulverulent condition, so that particles frequently become detached and fall into the liquid, to prevent which the cathode plate may be enveloped in a case of parchment paper or even of fine muslin. Silver baths in current use must never be employed as stripping-solutions, because they would gradually dissolve small quantities of the base metals from which the silver has been removed, and would thus become too impure to yield a good deposit; only disused baths are permissible. As soon as the pieces are completely stripped, they are removed from the vat, plunged into water and well washed.

The process is, of course, equally applicable to copper and those alloys which are often treated by the more rapid acid method.

Polishing, Washing, and Copper Coating.—After the original silver case has been removed, it is often necessary to pass the goods to the polishers to buff and finish, prior to the cleansing and quicking operations, after which they are transferred to

the plating-vat without loss of time. Iron or steel cannot be quicked, because this metal is one of the few which refuse to amalgamate or alloy with mercury; Britannia metal also is not usually quicked; but copper, brass, or nickel-silver are fitted in this way to receive an adherent deposit. Zinc should receive a preliminary wash of copper in the alkaline copper-bath, and it was at one time customary to submit the tin-lead alloys (pewter, Britannia metal, and the like) to the same treatment, but there is no great difficulty in directly silvering them with good results. Steel, which is, in some hands, still coppered before silvering, may also take a perfectly sound and adhesive deposit by dipping the cleaned articles at once into a striking-solution.

Suspension of Objects in the Bath.—The suspension of objects in the silver-bath is effected by thin copper wires (commonly of about No. 20 of the standard wire-gauge). New wire should be used each time, because the deposit upon an old wire is apt to be loosened by re-bending, and to crumble off in the bath. The manner of attaching the wire depends upon the nature and shape of the goods. Some articles afford natural places of vantage from which they can be slung; such as cream ewers, cups, and the like, which carry metallic handles; or perforated objects; or those which, being unfinished, have rivet holes, through which the wire may be threaded. Spoons and forks are best supported in slings made by forming the wire into a loop around the shank, or by bending it into three-quarters of a circle at the end, and at right angles to the wire itself, leaving a horizontal space (the remaining quarter of the circle) through which the shank may be slipped, but which is not wide enough to allow the handle or bowl to pass (fig. 91). Plates, salvers, and the like should be hung by wires bent lightly around them, these having their ends joined by twisting together. Obviously the methods of attaching wires are innumerable, and must be determined by the circumstances of the case; the guiding rule in making the connection is that the wire shall be so arranged that the object cannot escape from its hold; yet, on the other hand, it should be so loosely fixed that the relative position of wire and object may be shifted at any moment without difficulty, so that fresh surfaces are brought in contact, and wire-marks are not formed on the deposited metal.

FIG. 91.—Sling for spoons.

The wiring is best done before the final potash and acid-cleansing processes. Many firms place a piece of glass-tubing over that portion of the wire which is in contact with the solution between the cross cathode-rod of the vat and the suspended object, so that silver may not be uselessly deposited upon it. Others use gutta-percha or india-rubber as an isolating medium; but, as these

are slowly attacked by the cyanide liquor, glass is preferable, and there is no difficulty in adapting it. Having ascertained the length necessary to protect the portion of wire which is to be immersed, this distance is measured off on a piece of narrow glass-tubing; a fairly deep mark is then made at the desired point with a triangular file; now, placing a hand on either side of the nick, with the thumbs immediately beneath it on the other side of the tube, a steady bending pressure is so applied that the file-mark is on the outside, the thumbs on the inside of the bend; almost immediately the tube should break with a clean even fracture at the place of the file-mark. In experienced hands accidents are not likely to happen, but in early attempts at breaking tube in this way it is perhaps safer, though even then scarcely necessary, to envelop the hands with a thick cloth.

Arrangement of Objects.—The objects must be introduced into the bath gently without disturbing the sediment; they should be arranged in rows alternating with, and midway between, the anode plates, so that each side will receive the same weight of deposit; thus, whatever the size of the bath, the number of anodes will always be one in excess of that of the rows of cathodes, and all will be in parallel circuit. If there be only one row of cathodes there will be two anodes; if two rows, then three anodes, and so on. Several objects may, of course, be suspended side by side from the same cathode-rod, and will be influenced by the same pair of anode-plates—provided that free space is left between adjacent objects. The anode- and cathode-rods should be parallel to one another, in order that the spaces of conducting liquid between the different pairs of electrodes may be equal. It is preferable also that, as far as practicable, only goods of the same shape, or, at least, of the same diameter, should be suspended from the same rod. On account of the great irregularities in form of objects to be plated, a considerable distance must be left between the electrodes, so that the portions nearest to the anode may not be so near, as compared with those more remote, that they receive an undue share of the deposited metal. Allowance must also be made for the motion imparted to the objects in the bath, so that the opposing electrodes may not make contact at the end of each swing. Again, two different kinds of metal should not be suspended from the same rod (for example, copper and Britannia metal), as the local current set up between them, both being immersed in the same exciting liquid, and being in metallic connection through the suspending-rod, will tend to cause the gradual solution of the more electro-positive metal, and will diminish the deposition of silver upon it until it is quite protected by a perfect layer of the precious metal. The solution is thus injured by the introduction of foreign matter. If the electro-chemical difference between the two metals be so great as to cause an electro-motive force greater than that of the depositing current

(which could rarely, if ever, happen were ordinary care bestowed on the process), no deposit would occur on the more positive metal, which would rapidly dissolve and cause a double thickness of coating to be given to the object made of the more negative metal. Otherwise the local back electro-motive force simply retards the action of the current in regard to the positive metal, until it is sufficiently covered to prevent further action; and unless this retardation be very protracted, the difference between the weights of metal deposited on the plates and that which it was desired to precipitate will not be very appreciable, so that the chief injury is done to the bath.

Use of the Striking-Bath.—An additional reason for guarding against this contingency is that lead and its alloys conduct electricity less satisfactorily than brass or nickel-silver, and far less so than copper, and hence they need a somewhat greater length of time to acquire the thin wash of silver which suffices to protect them.

Many operators, therefore, prefer as a preliminary step to dip the articles, immediately after quicking, into a silver-bath worked by a stronger current until, almost immediately, a thin film of this metal has been imparted, when they may be transferred to the ordinary vat, in which the remainder of the deposit is to be built up. The first, or *striking-bath*, may contain less silver than the usual solutions (half an ounce to the gallon commonly suffices), but the proportion of free cyanide is often greater. Large silver anodes are used; and, indeed, everything must be done which tends to reduce the resistance and increase the rapidity of deposit, in order that the action may be almost instantaneous, and that a momentary dip into the vat may be sufficient to give the required deposit. But, on the other hand, it need scarcely be remarked that the volume of current must not be so great that a pulverulent or spongy deposit results. The electrical connections of the striking-vat may be similar to those recommended for the plating-bath; but a smaller bath with two large anodes, one at either end, and with a single cathode-rod, to which the negative battery-wire is attached, and which is lowered into the bath by hand, is really all that is required.

How to Ensure Uniformity of Coating.—After the transference of the goods to the plating-vats, they may be left with less constant attention until a sufficient thickness of film has been obtained, provided that the current is constant and that the arrangement for imparting motion to them during the action is working satisfactorily. All that is necessary is slightly to shift the position of each piece relatively to its supporting wires from time to time, to ensure uniformity of deposit at these points, with an occasional momentary removal from the bath for an examination as to the regularity of the action. Should spots appear upon the surface, the article must be removed from the bath, rinsed, scratch-brushed, and then cleansed by a dip into hot potassium cyanide or caustic

potash solution. Finally, after rinsing once more, they are re-quicked and introduced again into the bath. Since, in spite of the gentle motion imparted to the objects, the solution is certain to vary in density, and to produce a thicker deposit upon the lower portions of articles, long objects, such as spoons and forks, suspended upright in the bath, should be reversed at intervals of (say) half an hour, so that if the bowls were downwards at first, the handles would be so after the first shift.

In immersing the quicked and struck articles into an empty vat, that is, into one which contains only anodes suspended within it, those first immersed would receive too strong a current, unless their superficial area were very considerable, and would be covered with a spongy silver precipitate, until, at last, the cathode-surface had been increased by the introduction of more objects, sufficient to produce the right proportion of current-strength per unit of area. Meanwhile, however, the original pieces would have suffered serious injury. To obviate this, either the current-strength may be reduced at first by the interposition of wire-resistances, which are gradually lessened as fresh objects are introduced, or one or more of the anode-plates (according to the size of the vat) are hung upon the cathode-rods at the outset, and are transferred to their proper places, one by one, as each batch of objects is immersed which presents a total area equal to that of one plate. In this way a large proportion of the current is at first occupied in transferring silver from one anode-plate to another; and the bath from the very beginning is under the same conditions as it is when filled with goods undergoing the silvering process. Thus even a small object introduced alone should receive a normal current throughout.

Some electro-platers, in order to secure a more perfect coat, are in the habit of removing the articles after a certain amount of silver has been deposited and submitting them to a preliminary scratch-brushing, after which they are well rinsed and cleansed and again returned to the bath; but it is very doubtful whether any real advantage accrues from this practice.

When a sufficient thickness of metal has been deposited, which may be known, as explained in Chapter V., by ascertaining the mean strength of current, the total cathode-area and the time occupied, or by the use of the plating-balance, the pieces are removed from the vat, transferred (if necessary) to the brightening-bath, where they are left undisturbed for a few minutes, and are then plunged into a slightly warm solution of potassium cyanide to remove any silver subcyanide left in the pores of the metal, and thoroughly washed in several waters held in successive tubs (*vide* instructions for washing coppered goods on p. 136); they are next dipped momentarily into a vat containing water mixed with 2 or 3 per cent. of sulphuric acid, and are again rinsed in water, and taken to the scratch-brush for preliminary polishing, and to the

burnishers for the final treatment. The potassium cyanide dip may be dispensed with, if the objects are left in the plating-solution for a few minutes after disconnecting the current.

How to Thicken the Coat Locally.—An extra thick coating of silver may sometimes be imparted to those portions of goods which will have to stand the chief amount of wear in use. This may be effected in many ways according to the appliances and ingenuity of the plater. The application of stopping-out varnish after a certain time to the parts which are to receive a thinner coat is rarely admissible, because, although it would have the desired effect, it gives too defined an outline of the thicker deposit, and this has to be obliterated mechanically, an imperceptible gradation being generally required. This method would be suitable if the whole of one side of the object had to be thickened, but an equally good result would be attainable by the use of only one anode (adjacent to this side). Another plan is to introduce, towards the end of the operation, a subsidiary anode, corresponding in shape to the part which is to receive the greater deposit, and which is placed in greater proximity to it, in proportion to the increase of substance to be acquired. Yet another system may be adopted in plating the bowls of spoons and similar objects, which are worn most largely in use at the most prominent parts of the curve. After plating in the usual way the spoons are so placed in a shallow bath that only the convexity of the bowl is immersed, and receives a coating; the depth of immersion must be frequently altered in a slight degree to ensure that no distinct boundary marks are produced on the surface. It is true that these marks may be mechanically removed, but there is no reason why they should occur at all.

Thickness of Deposit.—The thickness of the deposit and, consequently, the duration of the process is, of course, governed solely by the class of work under treatment. Many common goods, especially those made of white metal, receive a film so thin as to be beyond the range of practical measurement. This is naturally useless to resist even the slightest wear; it gives simply an ornamental covering for a short time. As a general rule for ordinary electro-plating, a deposit of from 1 to 2 oz. per sq. ft. of surface-area may be deemed a good well-wearing coating; a single page of this book represents approximately the thickness of a film equal to 1 oz. per sq. ft. This will occupy from three to nine hours in coating, according to the current-density used. A thinner deposit than that of 1 oz. per sq. ft. is not to be recommended, as even two or three years of ordinary wear would suffice to lay bare the base metal at the edges and in all the more prominent parts. In working, however, for the trade, the craftsman is rarely allowed to decide what, in his judgment, is best fitted for the work, but must do as he is ordered by his customer, and will be paid at the rate of so much per unit weight of silver deposited.

'Galvanit.'—A. Rosenberg has introduced a method of plating by means of powders, which are known by the trade name of 'Galvanit,' and which are moistened with water when used. The powders consist of a salt of the metal to be deposited mixed with a fine powder of a more electro-positive metal. On rubbing the wet powder on the metal surface to be plated, the latter forms a voltaic couple with the grains of powdered electro-positive metal (acting as anodes), and deposition takes places from the paste, just as in a single-cell process. It is not a 'simple-immersion' process, as there is not an exchange of metals on the surface plated. Instead of using a salt as mentioned above, the metal to be deposited may also be in the form of a powder, and the two powdered metals may be mixed with an ammonium salt. The moist powder is rubbed on to the surface to be plated, and this rubbing action renders previous cleaning unnecessary. It is claimed that even stripping is unnecessary. The process certainly provides a simple means of plating articles with silver and other metals, though it is not likely to supersede the electrolytic vat in commercial work.

Silver Electrotyping.

Silver is occasionally used in special cases for copying works of art or even valuable engraved steel-plates. Ordinary wax and gutta-percha moulds, such as are used for copper electrotyping, are not admissible for silvering, because they are to some extent attacked by the cyanide solutions. The simplest method of obtaining replicas of works of art in silver is to obtain first a thin electrotype shell of copper from the intaglio-mould, and then to deposit silver upon this in the cyanide-bath. The copper protecting-film may be of the thinnest, so that it shall not destroy the sharpness of the lines; but it must, of course, be subsequently removed, after the required thickness of silver has been deposited, and the whole electro separated from the mould. This solution of the copper may be effected by treatment with warm hydrochloric acid, or (better) with a warm solution of iron perchloride, either of which will attack the copper but leave the silver untouched. On the removal of the copper, the pure silver surface has the required form in practically undiminished sharpness and brilliancy. The silver may be built up to a thickness of one-eighth of an inch or more. It is rarely, however, that this process is required, and practically the sole application of electro-silvering is to be found in the coating of other metals to endow them with properties which they do not of themselves possess.

Ornamenting Silver Surfaces.

There are many ways of altering the appearance of electro-silvered goods; but to give a description of these, many of which

are purely mechanical, is beyond the scope of this work. Let it suffice then to say that—

A dead lustre may be obtained by depositing upon the silver a thin film of copper, which has a slightly roughened surface of excessively fine grain, and then again upon this a thin layer of silver.

Oxidised silver, which is an entirely misleading term, inasmuch as oxygen plays no part in its formation, is made by dipping the object into, or painting it with, either a solution of platinum, which covers the whole surface with a thin layer of that metal by 'simple immersion,' or one containing sulphides which imparts to the silver a superficial film of black silver sulphide. This latter solution is made up by dissolving three-quarters of an ounce of potassium polysulphide ('liver of sulphur'), or of ammonium sulphide, in each gallon of water; it is applied to the silver at a temperature of 150° F. The potassium compound is to be preferred; some operators add to it about twice its weight of ammonium carbonate. A few seconds' immersion in either of these liquids usually suffices; the articles are then rinsed in water and dried.

Antique silver is produced by rubbing into, and leaving upon, the parts of an object which are not in relief a thin layer of black-lead, finely crushed and stirred into spirit of turpentine; some prefer to add a little ochre to the mixture in order to produce a warmer ground-tone of colour.

Niello-work is prepared by tracing a pattern upon bright silver with silver sulphide or with mixtures of lead, copper, and silver sulphides, prepared artificially; when placed in position the object is heated to their fusing-point in order to ensure adhesion. It is, in fact, a process of enamelling. Clearly, however, it is quite inapplicable to many classes of electro-plate, while to any it must be applied with the utmost care, in order to avoid the stripping or buckling of the coated object or the fusing of the basis metal.

Satin finish may be produced, according to Wahl, by the application of fine sand propelled forcibly upon the surface of an object with the aid of an air-blast—a process analogous to that largely used at present for decorating glass. Any process which will destroy the polish upon the silver with equal fineness and regularity would, of course, answer the same purpose; but the sand-blast is probably the simplest and most economical extant.

Obviously the enumeration of the methods of decorating silver surfaces is by no means exhausted in the few words given above; they are innumerable, and capable of infinite variation according to the taste and skill of the artificer.

CHAPTER X.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF GOLD.

Advantages of Gold-Plating.—Owing to its high power of resisting atmospheric influences, combined with the richness of its colour, and the brilliancy of the polish which it is capable of receiving, and to the fact that all these properties are manifested even by the thinnest imaginable film of the metal, gold is very frequently deposited; none the less so, perhaps, because, being a costly material, gilt objects of low value may pass for articles of much higher worth.

Gold is a very electro-negative element, so that any of the common metals is capable of replacing it in any of its compounds. It may, therefore, be readily deposited by simple immersion, although the electrolytic process is more satisfactory.

Deposition by Simple Immersion.

Solutions.—Many baths have been used at various times, the principal of which are included in the following table.

Roseleur's Process.—Of all these, Roseleur's solution (No. 4) is the best for treating small articles—of jewellery, for example—made of copper, bronze, or brass. The gold chloride crystals should be dissolved in a small proportion of the water, and added to the solution of sodium pyrophosphate in the remainder, and the mixture warmed until the yellow colour of the liquid has disappeared. The solution thus made up, however, is too readily decomposable, as, indeed, is indicated by the gradual change of colour to a dark red purple which it undergoes on standing; hence the hydrocyanic (prussic) acid is added as a check upon the rapidity of the spontaneous reduction. It is omitted by some gilders, but the bath is under better control when it is used; when working too slowly, more gold chloride is added, or when it becomes deep purple in colour, fresh hydrocyanic acid is introduced.

In using this bath, the object must present a clean bright surface such as may be imparted to it by pickling, scratch-brushing, and cleaning; it is then quicked by a momentary

TABLE XV.—Showing the Composition of Gold Simple-Immersion Mixtures recommended by various Authorities.

				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
				PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.									
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Mixture.	Most Suitable Temperature.	Gold, as Gold Chloride.	Gold Sulphide.	Hydrocyanic Acid.	Potassium Cyanide.	Caustic Potash.	Potassium Bicarbonate.	Sodium Pyrophosphate.	Ammonium Sulphide.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
1	Braun . . .	Zinc goods	..	..	*x*	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	1000	Dissolve 2 in excess of 8 and 9.
2	Elkington . .	..	..	5	..	..	..	..	305	..	..	1000	Mix 1 with 155 of 6 in part of 9; dissolve 150 of 6 in rest of 9; mix.
3	Gore	..	Warm	8·6	..	..	..	..	500	..	..	1000	Boil for two hours.
4	Roseleur . .	Copper, bronze, and brass	Hot	1	..	0·8	..	..	..	80	..	1000	'Quick' articles first.
5	,, . .	Large bronzes before electro-gilding	Hot	1	..	..	9	108	20	..	..	1000	No quicking needed.
6	Wahl	..	..	7·5	..	..	..	..	562	..	..	1000	

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various ingredients.

plunge into a dilute solution of mercuric nitrate, rinsed in water, and immediately transferred to the gold-bath, which should be nearly boiling. It is more economical and satisfactory to use three gold dips in succession, each solution being richer in gold than that previously applied; this is readily effected by using old baths for the first two operations, and by arranging a system in which, as soon as the final vat ceases to yield a good deposit, it is made the second instead of the third bath; that which had been the second being now the first, and the old first, now practically exhausted, being discarded. Thus the pieces are most thoroughly washed before they enter the last bath; and no gold is lost, as the small quantity left in the third solution, when it is no longer serviceable, is used up during the time that it is acting as the second and the first. An immersion of a few seconds in each liquid should suffice; and the resulting deposit, which is, of course, very thin, should have a good yellow colour and require only slightly scratch-brushing or burnishing to impart a final polish, rinsing, and lastly, drying in hot white wood sawdust; for this resinous woods, oak, or walnut, which tend to discolour the work, are to be avoided. It may sometimes be necessary to improve the appearance of the gold by colouring methods, which will be described at the end of this chapter.

If it be desired to obtain a thicker coating by this method, it is only necessary to repeat the process several times, re-quicking each time before passing the articles through the gold-baths. The deposit is thus gradually built up, because at each quicking-stage a small proportion of mercury deposits upon the surface, and then exchanges for an equivalent of gold, when placed in the gilding-solution, the latter gradually accumulating mercury in place of the more precious metal. A really thick coating, however, cannot well be built up by this tedious process, and the electrolytic process is more convenient and more expeditious.

Elkington's Process. — Elkington's process of *water-gilding* (No. 2) employed potassium bicarbonate in place of sodium phosphate; but its use is more troublesome, and it permits only a semi-exhaustion of the bath, leaving the remainder of the gold to be recovered from the residual liquids by chemical means.

Roseleur's Process for Large Objects.—Roseleur's bath (No. 5) rapidly precipitates gold upon articles which have not been previously quicked; the deposit is not of high quality, but the process is well adapted and largely used for coating large objects with a wash of gold, prior to the electrolytic process.

Other Solutions.—Of other solutions for simple-immersion gilding, perhaps the most interesting are:—that of gold chloride in ether, which is applied to gilding iron and steel goods; and that of Braun, a solution of gold sulphide in ammonium sulphide, which is adapted to the direct gilding of zinc, because the latter metal would dissolve but slowly in such a liquid, and the coating

is, therefore, the more likely to be adherent. This sulphide solution is quickly oxidised, and should be preserved from unnecessary exposure to the air.

Deposition by the Single-Cell Process.

The Elkington bicarbonate process, above alluded to, when used to deposit upon silver or German silver, demanded that a piece of zinc or copper should be attached to the objects, and thus became practically a single-cell process. Steele also, in the specification of a patent granted to him, claimed the use of a cyanide bath in which the object to be coated was immersed in contact with a piece of zinc; but, inasmuch as a considerable proportion of the gold was found to deposit upon the zinc itself, owing to the wide difference between the electro-chemical relations of the two metals, zinc and gold, the method is not practically used.

Deposition by the Separate-Current Process.

The Battery.—Almost any of the ordinary battery-cells may be used. A current of fairly high potential is required, and a high current-density is essential. The Bunsen-cell is well adapted for the work, but the resistance in the circuit should be sufficient to reduce the current-density to 0·006 ampere per square inch (0·1 ampere per square decimetre).

The Solution.—As with silver, the double cyanide solution will generally be found to give the best results, provided that due care is paid to all the details of the process. The number of other solutions prepared with the object of supplanting the poisonous cyanide compounds, and of the modifications of the cyanide-bath itself are, as usual, innumerable. The chief of them are included in the following table.

For ordinary use, a bath containing three quarters of a troy ounce of gold, dissolved and converted into cyanide, together with about 7 oz. of good potassium cyanide in every gallon of solution, should give a good deposit at a temperature of 120° to 140° F.; it should be boiled prior to use. The proportions, however, may be widely altered without greatly prejudicing the character of the work; and it is well to vary the composition of the bath with any change in the conditions of depositing. Indeed, it is best not to adhere slavishly to any given formula, but rather to modify it by dilution or strengthening, by adding cyanide or gold, according to the work in hand and the methods of the operator. A solution to be used for cold gilding should contain at least two or three times as much gold, and proportionately cyanide, as one which is to be employed when heated. A weak solution, however, will usually give a better deposit than a stronger one at the same temperature.

TABLE XVI.—SHOWING COMPOSITION OF GOLD-BATHS FOR SEPARATE-CURRENT PROCESS, RECOMMENDED BY VARIOUS AUTHORITIES.

				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	
				PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.															
				Gold in Form of															
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Bath.	Most Suitable Temperature (F).	Chloride.	Cyanide.	Oxide.	Ammoniuret.	Potassium Cyanide.	Potassium Sulphocyanide.	Potassium Ferrocyanide.	Potash.	Potassium Carbonate.	Sodium Bisulphite.	Sodium Hyposulphite.	Sodium Phosphate.	Ammonium Chloride.	Ammonium Sulphide.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
1	Becquerel .	..	..	6·5	..	..	..	..	..	100	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
2	de Briant . .	..	Hot or Cold	..	..	8·5	..	..	..	100	25	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Add 3 (neutral) to 7 and 8 in 15.
3	Fizeau . . .	..	..	4	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 1 in 15; add 9 till just cloudy.
4	Gore . . .	..	..	6·8	..	..	..	100	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
5	,, . . .	..	..	11	..	..	..	80	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
6	,, . . .	..	..	27·4	..	..	..	200	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
7	Kick . . .	..	..	10–15	..	..	..	50	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
8	Levol . . .	Silver	..	*q.s.*	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 1 in 15; add 6 till ppt. just re-dissolves. Just acidify with hydrochloric acid.
9	Lerebour . .	..	..	0·6	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	4	..	..	..	1000	
10	M.J.L. (Gore)	Copper, brass, silver	Hot	..	..	6·2	..	125	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Boil together for half an hour.
11	,, ,,	..	..	1·6	..	..	..	..	..	25	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Boil 1 and 7 with 250 of 15, filter, and add rest of 15.
12	Pfanhauser .	..	Warm	0·35	..	..	..	4–5	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
13	Roseleur . .	..	Cold	10	..	..	..	20	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 1 in 200 of 15, and add to 5 in 800 of 15. Boil half an hour.
14	,, . .	Silver, copper, Ger. silv.	122°–176°	1	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	10	..	60	..	..	1000	Dissolve 12 in 800 of 15; cool; add 1 in 100 of 15 slowly; dissolve 5 and 10 in rest of 15. Mix.
15	,, . .	Iron & steel	122°–176°	1	..	..	..	0·5	..	..	..	..	12·5	..	50	..	..	1000	
16	,, . .	..	..	1·5	..	..	..	..	..	20	..	15	..	..	..	3	..	1000	
17	,, . .	Watch movements	..	..	..	..	4	12	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Dissolve 4 in 5 and 15. Boil for fifteen minutes; cool.
18	de Ruolz . .	..	60°–77°	..	7·2	..	..	100	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
19	Wagner . .	..	..	0·7	..	..	..	10	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
20	Watt . . .	..	130°	..	2·1	..	..	*xs.*	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
21	,, . . .	..	..	..	..	..	2·1	*xs.*	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
22	,, . . .	..	100°–150°	4	..	..	..	little	..	60	..	..	..	..	..	10	..	1000	Dissolve 7 and 13 in some of 15, add 1, a little of 5 and rest of 15.
23	,, . . .	..	130°	1	..	..	..	*xs.*	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	1000	Precipitate 1 with 14, filter; dissolve ppt. in 5 and 15.
24	Weiss . . .	..	..	..	..	..	0·35	3	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
25	Wood . . .	..	90°	6·8	..	..	..	27·4	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	

NOTES TO TABLE.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns, denoting the various ingredients. The weight of gold, in columns 1 to 4, represent the amounts of actual metal to be converted into the compounds specified. *Ppt.=precipitate.*

Langbein mentions that the following formula (used cold) gives a beautiful bright deposit on all metals, even on iron and steel:— 0·5 oz. of potassium ferrocyanide, 0·5 oz. of sodium carbonate, 30·75 grains of fine gold (as chloride), and one quart of water. The solution is made up by heating the mixed ferrocyanide and carbonate solutions to boiling, adding the gold salt, boiling for a quarter of an hour till the smell of ammonia disappears, and making up with distilled water. This bath is specially suitable for clock gilding. Langbein states that potassium ferrocyanide baths, although deservedly popular for decorative gilding, where deposits of different colours are desired, cannot be recommended otherwise on account of secondary decompositions during plating, and because they do not dissolve the gold anodes.

The cyanide gilding-solution is comparable with the corresponding silver-bath; a certain amount of free cyanide is required to promote the solution of the anodes, a deficiency of this salt being indicated by the formation of a slimy deposit upon the anode-surface. Too great an excess of cyanide, however, causes the anode to dissolve too rapidly, and thus to yield too strong a bath; but it also tends to attack gold without the aid of the current, with the result that the deposit is produced excessively slowly, and may not even be formed at all in the deeper recesses of an irregularly-surfaced article, the simple solvent action of the bath neutralising the depositing power of a weak current at these more distant points; moreover, when each side of an article is coated singly, the film of gold upon the side more remote from the anode may be redissolved during the covering of the second surface. When such actions as these are perceived they must be neutralised by the addition of more gold cyanide.

The gradual accumulation of dirt and various impurities, soluble and insoluble, renders the bath unfit for use after a time. The use of the liquid for depositing gold upon articles made of base metals causes a slow absorption of these metals into it by simple exchange in the few seconds during which they are immersed before a protective cover of gold is imparted to them; and as soon as the proportion of silver or copper thus introduced becomes appreciable, the colour of the gold precipitated by the bath becomes influenced, as will be explained hereafter. But these impure baths may, of course, be successfully applied to the production of a deposit, when the particular shade of colour which they yield is sought, or they may be used for deeper colours by adding to them a further quantity of one of these colouring metals as may be desired. The presence of much organic matter gives a dark colour to the solution, and causes it to yield a brown deposit, which can never be converted into a good coat; such a bath should, therefore, be discarded.

The cyanide-bath is often made up by simply adding the chloride or some other salt of gold to the solution of potassium

cyanide, but this is an objectionable practice, because it needlessly introduces impurities into the solution (*vide* p. 179). Gold cyanide should, therefore, be prepared and well washed so that only the pure salt is introduced into the bath. The bath may also be prepared electrolytically by passing a fairly strong current from a large pure gold anode to a small gold or platinum cathode through a 3 or 4 per cent. solution of potassium cyanide heated to a temperature of 120° to 140° F., until, as in the case of silver-baths similarly made up, the difference between the loss of weight of the one electrode and the gain of the other indicates that sufficient metal has passed into the solution.

Heated solutions suffer a gradual loss of water by evaporation, which must be made good from time to time, preferably every evening after the day's work is over.

In order to obtain certain shades of colour upon the gold deposit, solutions of certain metals are added to the gold-bath, which metals, by being precipitated simultaneously with the more precious metal, influence its tint. The effect of varying the strength of either current or solution and of modifying the working of the bath will be discussed in the section relating to the character of the deposit; but it should be noted at this point that a red colour, or a greenish shade merging almost into white, may be produced by adding to the gold-bath (preferably a cold one) a sufficient quantity of a copper cyanide solution on the one hand, or of silver cyanide upon the other. The proportions cannot, of course, be rigorously prescribed, because they will vary with the shade of colour to be produced, a few trial experiments sufficing to indicate the amounts suitable for any given tint. In preparing such baths the added metal must be introduced very gradually, so that an excess may be avoided, remembering that it is generally more convenient to add a little more copper or silver, if required, than to reduce the relative proportion by the introduction of a further quantity of gold. It has been noted previously that an old gold-bath, which is beginning to yield a coloured deposit, may with advantage be used as the basis for a solution intended to produce the same shade intensified.

The Anode.—The anode should be made of the purest gold obtainable; the presence of silver and copper which, either singly or together, are nearly always alloyed with gold in the arts to render it harder and more durable, is fatal, because these also dissolve under the combined influence of the electrolyte and the current, and the bath then deposits a coloured gold.

When pure gold is not to be had, and the means for preparing it from the alloys of commerce are not available, it is better to substitute a platinum sheet as anode, which will not be attacked by the solution. In this case the bath rapidly decreases in strength, and must be replenished from time to time by the

addition of gold cyanide, until so great a quantity of foreign matter has accumulated that a good deposit is no longer produced. The gold anode, however, is to be preferred, as it maintains an even constitution of solution.

For large articles which require a thick covering, the surfaces of the two electrodes should be approximately equal in area; the anode should be completely immersed in the liquid by means of platinum suspending wires, to obviate unequal corrosion of the plate. For small objects, which need but a few minutes' exposure to impart a sufficient film, a smaller anode is often used; but the bath should be examined at intervals, when it is much worked, and, if necessary, a further amount of gold cyanide must be added. It is convenient to have ready means for altering the position of the anode in the liquid, so that a greater or less surface may be immersed at will, and hence also for regulating the strength of current and with this the rate and character of deposit. To impart the almost imaginary film of gold which is to be found on cheap jewellery, Roseleur recommends the use of a platinum anode, maintaining the strength of the bath by adding to it crystals of gold chloride.

The Vat.—Earthenware or porcelain vats are best suited to cold solutions; and a deep porcelain evaporating-basin, obtainable from any chemical-apparatus dealer, and from many druggists, is the best containing vessel for hot plating-baths, provided that only small objects are to be treated. For larger work enamelled iron should be employed, but it is more important than ever that the enamel should be perfectly sound. A cover should be made to exclude dust, or the liquid may be stored in stoppered bottles when not in use. Generally speaking, the duration of the gilding is so short, and the objects are often so small, that it is unnecessary to arrange conducting-wires around the vats: they may simply be attached to the anode-plate and the pieces respectively.

Character of the Metal Deposited.—The deposit of gold is, perhaps, more susceptible of change by varying external conditions than that of any other metal. A large proportion of the value of gilding depends upon the colour of the metal precipitated, and this is most readily affected not only by the presence of foreign matter, as recently explained, but by changes in the strength of the current or of the bath.

A current which is too strong will, of course, deposit the gold as a black powder; but within the limits between which coherent and adhesive deposits are yielded, a stronger current produces a deeper coloured coating than a weak current. Hence, speaking generally, any influence which tends to increase the current-density gives rise to a metal possessing a warmer hue. A feeble current, a small anode, and a cold solution, alike give pale yellow deposits; but a stronger battery, an increase of anode-surface (and hence less resistance), or warming the liquid, increase the

current-strength, and a deeper yellow tone prevails. Motion imparted to the pieces also causes a lighter colour.

The best colour for the pieces to present on removal from the bath is a very deep yellow, inclining to brown; a pure gold colour will become too pale when the lightening and polishing action of scratch-brushing or burnishing has done its work. A dark, almost black, colour, produced by an excess of gold or too powerful a current, will never yield a good tint subsequently, nor indeed will even a brown deposit do so.

The Electro-Plating Process for Gold.—*Stripping.*—As with silver, so with gold, old coatings should be entirely removed before attempting to deposit a fresh layer of the precious metal. For a simple stripping-bath, some workers recommend a mixture of nitric acid with a little common salt, which produces by chemical reaction nitro-hydrochloric acid or aqua regia; but if this mixture be used, the utmost care must be taken to stop the action immediately the gold is removed, as the basis metal would be most powerfully attacked by the mixture. Others use strong sulphuric acid, to which about one-tenth of its volume of strong nitric acid and one-fifth of strong hydrochloric acid have been added. Equally with the other, however, great care is necessary to prevent the attack upon the basis metal by this solution, and it must be most scrupulously preserved from contact with water, for very moderate dilution would render its action upon the basis metals intensely vigorous (see p. 189). Large articles may be stripped, according to Wahl, by making them anodes in a bath of the strongest sulphuric acid, the cathodes being of copper. But the simplest plan is to make the old plated goods the anodes in a 10 per cent. solution of potassium cyanide; such a solution *per se* may even suffice to dissolve a mere wash of gold, but for any appreciable depth of deposit the solvent action should be aided by attaching the pieces to the positive wire of a battery; the action must not be unnecessarily prolonged, as many of the basis metals are dissolved in this way—silver especially so.

The Process.—The articles, whether new or old (but in the latter case after stripping), are well polished and cleansed by potash and acid dips, and after a thorough rinsing are placed in the gold-bath. Many platers quick the objects previously to this by passing them through a weak solution of mercurous nitrate; but if they are clean and the baths are well prepared, they should take a good coat of gold in the vat without this preliminary process, and as gold is prone to amalgamate or alloy with mercury, and thus to become discoloured, it is well to guard as far as possible against damage to finished goods by avoiding the use of mercury in all operations connected with gilding.

Small wares, when only a few pieces are to be dipped at a time, may be slung upon a copper wire attached to the negative pole of

the battery, and are thus plunged into the gold-bath (usually hot), the wire being still held by the right hand so that they may be gently moved about in the solution; the left hand meanwhile grasps the wire attached to the anode, and is thus able to regulate the proportion of its surface which is immersed in the liquid, and hence also to alter the strength of current at will. The deposit should take place immediately, and as soon as the articles are completely covered, the anode may be partially withdrawn from the liquid to reduce the current-density, but not sufficiently to give rise to a yellow coating of gold. This method of working has the merit of affording control over the colour of the deposit; if too pale it may be brought to the slightly brownish yellow which ultimately gives the richest tone, by lowering the anode and thus increasing its surface; or if too dark it may be correspondingly improved by decreasing the area of anode exposed.

After a few seconds' immersion, the pieces should be lifted from the solution and examined. If the coating be sound and of good colour, the position of the wire-support should be shifted slightly by a gentle shake, and the goods returned to the bath. They should be re-examined from time to time, and finally removed, washed, and scratch-brushed lightly or burnished. The washing should be effected in several waters as explained in reference to copper (p. 136). If at the first inspection the colour is found to be wrong, the fault must be remedied by altering the position of the anode to a proportionate extent; if the object is imperfectly coated owing to the presence of grease-marks (which is scarcely likely to be the case owing to the comparatively ready solubility of grease in the hot cyanide of the bath itself), it must be removed, rinsed, and re-dipped in potash, again rinsed and returned to the plating-vat. Bad solutions sometimes cause discoloured patches on the surface of the article, and these should be obliterated by scratch-brushing before continuing the deposition. The beer or other organic matter from the liquid used in scratch-brushing must, of course, be most carefully washed away before replacing the goods in the gold-bath.

The continuance of a black or dark-brown deposit must not be permitted, as it is impossible to produce a good coloured lustre by polishing such a coating. If the colour be due to excess of gold in the solution, or to too strong a current, the remedy is obvious; but if it be due to organic matter contained in an old bath, the use of the latter must be discontinued. For some classes of work, however, such as the coating of interior surfaces — of tankards and the like—a slightly dark colour is often preferable, and an old bath which is not absolutely past use may find an application here. The duration of the gilding-process rarely exceeds a few minutes, as a comparatively thin film of the metal suffices for most purposes. When thick deposits are required, the

pieces may be removed from the bath two or three times during the process, and be scratch-brushed, well washed, and returned.

Large objects cannot, of course, be treated in this manner, but should be suspended in the bath as in ordinary plating-vats, but, if possible, they should be gently moved from time to time; very large pieces are more often treated in cold baths because of their greater convenience of application. Small perforated articles are best hung upon a wire on which they are separated from one another by small glass beads; but the wire should now and again be sharply shaken, to prevent the formation of permanent marks upon the goods at the points of contact; so also in slinging chains in the gold-bath, the relative positions of the links should be shifted from time to time with the same object in view. To gild the interior of a vessel it must be well cleansed and prepared to receive the deposit, and then very thoroughly dried on the exterior, especially around the rim. Having been rested upon a level surface, and attached by a wire to the negative pole of the battery, it is carefully filled to the brim with gold solution at a temperature of 120° to 140° F., so that none of the liquid splashes or creeps over the margin (hence the necessity for absolute dryness outside). A gold anode attached to the positive pole of the battery is dipped to a sufficient distance in the liquid and gently stirred around within it; in a few seconds the interior surface will be completely covered with gold, and in four or five minutes a sufficient deposit will have been effected. The anode is then removed, the liquid returned to the heated gold-plating vat, and the article thoroughly washed, polished, and dried. Attention is chiefly to be bestowed in securing an even margin at the edge of the vessel; if it be not sufficiently dried initially, the gilding-solution will gradually creep up the damp portions; and wherever the liquid has penetrated, gold will be deposited, and thus a wavy line instead of a straight one will mark the junction between the outside of the vessel and the lining; splashings which are in liquid connection with the main portion of the solution will, of course, bring about a similar result.

It often happens that the vessels which are to be gilt interiorly have an irregular outline at the top, so that some parts of the surface which should receive a coating are above the surface of the liquid, as, for example, in the case of ewers and other lipped wares. All these portions may, however, be covered by means of a *doctor*; this consists of a piece of soft rag folded several times around a thin strip of gold connected as an anode. On saturating the rag with gilding-solution and applying it as a brush to the parts which are to be treated, the object being, of course, connected up as a cathode, the current passes and electrolyses the liquid in the rag, depositing the gold upon the metallic surface and dissolving it from the anode. As, however, there is not free

motion in such an absorbed solution, it is advisable to re-moisten the rag in the gold-bath from time to time. The doctor is best applied during the time of gilding the rest of the interior, as there is then less likelihood of a line forming, which would indicate the level of the liquid in the vessel. Such a line, if at all pronounced, is not easy to obliterate without risk to the gilding around. Nevertheless, with care, the rag-gilding may be applied either before or after the other process without evil consequences. The more elaborate device proposed by Wagener and Netto for other purposes (p. 104) could be applied to this work if desired.

The time required for gilding is far less than that demanded for silvering, because, as a rule, the coated articles are not required to withstand such severe wear, and a much thinner deposit is sufficient; but thimbles, pencil- or watch-cases, or any object which will be put to the test of rougher usage, must receive a fair proportion of gold. For other goods which are to receive but a thin film, the actual thickness must be regulated by the colour, which depends largely in the early stages of gilding upon the colour of the basis metal; thus brass, copper, or bronze, which are themselves yellow or reddish metals, become thoroughly gold-like after an immersion of a few seconds, while silver, which is a white metal, pales the colour of the gold precipitated upon it until sufficient has been deposited to form a film completely opaque. Occasionally silver is covered with a preliminary wash of copper, in order to enhance the colour of a mere wash of deposited gold. It must be borne in mind, however, that a mere film of gold will not entirely protect the silver or other basis metal from the action of the atmosphere; so that such surfaces are very liable to tarnish when brought into large towns, or wherever the air is at all polluted with hydrogen sulphide.

Dead-Gilding.—It is sometimes desired to produce a surface with that dead lustre which in richness of effect is so charming to the eye. This may always be accomplished by ensuring that the surface is dead before gilding; if it be not, it must be rendered so, either mechanically, by rubbing with a fine powder, such as that of Bath-brick, which will impart the necessary degree of roughness without causing deep marks or scratches; or chemically, as in the case of copper, by dipping momentarily into a strong acid; or electrolytically, by imparting a preliminary frosted film to the article before gilding. Of these processes the first is self-explanatory. The second is convenient for small wares, being especially adapted to copper, brass, or bronze goods, and depends for success upon the microscopically uneven etching of the surface of a minutely crystalline, or not absolutely homogeneous, material. It is effected by plunging the goods, suspended from a wire, or contained in a perforated porcelain or platinum-wire basket, into a bath containing 100 parts of nitric acid (specific gravity = 1·33), a like quantity of sulphuric acid

(specific gravity = 1·84), and one part of common salt. They are almost immediately removed and plunged into a large volume of water, so that the acid clinging to them is at once washed away (an insufficient volume of wash-water would, for the first moment, only dilute the acid, and cause it to attack the metal too violently). If sufficiently frosted, they are very thoroughly washed, and, with or without quicking, according to the practice of the establishment, are passed on to the gilding-vat. If still too bright, the acid dip is again and again repeated, until the requisite degree of dulness has been imparted. It need hardly be observed that previous to this process the goods must have been thoroughly cleansed by the usual dips. The third method is equally convenient and simple, and is especially suitable to silver articles. Advantage is taken of the beautiful dead lustre of electro-deposited copper; a thin film of this metal is deposited upon the cleansed silver surface, and without scratch-brushing or burnishing, but after washing well, is at once protected by the gold deposit. Occasionally the copper is made still more dead by very rapidly passing the pieces through the acid dip, immediately before gilding; but in this case great care must be taken that the copper is not entirely removed at any point, because at such places an irregularity of gilt surface would be apparent. The addition of aurate of ammonia to the gold-bath also tends in the direction of giving a good dead lustre.

Dead-gilded work must never be exposed to friction—either in manufacture or in use—or it will rapidly become brightened; this class of gilding is, therefore, not applicable to general work, but is well suited to surfaces which will be kept under glass, such as the dials of clocks or philosophical instruments, or for the groundwork of a raised design which will protect it from being rubbed, and which, being itself burnished, may be made to produce a very fine effect by the skilful contrasting of the two styles of gilding. When the mechanical method of producing the dead surface before gilding is resorted to, as is often done with sword mountings and the like, or where the two kinds of gilding are blended on the same object, the Bath-brick treatment should be confined, as far as possible, to those portions which are to be dead-surfaced, as the labour of brightening the others afterwards would be greatly increased. So, too, in imparting the final polish to the bright portions, the tools must not be allowed to touch the other surfaces, or the latter will at once lose their characteristic appearance.

Some difficulty is at times experienced in giving the first coating of gold to dead surfaces, and the progress of the deposition must be carefully watched. Should such difficulties arise, the current-strength and that of the solution may be increased; indeed with filigree work, in which several depths of surface are presented, there may be difficulty in forcing the

deposit into the deeper interstices, unless this treatment is resorted to. But as these alterations of conditions both tend in the direction of giving a brown deposit, which it is quite impossible to remedy if the surface is to remain dull, and almost so if it should be brightened (because of the difficulty in causing the polishing tool to penetrate to all parts), the countervailing precautions of using a new bath and keeping the pieces in active motion in the liquid must be taken, because *cœteris paribus* either of these measures tends to lighten the colour of the deposit. When the surfaces are once covered with gold, the progress should be steady.

Gilding the more Electro-positive Metals.—Any metal which will itself deposit gold from the cyanide solution demands especial care in its treatment. When it is possible to effect the gilding without preliminary protection by copper, as, for example, in the case of nickel-silver, iron, or steel, the rapidity of deposition must be checked by using a weaker solution, a less intense current, and a lower temperature during the operation; unless these points are attended to, the deposit will probably not be sufficiently adhesive to withstand the subsequent treatment of polishing. Very commonly these metals are first protected by a coat of copper or brass, imparted by the alkaline (cyanide) bath; lead, Britannia metal, zinc, and similar metals are always so treated. A thin film of copper is deposited upon the well-cleaned surface in the cyanide-vat (p. 129); then, if wished, this may be slightly thickened in the acid copper-bath, and having been scratch-brushed (and quicked if desired) it is ready for gilding.

The dead-gilding of large surfaces of zinc is frequently demanded by the requirements of art, and is readily accomplished by a modification of the last process. The metal being well prepared is coppered thinly in the cyanide-vat, washed, scratch-brushed to ensure an even and adherent deposit, and a slight increase of copper is given in the same bath; then, after washing, a thicker frosted deposit is made in the acid copper-bath, and now the surface is ready for the gold-vat, which should be used almost at the boiling-point. A sufficient amount of gold having been thrown down, the plate is thoroughly washed and dried, preferably in a drying-oven. It is necessary to avoid handling the dead-coated portions at any stage of the process, as the slightest mark becomes visible upon the finished surface. Many operators, according to Roseleur, give the coppered objects a thin coating of silver by simple immersion before gilding, and, after drying and burnishing those portions which are to be brightened, impart a second thin coat of gold, wash, and again dry it.

When silver objects have been joined with tinman's (soft) solder, which is an alloy of tin and lead, the gold frequently refuses to deposit upon it, especially if the bath is in bad order or the current weak. Watt obviates this difficulty by painting

the line of the solder with a solution containing 5 per cent. of copper sulphate crystals and a like proportion of sulphuric acid, and lightly resting a piece of iron in the liquid in contact with the solder; galvanic action is immediately set up, iron dissolves, and an equivalent of copper is precipitated over the whole surface covered by the solution. Thus, a copper surface is substituted for one of solder, and the entire object may be gilt in the usual way. When only a wash of gold is to be given, the coppered line should preferably be silvered before gilding, to ensure uniformity of colour.

Ornamentation and Treatment of Gilt Surfaces.—It is sufficiently obvious that, from the number of varied tints which may be imparted to electro-deposited gold, as well as from the different lustres obtainable, the means of ornamentation depending upon the combination of these alone, or of part-silvering and part-gilding, are almost infinite in number and variation of effect. Thus, a silver (or silvered) article may be in part gilded, by painting with a stopping-off varnish (see p. 388) those portions of the design that are to remain as silver; then, after drying and hardening the varnish by heating gently in a stove, the remainder may be caused to receive a deposit of gold of any desired colour. Or a pattern may be left blank upon the varnished surface, to receive a coat of red gold; the varnish may then be washed off the remaining portion by the application of turpentine and subsequently spirits of wine, and the gilt pattern being in turn protected, the groundwork may be covered with a green or yellow gold. This class of work is known as *Parcel-gilding*. But the various combinations of flat and relief surfaces, of red, green, and yellow gilding, with silver, and with gold of bright or dead lustre, are better discussed in a manual of decorative art. Here we simply indicate the means by which the ideas of the artist may be carried into effect.

It occasionally happens that the gold deposit has not a good colour, so that a special colouring process must be resorted to. Usually the electro-deposited metal, being under better control at the time of precipitation, does not require this treatment, but the gilding produced by simple immersion may do so. The required shade may, of course, be imparted by electro-gilding; but when the layer of gold is not too thin, the older jeweller's method may be adopted, by which the subjection of the object to the action of oxidising agents in a state of fusion, or in hot concentrated solution, effects the oxidation and removal of the alloyed metal upon the surface, leaving the gold unaltered. Such a mixture is made by fusing together in an earthen pipkin equal parts of alum, nitre, ferrous sulphate, and zinc sulphate; when thoroughly melted it is mixed by stirring, and is painted over the surfaces of the objects to be coloured. These are then suspended in the central space of a specially-constructed circular

furnace, which has an inner concentric lining of vertical fire bars (fig. 92 shows this furnace in vertical cross-section), the annular space between the two being filled with incandescent fuel. Here they should remain until a moistened surface, caused to touch any of the pieces, produces a slight hissing sound, by which time the colouring mixture will have fused; they are then removed, and at once pickled in dilute sulphuric acid (water containing 2 or 3 per cent. of the acid), until the solid crust and the oxide of copper, produced by the oxygen of the nitre, have dissolved and left a clear gold surface. Any copper uncovered, or any basis metal insufficiently protected, will, of course, be corroded and the piece spoiled; copper surfaces will have become covered with red cuprous oxide, which is insoluble in the weak acid. If results of this nature have been obtained, the only remedy is to strip off any gold which may remain, and re-cleanse and re-gild the objects with a thicker coating.

A mixture made from 2 parts of potassium nitrate and 1 part each of alum, sodium chloride, and zinc sulphate by rubbing them into a thick paste may be applied in the same way; it is painted over the surfaces to be covered, and the pieces are heated on a clean iron plate over a charcoal fire until the mixture has darkened in colour, when it is removed by dipping the articles into dilute sulphuric acid. A third mixture, which is often similarly employed, consists of 6 parts of potassium nitrate, with 2 of ferrous sulphate, and 1 of zinc sulphate. But, however useful these mixtures may be in imparting a good colour to inferior but solid alloys of gold with copper, they are certainly not generally suitable to the treatment of the thin films of gold imparted by electrolysis to articles of base metal; and the electro-colouring process, by judiciously combining gold and copper or gold and silver solutions, or by merely adjusting the strength of the plating-current, is far more reliable and satisfactory.

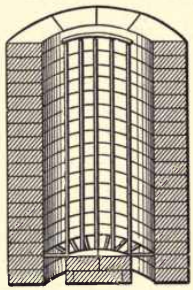


FIG. 92.—Colouring-furnace.

Gilding of Watch-Mechanisms.—The peculiar semi-dead lustre noticeable in the internal movements of watches is produced by a preliminary mechanical process known as *graining*, which has been fully described by Roseleur. It carries sufficient intrinsic interest to warrant the insertion of an outline sketch of the process at this point.

The various parts are carefully polished to obliterate completely all file- and tool-marks; they are next strung upon a brass wire and boiled in a 10 per cent. solution of caustic potash or soda, to remove grease; and, being then well rinsed with water, should show no marks of imperfect wetting, which would

indicate the presence of unremoved greasy matter. (This would point to the necessity of further treatment with potash.) All iron or steel portions are now protected by covering them with a stopping-off varnish, applied in the melted condition by means of a thin warm glass rod, and consisting of—

Clear rosin, . .	10 parts.	Best red sealing-wax, .	4 parts.
Yellow bees'-wax, .	6 ,,	Finest polishing-rouge,	3 ,,

The rosin and sealing-wax are melted together, the bees'-wax is added, and, finally, the rouge is stirred in and thoroughly incorporated. The pieces may be momentarily immersed in an acid dip, but this stage is frequently omitted; in either case they are now fastened by flat-headed brass pins to a level surface of cork, cavities being made when necessary, to allow for spindles or projections upon the articles. Held thus in position, they are rubbed well by a rotary motion, with a brush dipped in powdered pumice, and wetted with water; after perfect rinsing they are (with the cork-support) passed rapidly through a weak quicking-solution containing 1 part of nitrate of mercury and 2 of sulphuric acid in 5000 parts of water, and are ready for the process of graining. Impalpable silver-powder must be procured for this purpose; it may be prepared either by grinding the finest leaf-silver (thin silver-foil) with honey upon a ground-glass slab with the aid of an artist's muller, and then washing away the honey with boiling water, the mixture being placed upon a good blotting-paper filter (p. 52); or by placing strips of clean copper in a very dilute solution of silver nitrate, collecting the spongy silver precipitated by 'simple immersion,' washing it free from adhering copper solution, and drying it. The silver-powder is then most intimately mixed with finely-powdered and -sieved tartar (potassium bitartrate) and common salt, in the proportions of 3 of silver with 10 to 30 of tartar and 40 to 100 of salt; the ingredients should of preference be dried individually at a temperature slightly above 212° F., and mixed warm. The mixture is now made into a thin paste with water and spread evenly over the surfaces of the pieces, and is rubbed persistently over the whole by an oval brush with stout hard bristles; a circular motion should meanwhile be imparted both to the brush and to the cork, but in opposite directions. The use of a large quantity of paste or of much salt produces a large grain, while less paste and more tartar yield a smaller grain; the desired effect of roundness is imparted to the grain in direct proportion to the extent of the circular motion applied to the work. After this operation and subsequent washing, the surfaces are scratch-brushed with a straight brush of very thin brass wires more or less annealed. It is recommended to keep three brushes: one of which has been heated to dull redness and cooled, and is very soft in consequence; one somewhat less heated, and so only

moderately hard; and one but slightly annealed, and, therefore, much harder. The scratch-brushing must also be effected under the influence of a double rotary motion, applied to cork and brush, and is aided by a decoction of liquorice or soapwort as a lubricant. The grain should finally be perfectly uniform, even when viewed under a magnifying lens.

The pieces are now removed from the cork, and being attached singly to suitable holders, are suspended in the gold-bath, for which Roseleur recommends the use of the solution No. 17 (quoted on p. 202), containing gold fulminate. The gold should be slowly deposited by a moderate current and with platinum anodes. The pieces are finally re-scratch-brushed with either of the lubricants above named; and the varnish is removed from the steel portions by the application of warm oil, benzene, or turpentine, followed by immersion in an alkaline solution almost boiling.

Platinum- or gold-powders may be substituted for the silver in the production of grain, but, as their use presents no advantage and they are far more costly, they are rarely so employed.

CHAPTER XI.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF NICKEL AND COBALT.

Advantages of Nickel.—The introduction of nickel-plating is one of the more recent applications of electrolysis. Until about the year 1870 or later, the high cost of metallic nickel, combined with the impurity and unsuitability of the metal which was then available, rendered nugatory all attempts at electro-nickeling on a large scale. But with the improvements in the metallurgy and manufacture of nickel, which have placed comparatively pure anodes on the market at a reasonable rate, arose the new industry of plating with nickel, which has perhaps advanced with more rapid strides than any of its numerous rivals in the same field. The extreme hardness of deposited nickel, which enables even a thin coating to resist so well the wear and tear of hard use; the brilliant polish which from its hardness it is capable of taking; combined with its pure white colour, almost rivalling that of silver, and its non-liability to tarnish under ordinary atmospheric conditions—all tend to popularise the use of the metal, not only as a protective coating for more oxidisable metals, but as an ornamental addition to those less attractive in appearance. In the first-named capacity it is applied to exposed portions of machinery which do not actually present working surfaces that are liable to friction, especially in domestic appliances, such as the sewing machine, accessories, or in bicycles, etc., in which it plays the dual part of protecting and decorating. In the second capacity it is applied to small articles of brass or zinc, such as pencil-cases and umbrella-fittings, as well as to larger surfaces, such as restaurant coffee-urns and the like. A thousand other applications might be named, but the above sufficiently represent the classes of work to which electro-nickeling is daily applied, and which are constantly extending in all directions.

The nickel-plater, therefore, has mainly three classes of work to treat—iron or steel, brass, and zinc; none of them are likely to give trouble, provided attention to detail is rigorously observed. More than any other metal, perhaps, nickel requires

the most punctilious care in order to obtain an adhesive deposit; no metal is so sensitive to any undue change in the manner of treatment, but, on the contrary, none repays the operator so well for his attention to the preliminaries and requirements of working. The solutions must, of course, be pure, and the presence of even traces of a more electro-negative metal (such as copper) must be carefully avoided, as the latter would tend to be deposited first, and would alter the character, and possibly even the colour, of the nickel deposit. But care is most largely needed in the re-nickeling of old work, for it is found that the metal cannot be induced to give a deposit in any degree adhesive upon an old surface of nickel. (See, however, p. 233.)

Nickel well deposited is extremely hard, so hard that it cannot be burnished, and is somewhat brittle. Thick coatings are especially liable to flake off in use, unless exceptionally well deposited, and even the thinnest films will part from surfaces which are not chemically clean. Fortunately, however, thick deposits are rarely required, on account of the high resistance of the metal to wear, which enables even a thin film to rival in durability a thick coat of any other metal. Nevertheless, the opposite extreme to which manufacturers tend, is greatly to be deprecated, because a non-durable film brings discredit upon the process and upon the manufacturers who use it. It must be remembered that the cost of a slight increase of thickness is by no means proportional to the extra metal and to the battery-power used; inasmuch as one of the largest items of expenditure is to be found in the preparation of the object to receive the deposit,—and this is constant, whatever the thickness of the metal precipitated.

The nickel precipitated by too strong a current is grey and pulverulent, and is said to be 'burnt'; but, on the other hand, a feeble current produces a hard but very brittle deposit, which will probably become separated from the plate during the final process of polishing. Schaschl, using Pfanhauser's citrated bath, has found that a film 0·2 millimetre thick deposited on thin sheet-iron by a current of about 1·0 ampere per square decimetre, became torn along the line of the bend when the plate was sharply bent over upon itself; but that by first annealing the plate at a dull-red heat, the nickel was so far softened that the plate could be hammered down to a quarter of its original thickness without incurring the slightest injury. Copper and brass, however, on which nickel had been deposited by the normal current, withstood this treatment without any preliminary heating.

Nickel is practically never deposited by simple immersion or by the single-cell process; the battery deposition is, therefore, the only method which demands attention.

TABLE XVII.—Showing the Composition of Nickel-Baths for

			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
			PARTS BY WEIGHT												
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Bath.	Nickel Acetate.	Nickel Carbonate.	Nickel Chloride.	Nickel Citrate.	Nickel Nitrate.	Nickel Phosphate.	Nickel Sulphate.	Nickel-Ammonium Sulphate.	Cobalt-Ammonium Sulphate.	Potassium Citrate.	Sodium Bicarbonate.	Sodium Bisulphite.	Sodium Phosphate.
1	Adams . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50–80	...	...	...	...	...
2	Boden . .	...	...	...	...	...	26·7	...	...	...	...	...	...	33	...
3	Desmur . .	Small goods	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	70	...	...	8	...	...
4	'Electricias'	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...
5	Hospitalier	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	...	...	...	...	...
6	Langbein .	Printing surfaces	...	...	...	...	...	...	60–72	...	...	...	...	...	...
7	,, .	...	...	4–5	...	...	...	...	...	50–60	...	...	...	...	...
8	Nägel . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	54	...	...	...	...	...	...
9	Pfanhauser.	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	50	...	...
10	,,	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...	...
11	Potts. . .	...	27·5	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	..	...	...	...
12	Powell . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...
13	,, . .	...	...	...	...	15	...	15	30	...	...	...	...	...	...
14	,, . .	...	...	...	...	15	...	25	...	...	...	...	...	3	26
15	Roseleur .	...	...	...	..	...	...	...	...	40	...	...	...	...	...
16	Volkmer .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	111	...	...	...	...	...	...
17	Watt. . .	Tin, Britannia metal, etc.	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	33·3	...	...	. .	...	...
18	,, . . .	Iron	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	40	...	...	...	...	...
19	Weiss . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...	...
20	,, . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...
21	,, . .	Iron and steel	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...
22	,, . .	Zinc	...	...	...	...	...	...	42	...	...	17	...	...	...
23	,, . .	...	...	...	42	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
24	,, . .	Hard deposit	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	40	10	...	...	...	...
25	Weston . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	50–67	...	...	...	...	...

Notes to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the
which may be used nearly boiling, are generally

SEPARATE-CURRENT PROCESS, AS RECOMMENDED BY VARIOUS AUTHORITIES.

14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	
OF INGREDIENTS.												
Ammonia.	Ammonium Carbonate.	Ammonium Chloride.	Ammonium Sulphate.	Ammonium Tartrate.	Calcium Acetate.	Acetic Acid.	Benzoic Acid.	Boric Acid.	Citric Acid.	Tannic Acid.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Neutralise, if necessary, with ammonia.
26·7	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **12** in **25**; then add rest.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Warm sol. of **8** in **25**; add **11** slowly.
...	...	...	...	36·5	...	...	...	...	...	0·25	1000	Stir all with 150 of **25**; then add rest of **25**.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Boil, cool, and filter.
...	...	...	19–22	...	...	...	...	...	4–5	...	1000	
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	25–30	...	...	1000	
190	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	50	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	...	...	...	25	*q.s.*	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	*q.s.*	...	20	...	...	...	...	...	5	...	1000	Add **15** last, till just neutral.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	7·5	...	...	...	1000	
37	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	7·5	...	1000	
...	*q.s.*	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Pour sol. of **15** into sol. of **8** till just neutral; avoid alkalinity.
...	...	22–33	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	...	6·6	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	...	6	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	*q.s.*	...	50	...	...	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	1000	Boil **7** and **17** with **25**, add **15** till neutral, then **23** till just acid.
...	...	...	15	...	...	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	1000	
...	...	...	25	...	...	...	...	...	5	...	1000	
...	...	25	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	42	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
...	...	...	17	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	(Mixed cobalt-nickel precipitate.)
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	15–30	...	...	1000	

vertical columns representing the various reagents. All the solutions except No. 3, employed at the ordinary temperature.

Nickel-Plating by the Separate-Current Process.

The Battery.—The Bunsen- or bichromate-cells are well suited for this work, the electro-motive force best adapted for nickeling being higher than that required for most metals. Two or even three Bunsen-cells coupled in series may be employed, and these should be found to last for one day's work, being renewed every morning. The chief objection to this battery is to be found in the red fumes of nitrogen peroxide evolved during use; but this is of small consequence if the cells be kept, as recommended, in a separate and well-ventilated chamber. The current should be somewhat stronger at first, until the whole surface is just flashed over with nickel, when it should be reduced to the normal strength. Thus, at the outset, it may conveniently be 0·1 ampere per square inch, or 1·5 amperes per square decimetre at 5 volts' pressure, and should be subsequently reduced to 0·02 ampere per square inch at 2 volts' pressure.

The Solution.—The number of solutions which have been successfully employed is very great, and any of them may be made to give good results: that being so, the simplest is probably the best. The list in Table XVII. includes some of the principal formulæ recommended.

For general work, the solution made by dissolving 8 pounds of the nickel-ammonium sulphate in each gallon of water, with the addition of just so much ammonia if it be acid, or of citric or sulphuric acid if it be alkaline, as will suffice to render it exactly neutral, will be found to give good results. Nickel-platers should always be supplied with blue and red litmus papers, which by turning red or blue respectively on immersion in the fluid, indicate acidity or alkalinity; when neutral the solution should not change the colour of either paper. Although, theoretically, the bath should be neutral, in practice it is found better to maintain it in the faintest degree acid,[1] because secondary reactions, which constantly take place during electrolysis, tend to liberate ammonia, and thus render it alkaline, and alkaline-baths give trouble by depositing a basic compound of nickel in the form of a greenish powder; moreover they tend, other things being equal, to give a darker deposit of nickel. On the other hand, excessive acidity must be avoided, as it may entirely prevent the deposition of nickel upon the cathode, and it is liable to make the deposit peel off. The cause of the increasing alkalinity is, no doubt, to be ascribed to the simultaneous decomposition of the nickel sulphate with a small proportion of the ammonium sulphate as would be predicted. The electrolysis of the nickel salt alone deposits upon the cathode a weight of metal equal to that dis-

[1] Some operators, however, prefer an alkaline nickel-bath, and among them (for use with their arrangement) the inventors of the Smith and Deakin apparatus, described on p. 105.

solved from the anode, and is thus without influence upon the composition of the bath. But the ammonium salt under electrolysis deposits sulphuric acid upon the anode, which, by combining with it, adds an equivalent weight of nickel to the bath, while it throws down the elements of the hypothetical body ammonium (NH_4) upon the cathode. Thus the sulphuric acid is neutralised by the nickel, and the bath is enriched to that extent by the fresh nickel introduced, while the ammonium is broken up into ammonia (NH_3) and hydrogen (H), the former dissolving in the solution and tending to alkalise it, the latter escaping as a gas from the surface of the object being plated. In depositing nickel, hydrogen is usually deposited to some extent with the metal (in part due to the reaction above considered); but this must be minimised as far as possible by regulating the strength of the current and of the solution, remembering that a strong current and a weak solution alike favour the evolution of hydrogen. Whenever much hydrogen is given off, the metal becomes grey and pulverulent, and the absorption of hydrogen undoubtedly tends to brittleness.

The reactions in the nickel-bath may, therefore, be thus expressed:—

	At cathode.	*At anode.*	*Forming with Ni anode.*
Main reaction,	Ni	SO_4	$NiSO_4$
Subsidiary reaction,	NH_3+H	SO_4	$NiSO_4$

While the bath is in use it should be frequently tested with litmus paper, and rendered faintly acid, if necessary, with sulphuric acid. It is advisable to agitate the bath at intervals in order to maintain an equality of density throughout; but this is not so necessary as in the case of copper deposition, because the duration of the nickeling process is so much less, rarely requiring an exposure for more than two or three hours.

Some operators have endeavoured, with considerable success, to prevent the formation of the basic salt of nickel by the addition of a small proportion of an organic acid (citric or tannic), or of a feeble inorganic acid, such as boric acid. This last-named solution, as formulated by Weston (No. 25), certainly gives admirable results, and although the simple solution previously recommended may be made to yield a most excellent deposit without difficulty by careful attention to the working of the vat, Weston's bath allows more latitude in working, and may perhaps be preferred by many. It is made by dissolving 8 or 10 oz. of a double sulphate of nickel and ammonia per gallon of water, and adding 2½ to 5 oz. of boric acid.

Various other nickel salts have been substituted for the double sulphate, among them the chloride and acetate; but in nearly every case a double rather than a single salt is preferred. When the single salt is used in making up the bath, a quantity of the

corresponding compound of ammonia is added at the same time. In one bath (No. 24) a small proportion of cobalt is added, which causes a joint precipitate of the two metals that is said to possess greater hardness than nickel alone. Langbein states that baths made with the addition of chlorides, or made with nickel chloride or nitrate, are not suitable for solid nickeling of iron, though well adapted to the rapid light nickeling of cheap brass articles.

The Anodes.—The nickel anodes must be as pure as it is possible to obtain them. They are to be had either cast or rolled, of almost any shape. The cast plates are less dense and, as a rule, are more readily soluble than the others; either kind may be used, but the latter may be procured thinner than the former, and the prime cost of the nickeling plant is thus reduced, moreover, they are more uniform and reliable in composition, and are less liable to become spongy during treatment owing to unequal solution. They should present a total area in excess of that of the cathodes, in order that the bath may be kept saturated with nickel, thus allowing for the inferior solubility of the metal.

A bath that requires a difference of potential of 2 volts between *cast* anodes will probably work well and give even better results with a difference of 3·5 or 4 volts between *rolled* anodes.

Cast anodes being the more readily soluble are more likely to neutralise the acid set free by electrolysis at the anode, and hence the natural tendency of the (ammoniacal) nickel bath to become alkaline asserts itself. Rolled anodes are more likely by insufficiently neutralising the acid to cause the bath to become acid. Langbein states that baths containing boric acid require a definite proportion between rolled and cast anodes.

Carbon anodes are not to be recommended, partly because, sooner or later, the carbon is sure to disintegrate into the bath, and partly because, as it does not dissolve in the solution, the acid radical deposited at the anode is not neutralised, and therefore causes the bath rapidly to become acid.

The anodes should be supported by nickel hooks, and may with advantage be made with lugs at the upper corners, as indicated in fig. 50, so that the hooks do not enter the solution; even, however, with these anodes, the use of brass or copper supports is to be avoided, for, becoming splashed with the solution, they would in time become corroded, and the copper passing into the vat would seriously damage the nickel-bath.

The Vats.—Any glass, earthenware, enamelled iron, or lined wood tank may be used. If the solution is to be heated, the enamelled iron is, of course, preferable. The vat should always exceed in size that of the work treated by 15 or 20 per cent.

The Process of Electro-Nickeling.—*Stripping.*—It is even more important in nickeling than in silvering or gilding that an existing film of nickel shall be entirely removed, or the new deposit will most certainly lack adhesive properties.

R. C. Snowdon,[1] however, has found that the nickel need not be removed if the article is made the cathode in an acid bath and current is passed so as to produce a vigorous evolution of hydrogen on the nickel to remove all trace of oxide; the article is then washed rapidly and is plunged into the usual plating solution. The acid solution used was a 3-normal solution of hydrochloric acid, with a current-density of 8 amperes per square decimetre. The plating solution was nickel-ammonium sulphate, and current-density 2 amperes per square decimetre. In what follows, however, we shall describe the more usual treatment.

Small articles may be treated by persistently rubbing them with fine emery-cloth until the desired end is accomplished. More often a chemical method is used, which consists in dipping the articles for a brief period into an acid bath that will readily attack nickel. Such a bath may be prepared, as recommended by Watt, by gradually and carefully adding one volume of nitric acid and two of sulphuric acid to one volume of water, constantly stirring meanwhile with a porcelain or wooden rod to prevent the action from becoming too violent. The liquid is allowed to cool, and should be transferred for use to a glazed earthenware pan or dish sufficiently large to hold any object which it will be required to treat in it. It is employed cold or only very slightly warm, and should be placed outside the operating-room, in a well-ventilated place, for example, in the battery-cupboard, because unwholesome and irritating acid fumes are evolved during the process. The author has frequently used this bath with success.

The plated article is suspended from a copper wire and plunged beneath the liquid in the bath, where, however, it should not be permitted to remain for more than a few seconds at a time, for a thin coating is almost instantaneously dissolved, and the acid is then free to attack the basis metal beneath. It is, therefore, frequently removed from the vat and closely examined, so that the action may be stayed at the moment when the last trace of nickel has disappeared; it is then transferred to a large volume of cold water, and after washing twice or thrice in fresh water, is ready for the subsequent stages of the process.

Some operators prefer to strip by electrolysis, by making the object the anode in an old nickel-bath. Attention is equally necessary in conducting this process to guard against any attack upon the basis metal; but, since it is impossible entirely to prevent all action, no bath which is to be afterwards employed for depositing the metal should be used for this purpose, as it will become gradually charged with impurities. A 10 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid may be used for electrolytic stripping.

Iron or steel articles are best treated by either of the first two processes, brass or copper by either of the two last-named, yet

[1] *Trans. Amer. Electro-chem. Soc.*, vol. vii. p. 301.

with due care any of the three methods may be applied to all classes of work.

Preliminary Preparation for the Bath.—It has already been pointed out that, by reason of its extreme hardness, the nickel deposit cannot be burnished. Ordinary methods for imparting the final polish to electro-plated goods are not, therefore, applicable to nickel-coated wares. It is thus essential that the highest possible polish [1] should be given to the objects prior to immersion in the plating-vat, remembering that as they are when placed in the bath so they will be when finished. Even traces of pre-existing scratches, or tool-marks, cannot be obliterated, except with the greatest difficulty, when once nickel has been precipitated upon the surface. If, therefore, the goods passing into the hands of the plater are in any degree rough or unfinished, they must be most carefully polished until every scratch has ceased to show; extra care should be taken with large blank areas of surface, unbroken by the lines of a design or by a change of shape in the article itself, because even the slightest flaw becomes more visible on such surfaces than upon smaller articles.

More than usual care must also be bestowed upon the cleansing operations. In silver- and gold-plating, especially with warm solutions, the cyanide liquor compensates for any slight inadequacy of cleansing by its power of dissolving the offending grease, so that the surface is finally cleansed by the electrolytic bath itself (which, however, is gradually spoiled by the absorption of organic matter), but the nickel-bath has no such solvent action; so that it cannot be too strongly impressed upon beginners that the success of their work is dependent upon the absolute chemical cleanliness of the pieces to be plated. After polishing, every trace of grease is first removed in the potash-vat, and of tarnish in the acid dip (for iron goods) or the cyanide-bath (for brass, copper, or zinc). Then after a thorough rinsing in water, the goods are transferred without loss of time to the plating-vat. After passing through the potash-bath the surface of the article should be handled with brass tongs or with clean rags, and must on no account be touched with the hands.

Copper and brass articles always, wrought-iron and steel commonly, are at once nickeled without further preliminary treatment; zinc is also occasionally treated in the same way, but, inasmuch as it is readily attacked by the nickel solution, and the latter is rendered worthless when contaminated with zinc, it is advisable to protect the objects with a covering of copper before immersion. Meidinger has suggested a covering of the zinc sheet with mercury, which would answer the same purpose, but care is necessary to guard against over-amalgamation, which only renders the plate very brittle without affording any corresponding advantage. Cast-iron also should be covered with copper; it is a common

[1] See, however, p. 123.

practice first to bestow upon the surface a wash of tin, then upon this one of copper, and, finally, the layer of nickel. The articles having been made perfectly bright and clean, and, if necessary, covered with copper, are ready for suspension in the bath.

Nickel-Depositing.—It has been pointed out that the current should be somewhat stronger at first than subsequently; but it must not be so intense that the metal becomes burnt, as explained on p. 217, a fault which is by far the more serious of the two. Therefore, in introducing the cleaned objects, although the current must pass immediately they enter the bath, the objects first suspended must be protected from receiving an excessive current by the interposition of resistances, or by hanging one or more anodes from the cathode rods, as explained in speaking of electro-silvering on p. 194. The surface of the article should almost immediately be completely covered with a grey deposit of nickel. The goods are suspended by copper wires, which should be used only once, because—from the want of adhesion of nickel to old nickel surfaces—the metal deposited upon old wires is liable to strip off in flakes, which, falling into the solution, may, in course of time, form a metallic bridge or connection between the electrodes, and thus produce a short circuit, or they may adhere to projecting portions of the cathode surface and interfere with the regularity of the coating. An alkaline bath is apt to give a darker tinge to the deposited nickel than is the acid bath; the same effect, however, is produced if the current-density is not suitable.

The nickel solutions are usually inferior conductors of electricity, and there is in consequence a more marked difference than usual in the rate of deposition upon portions of a given object placed at different distances from the anode; and there is even less tendency for a current to pass through great lengths of solution when the basis metal is also a poor conductor of electricity; coating bad conductors with copper is, therefore, to be recommended as a distinct assistance in starting a deposit of nickel. Objects which are to be coated on all sides with nickel should therefore be quite surrounded with anodes, and should be placed as nearly as possible equidistant from them; and if they have an irregular form, they should be systematically inspected to ensure that all the deeper hollows are covered at once. While, then, on the one hand, the pieces must be very carefully examined after they have been *struck* (*i.e.*, first completely covered with nickel), they must not, on the other hand, be kept too long out of the solution, so that they tend to become dry, because in that time they will have acquired an imperceptible film of oxide, which will effectually prevent the adhesion of the nickel afterwards deposited.

The thickness of the nickel need not, as a rule, be very great on account of its extreme hardness. Generally speaking, from

half an hour to four hours will suffice for the deposition. Thick deposits are very liable to peel off, occasionally spontaneously in the bath, but more often during the period of administering the final polish; this is especially the case with iron and steel goods, which take a thick deposit less satisfactorily than those made of brass or copper. This peeling of the metal, whenever it happens, is annoying, because it necessitates stripping the remainder of the deposit, with a recommencement of the process *de novo*; but if it occur in the bath, the separation of loose fragments may give trouble in a manner already described.

When the thickness of coating is sufficient, the pieces are removed from the bath and thoroughly washed in cold water, then plunged into boiling water, so that evaporation may take place more rapidly, and dried completely—small objects in hot sawdust, large articles in a stove heated to, or very slightly above, the boiling-point of water. They must then receive their final polish, and are ready for the market.

The nickeling of larger or irregular surfaces is conducted after the same manner as that of smaller objects: the conditions to be observed most particularly are — that the goods shall be thoroughly polished and absolutely clean; that they shall be as far as possible surrounded by anodes, and equidistant from them; that the whole surface is in fair conductive connection with the negative pole of the battery; and that the solution is in good order, being neither alkaline nor more than feebly acid. To secure good connection it is often desirable to employ more than one wire, especially when considerable lengths, such as chains or rods of a feeble conductor, are under treatment; these should be supported from the cathode-rods at intervals by copper hooks, so that several starting-points are offered, instead of one, for the formation and spread of the deposit: there is thus a greater uniformity of coat. The hooks must be shifted from time to time, to avoid the formation of surface markings.

Small objects should not be coated in the perforated porcelain pans recommendable in plating with other metals, because of the difficulty in arranging the anodes. It is, indeed, possible to effect the nickeling in this manner, and the method is sometimes practically adopted; but it is safer either to attach each article individually to a copper wire, or to rest several together on a very shallow and narrow metal tray which may be suspended betweeen the two anodes. The Smith Deakin process (p. 105) may with advantage be employed. Small articles are especially liable to receive a burnt deposit when first placed in an empty vat, and for this reason either a large number of articles should be introduced into the solution simultaneously, or one of the anodes should be made a cathode for the time being, as previously explained, or small pieces may be immersed while the current is already coating objects with larger surfaces.

Finishing.—When the goods are to be left as they come from the bath without further polishing, and, therefore, with a slightly deadened surface, they must not be touched with the hands upon any exposed surface, as the coating in this condition is peculiarly susceptible to grease-markings, and the stains will inevitably show after drying.

The pieces should be lifted from the vat by the suspending wires, plunged first into two or three cold wash-waters, and then into hot clean water. If the pieces are at all thick or substantial, the heat energy stored up in them, by a short immersion in the boiling water, will suffice on removal to evaporate the small proportion of liquid clinging to them; but if the surface be large as compared with the mass, it may be necessary to finish the drying in a stove. To this end the objects are placed on a tray, the suspending wires unhooked, and the tray transferred to the oven, so that from first to last they are not touched with the fingers. So treated the dead surface presents an extremely attractive appearance. Distilled water should be used for the final washing-bath (heated) if possible, because it leaves no residue.

Britannia metal and zinc should be coppered before nickeling, and some prefer thus to treat even German silver; this done, the objects are coated with nickel in the manner described.

Applications.—Among the many useful applications of electro-nickeling, that of coating the comparatively soft copper printing surfaces demands especial notice. A thin film of nickel, so thin that the size of the printing surface is not affected, will increase the hardness, and consequently the life of the plate enormously; indeed it would appear that a nickel-coated copper plate will give about four times as many impressions as one coated even in the usual way with iron. A special advantage also attaches to its use—it enables copper type to be used with a red pigment (vermilion) which cannot be done without such protection, because the copper alone decomposes the mercury sulphide, which is the basis of the pigment, and thus destroys its colour, and at the same time tends to become brittle by the absorption of the reduced mercury.

Electro-Deposition of Cobalt.

The chemical properties of nickel and cobalt are so nearly allied that this chapter would appear to be the most appropriate place for introducing the subject of electro-plating with the latter metal. The deposit of cobalt is similar to that of nickel; it is equally brilliant, but is somewhat harder, and has been found by Professor Silvanus Thompson to possess a higher resisting power for organic acids, which renders it more suitable for the internal coating of copper or other cooking utensils. It is only lately, however, that cobalt anodes have been procurable, and have thus

TABLE XVIII.—SHOWING THE COMPOSITIONS OF SOLUTIONS FOR THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF COBALT, RECOMMENDED BY VARIOUS AUTHORITIES.

		1	2	3*	4	5	6	7*	8	
No.	Authority.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.								Special Method of Preparation.
		Cobalt Chloride.	Cobalt Nitrate.	Cobalt Sulphate.	Potassium Cyanide.	Ammonia.	Ammonium Chloride.	Magnesium Sulphate.	Water.	
1	Beardslee . .	27–41	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	...	1000	Dissolve **1** in **8**; add **5** till red litmus paper just blued.
2	Becquerel . .	34	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	...	1000	
3	Böttger . . .	400	...	...	...	200	200	...	1000	Dissolve **1** and **5** in **8**; and add **6**.
4	Hartmann and Weiss	...	*x*	...	*q.s.*	...	...	...	1000	Add **4** to solution of **2**, till precipitate just re-dissolves.
5	Thompson . .	...	...	*x*	...	...	...	20 *x*	...	
6	Watt . . .	27–41	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	

NOTES TO TABLE.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns representing the various reagents.

* Columns 3 and 7 (cobalt and magnesium sulphates) imply nearly saturated solutions of these bodies—not the solid substances.

enabled the process to enter practically upon the field of electro-metallurgical competition. Even now, its comparatively high price tends to check its adaptation to many purposes to which its application may be desirable. Its good qualities have not been seriously verified, and very little commercial progress has been made.

The battery should consist of two Bunsen-cells, and it is well to place an ammeter in the circuit and to have resistance-coils at hand, because the deposit yielded by a powerful current is defective in adhesion; a fairly high electro-motive force but a low density of current is required. Many solutions have now been used, of which some are indicated in the preceding table.

The double sulphate of cobalt and potash, corresponding to the nickel-potassium sulphate, above recommended, may also be used in 10 per cent. solution. Professor Thompson, however, has obtained perfect results from the solution No. 5, made by mixing 20 volumes of a nearly saturated solution of magnesium sulphate with 1 volume of a similar solution of cobalt sulphate or chloride. This bath should be used hot, and will then yield a film which, if deposited with all due precautions on iron, brass, or German silver (*inter alia*), is extremely adherent and good. Instead of making up this solution in the manner described, it may be prepared by electrolysis, if the current be passed from a large cobalt anode into a magnesium sulphate solution with a temporary cobalt cathode, which should be removed as soon as sufficient metal has dissolved in the electrolyte to yield a good deposit.

Langbein remarks that cobalt deposited from the chloride is not hard, and he therefore recommends the following solution:— 21 oz. of cobalt-ammonium sulphate and 10½ oz. of crystallised boric acid in 10 quarts of water. A potential difference of 2·5 to 2·75 volts is required with a current-density of 0·4 ampere per square decimetre.

Anodes of pure rolled cobalt are now obtainable, and should be used like those of nickel, of large superficial area as compared with that of the cathodes: they must not be supported by copper wire. The vats and the general treatment, as well as the character of metal deposited, are, indeed, regulated exactly as in the case of nickel. And, because the film is harder even than that of the sister metal, it follows that the same precautions must be taken in regard to previous polishing as well as cleansing. It is even more difficult to impart a smooth polish to a rough cobalt surface than it is to one of nickel. So also the same care is necessary in stripping old deposits previous to plating; corresponding methods may be employed.

CHAPTER XII.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF IRON.

THE electro-deposition of iron (or of steel, as it is sometimes wrongly termed) upon the surface of engraved copper plates has long been practised, in order that its superior hardness may enable the printer to obtain a greater number of sharp impressions from the same plate; and the extreme ease with which the worn film may be removed from the copper renders it possible to renew the protective coating again and again. All that is necessary is to suspend the printing operations as soon as the first tinge of the red foundation metal appears through any portion of the iron covering, then remove the iron by means of dilute acid, and re-immerse it in the iron-plating vat. In this manner the copper need scarcely be appreciably worn, and may be made to yield many thousand impressions without losing any of the sharpness or accuracy in definition of the lines. This, however, is practically the only use for electro-deposited iron; as a metal it is too readily oxidisable to render its use as an external protective coating serviceable in any other way. Its hardness qualifies it for printers' work, and enables copper to compete with steel as a material for steel-plate engraving; but even in this field it is outrun by nickel, by which it will probably be superseded in course of time. Nevertheless, for plates which may require alteration from time to time (maps, for example) the iron is preferable, on account of the greater difficulty experienced in removing the nickel coat; yet, if the alterations are likely to occur frequently, it may be better not even to coat the plate with iron, although the stripping is in this case so comparatively simple.

Iron is never deposited by immersion, but always by the separate-current process, for which purpose the Bunsen-cell is best adapted.

The Solution.—Two kinds of iron salts are commonly known—the *ferric* or *per*-salts, and the *ferrous* or *proto*-salts, which are combinations of the metal (Fe) with a greater (Fe_2O_3) or smaller (FeO) proportion of non-metal respectively; and, as the heat of formation of any ferric compound is considerably higher than

that of the corresponding ferrous body, the proto-salts exhibit a great tendency to absorb oxygen from the air, or from any substance in which it is loosely combined, and thus to become converted into the per-salt of the same class. But the ferrous salts are alone suited for electro-depositing the metal; hence the iron solutions employed must be carefully protected from the action of the air by retaining them in closed vessels when not in actual use. While the current is flowing, it tends to correct any peroxidising action; because the newly-deposited iron upon the cathode is attacked by ferric salts in the solution in its immediate vicinity, and is re-dissolved, while the ferric salt is simultaneously reduced to the ferrous condition, thus—

Fe_2Cl_6	+	Fe	=	$3FeCl_2$
Ferric chloride	with	*iron*	give	*ferrous chloride.*

And newly-precipitated iron or, if we may use the expression, *nascent* iron, exhibits a much greater activity in this respect than metal which has been cast or rolled, and which is usually in a more dense, as well as a more stable, condition. The oxygen which, meanwhile, is being deposited upon the other pole by a moderate current, such as is required for iron coating, acting upon a sufficiently large anode and, therefore, upon an excess of metal, forms only the protoxide. Thus, in course of time, the peroxide originally present will become reduced, and the bath will be brought into the best condition for yielding a good deposit; but in effecting this, a considerable amount of time and of battery-power may have been wasted.

Another effect of oxidation of ferrous salts in neutral solutions is the formation of basic salts (containing an excess of iron), which being insoluble in the liquid give rise to a rust-coloured precipitate or turbidity. This happens because the iron in the ferric condition requires not only more oxygen, but more acid to form salts, than it does in the ferrous state; for example, 2 atoms of iron in the state of ferric oxide require 3 molecules of sulphuric acid to dissolve them and form the sulphate ($Fe_2O_3 + 3H_2SO_4 = Fe_2(SO_4)_3 + 3H_2O$), while in the form of ferrous oxide only 2 molecules of the acid are needed ($Fe_2O_2 + 2H_2SO_4 = 2FeSO_4 + 2H_2O$). The addition of oxygen from the air may thus suffice to produce peroxide, but there may not then be sufficient acid in the bath to combine with it, and it thus appears as a solid precipitate. The following equation sums up the reaction in a general way, and shows how peroxide is formed along with the persulphate, by the action of oxygen upon the protosulphates:—

$$6FeSO_4 + 3O = 2Fe_2(SO_4)_3 + Fe_2O_3.$$

The remedy for this precipitate or cloudiness is obviously the addition of a sufficient quantity of free acid to combine with the

peroxide or basic precipitate, and form the soluble persulphate. When much of the ferric compound has formed, just sufficient acid should be added to dissolve the precipitate, and a current of electricity should be passed through it between iron electrodes, until the pure pale green colour of the ferrous liquid has been restored and the metal is depositing well upon the cathode. But it must be remembered that all acid which is added to dissolve the rust-coloured precipitate becomes free again in the solution as soon as the bath is reduced to the ferrous condition, which requires less acid to form its compounds. Prevention in this case is, therefore, better than cure, and the bath should be kept as far as possible out of contact with air; Klein adds a small proportion of glycerin to the liquid to hinder the formation of ferric compounds.

The compositions of the principal baths used in depositing are quoted in Table XIX.

One of the best of these solutions is that of Klein (No. 3), which is especially suitable for the production of thick deposits. A solution of ferrous sulphate in water is first prepared in a sufficiently large jar; a solution of ammonium carbonate is now gradually added to it until no further quantity of the precipitate which forms at first is produced; the precipitate is now allowed to subside, the liquid is poured off, fresh water is added, from which the ferrous carbonate is again allowed to separate by subsidence. The water is once more poured away, and sulphuric acid, diluted with twice its volume of water, is added little by little, with constant stirring, until the precipitate is exactly re-dissolved and yet no excess of free acid is present. Towards the end, the acid must be added by a few drops only at a time, after which a few seconds' pause must be made to give opportunity for it to attack the precipitate before introducing a further quantity. A blue litmus paper suspended in the solution will indicate the condition of the liquid at any time; it should become purple, but never red. Only recently-boiled water should be employed to dissolve and wash the ferrous sulphate and precipitate, for natural water contains a quantity of dissolved oxygen, which would peroxidise the iron, but which is expelled by boiling. This solution should be used as concentrated as possible and preferably warm; it must never be allowed to become acid. In order to guard against this latter evil, Klein recommended the use of anodes presenting an aggregate area equal to eight times that of the cathode surface, so that any free acid should have every facility for becoming saturated with iron; and he even attached slips of a more electro-negative element, such as platinum or copper, to the anode plates, so that a slight local current might be set up, which would assist in the solution of the iron, without affecting the current passing through the bath. The deposit from Klein's solution should not show any tendency

TABLE XIX.—Showing the Composition of Baths for the Electro-Deposition of Iron, recommended by various Authorities.

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
No.	Authority.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.												Special Method of Preparation.
		Ferrous Chloride.	Ferrous Sulphate.	Ferric Sulphate.	Ammonio-Ferrous Sulphate.	Iron Alum.	Potassium Ferrocyanide.	Rochelle Salt.	Caustic Soda.	Ammonium Carbonate.	Ammonium Chloride.	Sulphuric Acid.	Water.	
1	Böttger . . .	...	...	...	150	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
2	,, . . .	...	...	12	...	...	40	80	*q.s.*	...	...	...	1000	
3	Klein . . .	...	*x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	*q.s.*	1000	Dissolve **2** in **12**; just precipitate with **9**, and just re-dissolve with **11**; use as concentrated as possible.
4	Obernetter . .	...	30	...	...	30	...	...	...	...	60	...	1000	Stand two days; always filter before use.
5	Ryhiner . . .	*x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	200	...	1000	Form electrolytically.
6	Varrentrapp . .	...	10	...	...	...	...	50	...	...	100	...	1000	Dissolve **2** in 250 of **12**, and add to **7** in 750 of **12**; then add **10**.
7	Volkmer . . .	*x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	...	1000	Form electrolytically.
8	Walenn . . .	...	200	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	little	1000	
9	Weiss	...	132	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	...	1000	

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns indicating the various reagents.

to crack upon the surface and peel off in the form of spangles, as its inventor observed happened frequently when other baths were used for producing thick coatings, especially the double chloride of iron and ammonium.

The double sulphate of iron and ammonia, which is obtainable in the market in a very pure condition, is capable of yielding extremely good films upon engraved copper plates. If it be at all acid a little chalk should be added, or, better still, a little washed ferrous carbonate prepared as above described, until no further quantity is dissolved by the liquid.

Langbein remarks that a heavy and hard deposit is obtained from a solution made up of 1¼ oz. of ammonio-ferrous sulphate and 0·88 oz. of crystallised citric acid in one quart of water. Enough ammonia should be added to render the solution neutral, or slightly acid.

Perhaps the best solution of all is one recommended by Klein, and made by dissolving sufficient equal proportions of ferrous sulphate and magnesium sulphate to form a concentrated solution, neutralising acidity, not by means of chalk, but by means of magnesium carbonate suspended in a tray. The bath should be used with a very low current-density.

In using any of these iron-baths, the separation of hydrogen with the iron upon the object is to be strenuously avoided, because the gas bells clinging to the surface form pin-holes which are fatal to the impression taken in the press from a plate so affected; and, further than this, the character of the iron is prejudicially influenced by the absorbed hydrogen. The conditions, therefore, which are least favourable to hydrogen production must be fulfilled; these are mainly—the use of a concentrated solution, the absence of free acid, and the application of a sufficiently weak current.

The Anodes.—The anodes should be made of the purest iron available. Electro-deposited iron would theoretically be most suitable; next to this the softest wrought-iron, or so-called mild steel sheet, is preferable. Hard steel and, above all, cast-iron plates are to be avoided, because they contain comparatively large percentages of carbon and other impurities which, being insoluble in the liquid, remain for a time suspended in the bath and are apt to attach themselves to the objects under treatment. Cast-iron may contain as little as 93 per cent. of iron (or sometimes even less). The anode surface should be much larger than that of the cathodes (eight times as large) for reasons already given. The anodes should be removed from the vat now and again, brushed to detach the insoluble matter which is left upon the surface in a spongy or pulverulent condition, and returned to their position.

The Vat.—The vat is best constructed of iron, which may be heated when the solution is to be used warm; it must be kept

thoroughly well cleaned, and, for this cause, enamelled iron is to be preferred. It must, of course, be larger than the work to be plated on account of the increased surface which is given to the anodes.

The Character of the Deposited Metal.—The iron deposited in thick coatings is of a bright grey-white colour, is extremely hard and brittle, and demands the most careful attention if it is to be removed from the matrix. After annealing at a low red heat it becomes softer, and after a fair cherry-red it is as soft as steel which has been similarly treated. The fracture of unannealed deposited iron resembles that of cast-iron; it, of course, contains no carbon, but is usually highly charged with hydrogen, which it occludes during the process of formation. Cailletet has found as much as 240 volumes of this gas in 1 volume of a sample of iron, which was sufficiently hard to scratch glass, and was extremely brittle. The annealing has the double effect of softening the deposited iron and of removing the hydrogen which it had previously contained; but the inference is not safe that the hydrogen is the sole cause of the brittleness, which is more probably mainly due to the particular arrangement of the molecules of the metal. Its extreme hardness has procured for the application of deposited iron to engraved copper plates the misleading title of *steel-facing*—a designation which implies the presence of combined carbon within it, whereas, excepting the hydrogen contained in it (which may be removed by heating), it is one of the purest forms of iron obtainable.

In its relation to magnetism, deposited iron is comparable with mild steel; but Beetz has shown that when deposited under powerful magnetic influence, as between the poles of a strong electro-magnet, and from solutions containing ammonium chloride, it will itself act as a powerful magnet, retaining its magnetism for a considerable period of time.

Iron is so electro-positive a metal that it has a great tendency to combine with oxygen, that is, to rust; the electro-deposited film must, therefore, be dried very thoroughly as soon as possible. It, however, generally contains within its pores a distinct quantity of the solution from which it was precipitated, and this must be perfectly removed by washing two or three times in boiling water, or the liability to rust will be greatly increased. On the other hand, A. Neuburger has made the observation that electrolytic iron (presumably unannealed) resists rust in a remarkable way.

The Process of Electro-Deposition.—In coating copper plates with iron (which is the chief application of the process), the copper must first be cleansed carefully, so that the sharpness of the lines may not be diminished. Klein dips the plate first into benzene and then into potash to remove grease, but it is usually sufficient first to rinse and then to boil the plate in a solution of caustic potash; then, after washing twice or thrice in clean water,

to pass it through a bath of dilute sulphuric acid (containing from 2 to 5 per cent. of the acid), and after a second thorough wash to transfer it at once to the iron-vat, without touching the surface at any point. In the bath it is suspended by suitable hooks or by holders such as those mentioned on p. 97; two plates may be used with one anode by placing the engraved faces of the copper fronting the latter.

The current from the Bunsen-cell (or cells, arranged in parallel, if much work is in hand) is then passed through the solution; an ammeter and set of resistance-coils should be placed in position. Usually from five to six minutes suffice for the process of deposition; but if a thicker coating be required, remembering that the last portion deposited forms the printing surface, and hence must be perfect in character, it is advisable to remove the plate, rinse, rapidly examine, and brush it well with a hard brush under water, so that no extraneous matter may cling to the surface; then replacing it for five or six minutes in the iron-bath, the alternation is again and again repeated until the desired thickness is obtained. After the final removal from the bath, the plate is dipped into a large volume of cold water, is then immersed in boiling water for the space of half a minute, and is again rinsed in cold water. It may then be lightly rubbed with dilute potash or soda solution, sponged dry, and rubbed with oil, the excess of which is subsequently removed by means of benzene. Thus treated, the plate will not be greatly liable to rust; but if it is to be stored for any length of time, it must be treated like an ordinary engraved steel plate and covered with a protective film of wax.

Stripping.—When an old iron-coated plate is to be re-plated, the residue of the first coat must be stripped, after removing all grease in a potash-bath, by immersing it in dilute sulphuric acid (5 to 10 per cent.) until the copper surface is left completely bare; the plate, after washing, is then ready for the iron-bath as usual.

Electrotyping with Iron.—Thick deposits also may be made, and may be obtained direct from the mould, but in this case the matrix should be first covered with a thin sheath of copper, upon which the iron is precipitated, because iron refuses to deposit well upon the black-leaded surface of the gutta-percha or other non-conducting mould. The copper may be afterwards dissolved away by making the iron sheet the anode in a copper cyanide bath, or (but with greater risk) by simple treatment with the strongest nitric acid, the excess of which must be quite washed away immediately the copper is removed.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF PLATINUM, ZINC, CHROMIUM, CADMIUM, TIN, LEAD, ANTIMONY, BISMUTH, AND PALLADIUM; ELECTRO-CHROMY.

Electro-Deposition of Platinum.

Platinum, one of the most insoluble and acid-resisting metals known, would form an excellent protective coating to metals could it be readily applied; Roseleur, indeed, has stated that he had twenty times evaporated nitric and sulphuric acids alternately in a platinum-plated copper crucible without finding the basis metal to be sensibly attacked until the last operation. But the very insolubility of the metal constitutes one of the difficulties in electro-plating with it; for the anodes resist the solvent action of any solution which may be safely used as an electrolyte without injuring the objects suspended as the cathode. It is very rarely used, however, as a covering metal.

Platinising.—It is so electro-negative an element that nearly all the other metals are able to decompose its solution, and thus deposit the platinum by simple immersion; but the coating so formed is usually black, granular, and non-adherent. Silver, copper, and brass are the most readily treated, while lead, tin, zinc, iron, Britannia metal, and the like, present great difficulty unless previously protected by a substantial film of copper. For platinising copper by simple immersion, Roseleur recommends the use of a boiling solution containing 10 parts of platinum converted into the neutral chloride, and 120 parts of caustic soda in 1000 of pure (distilled) water. Another solution may be made by dissolving 25 parts of the double chloride of platinum and ammonium, and 250 of ammonium chloride in 1000 parts of water; this also is used at the boiling temperature. When silver is platinised—and a simple solution (not too strong) of platinum tetrachloride in water will suffice to effect this—the object should be afterwards rinsed, first in dilute ammonia and then in water, because silver chloride is formed by the exchange of metal with the platinum chloride; and this silver compound, being insoluble in water, requires the treatment with ammonia, in which it readily dissolves, to effect its complete removal from the plated goods.

Tin, brass, bronze, copper, and tin plate have also been platinised by rubbing upon their surface, with a woollen or linen rag, a solution of 1 part of platinum chloride in 15 parts of spirits of wine and 50 of ether, and then washing well with water, after allowing the ether to evaporate.

Platinum may also be deposited by the single-cell process. Lesmondes' method consisted in placing the articles in a perforated zinc tray and immersing the whole in a solution made by adding sodium carbonate, in the first place, to a strong solution of platinic chloride until effervescence ceases, then a little glucose, and afterwards sufficient sodium chloride to yield a white precipitate. This bath is used at a temperature of 140° F., and is most suitable for treating copper and brass, the deposition being mainly due to the current set up by the solution of the zinc tray.

The method adopted by Smee for coating the silver plates required for use in his battery is also a single-cell process. The plate, slightly roughened by mechanical means or by a momentary immersion in nitric acid, is placed in a solution containing dilute sulphuric acid with a few drops of platinum chloride solution added to it. A porous cell containing a rod of zinc standing in dilute sulphuric acid is then introduced into the bath; on making metallic connection between the silver and the zinc, a current is set up, the zinc dissolves, and a proportionate amount of platinum is deposited as a dark-grey or black powder, which, nevertheless, holds fairly tenaciously to the silver.

Platinating.—But for general purposes the separate-current process should be employed. Of the various solutions recorded in the appended table, those of Langbein (No. 3) and Roseleur (No. 4) are the most reliable. To prepare a gallon of the latter, three-quarters of an ounce of platinum is dissolved in aqua regia and converted into chloride, which is then dissolved in a quart of distilled water; in the meantime half a pound of ammoninm phosphate should have been dissolved in a quart of pure water in one vessel, and two and a half pounds of sodium phosphate in the remaining two quarts contained in a second vessel. The solution of the ammonium salt is now to be added to the platinum liquid, with which it produces a dense precipitate; disregarding this, the sodium phosphate solution is next added with constant stirring, and the whole bath is boiled until no more smell of ammonia is observed, but on the contrary it is shown to be faintly acid by blue litmus paper. During the period of boiling, water will have been evaporated, which must be restored before using the liquid. When in active use, a little of the fresh solution must be added at intervals to supply the place of the platinum which has been lost by deposition upon the cathode; because, as already explained, the anodes are not attacked, and cannot, therefore, replenish the exhausted solution. A process similar to this, but with the addition of a small proportion of common salt, has been

TABLE XX.—Showing the Composition of Solutions for Electro-Depositing Platinum, recommended by various Authorities.

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	
		PROPORTION OF INGREDIENTS BY WEIGHT.															
No.	Authority.	Platinum as Platinic Chloride.	Ammonium Platinic Chloride.	Potassium Cyanide.	Caustic Soda.	Sodium Carbonate.	Sodium Chloride.	Di-Sodium Orthophosphate.	Sodium Pyrophosphate.	Sodium Citrate.	Ammonium Chloride.	Ammonium Phosphate.	Sulphuric Acid.	Acetic Acid.	Citric Acid.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
1	Böttger	..	*x*	..	..	..	..	..	..	*y*	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
2	Jewreinoff	10	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	70–80	..	..	1000	Dissolve 1 as platinic chloride in 15; add 12. (For silver.)
3	Langbein	..	15	..	*q.s.*	..	..	..	..	..	4–5	..	..	..	100	1000	Dissolve 14 and 10 in 400 of 15; neutralise with 4; add 2, and stir; then 600 of 15.
4	Roseleur and Lanaux	5	..	..	..	..	..	250	..	..	..	50	..	..	..	1000	*Vide* text.
5	Sprague	30	..	..	*q.s.*	..	18·7	..	..	..	..	..	..	75	..	1000	Dissolve 1 in 15; add first 6, then 13; render alkaline with 4; warm and filter.
6	Wahl	10	..	..	..	400	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	Good for thin deposits.
7	„	10	..	..	..	..	..	600	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
8	„	10	..	..	..	..	..	..	300	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	
9	Watt	7	..	slight *xs.*	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1000	

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the columns denoting the various reagents.

patented by Thomas. The method of preparing Langbein's excellent solution is given in the table. Platinum solutions should be used hot, and gas should appear at both anode and cathode. Copper and brass may be plated direct, but iron and other metals must be coppered first.

The objects to be plated should be well polished before depositing, because electrolytic platinum is hard, so that greater difficulty is involved in polishing after deposition than before. The platinum-coated surface may be left dead, or it may be brightened by means of iron-wire scratch-brushes (brass is too soft and, itself becoming rubbed, leaves a yellow stain upon the goods) or by careful rubbing with very finely-powdered pumice.

When old platinum-covered goods are to be re-plated, the stripping of the previous coat presents a difficult problem; it cannot well be removed electrolytically, because the baths do not attack the metal, although a long exposure in a gold-stripping bath may sometimes effect the desired object, especially if the platinum be not in its densest and hardest condition; but at best it is a very tedious operation. The chief solvent for platinum is aqua regia, but this cannot be applied because it would vigorously attack the basis metal beneath; and, in fact, as soon as any of the latter metal became uncovered, it would dissolve all the more rapidly on account of its contact with the remainder of the platinum coat, and, being more electro-positive, would even serve to protect the latter from further action. The surest and most rapid method, whenever practicable, is to apply mechanical means and simply rub off the platinum by means of emery-cloth, and then re-polish the metal beneath. This system cannot, of course, be applied when any delicate pattern or design is traced upon the object, in which case the chemical methods must be tried. A greater loss is caused by the use of emery, but this may be minimised by saving the dust produced, and subsequently working it up to recover the platinum.

The name usually applied to platinum-coating by simple immersion is *platinising*, as in the case of the Smee-battery silver plate, while the electrolytically-covered object is said to be *platinated*. Watt, however, raises an objection to this latter term, and suggests the use of the expression 'platined' to denominate this class of work. His objections to the other term are doubtless worthy of consideration, but the older word is perhaps more euphonious; while if it be regarded as a contraction of the compound word 'platinumplating,' it is not, after all, unscientific.

Electro-Deposition of Zinc.

Only in special cases is electrolytic zinc deposition resorted to; the metal has not a fine colour or lustre (except when certain organic bodies are added to the solution) and is readily dulled

with the thin film of tarnish, which forms very soon upon exposure to the atmosphere. Its highly electro-positive character certainly renders it suitable to the protection of iron surfaces from destruction by rust; because when submitted together (in metallic contact) to the same corrosive influence, the zinc is the earlier of the two metals to be attacked. But, like tin, zinc is usually more satisfactorily deposited upon iron by dipping the latter into a bath of the molten metal. Such a process yields a perfectly homogeneous and continuous coat, which is applied at such a temperature that it is impossible for water to exist between the two surfaces, or in cavities; while the electrolytic method deposits a crystalline, and, therefore, to some (however slight) extent, porous cover, in which small quantities of the solution from which it has been deposited may be locked up, and facilitate the oxidising action. Thus the dry or fusion method of coating the iron is preferable whenever its application is possible; the meaningless title *galvanised iron* given to this product is manifestly a misnomer, and is distinctly misleading. But for internal or other surfaces which cannot well be coated by the fusion method, electro-deposition is frequently used with great advantage; it is especially useful in coating hardened steelware, which is to be used in the hardened condition, and of which the temper would be drawn by the heating necessary for the treatment with metallic zinc.

Another method of galvanising (non-electric) due to Cowper-Coles, and known by the name of 'sherardising,' has come into use during the last few years. Metals are heated in contact with zinc dust at a temperature below that of fusion, when the zinc alloys superficially with the iron or other metal, the thickness of the coating depending on the time of the operation.

Battery Process.—On account of its very electro-positive nature, zinc cannot be precipitated upon ordinary metals by simple immersion, nor is it practically deposited by single-cell methods. By separate current it may be obtained from the neutral sulphate, chloride, acetate, or other soluble salt of zinc (except the nitrate), or from the corresponding double salt of zinc and ammonia. The current-strength required for most zinc solutions is considerable, and demands the use of two or three Bunsen-cells.

The solutions are, as usual, various, but good results may be obtained from a 10 per cent. solution of zinc sulphate with a current of from 0·06 to 0·13 ampere per sq. in., or 1 to 2 ampere per sq. decimetre; other formulæ are given in Table XXI.

For small work perhaps the best solution is that patented by Watt in 1885 (No. 5): 200 oz. of potassium cyanide are to be dissolved in 20 gallons of water; 80 fluid oz. of the strongest *liquor ammoniæ* are then stirred into the liquid, and the mixture is transferred to a large vessel containing pure rolled zinc anodes; in this vessel are also several large porous battery-cells, which must be filled up with the solution to the level of the surrounding

TABLE XXI.—Showing the Composition of Solutions for Electro-Depositing Zinc, recommended by various Authorities.

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	
No.	Authority.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.													Special Method of Preparation.
		Zinc.	Zinc Hydroxide.	Zinc Chloride.	Zinc Sulphate.	Potash.	Potassium Cyanide.	Potassium Carbonate.	Alum.	Ammonia.	Ammonium Chloride.	Ammonium Sulphate.	Sulphuric Acid.	Water.	
1	Elsner . . .	...	...	5 *x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	4 *x*	...	...	1000	(For cast-iron.)
2	Japing . . .	...	...	...	*x*	excess	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **4** in **13**, add **5** until precipitate at first formed is re-dissolved.
3	Lonyet . . .	...	...	...	250	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	little	1000	
4	Person and Sire	...	10	...	...	...	...	...	100	...	...	...	...	1000	Precipitate the zinc hydroxide from sulphate by potash.
5	Watt . . .	18·75	...	...	...	...	62	25	...	25	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **6** in **13**, add **9**; mix; add **1** electrolytically; and finally add **7**.
6	Weiss . . .	...	...	...	80	...	...	...	...	...	20	50	...	1000	
7	,, . . .	...	...	10	...	60	...	...	...	...	20	...	...	1000	To **5** in 500 of **13**, add **3** and **10** in rest of **13**; mix well.
8	Cowper-Coles (patent) . .	...	...	...	218	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **4** in **13** and add 75 parts of ferric sulphate, and keep zinc dust suspended in bath.

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various ingredients.

liquid, and in which are cathodes of metallic copper. On passing a current from a Bunsen-battery of several cells, the zinc anode gradually dissolves in the solution until, when it has reached the strength of 3 oz. per gallon (*i.e.* a loss of weight on the part of the anodes of 60 oz. in the aggregate), the battery is disconnected, and 80 oz. of potassium carbonate are finally added to the liquid little by little, by dissolving each additional portion in a fraction of the liquid, and then returning it to the vat and stirring well. After a final rest of twelve hours, for subsidence, the clear liquid is poured off, and the sedimentary matter at the bottom filtered from the contained liquid; the whole is then ready for use with a battery of three Bunsen-cells, or, better, with a dynamo.

The anodes for all solutions should be made of pure rolled zinc only. It is more likely to be pure than the cast commercial zinc or *spelter* of the market, which frequently contains much lead, iron, or arsenic, as well as other impurities, and readily crumbles.

But for large work, the cyanide bath is costly and inconvenient. The bath No. 6 in the above table may be made to give good results with a current of about 0·1 ampere per sq. in. and 3 volts' pressure. But it should always contain a trace, but scarcely more than a trace, of free acid.

Cowper-Coles' process (No. 8) is largely used for producing zinc coatings on iron plates, tubes, and heavy iron work generally. One of the difficulties in working with high current-densities is the tendency of the anode to resist solution at a rate proportional to the current supplied, which entails a gradual acidification of the bath. For this reason only about 50 per cent. of the zinc anode goes into solution. Cowper-Coles therefore prefers to use insoluble anodes (of lead) and to circulate the electrolyte through a bed of zinc dust mixed with carbon. As the electrolyte becomes acid through deposition of zinc, the zinc dust dissolves, being aided voltaically in the process by the carbon. Zinc dust has the advantage of being a cheap by-product in the manufacture of zinc, the only disadvantage in using lead for the anodes being that it becomes peroxidised and thus sets up a considerable back E.M.F. This disadvantage is reduced as far as possible by reducing the distance between the electrodes to a minimum. If zinc anodes are used, a large proportion crumbles away, and should be caught on a filter bed of carbon, zinc dust being then unnecessary. Lead electrodes, however, appear to be preferable.

Character of Deposit.—The metal should be reguline. If produced by a current which causes a simultaneous separation of hydrogen, it is, of course, spongy; but Kiliani has made the remarkable observation that with a strong solution of zinc (of specific gravity = 1·38) a very weak current causes an evolution of hydrogen, which diminishes in extent as the current increases in volume up to a certain point. For example, a current of about

0·07 ampere per sq. decimetre yielded 1·6 cubic centimetres of hydrogen for every gramme of zinc deposited; but as the current was increased to 0·2, 0·4, 1·6, and 3·2 amperes per sq. decimetre, so the hydrogen evolution per gramme of deposited zinc was reduced to 1·5, 0·37, 0·29, and 0·22 cubic centimetres respectively. In all these cases the zinc was in a spongy condition, but less markedly so in the last two instances. When the current-density was increased to 18·5 amperes per sq. decimetre, the gas separation ceased, and the metal appeared lustrous and adherent. This anomalous action may perhaps be ascribed to the ready oxidisability of the zinc, which, deposited by a weak current, is attacked by the solution in its freshly precipitated state, with the formation of zinc oxide and evolution of hydrogen ($Zn + H_2O = ZnO + H_2$); but as the current-strength increases, so also the quantity of zinc thrown down is increased, until at length the action may perhaps be so hurried that the liquid has no chance of attacking the metal at the moment of deposition. The current-strength could, of course, be greatly increased in so strong a solution without causing hydrogen to be evolved to any extent by the simultaneous electrolysis of the metallic salt in contact with the cathode, and a certain proportion of the acid or water. The same observer also noted that a current of 0·4 ampere at 17 volts, in passing through a one per cent. solution, threw down zinc oxide with the metal upon the cathode.

It is clear, then, that the current-density must not be too low in dealing with zinc solutions. The final washing of electro-zinced goods should be in hot water, and the drying, if necessary, effected in a stove, in order that as little time as possible may be given for oxidation of the deposit.

The method of operating in depositing zinc should require no further detailed explanation for those who are acquainted with the matter in the previous chapters of this work. The same care must be expended upon cleansing and deoxidising at first, and upon washing and finishing subsequently, as has been insisted upon throughout. The vats, suspension arrangements, and the like call for no special comment.

There is a very great tendency with zinc to deposit in a spongy state, forming loose tree-like forms and excrescences, especially around the edges of the work or cathode. This action has been ascribed by some to the formation of a compound of zinc and hydrogen, but by Mylius and Fromm and others to the formation of oxide of zinc, owing to the presence in the solution, for example, of oxidising substances, or of copper, arsenic, or other elements more electro-negative than zinc, which, being deposited with the latter metal, cause gradual oxidation of the zinc by local action. The use of the zinc dust in the Cowper-Coles process is clearly an advantage from this point of view, inasmuch as it tends to check the formation of the zinc oxide.

Electro-Deposition of Chromium.

Chromium is a very hard infusible metal, which so far has not received commercial application. Le Blanc[1] has deposited the metal from a solution of chromium sulphate, specific gravity 1·25, with half a gramme of boric acid per 100 cubic centimetres of solution. A lead anode and copper cathode were used. A good smooth deposit was obtained, but it was found impossible to get a thick deposit owing to the formation of cracks.

Electro-Deposition of Cadmium.

Cadmium is a metal nearly allied to zinc, but less commonly met with and more costly; its electro-deposition is rarely effected.

Smee found that a liquid made by adding a solution of ammonia to one of cadmium sulphate, until the precipitate at first formed is just re-dissolved, readily yields a good deposit, while the simple solutions of the cadmium sulphate or chloride are difficult to work; Bertrand, however, appears to have been more successful with the sulphate. This experimenter has also used a bath of cadmium bromide slightly acidified with sulphuric acid.

The only solution remaining to be noted is that of Russell and Woolrich, made by dissolving 40 parts of the metal in dilute nitric acid, adding a ten per cent. solution of sodium carbonate until no further precipitate is produced, allowing the precipitate to subside, pouring fresh tepid water upon it, settling it again, and repeating the washing process four or five times, then just dissolving it in sufficient strong potassium cyanide solution, adding ten per cent. excess of the latter, and sufficient additional water to render the total weight of water in the solution equal to 1000 parts. The bath is used at a temperature of 100° F., and, with a current at 3 or 4 volts produced by a like number of Daniell-cells placed in series, may be made to give a white reguline metal.

Electro-Deposition of Tin.

The process of coating articles of copper or wrought-iron by merely bringing their cleansed surfaces into contact with melted tin is so simple, and, moreover, gives such a sound and perfect covering, that there is but little room for an electro-tinning method, which must usually entail greater trouble and expense. Notwithstanding this, the wet deposition is to some extent practised, largely indeed for whitening small objects of brass wire, such as pins, hooks and eyes, and the like, for which it is to be preferred; and for giving a preliminary coating to certain metals, like cast-iron, which are subsequently to receive an electro-deposit of any more electro-negative metal that may not be deposited

[1] *Trans. Amer. Electro-chemical Society*, vol. ix. p. 315.

TABLE XXII.—Showing the Composition of Solutions for Tinning by Simple Immersion, recommended by various Authorities.

			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
No.	Authority.	Special Application of Bath.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.								Special Method of Preparation.
			Tin Binoxide.	Tin Bichloride.	Tin Tetrachloride.	Caustic Potash.	Potassium Bitartrate.	Ammonia-Alum.	Sodium Pyrophosphate.	Water.	
1	Gore . . .	Copper, brass, or bronze	*x*	...	...	*y*	...	...	...	1000	
2	,, . . .	Iron or zinc	...	0·5	...	...	...	15*	...	1000	
3	Lüdersdorf .	Zinc	...	...	400	...	400	...	...	1000	
4	Roseleur . .	...	...	1	...	...	10	...	...	1000	Dissolve **2** in 330 of **8**, cold; and **5** in 670 of **8**, warm; mix. (*Use with zinc contact.*)
5	,, . .	...	...	1·3	...	...	...	...	20	1000	To be used with zinc contact.
6	,, . .	Zinc	...	3·3	...	...	...	...	16·6	1000	
7	Wahl . .	...	...	3	...	...	...	50	...	1000	

Notes to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various reagents.
* For zinc, potash- or soda-alum is recommended in lieu of ammonia-alum. *y* = an indefinite amount.

directly upon them. Like many other metals, tin may be deposited either by simple-immersion, by single-cell, or by separate-current methods. This is, of course, a consequence of its relatively low position in the electro-chemical series of metals.

Tinning by Simple Immersion.—This is the commonest method of dealing with small copper or brass objects. Of the various processes, the oldest and simplest is to place them in a strong solution of potassium bitartrate (cream of tartar), with which may be mixed a small proportion of stannous chloride (tin protochloride) to quicken the action. They are then covered with a layer of pure tin, either in small pieces, in the form of foil, or as cast plate; a second layer of brass pieces is now placed above this, then a fresh stratum of tin, and so on. On boiling for a short time, it will be found that an exchange has taken place superficially upon the articles, so that they have become covered with a white film of tin. Iron and steel articles to be treated in this way must first receive a coating of copper, which will enable them to take the tin satisfactorily. This coating of tin is very thin—a mere wash—and will not withstand much wear, but suffices for the purposes for which it is required. On removal from the bath, the articles are thoroughly washed, and are polished by shaking with bran in a revolving drum (*e.g.* fig. 73), or by any other mechanical expedient. Large objects may be polished by scratch-brushing. An alternative method is to dissolve stannic oxide (putty powder) in caustic potash solution, and immerse the articles in it, in contact with fragments of tin, the subsequent processes being identical with those practised in the first process.

Zinc, placed in a solution of stannous chloride, precipitates the tin in a spongy and useless condition (analogous to that of the 'lead tree'); but by using a very dilute solution, to which a certain proportion of alum (potash- or ammonia-alum) is added, a good adhesive deposit may be obtained. A similar solution of stannous chlorine and ammonia-alum may be applied to the tinning of iron by simple immersion. The whole process is very simple; and the principal solutions are enumerated in the preceding table.

Deposition by Single-Cell Process.—Solutions recommended by Roseleur are given in Table XXII. (Nos. 4 and 5). In use, small articles are most conveniently placed upon a tray of perforated zinc and lowered into the liquid, which should be kept warm. The tray should be lightly shaken from time to time in order to bring different points into contact with the zinc, and the surface of the latter must be scraped at intervals to remove the white incrustation which forms upon it and destroys metallic contact. Large objects are immersed in the liquid in contact with fragments of zinc, which should have a surface equal in the aggregate to about the one-thirtieth part of that which is to be coated with tin. At the end of an immersion lasting from one

to three hours, Roseleur recommends that the pieces should be removed and scratch-brushed, while at the same time the bath, which has been impoverished by the deposition of tin, is regenerated by the addition of fresh tin and alkaline bitartrate or pyrophosphate. After a further immersion of about equal duration, the goods are well washed, scratch-brushed, and dried.

Deposition by Separate Current.—For this purpose the current should have a fairly high electro-motive force, such as would be yielded by two Bunsen-cells in series. Of all the baths quoted in Table XXIII., that of Roseleur will probably be found to give the most universally good results.

Roseleur's bath (No. 8, Table XXIII.) is made by placing the pyrophosphate and water in a tin-lined wooden tank, the lining serving also as anode; afterwards the stannous chloride is suspended in the liquid in a copper sieve. The first result is to produce a cloudiness in the liquid, which, however, subsequently becomes clear; and after complete solution of the tin salt is ready for use. The liquid may have a yellowish colour, but should be perfectly transparent and clear. This bath requires an addition of tin from time to time, because the metal is deposited from it at a greater rate than that at which the solution of the anodes replenishes it, in spite of the relatively large surface of the latter exposed. The solution already mentioned as being made by dissolving the binoxide of tin in caustic potash may be used as an electrolytic bath for coating iron. Maistrasse ensures the complete continuity of the tin-covering given by his bath (No. 6) by heating the coated object to the melting-point of the tin, thus causing the latter to fuse over the surface and alloy with the basis metal; this solution is said to be especially applicable to the tinning of cast-iron.

No special remarks are called for upon the practical electro-deposition of tin. A current of moderate density at from 3 to 5 volts' pressure is required. The time to be expended varies with the process and with the thickness of metal to be deposited, from one or two up to twenty-four hours, which latter period is recommended for Maistrasse's solution. The objects, as usual, are carefully cleansed before immersion, and are subsequently most thoroughly washed. They may be left in the 'dead' condition, if preferred, but are more generally polished, either by scratch-brushing or by friction with bran.

The anodes should be of pure metal. So-called *tin-plate*, which is only sheet-iron covered (in the dry way) with the thinnest possible coating of metallic tin, is, of course, useless; and tin-foil must be used with caution, for many samples of the foil are made from alloys of lead and tin, but these are generally duller in their outer aspect; while others may consist of the thinnest lead-foil, covered on one or both sides with tin, the two surfaces being united together by rolling; and such samples in external

TABLE XXIII.—Showing the Composition of Electro-Tinning Baths, recommended by various Authorities.

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
No.	Authority.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.														Special Method of Preparation.
		Tin Binoxide.	Fused Tin Bichloride.	Tin Tetrachloride.	Caustic Potash.	Potassium Carbonate.	Potassium Cyanide.	Potassium Bitartrate.	Caustic Soda.	Sodium Carbonate.	Sodium Pyrophosphate.	Zinc Acetate.	Sulphuric Acid.	Tartaric Acid.	Water.	
1	Elsner . .	...	...	24	*q.s.*	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **3** in **14** and add **4** till precipitate at first formed is re-dissolved.
2	Fearn . .	...	1·2	...	111	...	111	...	...	...	111	...	...	...	1000	Add **4** in 740 of **14** to **2** in 37 of **14**; add **6** in pieces; and finally **10** in residue of **14**.
3	,, . .	...	1·3	...	71	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	25	1000	Dissolve **13** in 480 of **14**; and **4** in 480 of **14**; mix with **2** in remainder of **14**.
4	Hern . .	...	30	...	...	...	...	...	30	...	...	...	...	21	1000	
5	Lobstein .	...	...	0·3	...	...	0·4	...	18	...	...	...	..	...	1000	
6	Maistrasse	...	0·1	...	...	...	0·3	...	*q.s.*	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **2** and **6** in caustic soda lye of 3° Baumé.
7	Munro . .	...	*x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	...	*q.s.*	...	1000	Dissolve **2** in **14**; add sufficient **9** to precipitate it; and just re-dissolve in **12**.
8	Roseleur .	...	1	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	10	...	...	...	1000	
9	Sartoria .	...	*x*	...	...	...	...	125	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Form electrolytically.
10	Steele .	17·6	...	...	5·5	16·5	0·9	...	...	66	...	0·9	...	...	1000	Dissolve **4**. **5**, and **9** in water; filter; add **1** and **11**; stir till dissolved.
11	Weiss . .	...	1	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	5	...	...	...	1000	

Notes to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns denoting the various reagents. No. 2 is intended to give thick deposits; No. 7 especially to coat lead; and No. 11 to tin lead surfaces.

appearance have all the characteristic appearance and brightness of the pure metal. Only pure tin-foil, or plates cast from the best *grain tin*, should be employed.

Electro-Deposition of Lead.

With lead, as with tin, the low fusing-point renders the coating of an object more simply effected by immersion in the melted metal than by electro-deposition. The old experiment of growing a 'lead tree' by suspending a fragment of metallic zinc in a dilute solution of lead acetate (sugar of lead) is simply a case of deposition by 'simple immersion'; the peculiar, largely-crystalline, spongy formation of the resulting lead illustrates very well the difficulty of getting a good solid adherent metal by simple exchange with a more electro-positive element. When, however, it is necessary to deposit lead in the wet way, a simple dilute solution of the acetate may be electrolysed by separate current; but the alkaline bath, prepared by boiling 5 parts of lead oxide (litharge) in a solution of 50 parts of caustic potash in 1000 of water until it is completely dissolved, is preferable.

With either liquid lead anodes are used, and the objects are carefully prepared for the bath, and polished afterwards as usual. The methods cannot, however, be relied upon to give a thick deposit, nor are they largely used in practice.

Many lead solutions tend to form an insoluble higher oxide (a peroxide, PbO_2) at the anode, which thus receives a coating as well as the cathode, but of a different kind; and the principal interest attaching to the process of lead electrolysis centres in the possibility of producing films of oxide which present different colours to the eye by reason of their extreme tenuity.

Electro-Deposition of Antimony.

The deposition of antimony, again, is a process of no commercial importance, although the metal, which has a fairly bright lustre when polished, but is rather grey in colour, resists well the tarnishing action of the atmosphere. It is a very brittle metal, and would be useless as a coating upon any thin article, or upon one which is liable to be bent in any degree when in use.

Immersion Process.—It is fairly electro-negative, and will, therefore, give a deposit upon many metals by simple immersion. For example, brass will receive a lilac-coloured surface tint, varying in depth of shade according to the time of immersion, by dipping it in a boiling dilute solution of antimony terchloride (butter of antimony), made by adding much water to a little of the antimony compound, and boiling until the dense white precipitate formed on mixture has re-dissolved; and then, after

a further addition of water and a second boiling, filtering and heating for use. The coated pieces must be well dried in hot sawdust or in a stove, and must be protected by a varnish of lacquer, if the lilac colour is to be preserved.

TABLE XXIV.—Showing the Composition of Solutions for the Electro-Deposition of Antimony, recommended by various Authorities.

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
No.	Authority.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.									Special Method of Preparation.
		Antimony.	Antimony Terchloride.	Antimony-Potassium Tartrate.	Antimony Tersulphide.	Sodium Carbonate.	Ammonium Chloride.	Hydrochloric Acid.	Tartaric Acid.	Water.	
1	Gore . .	..	*x*	..	..	..	*y*	..	..	1000	
2	,, . .	*q.s.*	..	..	..	..	..	*q.s.*	..	1000	Electrolyse pure strong hydrochloric acid with antimony anode until solution is charged.
3	,, . .	..	..	4000	..	..	..	2000	..	1000	
4	,, . .	..	..	83	..	..	..	124	83	1000	
5	Roseleur	..	..	..	50	100	..	..	..	1000	(Use boiling; it deposits kermes mineral on cooling.)

Battery Process.—But, as usual, the separate-current process is to be preferred, for which the solutions given in Table XXIV., *inter alia*, have been recommended.

Of these solutions No. 3 will probably give the best results in workshop practice. It is made by dissolving four pounds of the double potassium-antimony tartrate (tartar emetic) in a mixture of two pounds of strong hydrochloric acid with one of water. This solution is particularly useful for producing thick deposits, as considerable latitude in current-strength is permissible. A current of 0·06 to 0·1 ampere per sq. in., or 1 to 1½ amperes per square decimetre, will be found most suitable, but the current may be greatly increased, and the rate of deposition correspondingly hurried, without danger. Tartar emetic itself is a feeble conductor, and cannot alone be made to give good deposits, for, as Gore has shown, even a very weak current brings down the metal in a pulverulent form; hence the addition of hydrochloric acid, which sufficiently increases the conductivity. The other solution containing tartar emetic has less hydrochloric acid, is a poorer conductor, and must be used with a weaker current, not exceeding 0·013 ampere per sq. in. or 0·2 ampere per square decimetre. The bath prepared by Roseleur

by boiling together for the space of one hour, and subsequently filtering the solution, 1 ounce of antimony tersulphide, 2 of sodium carbonate, and 1 pint of water, tends to deposit antimony oxysulphide (kermes mineral) on cooling, as above noted; and must, therefore, be always used hot. The pale orange precipitate of oxysulphide is soluble in the mother-liquor as soon as the boiling-point is reached.

The anodes may be made of platinum, but preferably of antimony, which must be cast into slabs of the required shape and size, as it is far too brittle to allow of mechanical work, such as rolling or hammering.

No special treatment is required in depositing antimony; the pieces must be cleansed thoroughly, and the strength of the bath must be maintained by adding a further quantity of the solution from time to time. After coating, the pieces are rinsed, dried in a stove (or in hot sawdust), and brightened in the usual way. But if the chloride solution has been employed, the object must be rinsed once or twice in hydrochloric acid immediately it is removed from the bath, and then in water, because water added to the original solution produces a dense curdy-white precipitate of antimony oxychloride. So that, if the pieces, with a portion of the bath liquor clinging to them, were dipped into water at the outset, they would be covered with this white deposit; but if first washed in a menstruum, such as hydrochloric acid, with which the solution mixes without decomposition, the original liquid is safely removed, and the final cleansing may be effected in water without risk.

Character of Deposit.—The metal deposited by too strong a current is, as usual, black, powdery, and non-adherent; and that yielded by some solutions may be so, even when a weak current is employed. But the metal is capable of being thrown down in two different modifications of the reguline or solid form—one of a grey-slate colour in the dull condition, but taking a good polish and resembling cast-iron when scratch-brushed, having a crystalline fracture, and being hard and very brittle; while the other is darker and more steely, but somewhat softer, non-crystalline, or amorphous, and with a lustre which resists atmospheric influences for quite a lengthened period.

Explosive Antimony.—The most curious and interesting phenomenon in connection with antimony deposition is the production of an *explosive* variety, which has been fully studied and described by Gore. He found that the amorphous antimony deposited from a solution of 1 part of antimony terchloride in 5 or 6 parts of hydrochloric acid (of specific gravity 1·12), or in 10 of hydrobromic acid (specific gravity 1·3), or in 15 parts of hydriodic acid (specific gravity 1·25), would, under certain conditions, undergo a physical change and become crystalline; and that this change was attended by an increase of density, and with an evolution

of heat so considerable that, if evolved instantaneously by a considerable mass, it may develop almost explosive violence. The heat is so great that, if sufficient metal undergo the change, paper in contact with it is burned, and wood is scorched brown; the 'explosion' is often accompanied by a flash of light, but always by a slight cloud of vapour expelled from the interior.

The three varieties (from the chloride, bromide, and iodide) differ in their sensitiveness, as well as in other particulars. None of them are pure, but retain within their pores about 6, 20, and 22 per cent. respectively of the depositing liquor, which may be expelled by heating, as, for example, at the moment of explosion; the cloud of vapour observed is thus accounted for. The presence of this liquor in the metal gives rise to an apparently abnormal excess of deposited metal over that which should be yielded according to the electro-chemical equivalent. The alteration of condition proceeds gradually on keeping, but more quickly in the case of powder or of thin pieces than with larger masses of metal; and the heat is then evolved almost imperceptibly. But freshly-deposited material may be caused to undergo the change, in a rapid or explosive manner, by any physical means, which is capable of sufficiently affecting the molecular arrangement of the body. With the chloride variety the action begins when it is heated to 170° F., becoming sudden and complete at about 205° F.; with the bromide deposit the explosion occurs at 320° F.; with that from the iodide at a still higher temperature. A similar descending order of sensitiveness was observed when other means were employed to initiate the action; a touch with a red-hot wire caused immediate conversion of the chloride variety, while the bromide metal was merely locally affected by contact with the hot wire, the action only spreading through the whole when it was raised to 250° F. throughout, and through the iodine specimen when it was heated at 338° F. The heat developed by the alteration in the first-named case was so great that a thin rod $\frac{1}{8}$th of an inch in diameter, upon which the amorphous antimony was electrolytically built up to a total diameter of half an inch, melted, flowed away from the antimony, and remained fluid for some time. The explosiveness appears to be due to the content of chloride, bromide, or iodide, as the case may be.

A sudden blow, or even rubbing with glass or metal, is liable to convert the amorphous into the crystalline variety, so that if it is required to break up the unexploded metal into smaller pieces, it should be fractured under cold water by a comparatively soft material, such as wood. Provided that they are kept under iced water meanwhile, very thin pieces may even be crushed to a fine powder in a mortar; and this powder may be dried in the cold over sulphuric acid; and, remaining in the original condition, will evolve subsequently the same proportion of heat as the thicker untouched deposits.

The Electro-Deposition of Bismuth.

The deposition of this metal possesses at present little beside a scientific or theoretical interest.

It may be thrown down from a weak and very slightly acidified solution of the nitrate, either by simple immersion upon certain more electro-positive metals, such as tin, or by the separate-current process. Bertrand uses for the latter method a solution of 30 parts of the double chloride of bismuth and ammonium in 1000 of water, containing a small proportion of hydrochloric acid. With one Bunsen-cell he succeeded in obtaining a coat which, although black exteriorly, exhibited the well-known slightly pink shade of the metal, and was susceptible of a very high polish. Like antimony, the brittle nature of the metal renders it unfit for coating objects which are at all strained or altered in shape subsequently.

The Electro-Deposition of Palladium.

Palladium is one of the rarer metals, belonging to the platinum group. Having a silver-white colour and lustre, and being also untarnishable at ordinary temperatures by oxygen or (unlike silver) by sulphur compounds in the air, it is sometimes substituted for silver. Occasionally, but very rarely, silver-plated goods are given a thin final coat of palladium. Cowper-Coles,[1] in his interesting electrolytic process for the manufacture of parabolic reflectors, which are required to be always bright, and which, if used for electric search-lights may be exposed to high temperatures and to influences which would rapidly tarnish silver, covers the copper of which the reflectors are made with a coat of palladium having a thickness corresponding to 70 to 80 grains of palladium per square foot.

The bath that he uses is that recommended by Bertrand, namely, a solution of the double chloride of ammonium and palladium but with excess of ammonium chloride added. He dissolves 6·2 parts of this compound with ten parts of ammonium chloride in 1000 of water, and uses it at a temperature of 75° F. with a current-density of about 0·15 ampere per square foot and an E.M.F. between the electrodes of 4 to 5 volts. He uses an anode of carbon; Bertrand, however, employs one of palladium.

Of the remaining metals there are none which render necessary in this work a description of the means by which they may be electrolysed. With regard to some of them, indeed, many published processes would appear on thermo-chemical grounds to be visionary.

In regard to **aluminium** especially, the extreme popularity of

[1] *Jour. Inst. of Electrical Engineers*, 1898 (xxvii.), p. 105.

this metal, combined with a great want of knowledge, on the part of the public, as to its properties, have led to a demand for its electro-deposition. Many solutions have been proposed which it was claimed should give good deposits of the metal, but have been found by various experimenters to be worthless. In our own experience, the brilliant grey deposit, which has been afforded by some of these methods, but which has never exceeded in thickness that of a mere film, has consisted principally of iron, a metal which is almost universally present in commercial aluminium compounds. The deposit has been often found, on testing, to contain aluminium ; this may have been due to traces of the solution remaining in the pores of the coat, or it may have resulted from aluminium which had actually been deposited with the iron as an alloy ; but in all cases the iron was found to be vastly preponderating. That it is possible to deposit aluminium by the electrolysis of fused compounds is no doubt true, but further evidence is necessary to prove the satisfactory deposition of the pure metal from aqueous solutions.

Colouring of Metallic Surfaces.

Advantage has been taken of the fact that lead and certain other metals tend to deposit as peroxide upon the anode, instead of, or sometimes in addition to, precipitating as metal upon the cathode, to obtain certain colours upon metal surfaces. The most interesting application of this is to be seen in the formation of **metallo-chromes** by the deposition of an infinitesimal film of lead peroxide upon a polished steel surface. It has long been known that colourless transparent substances, if sufficiently thin, are capable of displaying a series of colours by reflected light by the optical phenomenon known as the interference of luminous waves (where the wave of light reflected from one side of the film is so similar to that reflected after refraction from the other that their respective vibratory influences interfere with one another). The play of colours upon the soap-bubble or upon oil floating on water are instances of this phenomenon, which was first studied by Newton. A momentary immersion of a bright steel or platinum plate as anode in a lead solution suffices to deposit a film of peroxide, which answers the requirements for the production of these iridescent colours. Nobili was the first to observe this action with acetate of lead. Becquerel's solution is now used for this purpose ; it is made by dissolving 14 oz. of caustic potash in half a gallon of water, adding to this 10½ oz. of lead oxide (litharge) and boiling for from half an hour to an hour, allowing it to stand for some time, then decanting the clear liquid from the subsided precipitate, and making up the whole to a gallon in volume. The electrolytic action must be continued for exactly the right period of time ; an

insufficient exposure does not give time for the development of sufficient thickness to allow of interference, while an excessive action causes an opaque, dirty brown deposit; intermediately between the two, a very beautiful play of colours may be secured The cathode may be of copper-sheet. Gassiot produced patterns upon the anode by interposing a cardboard disc, with a perforated design upon it, between the electrodes, so that the deposit chiefly occurred on the portions unshielded by the solid portions of the card. Watt used copper wire bent into various shapes; this system has the advantage that there are varying distances between the different portions of the anode and the cathode, and, therefore, a varying thickness of film is produced, which adds to the beauty of the iridescence. The film is fairly adhesive, but should not be handled more than is necessary.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF ALLOYS.

THE principles upon which the possibility of electro-depositing alloys may be said to depend have already been explained in Chapter II. (p. 33). Brass, bronze, and German silver are practically the only alloys deposited, if we except the mixtures used in producing coloured gold coatings, and of these the first-named alone has any widespread use.

THE ELECTRO-DEPOSITION OF BRASS (COPPER AND ZINC).

A brass coating may be given to a copper article by covering it electrolytically with a thin film of zinc, and then, after washing and drying, applying to it a heat just sufficient to cause the two metals to form an alloy superficially; and similarly an object made of any other material, which will withstand the necessary heating, may be brass-surfaced by depositing alternate layers of copper and zinc, and alloying them *in situ* as before. But in practice this could not well be done. Nor is brassing usually effected by simple immersion, although Watt has shown that a zinc rod, dipped into a mixed solution of copper and zinc acetate, becomes covered with a yellow deposit of the alloy. But for practical purposes the production by the separate-battery process is alone adopted. The Bunsen form of battery is the best, and should generally be arranged with two cells in series.

The Solution.—The solution may be greatly varied, and, indeed, no absolute and unalterable rules can be laid down as to its constitution. The basis of most of the liquids is the mixed cyanides of copper and zinc, as in this combination zinc does not displace copper from its solution, and there is in consequence a better chance of obtaining a simultaneous coating of the two bodies; but the relative proportions of these may require to be varied in working, according to the behaviour of the solution, which depends upon several inconstant quantities—strength of current, resistance of solution, and the like. The following table (XXV.) summarises the principal electro-brassing solutions.

TABLE XXV.—Showing the Composition of Electro-

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
		PARTS BY WEIGHT												
No.	Authority.	Brass.	Copper Acetate.	Copper Carbonate.	Copper Chloride.	Copper Cyanide.	Copper Sulphate.	Zinc Acetate.	Zinc Carbonate.	Zinc Chloride.	Zinc Cyanide.	Zinc Sulphate.	Caustic Potash.	Potassium Carbonate.
1	Brunel . . .	...	...	...	10	...	...	...	...	...	...	20	...	250
2	,, ...	...	...	...	5	...	...	...	...	...	...	10	...	80
3	Gore	*x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
4	Heeren . . .	...	...	...	...	...	3	...	...	...	...	26	...	...
5	Hess	*x*	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
6	Japing . . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
7	Morris and Johnson .	...	...	...	...	12·5	...	...	...	...	6·2	...	...	...
8	Roseleur . . .	...	...	10	...	...	...	...	10	...	...	...	...	...
9	,, . . .	...	12·5	...	...	...	...	...	...	10	...	...	...	...
10	,, . . .	...	14	...	...	...	...	...	...	14	...	...	...	...
11	Russell and Woolrich .	...	150	...	...	...	...	15	...	...	...	...	..	...
12	De la Salzède . .	...	...	...	5	...	...	...	...	...	...	9·5	...	120
13	,, . .	...	...	...	3	...	...	...	...	...	...	7	...	100
14	Volkmer . . .	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
15	Watt	...	4	...	...	...	...	...	...	..	...	8	56	...
16	Weiss	...	4	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	6–8	40	...
17	Wood	...	...	...	...	14	...	...	...	...	7	...	...	...

Notes to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical
to zinc; Nos. 9 and 17 to iron and steel. No. 8 is recommended to be used cold;

BRASSING SOLUTIONS, AS RECOMMENDED BY VARIOUS AUTHORITIES.

14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
OF INGREDIENTS.											
Potassium Cyanide.	Potassium Acetate.	Sodium Carbonate.	Sodium Bicarbonate.	Sodium Bisulphite.	Ammonia.	Ammonium Carbonate.	Ammonium Chloride.	Ammonium Nitrate.	Arsenious Acid.	Water.	Special Method of Preparation.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	125	...	1000	
12	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve together in **24**; add **14** last.
125	...	...	...	...	62·5	...	...	...	...	1000	Form electrolytically.
60	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **6** in 12 of **24**; **11** in 52 of **24**; **14** in 120 of **24**; mix; add rest of **24**.
6·5	...	...	42	...	...	...	27	...	...	1000	Form electrolytically with brass anode.
q.s.	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Form electrolytically, with brass anode supplemented by copper or zinc anodes, if necessary, to improve colour.
100	...	...	...	...	...	100	...	...	...	1000	
20	...	20	...	20	...	...	...	...	0·2	1000	Precipitate **3** and **8** from $CuSO_4$ and $ZnSO_4$ with Na_2CO_3, and wash; add **16** and **18** in 900 of **24**; add **14** and **23** in 100 of **24**; filter. Add more **14** if solution remain blue.
40	...	100	...	20	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **14**, **16**, and **18** in 800 of **24**; add **2** and **9** in 200 of **24**.
30	...	...	...	28	16	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **14** and **18** in 800 of **24**; add to solution of **2**, **9**, and **19** in 200 of **24**.
excess	150	...	...	..	...	...	...	...	...	1000	Add **14** last, until precipitate re-dissolves.
2·5	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	61	...	1000	Dissolve **14** in 24 of **24**; dissolve **4**, **11**, **13** in rest of **24**; add **22**; stand for some days and decant.
10	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1000	
125	...	...	...	...	...	125	...	...	...	1000	Form electrolytically; with copper anode till saturated; then with zinc anode till deposit is brass colour.
6·5	...	...	...	...	31	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **2** in 65 of **24** and add 15 of **19**; dissolve **11** in 125 of **24** and add 16 of **19**; mix; add **12** in 125 of **24**, then **14** in 125 of **24**. Stir, add rest of **24**; stand and decant.
3–4	...	...	...	...	24	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **2** in **19**; add **12**; then add **11**, **14**, and **24**.
82	...	...	...	...	...	...	14	...	...	1000	

columns indicating the various reagents. Solutions Nos. 6 and 10 are especially applicable No. 14 at 86° to 100°; No. 7 at 150°; No. 17 at 160° F.; and Nos. 3 and 4 boiling.

One of the best of these solutions is that recommended by Roseleur (No. 8), which is somewhat complex, but will be found to give good results—to prepare 1 gallon, 2½ oz. of copper sulphate and a like weight of zinc sulphate are dissolved in water; and a solution of 6½ oz. of sodium carbonate in a convenient quantity of water is added to the mixture. A dense precipitate of copper and zinc carbonates is thus formed. It is allowed to settle, water is poured on, and it is thus washed several times by decantation; the clear liquor is finally siphoned away from the precipitate, which is then filtered off from the residual liquid, and mixed with a solution of 3¼ oz. of sodium carbonate, and 3¼ oz. of sodium bisulphite, in 7¼ pints of water. To this is added 3¼ oz. of potassium cyanide and 20 grains of arsenious acid (white arsenic) in ¾ pint of water. After filtering, the clear liquid contains the copper and zinc, and should be quite decolorised; any blue colour indicates the presence of unaltered copper salt, and calls for the addition of a further quantity of potassium cyanide solution. It may be taken as a general rule that all the cyanide brass-baths should be free from blue colour; and that if they are not so initially, they must be made so by the introduction of sufficient extra potassium cyanide, while if they become blue when in use, the same remedy is to be applied. It is to be recommended that a 10 per cent. solution of the cyanide should be kept for this purpose, so that a little may be added whenever necessary. The bath (Roseleur's) is used cold and with brass anodes, but as the composition is liable to variation by unequal solution of the brass, a further addition of copper or zinc may be required from time to time. This should be effected by adding separate solutions of copper or of zinc cyanides, made by dissolving their carbonates in solutions of potassium cyanide. Sodium or potassium arsenite may be used in place of arsenious acid, but a proportionately larger quantity must, of course, be employed. With the addition of a little arsenic the solution gives a brighter deposit than is yielded by the copper-zinc solution alone; a large quantity, however, is found to give to the deposit a temporary increase in whiteness, which is objectionable.

Baths may be prepared electrolytically either, as in Gore's solution (No. 3), by passing the current through a suitable solution from a brass anode, so that the constituents of the anode alloy may dissolve simultaneously into the liquid, or, as in Volkmer's bath (No. 14), by passing the current from a copper anode alone at first, until sufficient of that metal has been taken up; and next from a zinc anode alone, until the requisite shade of brass-colour appears on the sheet metal cathode; a brass anode is then substituted for that of zinc, and the plate at the cathode pole is replaced by the object to be coated.

Anodes.—The anode used for the various solutions above given may be made of brass, and this should have approximately the same composition as the metal which it is proposed to deposit, and should be prepared from the pure virgin metals; but, instead of using the copper and the zinc combined together in the form of an alloy, they may be used separately by suspending alternate strips of the two metals from the anode rod; and this method, although less usually adopted, presents the advantage that the composition of the bath may be controlled by altering the relative numbers of the two kinds of strips, so that a greater area of copper anode surface may be presented to the liquid when the deposit is becoming too pale in colour, or of zinc when it grows too red or yellow. The anodes are supported in the usual way, either completely immersed and supported by stout brass hooks, or partially immersed only. The vats for cold and for hot solutions are similar to those used for the copper (cyanide) depositing process.

Nature of Deposit.—The character of the metal deposited is entirely dependent upon the conditions of current and of bath, but chiefly upon the composition of the solution. If the liquid contain an excess of either constituent beyond the normal, the deposited metal will also contain an excessive percentage of that metal, and its properties and colour will be influenced accordingly. The composition of the anodes vastly influences the deposit yielded by a solution, inasmuch as it modifies the constitution of the bath itself.

A weak current, or the imparting of motion to the suspended objects (which is in some respects equivalent to a reduction in current-density), tends to produce a deposit containing a greater proportion of the more electro-negative element copper, while a stronger current yields a larger percentage of zinc. Then again—given the same battery, solution, and anodes—heating the bath, by increasing its conductivity, raises the current-strength, and thus also tends to increase the percentage of zinc. The deposition of hydrogen must as usual be avoided, in order to obtain a good adherent deposit. But, to sum up the preceding observations, within the limits of current-density that permit the production of a good coat, the conditions which favour the precipitation of an alloy rich in copper, and, therefore, a red or yellow colour, are—a solution and anode containing a high percentage of copper, a weak current, a cold bath, and the movement of the articles under treatment; while the opposite effects of a greater proportion of zinc with a corresponding whitening of the deposit are yielded by a strong current, by anodes and solution richer in zinc than in copper, and by maintaining the objects motionless in a hot liquid.

It will now be understood that the various relations of current-density and other conditions of work are mutually so inter-

dependent that it is impossible to lay down inviolable rules for working brass solutions; but with the requisite constant observation and care, there is no difficulty in obtaining any desired nature of deposit. If the colour of the metal is too red, an excess of copper is indicated, which may be rectified by increasing the current-strength or adding more zinc to the liquid; if it is too white, showing an excess of zinc, the current is reduced or copper is added to the bath. The alteration of current may often be conveniently effected, as mentioned in another chapter, by increasing or decreasing the surface of the anodes according as its strength is required to be greater or less. It is evident, therefore, that baths of even comparatively widely-differing compositions may be caused to yield deposits of the same alloy by adjusting the various conditions of work. But since the proportion of the constituents in the deposited metal, and hence its colour, are so susceptible of alteration by a change in any of the conditions, it becomes necessary to watch the progress of the electrolysis most carefully, not only to prevent the variation of the alloy, but to prevent local alterations, which may give rise to spotted or unevenly coloured deposits, such as would be produced if any portion of the cathode object were receiving more or less current than the remainder, or if the solution were not properly mixed. It is, therefore, advisable to stir the solution very thoroughly before commencing work, and at intervals while the deposition is in progress; and again to observe that the pieces forming the opposite electrodes are as nearly as possible equidistant from one another. The observance of this latter precaution, which is necessary enough in depositing single metals, where the main question is one of thickness of deposit, becomes greatly exalted in importance when it is seen that not only the thickness but also the colour of the coating is influenced, the portions more remote from the anodes receiving less current, and, therefore, having a redder shade than those in closer proximity. Similarly, the difference in specific gravity of the various strata in imperfectly mixed liquids produces a variation in colour between the deposit at the top and that at the bottom of an article.

The Process.—In the practical application of the process, the objects to be brassed must be first carefully cleansed and polished after the orthodox fashion; they are then immersed in the electrolytic bath until the required thickness of metal has been attained, and, provided that it be of the right colour, it is then rinsed, scratch-brushed, well washed in hot water, and dried in hot sawdust or in a stove. In some of the liquids used the cyanide solution does not exert sufficient solvent action upon zinc oxide, which thus becomes separated in the solid form upon the surface of the anode, finally crumbling away and collecting on the bottom of the bath. Such a formation is objectionable, first,

because it impedes the action by yielding a film upon the electrode surface; then, because it becomes detached, and so introduces into the bath solid matter that may be held for a time in suspension in the liquid, which is always dangerous, because fragments are liable to become attached to the surface of the object being plated; and, thirdly, because a deficiency of zinc passing into solution from the anode is equivalent to a relative increase in the amount of copper in the bath. In cases where such a precipitate is observed upon the anode (which should, therefore, be inspected from time to time), a small quantity of *liquor ammoniæ* mixed with a slight excess of potassium cyanide should be added to the liquid; any oxide already formed will thus be dissolved, and the anode surface will be kept clean, owing to the non-formation of fresh quantities of the substance. When ammonia is one of the constituents of the bath, a further quantity must be added at intervals, because it is constantly evaporating by exposure to the air.

When an object is found to be taking a bad deposit at first, it should be removed from the vat, scratch-brushed and returned, the defect in the electrolytic arrangements having been made good in the meantime. A dirty yellowish or earthy-looking deposit is often the result of insufficiency of cyanide, and may be corrected accordingly.

The chief use of brass composition is to coat zinc or iron surfaces with a rich-coloured material that may be subsequently bronzed or otherwise ornamented, or which may be simply lacquered and left with the original brass colour. Large quantities of iron tube for bedstead, fender, and other work are thus coated electrolytically with brass. It is sometimes employed for facing typographic matter, but presents no advantage over nickel for this purpose; it is especially applicable to coating bookbinders' type, which should have a hard face, and which must bear heating, as these tools are frequently used hot.

The Electro-Deposition of Bronze (Copper and Tin).

Maistrasse has obtained a superficial bronze coating upon copper objects by first electro-tinning them, and then heating them for some time above the melting-point of tin, so that it may fuse and alloy with the base metal upon the surface. But in regard to the more purely electrolytic methods, the general remarks which were made in reference to brass apply with equal force to the less commonly employed deposition of bronze. The principles underlying the two processes are identical, and the methods similar. The following short table of solutions will show that there is practically only a substitution of tin for zinc as compared with brassing liquids.

TABLE XXVI.—Showing the Composition of certain Electro-Bronzing Solutions, recommended by various Authorities.

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
No.	Authority.	PARTS BY WEIGHT OF INGREDIENTS.														Special Method of Preparation.
		Copper Sulphate.	Cupric Chloride.	Cuprous Chloride.	Cuprous Cyanide.	Tin Tetrachloride.	Tin Bichloride.	Tin Binoxide.	Sodium Stannate.	Caustic Potash.	Potassium Carbonate.	Potassium Cyanide.	Soda-lime.	Rochelle Salt.	Water.	
1	Elsner . .	70	...	...	...	8	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	...	...	...	1000	Dissolve **1** in **14**; add **5** in a little strong solution of **9**.
2	Ruolz . . .	...	...	...	5	...	...	2	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	..	1000	Dissolve **11** in **14** until sp. gr. = 1·03; dissolve in this, **4** and **7** at 125°–150° F.
3	De la Salzède	...	...	1·5	...	...	1·2	...	...	...	100	10	...	...	1000	
4	Weiss . . .	...	20	...	...	...	10	...	...	...	100	10	...	...	1000	
5	,, . . .	64	...	...	...	8–10	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	128	...	...	1000	Dissolve **1** in **14**; add **11**; when dissolved, add **5** in little solution of **9**.
6	Weil . . .	35	...	...	...	...	...	...	*q.s.*	...	...	...	80	150	1000	Add sufficient **8** to rest of solution to give required deposit.

Note to Table.—The heavy figures in the last column refer to the numbers of the vertical columns indicating the various ingredients.

Bronze anodes are used, varying in composition with the character of the metal to be deposited. A ternary alloy of copper, tin, and zinc may be obtained by suitably combining brassing and bronzing solutions; but, like bronzing itself, this process has but little practical utility.

The Electro-Deposition of German Silver (Copper, Nickel, and Zinc).

This alloy is recommended by Watt as a substitute for nickel in coating certain small articles, such as revolvers, on account of the colour, which has a somewhat redder shade than the pure white of nickel, and is sometimes considered to be more pleasing. The bath which he recommends is made by dissolving 1 oz. of German silver, of the required composition, in nitric acid, diluted with an equal volume of water, taking care that no excess of the acid is present, by adding it very gradually, and so that a small portion of the metal remains undissolved in the liquid when all chemical action has ceased (this is indicated by the cessation of gas evolution); about 4 oz. of potassium carbonate are dissolved in a fairly large quantity of water, and this solution is added to that of the alloy, until no further precipitate is produced by the addition of another drop of the carbonate. The precipitate is then allowed to subside, the liquid is poured away from it, and fresh water is added several times successively. A strong solution of potassium cyanide with 1 oz. of the strongest ammonia solution (*liquor ammoniæ fortiss.*), filtered clear, if necessary, is now added with constant stirring, until the precipitated carbonates are just dissolved; a slight excess of potassium cyanide is now introduced, with sufficient water to make up the bulk of the liquid to one gallon. After filtering, the liquid is allowed to stand for twelve hours, the clear liquid is decanted off, and is used as an electrolyte with a German-silver anode, similar in composition to that from which the bath is prepared, the current being produced by a Bunsen-battery.

Morris and Johnson, whose electro-brassing bath has already been given, protected, by their patent of 1852, the deposition of German silver from a solution of the cyanides of copper, zinc, and nickel (in the correct proportions of the alloy) in one of ammonium carbonate and potassium cyanide dissolved in 10 parts of water. An excess of potassium cyanide produces an alloy containing a larger percentage of copper, and imparts to it a reddish shade in consequence; but this may be rectified by the addition of ammonium carbonate, while, on the other hand, if the deposit be too white, fresh cyanide is added by degrees until the desired shade is produced. This bath is to be used with a high current-density at a temperature of 160° F.

Other alloys may also be deposited by adopting suitable solutions prepared to satisfy the requirements set forth in an earlier chapter. At present there is no demand for any of these, and they have generally been designed to imitate the qualities of a more costly unalloyed metal. For example, Round proposed to precipitate an **alloy of tin and silver** to take the place of the latter metal, by electrolysing a clear solution of 4 oz. of potassium cyanide, 5 of the strongest *liquor ammoniæ*, and ½ oz. of silver, to which a suitable proportion of any soluble tin compound, and subsequently about 2½ oz. of potassium carbonate, had been added, and from which sediment had been separated by decantation. He used a dual anode, consisting of a large sheet of tin with a small plate of silver in juxtaposition.

Alloys have also been prepared to resist the action of acids or other corrosive fluids, such as that of **platinum and silver**, which Campbell has patented, and made by depositing from a solution containing silver and platinum in the proportion of 70 : 30, with an anode made from an alloy of similar percentage composition. The solution was prepared by dissolving the mixed chlorides, obtained by the addition of ammonium chloride to the conjoint solution, in potassium cyanide solution. An **alloy of aluminium and nickel** is said to have been deposited in Philadelphia and denominated *alu-ni*, to take the place of the nickel, but it is more costly while presenting no commensurate advantages.

Another group of alloys sometimes prepared includes those of **magnesium and aluminium**, which it is difficult, if not impossible, to deposit alone.

CHAPTER XV.

ELECTRO-METALLURGICAL EXTRACTION AND REFINING PROCESSES.

Preliminary.—As we have already explained in the first chapter, the term *electro-metallurgy* is commonly applied to all classes of work which necessitate the deposition of metals by means of the electric current. Some authorities are disposed to reserve it for those processes by which metals are extracted from the ore with the aid of electricity. It would seem that technically the first and wider definition is admissible, and it is certainly more convenient to group together under one name all the kindred processes of electro-extraction, refining, and plating. The term *electro-metallurgy* may, then, embrace all these, and the different subsections may receive special designations such as electro-typing, electro-plating, electro-smelting, electro-refining, and the like.

In the more restricted sense of the term there are two principal divisions—the extraction of metal from the ore, and the refining of metals already produced, either in this way or by other methods.[1] Only comparatively few ores and metals are thus dealt with at present—of these the principal are copper, gold, silver, nickel, zinc, aluminium, and sodium, whilst, incidentally, gold and silver are extracted from other metals, in which they had previously existed in minute quantities; indeed, one advantage of electrolytic refining is that usually the precious metals are completely and readily recovered by its application.

The laws which govern the electro-deposition of metals in plating or typing are equally applicable in this case, and well repay the closest study; but there are financial questions entering into the problem as here presented which are not so clearly placed before the electro-plater. This is due to the fact that the principal object in plating or typing is to produce a good and reliable deposit, and failing this, all attempts at economy result in extravagance; whereas a slight additional expenditure may repay itself again and again by the enhanced excellence of the

[1] In the short space here available, allusion can only be made to a few typical processes. For a detailed account the reader is referred to *Electric Smelting and Refining*, by Borchers and M'Millan.

work; thus, although there may be great competition, and, therefore, necessity to minimise expenditure, yet the competition is in the same field, and all rivals are working under like conditions. On the other hand, the electro-reduction of ores or refining of metals has to be measured against other purely metallurgical or chemical processes, both as to purity of product and cost of production. And although there may occasionally be a demand for a pure article at any price for certain specific purposes, and although the electrolytic refining is perhaps best fitted to meet this, yet the demand is comparatively small. If, therefore, the field is to be widened so that the electrical system enters into competition with metallurgical methods upon common ground, the greatest attention must be paid to every detail of the work, and every effort must be made to ensure the highest efficiency at the lowest cost. But as the main object in electro-refining is the production of a metal having the maximum purity, it may often be necessary to sacrifice the false economy of saving in the conduct of the process for the true economy of obtaining a pure metal, although at a slightly increased expenditure.

The Electro-Refining of Copper.

The refining of crude metallic copper produced by other processes is one of the chief applications of this branch of the electro-metallurgist's work. The impure metal may contain, in addition to the copper, which is generally present to the extent of 98 to 99·5 per cent., such substances as gold, silver, lead, bismuth, tin, zinc, iron, manganese, nickel, antimony; arsenic, sulphur, and silicious matter or slag in varying proportions; and the problem is, so to remove these that perfectly pure copper is obtained. Less pure copper is also used, and attempts have been made to avoid part of the preliminary refining by working with copper matte as anodes. Thus, at Mansfeld, in Germany, the Gunther process is used, in which the anodes are of 75 per cent. matte. The success of the process appears to depend on the casting of the anodes. The electrolyte is heated to 70° C. and aerated, the pressure is 0·5 to 0·75 volt between electrodes, and the current-density is 30 amperes per square foot. Many experiments have been tried and recorded, both on a small and on a large scale, by such authorities as Sprague, Gramme, Becquerel, Kiliani, Keith, and others, whose observations have borne results of extreme value, in fixing the most suitable conditions under which the copper-baths should be worked. They have been freely quoted in this chapter, more especially those of Kiliani.

Principles.—The universal principle underlying the various processes in use for this purpose may be said to consist in passing a current of electricity, of suitable strength, from an anode of the metal to be refined through a solution of copper sulphate, acidu-

lated with sulphuric acid, and collecting the pure metal upon a convenient cathode; at the same time allowing for the removal of such insoluble impurities as gradually form a slimy sediment upon the bottom of the vat, and guarding against the excessive accumulation of soluble impurities in the liquid itself. It is clear that the precise manner of applying this principle is capable of almost infinite variation; and so it is scarcely a matter for surprise that almost every electro-refinery has its own special method (concerning which in many cases secrecy is most jealously preserved), differing from others either in the current-density or in the disposition of the baths, or in some other matter at first sight trivial, perhaps, but in reality vastly influencing the economical use of the system for good or for evil.

In order to obtain a complete understanding of the process itself, it is desirable that the behaviour of each of the elements likely to occur in the crude copper should be examined both at the anode in relation to the action of the solvent employed, and at the cathode in regard to its tendency to deposit from copper solutions of various degrees of dilution, and with different current-densities.

In accordance with the principle explained in an earlier chapter, given an alloy of all known metals in equal proportions, a suitable electrolyte, and only a weak current to effect the electrolysis, the most electro-positive metal should first dissolve, then the next on the scale, and so on, until at last only the most electro-negative element remains, and this would itself dissolve in turn; or, on the other hand, if all were together in solution, the order would be reversed, and the most electro-negative element would first deposit upon the application of a current. In the copper anode, however, and with the strength of current employed, such a reaction is not likely to occur, because of the comparatively small amount of the total impurities present in it and the still smaller proportion of any one taken singly: there is only the *tendency* to follow in this order of sequence. Actually, there is an attack at first on such molecules of the most electro-positive metals as are upon the surface of the anode, to an extent proportionately greater than on those of copper; but the current-volume is so great, as compared with the amount of these impurities, that the last-named metal also dissolves. In this manner a fresh series of molecules is exposed by the removal of the outermost layer, and these are in turn attacked, the more positive metals in greater proportion than the copper (in relation to their respective percentages) and so forth; thus, there is a tendency to form corrosion-pittings or hollows, due to excessive action locally upon superposed electro-positive molecules; then, as the acid penetrates these, the action presses more and more unevenly into the body of the anode, until, in course of time, the latter becomes deeply honeycombed, or it may be even a mass of sponge, if originally it were very impure.

This sponge consists mainly of copper and of metals more electro-negative than itself, together with any oxidised bodies which may be insoluble in the liquid, the greater proportion of the more electro-positive elements having been removed by solution. This sponge, being very frangible, is constantly becoming broken up to a slight extent by any motion of the liquid, and the detached portions fall to the bottom in the form of mud. When the percentage of impurities in the copper is not excessive, the anode is less readily penetrated by the solution, the action proceeds more evenly, a greater proportion of copper dissolves superficially, and the spongy deposit on the surface consists almost entirely of the bodies which are not oxidisable in the bath, or whose oxides are insoluble in it; and this being very limited in quantity is not coherent, and is more readily detached, forming a mud comparatively poor in copper.

Dealing first with the solution of the anode, copper is a very electro-negative element (see p. 22), and thus nearly every metal, other than the precious metals, *tends* to become oxidised, or to pass into solution, before it.

Behaviour of Individual Impurities.—Zinc, iron, nickel, cobalt and manganese dissolve and remain in the solution, and by taking the place of the equivalent of copper—which should have dissolved in their place had the anode been pure—bring about a gradual impoverishment of the liquid in regard to copper; and ultimately, by continued solution of small quantities, they accumulate to so great an extent as to render the bath unworkable. This relates to the *electrolytic* solution of the anode; but it should be remarked that acid baths tend also to act upon these bodies by *simple solution* (or by *local action*—see p. 39—with the more electro-negative copper) when they are present in any quantity, and thus the acidity is reduced, whilst the weight of metallic substances present is increased, and this is objectionable because neutral baths afford less satisfactory results than do acid solutions. With a neutral liquid, silver must be added to the list of the substances which dissolve in the bath.

Bismuth and antimony in part dissolve in the solution, in part remain upon the anode, and thence pass into the mud as insoluble basic sulphates (salts containing less than the due proportion of acid), but even the portion which dissolves is more or less completely precipitated on standing. Tin behaves similarly, but a greater proportion remains as an insoluble oxide at the anode when the latter is rich in this metal. Arsenic also dissolves at first, but as soon as the liquid is saturated with it the remaining proportions are found in the slime.

Gold, platinum, lead, and, in acid solutions, silver, remain in the anode mud, the two former as undissolved metal, and the latter as lead sulphate, a compound which is quite insoluble in the acid liquid.

Crude copper generally contains a certain percentage of admixed slag, cuprous oxide (*i.e.*, suboxide of copper), and cuprous sulphide; and these, with the usual intensity of current, being but feeble conductors of electricity, pass unchanged into the slime, from which, however, the oxide may gradually be dissolved out in the free acid of the bath by a purely chemical reaction.

Thus, the composition of the mud varies with the nature and quantity of the impurities in the unrefined copper and may embrace gold, platinum, silver, lead sulphate, basic sulphates of bismuth, tin, and antimony, arseniates and antimoniates, slag (chiefly silicate of copper and iron), cuprous oxide and sulphide, and metallic copper.

The solution may contain besides copper, iron, zinc, cadmium, nickel, cobalt, manganese and small proportions of arsenic, tin, and antimony, together with silver if the solution be neutral. It is evident that, so far as regards the refined copper at the cathode, the bodies which remain undissolved at the anode are *ipso facto* removed, as it were, from the sphere of action, and are perfectly eliminated, unless, through bad working, minute fragments obtain access and cling to the cathode surface. The only impurities which can possibly be deposited upon the cathode, and thus contaminate the refined metal under normal working, are those which have become dissolved in the solution, and diffused through it, so that they are actually brought into contact with the surface of the cathode plate. Of these, silver is always precipitated with the copper, together with gold and platinum if, from any unusual cause, either of them be present in the liquid. In neutral solutions, and even in acid solutions, if they be weak in copper, antimony and arsenic are deposited, and thus tend to make the refined metal brittle and unserviceable. The other constituents of the bath, being far more electro-positive, do not precipitate when the electrolytic conditions are satisfactory, and require no consideration, except in so far as they take the place of copper in the solution, and thus reduce the strength of the bath in regard to its principal element.

American refineries now add a small percentage of hydrochloric acid to the electrolyte to guard against loss of silver and to hinder deposition of arsenic and antimony.

In the Montana (U.S.A.) refineries the electrolyte is refined by electrolysing at a high current-density with lead anodes and copper cathodes. By this means, the impurities, chiefly arsenic and antimony, are loosely deposited, being partly retained on the cathode and partly dropping to the bottom of the vat. The electrolyte is then brought up to standard strength and again used. In due time it becomes so far contaminated with iron as to blacken the copper deposits; it is then withdrawn from use, the blue vitriol is crystallised out, and after this is removed the liquor is still further evaporated, when ferrous sulphate crystallises.

Current Regulation.—The source of the current was originally the voltaic battery, but the high price of the zinc was prohibitive, so that the electro-refining or extraction of metals remained merely an interesting laboratory experiment, the practical application of which was beyond the range of economical solution until the invention and multiplication of dynamo-electric machinery introduced the possibility of unlimited electric power at a moderate cost. Now, however, the readiness with which other forces may be converted into electricity renders the electrolytic process a formidable competitor with other methods, especially when natural power is economically applicable, as, for example, in the neighbourhood of some hill torrents or continually running water of any kind, and the loss of energy inseparable from the use of the steam-engine as a motor is thus excluded. The dynamo used is similar to those which are employed for electro-plating, though usually, of course, of considerably higher E.M.F. and of increased size and output (see Chapter III.).

The current-density used in American refineries varies generally from 12 to 35 amperes per sq. ft. (1·3 to 3·8 amperes per square decimetre). In the Eastern States the most usual current-density is 17 to 20 amperes per sq. ft. At Great Falls Refinery (U.S.A.) current-densities are used up to 45 amperes per sq. ft. On the other hand, in Europe the current-density is more usually not higher than 10 amperes per sq. ft., and Titus Ulke mentions that the average of twenty-three European refineries is less than 6 amperes per sq. ft. The disadvantage of low current-density is that a long time is required to turn out a given quantity of copper, and more money is locked up. The electro-motive force or pressure required depends upon the circumstances of the case —the nature of the copper under treatment, the distances between the electrodes, and the number of baths or pairs of plates in series. Thus, two identical sheets of pure copper, opposed to one another, and joined by metallic connection in a homogeneous depositing solution, show no difference of potential; but any variation between them, even in the degree of compression of the metal, though more markedly, of course, in the chemical composition, gives rise to a certain development of electro-motive force; and thus, by producing a current (however feeble), either aids or retards the electrolysing current, according to the direction in which it is flowing. It is obvious that the crude copper anode and the pure refined metal cathode thus set up an electro-motive force between them, which must to a small extent influence the decision as to the pressure that is required from the electric generator. In the second place, an increase in the distance between the electrodes involves also an increase in the resistance of the bath, and demands a corresponding development of current-pressure, in order to overcome it; while, thirdly, the multiplication of the number of baths in series intensifies the interfering

action of the unlike electrodes, and of the varying distances between them.

The Electrodes.—The space most usually allowed between anode and cathode varies from 2 to 2½ ins.; less than this is not advisable, because of the facility with which detached fragments of copper and mud from the anode, or excrescent growths, which are common enough on the cathode—especially when powerful currents are employed—tend to bridge over the space and short-circuit the current (see p. 39), thus entirely stopping the action, while at the same time wasting energy and even perhaps damaging the dynamo. With the inter-electrode distance above recommended, an allowance of 0·2 to 0·3 volt E.M.F. for every pair of electrodes placed in series will be found suitable. These remarks apply to the multiple system; in the series system the distance between electrodes is only about 0·5 to 0·8 in. (see p. 275).

The cathode plates, on which the metal is to be deposited, may be of thin sheet copper, but in this case the surface should be slightly greased and well covered with black lead, to prevent the uniting of the surface with that of the precipitated metal; but it is in many respects better thus to form a plate up to a thickness of $\frac{1}{16}$ of an inch, and then, stripping it from the original sheet, to use it in turn as cathode for the remainder of the process. At the Buffalo (U.S.A.) works the cathode sheets are washed with a dilute solution of iodine in naphtha instead of greasing them. The anode consists usually of a cast slab of the metal to be refined, of convenient size for the bath employed; it may range, for example, from 2 to 2½ ft. in length, from 1 to 2 ft. in width, and from 1 to 2 or 3 ins. in thickness. The distance between the two plates should not be less than 1½ ins., as shown above; any great increase beyond this lessens, it is true, the risk of short-circuiting, but it also lessens the current for a given P.D., and, in consequence, not only adds to the time required for depositing a given weight of metal, but also gives rise to an increased loss of electrical energy, by conversion into useless heat, in the bath, so that the efficiency of the installation is diminished. The distance which best strikes the mean between the two opposing sources of danger may be taken to be 2 ins.; but with high current-densities, with which there is a greater risk of projections forming upon the cathode, or with very impure copper, which yields unduly large volumes of spongy matter, this distance may with advantage be extended to 2½ ins.

The Solution.—The solution employed as electrolyte should contain from 1½ to 2 lbs. crystallised copper sulphate, and from 4 to 10 oz. of sulphuric acid, in each gallon of water. The baths are made after the manner already described, and the fittings of each bath may be conveniently arranged like those in use for electro-plating or electrotyping, all plates in the

same bath being placed in parallel, not in series, so that all the anode plates are in direct connection with the positive lead from the dynamos, and all the cathodes with the negative lead. The series system, however, is also used to a large extent, as described later.

Arrangement of Baths.—To consider the question of the disposition of the baths in series or in parallel. First, in regard to the number of groups in series. Since each group requires a certain expenditure of electro-motive force, which we have taken at 0·3 volt, it is clear that the maximum number of vats which it is convenient to place in series will be found by dividing the electro-motive force of the generator, expressed in volts, by 0·3. Thus, if the generator can give only 6 volts, the highest number of baths permissible in series is $\frac{6}{0{\cdot}3} = 20$. If a larger number were grouped in series, the voltage per group would be less than that recommended, and although metal might be deposited (though much more slowly) to a certain point the further increase of the number of groups placed in tandem fashion would practically stop the current from flowing through them at all. By using a dynamo, giving a higher pressure than 6 volts at the brushes, the number of baths in series may be proportionately increased. In the second place, in regard to the number of cells in parallel in each group, if these be multiplied, the plate surface is increased to a corresponding extent, and, with only a given current available, the proportion of current-strength to superficial electrode-area will be reduced to a point at which the character of the deposit will be greatly deteriorated, and at which the thickness deposited in a given time will be so small that the duration of the process must be abnormally extended. These two factors then—the current-density per unit of electrode surface and the electro-motive force—form the scientific limits to the extension of plant in the directions shown; and within these limits the refiner must be guided by the considerations of time, space, and capital under which he is called upon to work.

Particulars are often published of copper refineries, but they must be accepted with caution, as great secrecy is maintained, and such details are generally out of date, if not actually misleading. The following particulars of the working of the American Smelting and Refining Company's works at Maurer, where the daily output is 160 tons, are given by J. N. Pring,[1] and are typical of copper refining as carried on in the United States. The crude blister copper contains about 96 per cent. of copper. This is melted down, partially refined, and cast into anodes by means of a machine which carries a number of moulds on a wheel; this is rotated so as to bring each mould in turn into the required position for

[1] *Some Electro-chemical Centres.*

casting. The anodes so cast, which are 3 ft. high, 2 ft. wide, and $1\frac{1}{4}$ ins. thick, weighing 275 lbs., are rapidly cooled by water and removed. The cathode-starting sheets are formed electrolytically by depositing copper on a plate with an oxidised surface and then stripping it off. Each vat is 10 ft. long, 3 ft. deep, and 2 ft. 6 ins. wide, and contains 22 anodes and 23 cathodes. The electrolyte contains 16 per cent. of copper sulphate and 6 per cent. of sulphuric acid. The slime contains about 15 per cent. of metallic copper, 45 per cent. of silver, and 5 per cent. of gold, from which, after suitable treatment, doré bars are obtained, and the silver and gold in this are parted by the Moebius process.

Loss of Electrical Energy due to Resistance.—Although the electrical connections are always very large so as to minimise loss due to resistance of the conductors as far as possible, the loss due to this cause is nevertheless a large proportion of the total energy used. B. Magnus has published the following results of measurements at a copper refinery in which the current was 4000 amperes, the pressure per tank was 0·230 volt, and the current-density 11 amperes per square foot:—

	Volts.
Drop between anode rod and 'bus bar	0·0270
,, ,, cathode rod and 'bus bar . . .	0·0135
,, ,, anode rod and and anode hanger . .	0·0060
,, ,, cathode rod and cathode hanger . .	0·0045
,, ,, anode hook and anode	0·0008
Total losses . .	0·0518

Thus the total losses amounted to 22·5 per cent. of the pressure across each tank.

Modern Systems of Refining.—The processes at present in use are sometimes divided into two groups, known respectively as the *Multiple* and *Series* systems. In the former, all the anodes in any one tank are hung in parallel, that is, in connection with the same anode rod; whilst in the latter the first anode in any one bath is connected to the positive lead or conductor from the dynamo, and the last cathode is connected to the negative lead, the intermediate plates being suspended in the solution independent of electrical connections. Thus every plate, except the two outside electrodes, acts both as anode and cathode—as cathode on the side facing the positive end of the bath, and as anode on the other side; so, while the impure copper is dissolving from the plate on one face, a deposit of pure copper is gradually being built up on the reverse side, until at length the whole of the copper originally in the plate, with the more electro-positive metals present in it, have passed into the solution, and the insoluble impurities have been washed off the surface into the bath. By this time the plate of refined copper built up in its place will be nearly as thick as

the original plate (not quite as thick, owing to the fact that impurities have passed electrolytically into the bath with the copper and are not re-deposited); the electrolysis must then be stopped, because, if continued, the refined copper itself would dissolve and cause a needless waste of current. Several modifications of the series system have been introduced by Haydn, Smith, Stalmann and others; but great care is required in working most of them, as irregular solution of the anodes gives more trouble than in the other system, and there is risk in some of them of a waste of power by re-solution of the refined copper. Besides having more trouble with the cathodes in maintaining their quality, it is also impossible to use lead-lined tanks in the series system. Many more contacts are required in the multiple system, and thus the energy used is about one-half more than in the series system. Also in the series system less copper is locked up in the process, the distance between electrodes may be reduced to 0·5 to 0·8 in. as compared with 2 to 2½ ins., and the volume of the electrolyte used is only about one-fourth that in the multiple system. Large refineries are run on both systems, but the multiple system is more commonly used.

One of the chief necessities in copper-refining is the thorough circulation of the solution through the vats, so that the baths may be homogeneous, and the free acid evenly distributed. This is usually accomplished by arranging each series of baths on an inclined surface, so that a gentle but constant stream of the electrolyte solution is run from a cistern into the vat at the highest level, and, after passing through this vat, leaves it by a pipe, connecting the bottom of the vat with the top of the next, and so on through the series, the liquor drawn from the bottom of one tank being always delivered into the top of the next, and that from the last of the series being pumped up again to the reservoir. In the Siemens-Halske tanks the solution is caused to flow from the cistern to a pipe running along the whole row of vats (on a level floor), and through this to a cross pipe communicating with a number of small perforated pipes placed parallel in each bath. Each tank has a leaden tray forming a loosely-fitting false bottom just above the actual bottom, and beneath this is a horizontal pipe leading into a vertical siphon pipe in one corner of the vat. The solution passes freely around the margin of the false bottom into the space beneath, and is thence removed by the siphon and delivered into a channel running the whole length of the vats, and discharging into a well from which the liquor may be pumped to the reservoir for further use, or, when necessary, to the purifiers. Borchers and Schneider and Szontagh have employed methods which, at least in part, render such circulation unnecessary. The vertical pipe connected with that lying horizontally beneath the false bottom terminates a little above the level of the solution in the vat, and within it is a narrow tube extending from the top half-way to the

bottom. Air is constantly blown through the inner tube by means of a fan, and the air bubbling up through the liquid in the outer tube displaces some of it, and causes it to overflow into the vat; thus so long as air is blown in, liquor is transferred from the bottom to the top of each vat. At the same time, the air has to some extent a purifying action on the bath.

Other systems are now being introduced, in which a more rapid circulation is adopted, and in one of these the electrolyte is pumped with some force on to the surface of a revolving drum-shaped cathode through a series of nozzles placed close together. In addition to ensuring the thorough circulation of the electrolyte, such a system as this allows of a greatly increased current-density for reasons which are elsewhere explained. As an off-set against the extra cost of working such a process, therefore, there is to be placed the gain in point of time, and the saving in space and plant necessary for the production of a given output.

Precautions.—In working this process the usual attention must be paid to perfect cleanliness throughout. All connections and all cathode surfaces (unless the deposit is to be detached afterwards) must be clean initially; the mud should be frequently removed, since it becomes slowly attacked by the acid liquor of the bath and thus gives rise to an alteration in the composition of the latter, and also because the adhesion of the mud particles to the cathode tends to re-introduce into the refined metal impurities which, by acting as nuclei, lead to an increased unevenness and irregularity of surface. But as the slime contains practically the whole of the precious metals originally present in the copper, it must be preserved, so that they may be subsequently extracted, for this recovery of gold and silver may form no inconsiderable source of profit. By the gradual accumulation of impurities in the liquid, the percentage of copper is greatly reduced. This should be rectified by partially evaporating the solution, and collecting the crystals of iron sulphate which separate out, and which constitute the chief foreign matter introduced during the process. The residual liquid, still containing iron, however, but in reduced proportion, may be diluted sufficiently, and mixed with a fresh quantity of copper sulphate, and is then ready for further use. The copper may be deposited in thick or in thin sheets, but conveniently about $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch in thickness, which may require from two to four weeks to produce; it should be almost absolutely pure, and may be sent into the market as electro-deposited plate, or it may be remelted and poured into ingots of the ordinary size and shape. It should be finely crystalline, with clear close grain, solid and free from pin-holes or blisters in the sheet form, and as such is the purest copper known commercially.

The Electrolytic Extraction of Copper from Ores and Products.

Progress.—The first step in the direction of electro-extraction was, no doubt, the discovery alluded to in the first chapter of this treatise, that metallic iron dipped into liquors containing copper became covered with a deposit of the latter metal—a reaction known, but misunderstood, even in the fourth or fifth centuries of the Christian era, and applied in the fifteenth century to the extraction of copper from the cement water at Schmöllnitz in Hungary. This precipitation by a system of 'simple immersion' is still very largely used in the treatment of many thousands of tons of copper ore annually, and is especially applicable to the recovery of the small proportion of this metal (2 to 4 per cent.) present in the burnt Spanish pyrites, which has been used and discarded by the vitriol maker.

The next step was that taken in 1846 by Dechaud and Gaultier, who mixed crude copper oxide (either the natural ore or a roasted sulphide) with sulphate of iron, and strongly heated the two in an air-current until the copper had become converted into sulphate at the expense of the iron salt, which thus became changed to peroxide. After cooling, the burnt charge, on treating with water, or *leaching*, gave up its copper sulphate into the solution, which was then ready for precipitation with iron. Instead, however, of merely inserting scrap-iron, which deposited the copper in a spongy condition, and left it commingled with all other metals which iron was capable of precipitating by simple immersion, and with all the carbon and other impurities contained in the iron itself, plates of the last-named metal were placed in the solution, parallel with copper plates, and joined to them externally by copper wires, but separated from them in the liquid by cotton cloth, to prevent the contamination of the copper by impurities from the precipitating element. Thus the iron dissolved, and, producing a current of electricity, caused the deposition of the copper to take place upon the copper plates (or upon the lead plates which were sometimes substituted for the latter). To compensate for the gradual exhaustion of the liquors, in regard to copper, a continuous gentle flow of saturated extract from the roasted product was introduced into the bottom of the bath, while simultaneously the decopperised liquid, rich in ferrous sulphate, was removed from above.

So also in 1867, Patera treated the Schmöllnitz cement liquors by immersing in the copper fluid porous clay cells, containing fragments of iron in a strong solution of sodium chloride, and connecting this metal with pieces of coke immersed in the cement water; here, too, a 'single-cell' arrangement resulted, and the solution of the iron in the porous vessels caused the deposition of the copper upon the coke fragments without.

Later still, the copper liquors obtained from an ore by any treatment such as that above alluded to, or by attacking oxidised copper products with sulphuric acid, have been treated with the aid of dynamo-electric machinery.

Yet another method of procedure has been employed. A regulus of copper (that is, an impure cuprous sulphide) is obtained in the usual way by smelting sulphide ores in the furnace; and this regulus is cast into slabs, which are then used at once as anodes, in a solution of copper sulphate, a powerful dynamo-current being employed to effect the electrolysis. The compound becomes broken up, the copper of the copper sulphide is oxidised and dissolved, and the sulphur, which is separated and remains practically unaltered, even in presence of the nascent oxygen at the anode, together with the precious metals, and all the other bodies that were mentioned on p. 271 as being left in the slime during refining, remain undissolved at the anode, which is usually enclosed in a bag of porous material, so that the pulverulent deposit may not become mixed with the solution and the deposited copper.

The Processes Available.—Thus the general methods may be classified as those in which (1) the ore is treated by ordinary furnace processes with the object of rendering certain constituents (chiefly copper) soluble, and these are extracted electrolytically from their solution in water by processes of simple immersion, single cell, or separate current with insoluble anode; (2) the ore is simply melted, or is partly refined, and then run into slabs, which are used as anodes in a bath of a suitable copper salt with a separate current for electrolysis.

By the first method any copper ore may be successfully treated, provided that due attention be paid to metallurgical details in the roasting, into which it would be out of place to enter here. The second is applicable to native copper ores, such as those of the Lake Superior district, which are already in the metallic state, and therefore need refining only, and to sulphide ores, or to those in which the copper may be converted metallurgically into regulus or sulphide.

Becquerel in 1836 made a series of experiments on the treatment of complex ores containing copper, lead, silver, and iron, by converting them into chlorides or sulphates, and subsequently electrolysing these solutions; but although they were successful enough in their result, the high cost of producing electrical energy at that time proved an insuperable bar to their commercial adaptation.

In 1871 Elkington dealt with copper mattes and solutions with the aid of dynamo- or magneto-electric machinery, and thus placed the process at once upon a practical footing. Cobley in 1880 electrolysed copper solutions obtained by lixiviating roasted copper ores with water or sulphuric acid, obtaining, if

possible, a solution containing 18 per cent. of copper salt and 1 per cent. of free acid. A year later Deligny described experiments in which he had successfully used sulphide ores of copper packed around carbon rods as anodes in a weak solution of copper sulphate, with a copper cathode, and with two Bunsen-cells as the source of current. In carrying out this process he took advantage of the comparatively high electrical conductivity of many natural sulphides, such as those of copper, iron, lead, silver, etc., conductivity being quite essential to the success of the process in order that the current may be transmitted through the anode at all. It may be noted that most oxide ores and oxidised compounds, and the sulphides of zinc and antimony, are bad conductors, and are, therefore, unsuited to such treatment.

In 1882, Blas and Miest elaborated a process intended to deal with many complex ores, but especially with those containing copper. First, in order to ensure better conductivity than may be obtained with a loose powder, the crushed mineral is moulded into cakes at a pressure of about 40 atmospheres (600 lbs. per square inch), and is heated to a temperature of from 950° to 1100° F., bad conductors being formed into slabs of greater thickness than those which exhibit a superior conductivity, in order that a greater area may be allowed for the passage of the current. The plates are then used as conductors in a suitable solution—copper sulphate for copper ores, lead nitrate for lead ores, and so forth—when the metals soluble in the electrolyte are gradually removed under the action of the current, and certain of them are deposited upon a sheet metal cathode. The whole of the sulphur remains with the gangue or earthy matter, and other insoluble constituents of the anode; and these, after a time, being weakened by the honeycombing process of solution, tend to fall to the bottom of the bath; it is well, therefore, to remove and re-agglomerate them from time to time before this can take place. The cathode-metals are finally electro-refined, while the spent anodes containing the sulphur in a recoverable form, are treated accordingly. In this process, and in that of Marchese, proposed a year later, the number of soluble constituents, and principally the amount of iron, which are constantly passing into the solution and thus altering its composition, militate greatly against the economical success of the treatment.

The two chief processes at present available are the Siemens and Halske process and the Hoepfner process, but neither of them appears to have made much progress during the last few years. In the Siemens and Halske process the ore is roasted, finely powdered, and then leached with a solution of ferric sulphate containing free sulphuric acid. Copper is thus taken up as sulphate, the ferric sulphate being reduced to ferrous sulphate. The resulting solution is treated in a diaphragm cell, passing first through the cathode compartment where the copper is deposited,

and then through the anode compartment where the ferrous sulphate is re-oxidised to ferric sulphate to be used once more for leaching ore. In the Hoepfner process the ore is crushed and then leached with a solution of cupric chloride containing calcium chloride or sodium chloride. The cupric chloride reacts with the sulphide of the ore, copper is taken up, changing the cupric chloride into cuprous chloride, which keeps in solution on account of the calcium chloride. The resulting solution is passed through a diaphragm cell, one portion going to the cathode and the other to the anode; from the part going to the cathode the copper is deposited, whilst in the part going to the anode the cuprous chloride becomes cupric chloride, and thus when these two portions reunite after the electrolytic treatment, we have cupric chloride and calcium chloride as at first, so that the process can be repeated. One advantage claimed for the process is that a cuprous salt is used instead of a cupric salt for the electrolysis, and therefore, theoretically, the amount of copper deposited by a given quantity of electricity should be double that in the usual process of copper refining.

A consideration of the subject shows that it is questionable whether the use of raw ores as anodes can compete with a mixed process of preparing a less impure compound — for example, blister copper—by metallurgical or furnace methods, and then refining this product by electrolytic means. Up to the present time most of the processes in which sulphide ores, or mattes smelted from them, have been used as anodes have not been commercially successful. In some instances such processes have given good results for a short time, and have then, as the copper was extracted from the anodes, required more and more current, and have at last been abandoned as being too costly. Other processes, using a porous diaphragm, and different solutions at anode and cathode, have been more successful, but the difficulty still is to find a material for the diaphragm which would be durable.

The Electrolytic Refining and Extraction of Lead.

Base Bullion.—The principal lead product which offers itself for electrolytic treatment is that known as *base bullion*, in which the lead usually exists to the amount of 90 per cent. or more, and is accompanied by varying proportions of silver and gold with antimony, arsenic, zinc, copper, iron, tin, etc., the main object being the recovery of the precious metals, together with the production of a good soft lead, free from antimony and arsenic. This problem was taken in hand by Keith; difficulties were encountered at the outset in the selection of an electrolyte which, while dissolving the lead, should not at the same time dissolve silver, as lead nitrate tends to do, nor encourage the formation of crystalline growths of spongy character resembling the 'lead tree,'

which may form a metallic bridge between the electrodes as lead acetate would do; the simple sulphuric acid solution is useless, because lead sulphate is practically insoluble in it, and there is also a tendency to form lead peroxide upon the anode, which is still less soluble than the sulphate in this menstruum. A solution of lead sulphate in sodium acetate is found, however, to satisfy the requirements of the process.

The bullion is fused and run into thin plates (about $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch thick), which are enclosed in muslin bags and immersed as anodes in a solution of $1\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of sodium acetate and $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 oz. of lead sulphate in every gallon of water. The solution must not be allowed to become alkaline, or the anode will be covered with a film of lead peroxide, which will protect it from further action; it should be gently agitated to ensure thorough admixture and to guard against polarisation due to unequal distribution of lead, and it may with advantage be heated to about 100° F. with the same object in view.

By the application of 0·016 ampere per square inch (= 0·25 ampere per square decimetre, or 2·3 amperes per square foot), the greater proportion of the lead will be gradually transferred to the cathode plate, where, however, it may be mixed with mere traces of silver, copper, tin, antimony, and zinc, and a somewhat larger proportion of the total bismuth present in the bullion. The percentage of lead, however, in the refined metal should exceed 99·99 per cent. indicating a total impurity of less than 0·01 per cent. The remaining substances are usually found in the anode bag, often in the form of a spongy mass retaining the shape of the original anode. After drying this sponge, it is fused with nitre and poured into a small ingot-mould, by which means the silver and gold are obtained in the form of a button of alloy, the other constituents having passed into the slag, from which they may be more or less readily recovered. The lead frequently crumbles into the solution from the cathode plate, but is readily collected and fused; the use of a containing bag for the anode prevents any of the slime becoming mixed with the detached lead in the bath. A modification of the process has been suggested by Keith, by which the bullion is first melted with 2 per cent. of zinc, as in Parkes' process for desilverising the metal, and then electrolysing only the zinc skimmings, which may contain about 20 per cent. of the lead originally used, with practically the whole of the precious metal; thus, the period of time necessary for electrolysis is considerably lessened. Keith's process appears to be no longer in use.

Borchers also has a process for the refining of lead by the electrolysis of *fused* lead in a bath of fused sodium and potassium chlorides.

In the Betts process, in operation at Trail, in British Columbia, an aqueous solution of lead fluosilicide ($PbSiF_6$) with 8 per cent.

of lead and 11 per cent. of free hydrofluoric acid is used as the electrolyte. This is prepared by diluting hydrofluoric acid with water and saturating it with powdered quartz. The base bullion is cast into anodes; the cathodes are made of sheet steel which is first coated with copper and then with lead, the latter being painted with a benzine solution of paraffin. The current-density is 14 amperes per square foot of cathode. Gelatine or glue is added to the electrolyte to render the deposit solid and to prevent the formation of 'lead trees' which would otherwise cause short circuits. During electrolysis the lead is transferred, and if tin, iron, zinc, nickel, and cobalt are present they also go into solution. Any gold, silver, copper, antimony, arsenic, and bismuth remain in the anode mud. Since tin is deposited under almost the same conditions as lead, it must be removed previous to electrolysis. Apparently iron remains chiefly in the anode mud, which is worked up to recover the gold and silver on similar lines to those adopted in copper refining. The Betts process is also in use at Newcastle, where it is said to be more economical than the Parkes process for rich bullion, but if the bullion is poor the reverse holds good.

Electrolytic reduction of galena has been carried on at Niagara Falls. This is effected by placing the finely crushed galena in sulphuric acid contained in hard lead conical pans. These pans are placed one above another, so that the bottom of each pan dips into the sulphuric acid contained in the one below. The bottom of each pan forms an anode, and the galena below it the corresponding cathode, all the pans being thus in series. Upon passing a current, hydrogen is liberated at the cathodes, reducing the galena to spongy lead and forming sulphuretted hydrogen which is evolved.

This appears to be the only electrical process worth consideration for the electrolytic extraction of lead from its ores, and whether this will come into general use is doubtful. It must be remembered that lead, in contradistinction to copper, is treated without much difficulty by ordinary metallurgical methods, and therefore there is not the same opening for an electrolytic process. The position in refining is similar. Commercial lead, as obtained by the usual metallurgical methods, is very pure, and there is not the same need for an electrolytic refining process to recover the precious metals as there is in copper refining.

The Electrolytic Extraction and Refining of Gold.

Generally speaking, gold does not occur in what may be termed a mechanically free state, but embedded as small particles in quartz. By crushing the quartz to a fine powder, and treating it with a suitable solvent, the gold can be removed in solution. In Siemens and Halske's process, which is used extensively and

which is the only electrolytic process that need be taken seriously into account, a dilute solution of potassium cyanide is employed as the solvent. Electrolysis does not enter into the process of solution; in fact, the bulk of ore that has to be treated is so large in comparison with the gold that any electrolytic solvent action is impracticable. Thus electrolysis is merely concerned with the deposition of gold from the leaching solution. When so much of the gold has been deposited as to render further electrolysis unprofitable the solution is again used for leaching to bring up its strength as regards the gold, after which it is electrolysed once more, and so on. The anodes are of iron enclosed in linen bags to retain the Prussian blue that is formed, and the cathodes are of sheet lead, the gold being removed from these finally by cupellation. The advantage of the electrolytic process is that weaker solutions can be treated at a profit, and therefore lower grade ores can be handled, than by purely chemical methods.

The Greenawalt process, in which the ore is treated with chlorine and bromine in solution, and the resulting chlorides subsequently electrolysed, is in use in Colorado.

In the Butters plant in Mexico and Nevada, peroxidised lead plates are used as anodes and tin plates for cathodes, the advantage of this being that the deposit is in the form of a mud which falls to the bottom of the vat.

Electrolytic refining of gold is generally carried out on Wohlwill's method, in which gold chloride acidulated with hydrochloric acid is used as the electrolyte; this is heated to 50°–55° C., and a high current-density, such as 140 amperes per square foot, is employed. Under these circumstances the impure gold anodes are dissolved, the gold passes into solution and is deposited on the cathode, whereas any silver is precipitated as chloride. This method, therefore, forms a convenient 'parting' process. The other usual impurities are either not deposited on the cathode, or collect in the slime, and thus the resulting deposited gold is very pure. This process is in use at the U.S.A. Mint.

The Electrolytic Refining of Silver.

The Moebius Process.—It is only necessary in this short sketch to refer to the Moebius process in its later development. The problem is to refine bar containing perhaps 90 per cent., or more, of silver, with, it may be, ½ or 1 per cent. of gold, and some copper. The electrolyte used is a 0·13 per cent. solution of silver nitrate, containing about 0·1 per cent. of free nitric acid, in which the silver and copper dissolve, whilst the gold is left insoluble; so long as there is sufficient silver and free nitric acid in the bath there is no fear of any appreciable amount of copper being deposited with the silver at the cathode, so that the insoluble gold may be collected on filters and melted, whilst the silver is

recovered at the cathode, and the copper gradually accumulates in the solution until it is present in undesirable quantities, when the liquid is withdrawn and treated to recover both the copper and the residual silver contained in it.

Fig. 93 represents a sectional view of one form of the plant. A is the tank, about 14 feet long, containing the electrolyte; the anodes G are held horizontally at the top of the liquid in trays E, of which the bottoms are of porous material, such as a closely woven filter cloth, connection with the positive leads being made by the copper conductor K, and the rotatable bent copper rod M, which may be pressed into contact with the anode plates. The ends of the copper rods M immersed in the liquid are tipped with platinum, and the joint between the metals, and the copper above it up to a point considerably above the level of the solution, are protected with a caoutchouc sleeve to prevent the nitric acid dissolving the copper rod. The cathode consists of an endless band

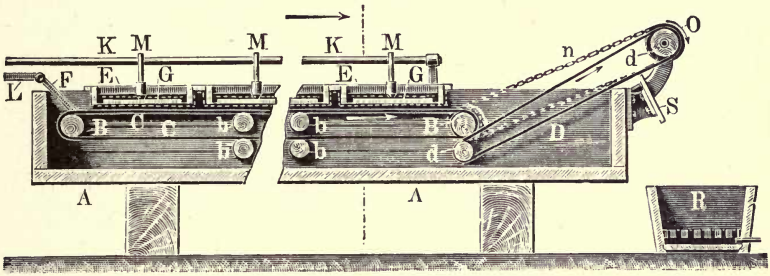


FIG. 93.—Sectional view of the plant.

of sheet-silver, C, $\frac{1}{32}$ in. in thickness, which is caused to revolve continuously in the direction indicated by the white arrow over the rollers B, *b*, at the rate of about 3 ft. per minute, connection with the negative conductor being made by the brush L. The current-density employed may be higher at first, when little or no copper is present in the electrolyte, than it is later, when there would be danger of copper being co-precipitated; it may be about 30 amperes per sq. ft. (0·2 ampere per sq. in.), but often has to be reduced to half this amount after the operation has been in progress for some time. The E.M.F. is about $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 volts. With the relatively high current-density used, the rapidity of electrolysis is considerable, so that the amount of costly material lying idle in anode and cathode is relatively small. But the silver is deposited in the form of a crystalline powder instead of in a coherent film. A special method of treatment is therefore used: the silver belt moving over the right-hand roller B comes in contact with the ascending belt *d*, which detaches the crystals from the surface and carries them forward out of the solution and over the roller O, where a part falls by gravity into the receptacle

R; any crystals still clinging to the belt are removed by the scraper S, and thence fall into the same vessel. The gradual accumulation of copper in the solution causes the neutralisation of a portion of the nitric acid, inasmuch as the copper nitrate is not electrolysed and so broken up again as the silver nitrate is; it is therefore necessary to add nitric acid from time to time. To ensure the non-adhesion of the deposited silver to the cathode, the surface of the belt is well black-leaded from time to time.

At Perth Amboy (U.S.A.), difficulty was experienced owing to the crystals adhering to the silver band. G. Nebel overcame the difficulty by using oil.

In the U.S.A. Mint, where the Moebius process is in use, the anodes contain 3 parts of gold and 7 of silver; the solution contains 3 per cent. of silver nitrate and 1·5 of nitric acid. The current-density is considerably lower than that mentioned above, being 0·05 ampere per sq. in. Dr Tuttle, the refiner of the Mint, has introduced the improvement of adding gelatine to the electrolyte. This has the effect of making the silver crystals adherent so that they may be taken out with the cathodes.

In the Balbach refinery (U.S.A.) the vat is different. The bullion to be refined is contained in a cloth case supported on a wooden frame which is suspended over the tank, and the cathode is made of graphite slabs.

The Electrolytic Extraction of Zinc.

Methods Available.—The principal ores of zinc are blende (sulphide) and calamine (carbonate). The methods proposed for dealing with them either require a preliminary roasting in the case of blende, to obtain the zinc in a soluble form, or they use the ore itself as anode.

Luckow adopted the latter method, and enclosed the ore, mixed with coke, in open chests, which were used as anodes in an electrolyte of a somewhat strong and acid solution of common salt or of zinc chloride (20 to 30 per cent. of zinc), with a similar case filled with coke, or else a zinc plate, as cathode. These were held in large rectangular troughs of wood or stoneware, while beneath the cathode case was a wooden vessel covered with webbing or basket-work, to retain the zinc which becomes detached during the deposition. The process had to be well watched so that no short-circuiting should result from the formation of arborescent growths from the cathode, that the scum forming upon the surface might be frequently removed, and that the bath did not become acid, especially if the sulphate was employed instead of the chloride. A current of somewhat high electro-motive force was necessary.

Lambotte and Doucet chose the first alternative, and formed a neutral solution of zinc chloride by treating the roasted ore with crude hydrochloric acid, and freeing it from iron by the addition of chloride of lime and zinc oxide, which effected the precipitation of the latter as insoluble peroxide; were the iron, which is universally present in zinc ores, allowed to remain in the solution, it would be deposited with the zinc—a result to be carefully avoided. The electrolysis was conducted between insoluble (carbon) anodes and zinc cathodes.

Létrange first roasted sulphides (blendes) carefully at a low temperature—a very low red heat—so that as much of the sulphide as possible should form soluble zinc sulphate, for this, at a high temperature, would be completely decomposed into insoluble zinc oxide, oxygen, and sulphur dioxide, the last two passing away in the gaseous form. This sulphate was extracted with water, and, being neutral, formed the electrolytic solution. The residual zinc oxide, left after lixiviation, he proposed to place in a moist condition with other oxide, in towers through which passed the waste gases from the roasting furnace, so that sulphur dioxide formed during the calcination of a fresh batch of ore might be absorbed by the zinc oxide which it would convert into zinc sulphite, and this salt, itself soluble, and, therefore, capable of electrolysis, was to be gradually converted into sulphate by absorption of oxygen from the air.

The zinc solution was electrolysed between lead anodes, which are insoluble, and zinc cathodes. The solution was thus gradually deprived of zinc, and also became richer in acid, because, as the zinc sulphate was decomposed, the metal was deposited and the acid left free in the solution. But as zinc is not precipitable electrolytically from acid solutions, a point was soon reached at which action ceased; the solution partially spent, but still carrying much zinc, was, therefore, caused to flow over fresh zinc oxide (roasted blende or calamine), so that it might take up a further quantity of metal which, at the same time, neutralised the free acid; it was then ready to be passed once more through the electrolytic tanks. This cycle of operations was constantly maintained, so that the same acid was used again and again, until it had accumulated so large a proportion of foreign matter that the solutions were useless. The current to be employed must have a high electro-motive force, because, when the lead becomes peroxidised at the surface, which occurs almost immediately, the opposing electro-motive force set up between the surface covering and the zinc cathode is very considerable.

Some of the difficulties inherent in the deposition of zinc have already been described (see p. 244). But those attending the production of pure solutions of zinc from the ore at a moderate cost, for the purpose of electrolysis, are equally great.

Many other processes have been proposed and tried, but

the problem of electrolytic zinc extraction is a troublesome one. Electrolytic zinc is, however, upon the market, and it would appear that the difficulties which wrecked the earlier processes are in a fair way to being overcome.

The most successful process appears to be that due to Hoepfner, as worked by Brunner, Mond & Co. The roasted zinc ore is treated with a solution of calcium chloride and carbon dioxide; this gives a precipitate of calcium carbonate and a solution of zinc chloride. From this solution the zinc is deposited electrolytically, and the chlorine, which is obtained at the same time, is used in the alkali works.

One of the most recent processes for dealing with sulphide ores is that of Swinburne and Ashcroft, in which the crushed ore is mixed with fused zinc chloride, the mixture being heated in a converter and chlorine blown through it. The chlorine displaces the sulphur, which is given off in the free state, and the metals, which were previously in the form of sulphides, are converted into chlorides. The fused chlorides are run off and treated with zinc to precipitate lead, gold, and silver; or the silver can be extracted by agitating with metallic lead, giving base bullion. The zinc may be precipitated by fractional electrolysis of the fused chlorides, the chlorine being collected for further use. This ingenious process has been worked on a large experimental scale, but so far it has not come into commercial use.

Another process for sulphide ores is that due to Siemens and Halske, in which the ore is roasted to convert the sulphides into oxides and sulphates. The ore is then treated with dilute sulphuric acid, and the resulting solution after purification is electrolysed to deposit the zinc. Any silver is left in the ore, which requires further treatment for its recovery.

Both zinc and iron ores are now treated somewhat extensively in the United States by electromagnetic and electrostatic methods so as to concentrate them for further treatment. The former method is used for dealing with magnetic ores, such particles as can be magnetised being attracted by electromagnets and thus separated from the remainder. In the electrostatic method, which is applicable to non-magnetic ores, the powdered ore is passed over a metal plate, or roller, which is highly electrified (at, say, 350,000 volts); the conducting particles become electrified and are repelled from the plate, whereas the non-conducting particles (such as quartz, silicates, etc.) merely glide over the surface.

It may be said that there is a distinct opening for the electrolytic extraction of zinc from its ores; but the refining of zinc, apart from its extraction, is accomplished so easily by ordinary metallurgical methods that there is not much scope for an electrolytic method.

The Electro-Reduction of Antimony.

Borchers in 1887 appears to have obtained favourable results from the electrolysis of a solution of antimony sulphide in sodium sulphide. The sodium compound may contain polysulphides, but should be added in such a proportion that there is only one equivalent of sulphur present in any form to each equivalent of sodium, as it is found that any increase in the amount of sodium produces a less conductive fluid, while on the other hand a reduction is attended by the precipitation of sulphur. The ore, or product containing antimony tersulphide, is treated with a solution of sodium sulphide in water, until the liquid has a density equal to 12° Baumé; it is then electrolysed in iron tanks, the walls of which serve as cathodes to receive the deposited metal; leaden anodes, being insoluble, are to be preferred. A current-pressure of 2 to 2½ volts per vat is recommended.

The antimony is deposited in the pulverulent condition, or in the form of shining scales; any portion clinging to the iron tank-walls is readily removed by steel brushes, and the whole is washed free from admixed solution, first with water containing a small quantity of sodium sulphide and ammonia or caustic soda, then several times with water, next with very dilute hydrochloric acid, and, finally, with water again, after which it is dried and fused together under glass of antimony.

This process, like most others of the kind, has to compete with a fairly economical extraction method by the dry way; and as a fusion is, after all, necessary to unite together the powdered deposit, it is a question whether it could compete with the older processes, unless a very cheap supply of electrical energy be available. Indeed there is not much opening for electrolysis in either the refining or winning of antimony.

Antimony has been produced commercially from the ore by Messrs Siemens & Halske, who treat the sulphide ore with a solution of sodium sulphide. This dissolves out the antimony sulphide, and the solution is then electrolysed in the cathode compartment of a diaphragm cell, the antimony being deposited on iron cathodes. The anode compartment contains a solution of sodium chloride.

The Electrolytic Extraction and Refining of Iron.

Very little has been done in electrolytic extraction or refining of iron. In 1908, however, Sherard Cowper-Coles described a process by which he had obtained iron plates and tubes by one operation from crude iron, or even from iron ore. The electrolyte employed consists of a 20 per cent. solution of sulpho-crysilic acid saturated with iron, to which is sometimes added a little carbon bisulphide. This solution is kept charged with iron oxide, which is maintained in suspension by stirring, and the electrolyte so

charged has a specific gravity of about 1·32. If the ore is being treated, it is leached with the acid solution, and the leaching is assisted electrically by a current of low current-density. In this case graphite anodes are used, but if iron is being refined the iron itself is used as the anode. The temperature should be 70° C., and a current density of 100 amperes per sq. ft. may be used. By this means iron is obtained containing only about 0·05 per cent. of carbon and small quantities of other impurities. Owing to the large amount of hydrogen generally present in electrolytic iron, the iron so obtained must be annealed to remove the brittleness, unless the soft variety is produced (by adjusting the E.M.F.). As far as the author is aware, the process is not yet in commercial use.

Recovery of Tin from Tin Scrap.

As already explained, what is popularly termed 'tin' is generally sheet-iron with a coating of tin upon it. During recent years an industry has sprung up, having for its object the recovery of tin from tin-scrap and from disused tins of all kinds. In Germany and the United States many thousands of tons of such scrap are treated annually, the tin being recovered electrolytically. The scrap is made the anode in a solution of caustic soda with iron cathodes; by this means the tin is dissolved as sodium stannate and can be deposited at the cathode in a spongy state without fear of contamination by iron. In some processes a solution of stannic chloride is used as the electrolyte. In the Brown-Neil process ferric chloride is used; this acts without the aid of electrolysis, current being used merely for the recovery of tin from the solution.

Although a very considerable industry has sprung up on these lines, certain difficulties are encountered. The caustic soda absorbs carbonic acid from the atmosphere, and the tin dissolves more rapidly than it is deposited, so that the solution becomes unworkable unless caustic soda is added at intervals. There is also a considerable loss of electrolyte when the scrap is removed from the vats, and this cannot be avoided simply by washing with water, because this causes a precipitate.

The electrolytic process is now being supplanted largely by a purely chemical method, chlorine being used to remove the tin. For this purpose the tin scrap is carefully dried, and freed from any organic substances, and is then treated with dry chlorine under a pressure of several atmospheres. So long as the chlorine is dry, the iron is not attacked, but the tin is converted into tetrachloride, which is a heavy, fuming liquid.

Electro-Smelting.

Siemens' Electric Furnace.—A process which is in no degree dependent upon electrolysis, but purely upon the reducing action

of carbon at excessively high temperatures, was introduced by the two brothers E. H. and A. H. Cowles. Before dealing with this, however, reference should be made to the Siemens electrical furnace, with which a number of experiments were made (and recorded in 1882 in a paper before the British Association) by the inventor, conjointly with Professor Huntington, in the Metallurgical Department of King's College, London. This furnace of Sir William Siemens was the first embodiment of the principle subsequently adopted in modified form by Cowles.

The furnace depends for its power upon the intense heat of the electric arc. A crucible is bored at the bottom to receive a tightly-fitting stout carbon rod (fig. 94), such as is used in large electric arc-light projectors. This forms the positive pole and is connected with a wire which passes from the dynamo or other generator. The negative pole consists of a similar carbon rod, connected with the negative brush of the dynamo, and is suspended from above, centrally within the crucible; an arrangement of a solenoid upon the same base plate controls the current, so that immediately the upper of the two carbon rods is sufficiently lowered to make contact with the other, the current flows, and, passing around the solenoid, automatically separates the poles and maintains them at a practically equal distance from one another during the whole time of fusion, in spite of the gradual wearing away of the carbon. Thus at the moment when the rods break contact, an intensely powerful electric arc is formed between them, and this is maintained evenly within the crucible so long as the current is continued; any substance packed around the lower carbon is in this manner rapidly heated to the highest temperature attainable. Comparatively large quantities of steel and of platinum (several pounds) were rapidly melted; and even tungsten, one of the most refractory metals known, could be fused in the arc, but only in small quantities and with the greatest difficulty, by placing it in a hollow scooped out of the lower carbon itself instead of in a crucible. Setting aside all questions of prime cost of plant and working expenses, an electric furnace on these lines no doubt renders available the highest temperature that is to be obtained with the means now at command.

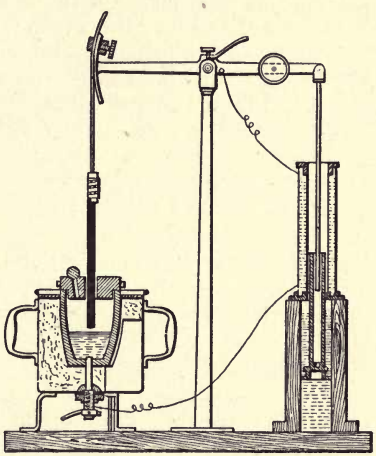


FIG. 94.—Siemens' electric furnace.

Cowles' Electric Furnace.—In the Cowles furnace for the electro-thermal production of aluminium alloys from alumina, the two carbons are passed through opposite ends of a fire-brick chamber lined with charcoal dust, which is selected as a lining on account of its high resistance to fusion; but as the charcoal, itself but a poor conductor of electricity, rapidly becomes converted into graphite, which is vastly superior in this respect, and thus causes a leakage of electricity unutilised between the poles, it was found necessary to soak the charcoal in milk of lime before use. On drying this product each grain of charcoal is coated with a deposit of lime, which effectually destroys the conductivity. All around the carbons, and within the space thus formed, is packed the mixture of the ore or compound to be reduced with fragments of carbon, and with pieces of the metal which it is desired to alloy with the aluminium; the whole is then covered with fine charcoal, and finally with a luted iron lid, lined with fire-brick, and provided with an aperture for the escape of gases. The carbon rods are attached to stout copper cables leading to the dynamo, but placed in circuit with an ammeter, a switch by which the current may be broken, an automatic cut-out to prevent the passage of an excessive current, and a set of resistances which may be interposed if necessary at any time. Placing first the resistances in circuit, the current is turned on, a short space only existing between the ends of the carbon electrodes, which are then withdrawn by degrees through the furnace walls as the operation proceeds, until at last the whole interior of the furnace is filled with a glowing mass.

The Cowles Process.—A furnace of this type is shown in vertical cross-section, as well as in part elevation, part longitudinal vertical section, in fig. 95; it is constructed of fire-brick, as described, with a cast-iron cover, and measures internally 5 ft. by 3 ft. by 1 ft. 8 ins.; through each end-wall is built a cast-iron tube of sufficient diameter to pass the bundles of electrodes. The latter consist of nine carbon rods, each $2\frac{1}{4}$ ins. in diameter (or of five 3-in. rods), held together by a cast-copper or cast-iron head (the former if a copper alloy is being made, the latter for iron alloys) attached to a rod, actuated by gearing suitable for the withdrawal of the carbons from the furnace, and connected with one of the poles of the dynamo. The walls having been lined with finely-crushed oak charcoal, insulated by the lime process, the charge of aluminium compound, charcoal and alloying metal in the form of small turnings or granules, is introduced and covered with fine charcoal, broken fragments of carbon having been previously placed in position, in order to start the arc as soon as the current is switched on. The source of electrical energy is a large dynamo capable of furnishing a current of from 5000 to 6000 amperes at a pressure of from 50 to 60 volts. The current at first is about 3000 amperes, but is gradually

increased to about 5000 amperes in the space of half an hour, the whole process lasting about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours. Gases, due to the reduction of the aluminium compound, and therefore consisting mainly of carbonic oxide, as explained by the annexed equation, pour from the aperture in the cast-iron cover, and burn with a long flame.

Al_2O_3	+	3C	=	Al_2	+	3CO
Alumina	with	carbon	yield	aluminium	and	carbonic oxide gas.

When the operation is complete, the current is broken, and switched on to an adjoining furnace, while the contents of the first are either allowed to settle upon the hearth, or are tapped out into a receptacle in front, through a tap-hole, which is plugged during the passage of the current. The expenditure of power to

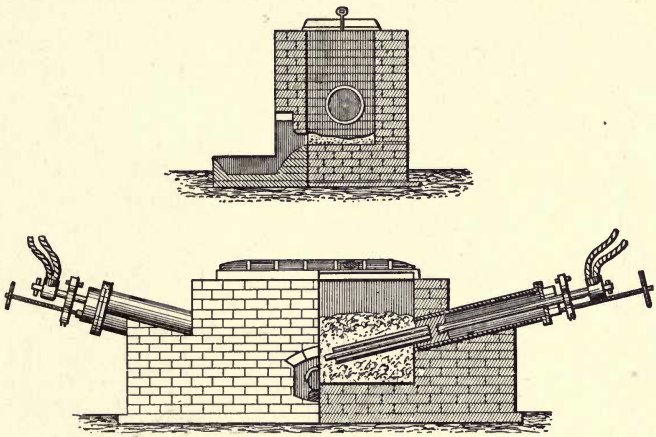


FIG. 95.—Cowles' electric furnace.

produce a given weight of metal depends upon the nature of the alloy which is being produced, but is said to average eighteen horse-power hours per pound of copper.

It is difficult, if not impossible, to produce pure aluminium by such a process as this, because this metal is very liable to combine with carbon at high temperatures, and as, under the conditions named, these two substances are in intimate contact under the circumstances most favourable to combination, the metal—or such of it as escapes volatilisation in the furnace—will contain more or less carbide, which ruins its working properties. The process is, however, available for the production of alloys such as aluminium bronze, consisting of copper containing various proportions of aluminium, or ferro-aluminium, which is an alloy of the latter metal with iron. The presence of the alloying metal no doubt favours the reduction of the aluminium; just as in the case of heating together iron or copper with carbon and silica, even at

temperatures obtainable with furnaces fed by solid or gaseous fuel, the silicon is reduced and combines with the assisting metal, although the heating of silica and carbon alone is barren of result; but the Cowles furnace is able to reduce alumina to the metallic state, even in the absence of alloying elements, by the direct action of carbon upon alumina, a reaction which cannot occur at ordinary furnace temperatures, but which is possible at the enormously high temperature of the electric arc. As already explained, however, the aluminium is not sufficiently pure for use. The Cowles process, although interesting as illustrating what may be done by such means, is no longer in use for the manufacture of aluminium alloys, because aluminium is now so readily obtained by other methods, as described below, that it is used directly in the metallic state for alloying with other metals, thus avoiding impurities.

Until the electric furnace had placed these high temperatures at the disposal of the chemist, it was believed that many oxides—alumina among them—were incapable of reduction by carbon; but Borchers has demonstrated, not only with the aid of the electric arc, but with a furnace in which the heat is derived from the incandescence of carbon heated, as in the glow-lamp, by the passage of an electric current, that all oxides are so reducible. Such reduction-processes may be known as *electro-thermal*; they are not electrolytic, and the use of electricity is simply as a source of heat. Phosphorus is thus produced on a large scale. A considerable industry has also sprung up in the manufacture of calcium carbide in electric furnaces, similar in principle to that of Siemens. This is effected by heating together at the temperature of the arc a mixture of lime and coke dust, using an excess of the latter material. On heating, a part of the carbon removes the oxygen of the lime, whilst another portion of the carbon combines with the liberated calcium to form calcium carbide, thus

$$CaO + 3C = CaC_2 + CO.$$

The semi-fused mass of carbide is cooled out of contact with the air, and is largely employed in the manufacture of acetylene for illuminating purposes.

Electrolysis of Fused Compounds.—The electrolysis of fused metallic compounds instead of aqueous solutions has frequently been suggested, and several of such processes are now in constant use. At first it was considered necessary to use ordinary fuel externally applied to melt the substance to be used as an electrolyte. But now the current employed for electrolysis is also made the means of bringing the solid substance to a state of fusion, and of so maintaining it. By this means magnesium, sodium, and aluminium are constantly produced, and, in fact, the whole of the aluminium now smelted is obtained by the electrolysis of fused aluminium compounds.

Aluminium Smelting.—There are several processes in use for this purpose, but they are identical in principle. A metal case lined with carbon or alumina (but preferably alumina) is so arranged that a carbon block attached to a stout copper cable may be raised or lowered within it, as shown diagrammatically in fig. 96. At one side is an outlet or tap-hole, and at the bottom is a plate marked – connected with another copper cable leading to the negative pole of the dynamo. This plate may with advantage be cooled by boring the narrow part of the plug beneath the plate and introducing a flow of water into the tube thus formed. Even the smallest trace of water must, of course, be rigorously excluded from the interior of the furnace. The carbon block is joined up by its cable to the positive pole of the dynamo. The general arrangement of the furnace is thus very similar to that of the Siemens furnace (fig. 94).

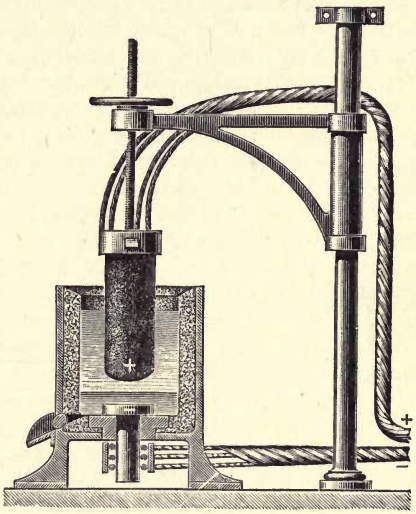


FIG. 96.—Aluminium smelting process.

To start the furnace, the carbon block is lowered into contact with the plate, a current flows, the block is then raised just out of contact, a powerful electric arc is formed between the two surfaces; finely divided cryolite (double fluoride of aluminium and sodium), with or without an addition of some other fluoride or chloride, such as calcium fluoride or chloride, is then introduced, and as it becomes fused by the heat of the current, more and more is added, and with it alumina, until the crucible is nearly full, the carbon block being gradually raised until it is at some distance above the plate. The action now is comparable with that of the electrolytic vat; the alumina dissolves in the melted fluoride bath, as copper sulphate dissolves in water, and is electrolysed in the same way by the current; the reduced aluminium collects at the bottom of the receptacle, and is run off from time to time, care being taken that it is never allowed to rise to the level of the carbon anode-block, and so cause a short circuit, while the anion, oxygen, is deposited on the carbon anode, which is thus gradually burned away, forming carbonic oxide, which escapes at the top of the furnace. The electrolyte is maintained at a red-heat (about 750° to 850° C.), owing to the fact that the powerful

current passing through the bath meets with ohmic resistance, so that a portion of it (sufficient for the purpose if the installation be large enough) is converted into heat. This process is identified with the names of Héroult in Europe and of Hall in America.

The reduced aluminium is very liable to combine chemically with non-metals, so that contact with carbon is to be avoided, and alumina is, therefore, better than carbon as a furnace-lining (although carbon is often used), and to alloy with other metals, so that the – plate is better water-cooled, if possible, to such an extent that there is always a frozen layer of aluminium in contact with it to protect it from contact with melted aluminium at a red-heat. The alumina lining gradually dissolves in the cryolite, but a limit is reached when the walls have become so thin that the heat lost by radiation causes a film of the electrolytic bath to freeze in contact with and to protect it, as the aluminium protected the – plate. The anodes are consumed, and must be replaced from time to time. The cryolite, being unaltered, and forming only a vehicle for the electrolysis of the alumina, may last a long time, until, in fact, the accumulated impurities from the alumina added render it unserviceable. For this reason the alumina employed should be as pure as possible. Alumina is constantly added to replace that which is electrolysed, and should always be present to the extent of 20 per cent. of the cryolite.

A current of several thousand amperes at about 5 or 7 volts is used (the current-density being frequently higher than 1·5 amperes per sq. in. of cathode surface), and it is found that about 1 oz. of aluminium is produced by the expenditure of 1 electrical horse-power for 1 hour, while about 1 oz. of carbon anode is consumed in the same time. According to the most recent practice, it would seem that 12 electrical horse-power hours will now suffice to yield ¾ lb. to 1 lb. of aluminium.

Magnesium Smelting.—Bunsen heated the chloride of the metal to its fusing-point by placing it in a crucible in a suitably arranged fire, and then passed a powerful current through the melted mass. In this manner he obtained magnesium by urging a current from 10 cells of his battery between gas-carbon electrodes, passed through the clay cover of a porcelain crucible, in which at the upper part they were separated by a porcelain partition, while at the lower they both dipped into the fused magnesium chloride. The anode carbon was plain, but the cathode was made with inverted steps upon the surface, so that it would retain the globules of melted (metallic) magnesium, which, being specifically lighter than the liquid, would otherwise float to the surface and become re-oxidised. Matthiessen, by melting three equivalents of potassium chloride and a little ammonium chloride with the magnesium salt, obtained a bath which was of lower specific gravity than the metal, so that the special arrangement of the cathode was rendered unnecessary. Carnallite, a natural

double chloride of magnesium and potassium, is now commonly used for the extraction.

Sodium Smelting. — It was by passing an electric current through fused common salt (sodium chloride) that the metal sodium was discovered by Sir Humphrey Davy, but until quite recently it was always obtained industrially by a purely metallurgical process. Now, however, the improvements in electric smelting have enabled the manufacturer to obtain sodium most economically by the electrolysis of fused compounds. Sodium chloride is used in some processes. In Castner's process, which is now in extensive operation, fused caustic soda is electrolysed, whereby sodium, with some hydrogen, is deposited at the cathode and oxygen at the anode. The soda is melted in a suitably constructed iron pot (heated by a ring of gas burners beneath) with a cylindrical cathode passing through the bottom of the vessel, to within a short distance below the upper level of the fused material in the bath. The cathode is, of course, insulated from the metal of the containing vessel. Metal anodes are suspended around the cathode from the cover of the pot, and these also are well insulated. One of the peculiarities in sodium extraction is that the metal is lighter than the electrolyte, so that after deposition it floats off the surface of the cathode to the top of the liquid, and, as its fusing-point is lower than that of soda, it forms a layer of melted metal on the surface of the bath. If this were permitted to continue it would cause a short circuit between the electrodes, and special provision has therefore to be made to guard against the danger. A tube, open at the bottom and of somewhat greater diameter than the cathode, is suspended above the top of the latter, and the globules of sodium, as they become detached from the cathode surface, float up within the tube and collect there. The tube is provided with a movable cover to exclude air, and the sodium is removed as soon as sufficient has accumulated, by taking off the cover and ladling out the melted metal in a ladle perforated with small holes of such size that the sodium (by reason of its high surface tension) cannot pass through, but the caustic soda can do so. The melted sodium is then poured into moulds for the market.

The Electro-Thermal Production and Refining of Iron.

Electrical v. Chemical Methods.—In considering the commercial possibilities of the electric reduction of iron ores it is necessary to remember that the usual chemical process is very simple. Coal is used as the reducing agent, and the ore is further mixed with limestone to give a fusible slag. The coal by its combustion not only causes the desired reduction but also provides the necessary heat, and as the ore, the limestone, and the coal are obtained in the same localities, at least in this country

and many others, the essentials are cheap. Moreover, as the process itself is quite simple—unlike those necessary in the production of certain other metals, such as copper, from their ores—the cost of producing iron by purely chemical methods is low.

By means of an electric furnace heat can be applied under the very best conditions without the waste which accompanies the operation of the blast furnace; but, on the other hand, the required electric energy is generally obtained by the combustion of coal through the intermediary of the boiler and the steam-engine. The two methods therefore resolve themselves into (1) the direct utilisation of the heat from coal, and (2) the indirect use of such heat. The direct use of coal in the blast furnace involves serious waste (largely because the air contains so great a proportion of nitrogen, which is inert), but the indirect use of the heat, by converting first into electric energy, is subject to a still more serious loss. This is due to the fact that it is impossible, for thermo-dynamic reasons, to convert fully into mechanical energy all the heat imparted by the coal to the steam. The loss on this account is so serious that the overall efficiency in converting the energy of coal into electric energy in practice is usually well under 10 per cent. With gas-engines instead of steam-engines the efficiency is higher, and if water-power is the primary source of energy this question does not, of course, arise. But even with water-power, the first cost of the hydraulic work is often very heavy, and it is quite possible that the elimination of the fuel item by this means in a locality where coal is cheap will not lead to any very great cheapening of the total cost of electric energy. For this reason it is found that the electric furnace for the reduction of iron from its ores cannot compete commercially with the blast furnace if the electric energy is generated from coal; in fact, for the electrical method to be commercially successful it follows that the price of electric energy must be very low and the cost of fuel very high. The whole question was considered very fully in the report of the Commission appointed by the Canadian Government to investigate the electro-thermic processes for the smelting of iron ores and the making of steel in operation in Europe (published in 1904). One of the conclusions reached in this report is that the two methods of producing pig-iron—by the electric furnace and by the blast furnace—are about equal in cost if electric energy is obtainable at $10 (41s. 8d.) per electrical horse-power year and the price of coke is $7 (29s. 2d.) per ton. This price for electric energy is very low, just as that for the coke is very high. These figures may be modified in the future by improvements in the electrical efficiency on the one hand, and greater efficiency in the blast furnace on the other hand, by utilising the waste heat in the furnace gases, which latter are of value for driving gas engines or for raising steam.

When we come to consider the cost of producing steel from pig-iron by electrical methods, as distinct from the reduction of iron ores to produce pig-iron itself, the case is very different. Here it is a question of refining an impure metal instead of producing impure metal itself, or of producing iron containing definite proportions of carbon or other ingredients so as to give steels of definite composition. As the proportions of these ingredients are small the operations require care, and if the process is such that impurities cannot be easily introduced the advantage is obvious. It is in this respect that the electric furnace is to be preferred to the older methods. The manipulation is more certain. If impurities from electrodes through resistance-heating introduce a difficulty, arc-heating may be used, or, as we shall see later, electrodes may be entirely avoided, and the heat may be produced by induction.

It follows therefore that the electric furnace may be commercially valuable for making steel, though its field for the production of pig-iron from the ore is limited to special circumstances. With regard to the latter, however, it must be remembered that the blast furnace is the product of generations, whereas the electric furnace is in its first youth. It is possible that further improvements will render the electrical method a much more efficient rival of the blast furnace than it is at present. For the time being, however, only special cases can be considered. Canada, for example, is a case of this kind, and the Canadian Government have recently carried out experiments which show that magnetite can be reduced by using, in place of coke, the wood charcoal so readily obtainable in that country.

While the electric production of pig is in abeyance the electric furnace is in regular use for producing steel, ferro, and other alloys. Thus the Société Anonyme Electrométallurgique Procédés (P. Girod) produce regularly ferro-chrome, cupro-vanadium, cupro-silicon, ferro-silicon, silico-manganese, ferro-tungsten, ferro-manganese, ferro-vanadium, ferro-molybdenum, silico-chrome, and ferro-titanium by the electric furnace.

As the result of their investigations in Europe, the Canadian Commission came to the following conclusions:—

1. Steel, equal in all respects to the best Sheffield crucible steel, can be produced, either by the Kjellin or Héroult or Keller processes, at a cost considerably less than the cost of producing a high-class crucible steel.

2. At present, structural steel to compete with Siemens or Bessemer steel cannot be economically produced in the electric furnaces, and such furnaces can be used commercially for the production of only very high-class steel for special purposes.

3. Speaking generally, the reactions in the electric smelting furnace as regards the reduction and combination of iron with silicon, sulphur, phosphorus, and manganese are similar to those

taking place in the blast furnace. By altering the burden and regulating the temperature by varying the electric current, any grade of iron, grey or white, can be obtained, and the change from one grade to another is effected more rapidly than in the blast furnace.

4. Grey pig-iron, suitable in all respects for acid steel manufacture, either by Bessemer or Siemens processes, can be produced in the electric furnace.

5. Grey pig-iron, suitable for foundry purposes, can be readily produced.

6. Pig-iron low in silicon and sulphur, suitable either for the basic Bessemer or the basic Siemens process, can be produced, provided that the ore mixture contains oxide of manganese, and that a basic slag is maintained by suitable additions of lime.

7. It has not been experimentally demonstrated, but from general considerations there is every reason to believe, that pig-iron low in silicon and sulphur can be produced even in the absence of manganese oxide in the iron mixture, provided a fluid and basic slag be maintained.

8. Pig-iron can be produced on a commercial scale at a price to compete with the blast furnace, only when electric energy is very cheap and fuel very dear. On the basis taken in this report, with electric energy at $10 (41s. 8d.) per E.H.P.-year, and coke at $7 (29s. 2d.) per ton, the cost of production is approximately the same as the cost of producing pig-iron in a modern blast furnace.

9. Under ordinary conditions, where blast furnaces are an established industry, electric smelting cannot compete; but in special cases, where ample water-power is available, and blast-furnace coke is not readily obtainable, electric smelting may be commercially successful.

Some further Advantages of the Electric Furnace.—Apart from the cost of operation, which will certainly diminish as improvements are introduced in design, it may be noted that the electric furnace has, in comparison with the blast furnace, some very distinct advantages which have been emphasised by Dr. Haanel. Thus, the first cost is small; the charging machinery is not costly; the expense involved in a breakdown is small; and repairs can be made easily, because the electric furnace would be used in small units, whereas the blast furnace, to be most economical, must be large, say 90 ft. in height. Owing to the comparatively small size of the electric furnace, the loss due to wrong composition of a charge is reduced to a minimum, and, lastly, there is perfect control of the temperature in the reducing and melting zone.

Recently it has been found that the nitrogen in the air produces in the blast furnace, under certain conditions, nitride of iron, which has a bad effect on iron and steel, rendering them brittle. Thus great brittleness has been found in iron and steels

with low sulphur and phosphorus. Consequently, the elimination of nitrogen by the electric furnace not only prevents inefficiency, but allows certain grades of ore to be handled which would not submit to the usual treatment by the blast furnace. This is particularly important in the case of Canada, where the magnetites which there occur contain too much sulphur for blast furnace treatment, but can be economically smelted electrothermally. Experiments at Sault Ste. Marie showed that in the electric furnace sulphur and silicon can be varied as desired, and that titaniferous iron, containing up to a certain proportion of titanic acid, can also be reduced. As a field, therefore, for the electric furnace Canada is particularly well situated, as not only is there ample water-power and coal is expensive, but the nature of the ores renders them well suited to electrical treatment in preference to the ordinary methods. For similar reasons the electric smelting of iron ores is being taken up extensively in Sweden.

Amount of Electrical Energy Required.—There are not many authoritative figures as to the amount of energy required by the electric furnace per ton of metal produced. From the figures obtained by the Canadian Commission for the Héroult, Keller and Kjellin furnaces, it appears that the production of steel from cold pig and scrap requires about 1000 kilowatt-hours per ton. If the raw material is first fused before running into the electric furnace, so that the electric energy is not required for fusing the metal, but is used merely for maintaining the temperature during the process of refining, the energy required is, of course, very much reduced.

In Table XXVII. are given a number of results published by well-known makers of electric furnaces, showing the amount of energy required per ton of steel, and certain other particulars. From this it will be seen that the amount of electric energy used per ton, merely for refining, is comparatively small, and will, no doubt, be further reduced as furnaces are made larger and more experience is gained. It may be said that in all probability the electric refining furnace will shortly take up a prominent position beside the blast furnace for the refining of iron, which, under certain conditions, will be taken conveniently from the latter in the molten condition, and refined without being cast into pig. Or under certain conditions an ordinary smelting furnace may be used as a preliminary to the electric refining furnace.

Reduction from the ore is quite another matter. Figures obtained by the Commission as to the production of pig-iron from the ore in the case of the Héroult and Keller furnaces indicate that about 3000 kilowatt-hours are required per ton of pig produced. It is quite possible, however, that further experience will materially reduce this figure, which must be considered as somewhat tentative. In fact, experiments carried out by Dr. Haanel at Sault Ste. Marie, for the Canadian Government in 1906, showed that a ton

of pig could be produced with an expenditure of about 1700 kilowatt-hours. If arrangements were adopted to utilise the heat obtainable from the waste gases effectually to preheat the charge, there is no doubt that even this improved figure would be considerably reduced.

TABLE XXVII.- Giving Particulars of working of Electric Furnaces for refining Iron.

Authority.	Conditions.	Energy in kilowatt-hours used in refining, per ton.		Consumption of Electrodes per ton.	Life of Furnace Linings.
		Starting with cold metal.	Starting with fused metal.		
P. Girod . .	In 2-ton furnace	900	...	35–40 lbs.	40–50 heats.
,, . .	In 8–12-ton furnace	700	...	13–15 lbs.	
P. L. T. Héroult	In 5-ton furnace	700	140-180	60–65 lbs. starting cold	May last a year, but roof must be renewed once a month.
,,	In 15-ton furnace	...	100	10–15 lbs. starting hot	
C. A. Keller .	In 7½-ton furnace	...	275	...	
F. A. Kjellin .	In 3½-ton furnace at Röchlings' works	800	In 25 heats, varied from 175 300; mean, say, 250.	nil	
E. Stassano .	In small furnaces	1,000	200	17½–26 lbs.	
	In large furnaces	700–800			

Note.—The tons here given are presumably metric tons of 1000 kilogrammes (2200 lbs.). The figures given for electrodes include waste.

Dr. Haanel, working in conjunction with Dr. Héroult, came to the conclusion that the largest furnace on the lines of the one used at Sault Ste. Marie would not exceed 2000 H.-P., and certain alterations would be necessary, namely, the introduction of labour-saving machinery, provision for collecting and using the carbon monoxide produced, automatic regulation of the electrode, and the use of a higher shaft to permit the heated carbon monoxide to effect the maximum reduction, the electrode being placed in a side chamber.

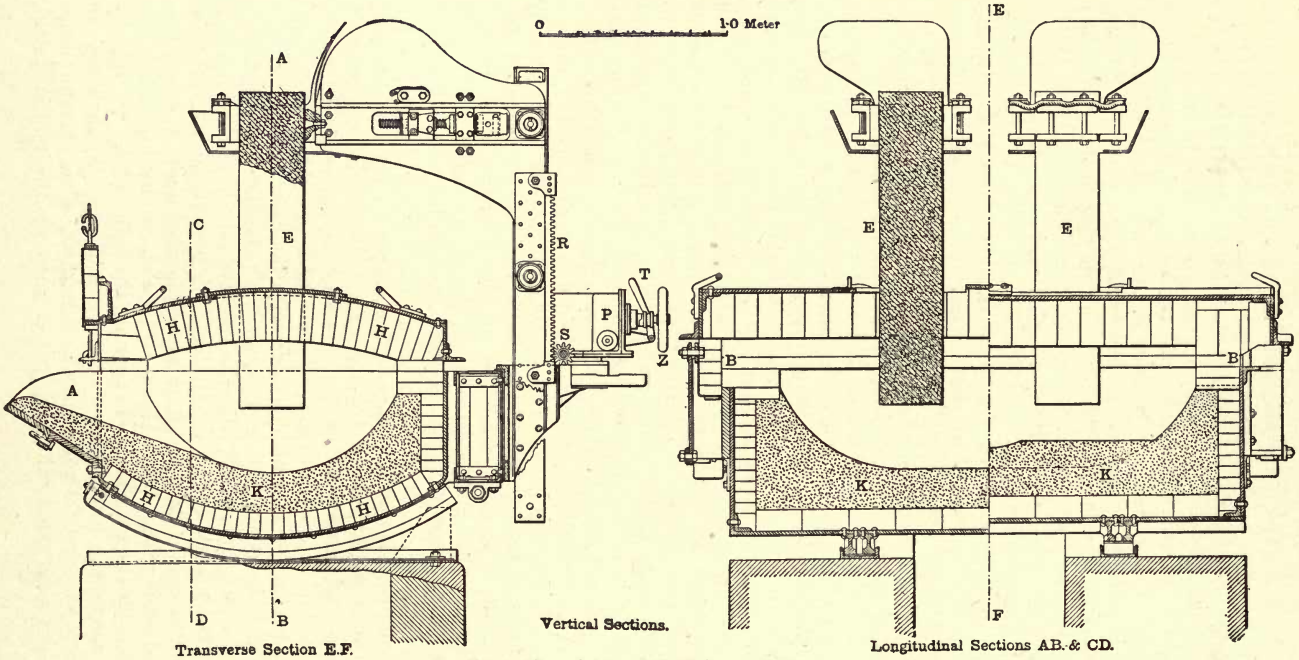
Types of Electric Furnace.—Electric furnaces may be classified according to the methods adopted in converting the electric energy into heat, into the following classes :—

1. Resistance furnaces.
2. Arc furnaces.
3. Combined resistance and arc furnaces.
4. Induction furnaces.
5. Combined induction and resistance furnaces.

In Class 1, heat is produced by the resistance offered by the charge to the passage of the current, the carbon electrodes dipping

into the charge; or one electrode may be used above, the other electrode being made the hearth of the furnace, and the current regulated by varying the distance between the electrodes. In the second class, the two electrodes are maintained above the surface of the charge, and an arc is formed between them, the heat being radiated to the charge. In Class 3, two electrodes are used, and are first lowered to dip into the charge so as to start the heating by resistance; subsequently, however, the carbons are withdrawn somewhat, so that an arc is formed from each electrode to the charge, the current flowing through the charge between the two arcs. The disadvantage of allowing electrodes to dip into the charge is that impurities may be introduced, and, even if the electrodes are pure carbon, the introduction of carbon is often very undesirable, as, for example, in converting pig into steel. If arc-heating is adopted, volatile products are formed, and these are comparatively harmless, though sometimes undesirable. The objection to arc-heating is that the heat is not generated within the body of the charge as in resistance-heating. In order to get over this difficulty of introducing impurities by the electrodes, Class 4 has been devised, in which the heating is really by resistance, but the currents are 'induced' by the variation of a magnetic field, just as in an electric transformer. The reader will find this method explained in greater detail in the description of the Kjellin furnace. By its means electrodes are entirely obviated, but the charge must be fairly conductive to start with, and the temperature attainable is not so high as by the other methods; it has been found particularly adaptable to the making of steels and alloys, but is obviously useless for the reduction of ores, nor are its virtues in any way necessary to the latter. Owing to certain difficulties experienced with the simple induction furnace this has been modified so as to be worked on the induction principle and at the same time with electrodes, thus giving Class 5.

Héroult's Furnace.—The Héroult furnace has been used both for making steel and for producing iron from the ore. In the following description reference is first made to the crucible form of furnace suitable in connection with the crucible-, and possibly Siemens, methods which are now so largely in use. As seen in figs. 97 and 98, the furnace consists of a crucible-shaped vessel cased in with iron, which is lined with dolomite brick H, H, and magnesite brick round the openings. The bottom is further lined with crushed dolomite K, which is rammed on top of the brick and forms the hearth. Two electrodes E, E, pass through the roof of the furnace, and are sometimes water-jacketed above the openings and to some extent below them. These electrodes are raised and lowered by the rack and gear seen on the right of fig. 97, and by this means the alternating current, which may be thousands of amperes at, say, 100 volts, may be regulated. The current jumps from one electrode to the slag, passes through the molten metal,



FIGS. 97 and 98.—The Héroult furnace

A general view of a 15-ton furnace is shown in the frontispiece.

and returns by jumping to the other electrode, so that there is both arc- and resistance-heating, though mainly the latter, and this resistance-heating is chiefly effected in the slag, which has a much higher resistivity than has the metal below it. Owing to the comparatively high conductivity of molten iron, purely resistance-heating is not much used in refining, or in the production of alloys (except in induction furnaces), because the currents required would be so much larger than where arcs are introduced, and the carbon would be deleterious.

Héroult's furnace for producing pig-iron from the ore is shown in fig. 99. It consists of a vertical shaft H through which the coal gravitates, coming in contact with the carbon electrode G in its progress. The other electrode B forms the hearth of the furnace. The ore gravitates down a separate inclined shaft A, up which the hot gases are allowed to escape; in so doing they heat the ore, and thus greater economy is obtained. The metal is tapped off at D, and the slag run off at E. This furnace belongs to Class 1.

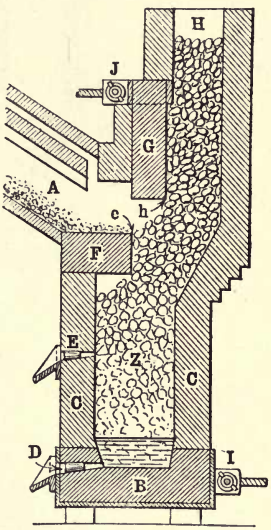


FIG. 99.—Héroult furnace for producing pig from the ore.

The advantages claimed for the Héroult furnace are: (1) absence of electrical parts in the furnace proper, it being merely a modified open hearth; no trouble can arise from a bottom electrode, as there is none; (2) the current is only half that necessary if one electrode and arc are used with a bottom electrode, because there are two arcs in series; (3) the slag being the hottest part of the charge, all impurities can be removed by special slags.

Keller's Furnace.—In the Keller furnace, shown diagrammatically in fig. 100, 'resistance-heating' is adopted. The furnace shown has a plurality of hearths, and above each of these is a carbon electrode, which can be raised or lowered as necessary. These furnaces can be used either for producing steel and alloys, such as ferro-silicon, which is thus produced in large quantities by Messrs Keller, Leleux & Cie., or for obtaining iron direct from the ore. For this purpose the ore is fed in at the top of each individual furnace, and the fused metal collects in the common central well. Normally the current flows from one furnace, through the well to the opposite furnace, these two furnaces being connected in parallel with the other pair. The centre electrode is brought into use if the metal in the well becomes chilled. To prevent any interruption of the current when the metal is run off,

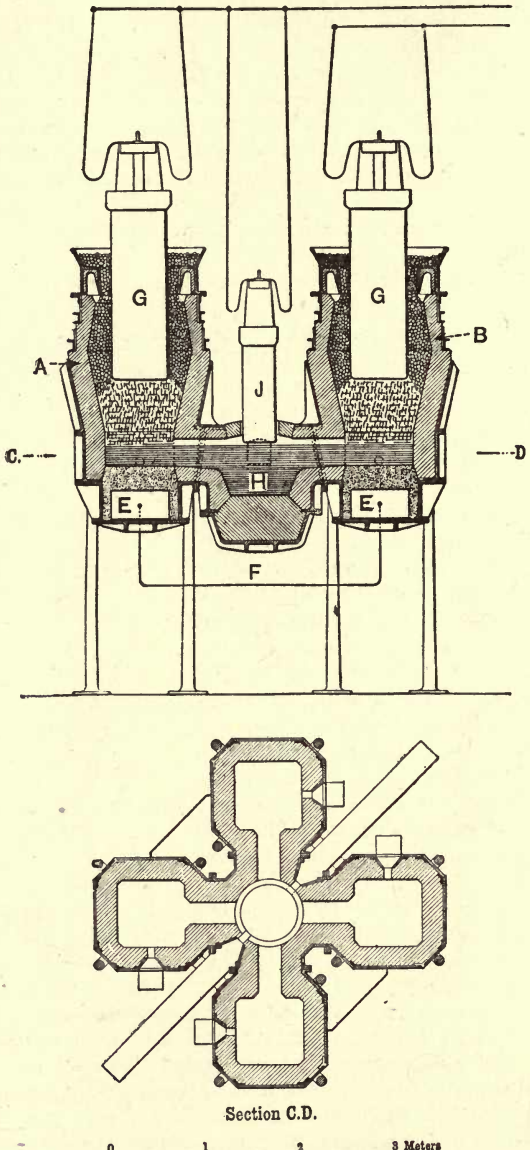


FIG. 100.—The Keller furnace.

a carbon block is built into the sole of each furnace, and these are connected by copper conductors as indicated, so that an alter-

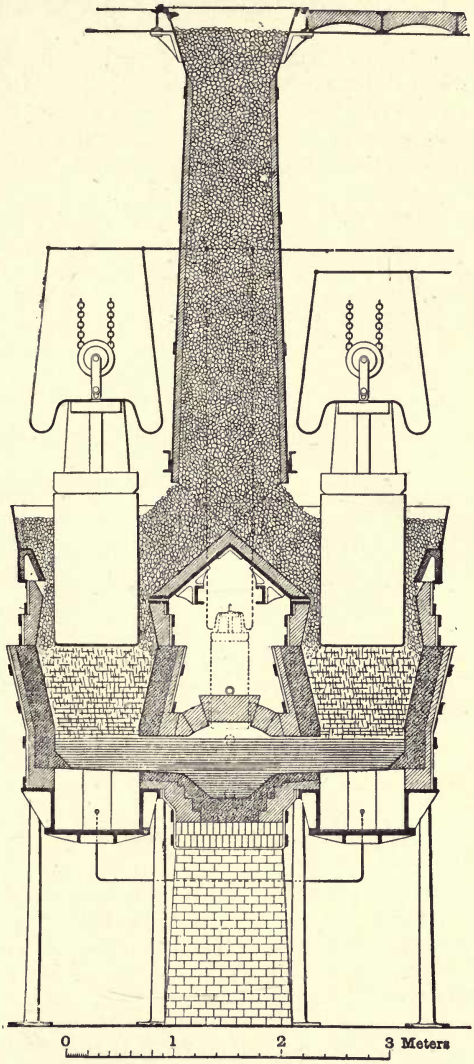


FIG. 101.—Keller electric high furnace.

native path is provided. The latter carries but a small part of the current when the well is fully charged. New electrodes are easily replaced by overhead travellers, and, as two pairs are run

in parallel, any single electrode can be replaced without interfering with the working of the furnace. If the furnace is used merely for alloys or for refining them, it is used as a combined arc and resistance furnace.

An electric 'high furnace' is shown in fig. 101, and, in principle, is just the same as the furnace just described in that the four shafts are simply replaced by a single central shaft which distributes the charge over the four hearths. The electrodes

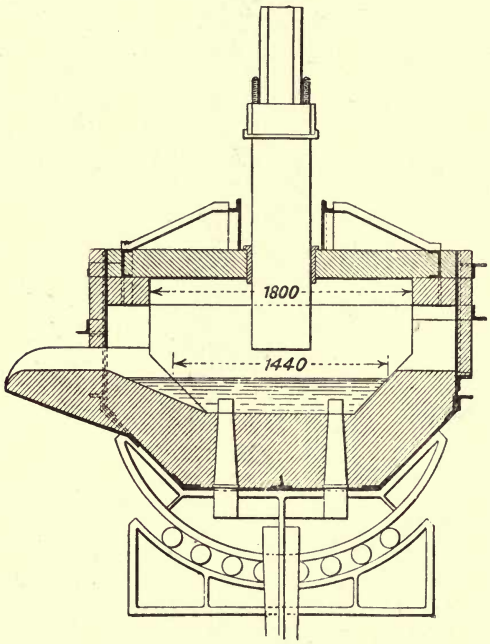


FIG. 102.—The Girod crucible furnace.

used in the experiments for the Commission were made up by assembling four carbons into a single mass having a square cross section, 85 cms. per side and 1·4 metres long. The life of such an electrode is stated to be twenty days. Such a furnace is purely for the reduction of iron ores.

The most recent form of Keller refining furnace is made up with a conducting hearth, consisting of vertical iron bars, the spaces between which are filled by ramming in magnesia, or some such refractory material, which becomes a conductor when sufficiently heated. This hearth forms one electrode, the other electrode being a vertical carbon which is brought sufficiently near to the charge for an arc to be maintained. Such a furnace has the

advantage that it is more easy to start up than the Héroult furnace; but it is less simple, and the water cooling which is adopted for the hearth may very possibly be regarded as a disadvantage.

Girod's Furnace.—The Girod refining furnace consists of a crucible chamber as shown in fig. 102, with one or more carbon electrodes of like polarity, suspended above the charge. The other pole consists of a number of pieces of soft steel buried in the refractory material of the hearth at its periphery; the upper ends of these bars are in contact with the fused metal, and the lower ends are water-cooled to prevent excessive fusion of the upper ends, and to protect the lining. An arc is formed between the upper electrode and the surface of the charge. This furnace, which somewhat resembles the Keller furnace, has been used largely by the Société Anonyme Electrométallurgique Procédés, Paul Girod for the manufacture of ferro-alloys. Its chief advantage is simplicity and ease of operation.

Stassano's Furnace.—In the Stassano furnace, heating is obtained entirely from arcs above the surface of the charge, so that no solid impurities are introduced. A single arc may be used, or, for convenience in regulating the temperature, two or more arcs may be used in parallel, and the number varied according to requirements. In the furnace illustrated in figs. 103 and 104 there are three carbons which nearly meet at the axis of the furnace, and as these are supplied with three-phase current, there are three arcs, one between each pair of carbons, taking the carbons two and two. The holders for the carbons are water-jacketed and are adjusted hydraulically, the holders being attached to pistons working in hydraulic cylinders for this purpose. The axis of the furnace is inclined to the vertical through an angle of about 7°, and the furnace is slowly rotated when in operation so as to mix the charge and thus render the resulting metal quite uniform. The gearing for this purpose is seen below the furnace. On account of this rotation the current cannot be led in as simply as in other furnaces; rings and brushes are provided to give the necessary sliding contacts. A special feature of this furnace is the exclusion of air; the furnace terminates in a tube which is connected by a special form of cup-joint to a fixed tube, and the latter terminates in an hydraulic valve. Volatile products are thus expelled and may be collected.

The advantages claimed for the Stassano furnace are: (1) the furnace being air-tight, a neutral atmosphere is obtained, and the arcs are very stable; (2) the furnace can be worked with a minimum of slag; and (3) thorough mechanical mixing. Against these advantages must be set the disadvantage that the furnace is comparatively complicated, and that the lining works under more severe conditions than in furnaces of the combined arc and resistance type.

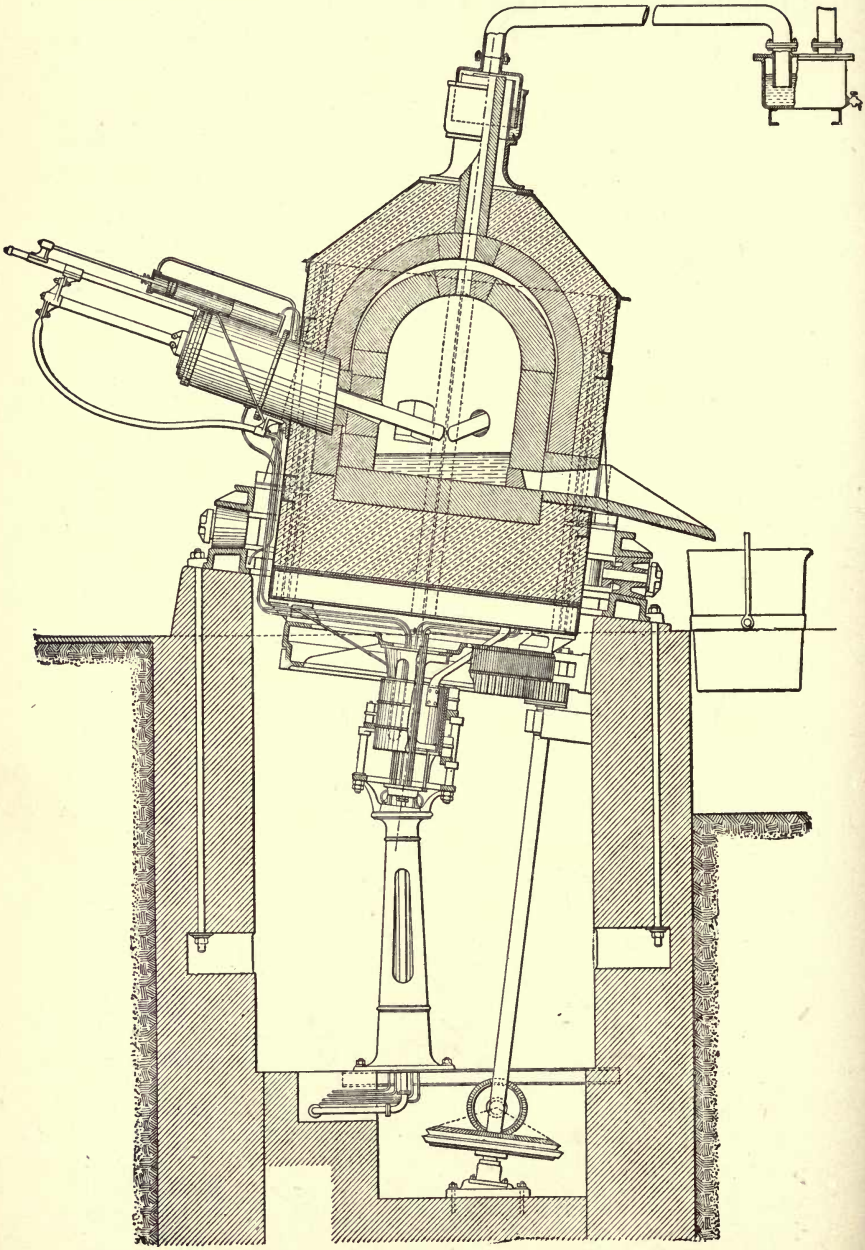


FIG. 103.—The Stassano furnace. Vertical section.

Kjellin's Furnace.—The Kjellin furnace was the first commercially of the class depending upon electromagnetic induction for the production of the heat, though such furnaces had been suggested by Ferranti some years before. If a closed metallic circuit is suitably placed in a varying magnetic field it will be traversed by electric currents depending upon the rate of variation and the strength of the field. Thus, if the metal in a furnace is disposed in a trough forming a ring, and a magnetic field through this ring is varied rapidly, currents will flow through the metal,

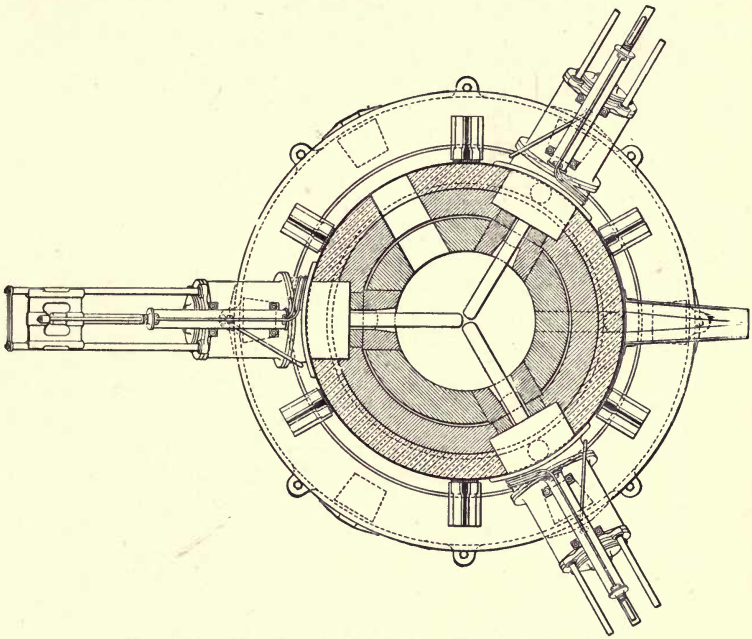


FIG. 104.—The Stassano furnace. Horizontal section.

and under suitable conditions they will be sufficiently intense to cause fusion. By this means the use of electrodes can be entirely avoided, and thus impurities can be eliminated. The method is unsuitable for the smelting of ores, because these would not be sufficiently conducting; but for the production of alloys from constituents of known purity the method is very advantageous, there being no question as to the composition of the product. Even when such a furnace is charged with broken pieces of pig-iron or scrap- the resistance is too high for starting, and therefore it is necessary to use a continuous ring of iron for this purpose. In ordinary working it is usual to leave sufficient metal in the furnace to avoid any difficulty in starting up.

The construction of the Kjellin furnace, in which this principle is utilised, is shown in fig. 105. The charge is contained in the annular groove A A. D is a coil of insulated copper wire, and

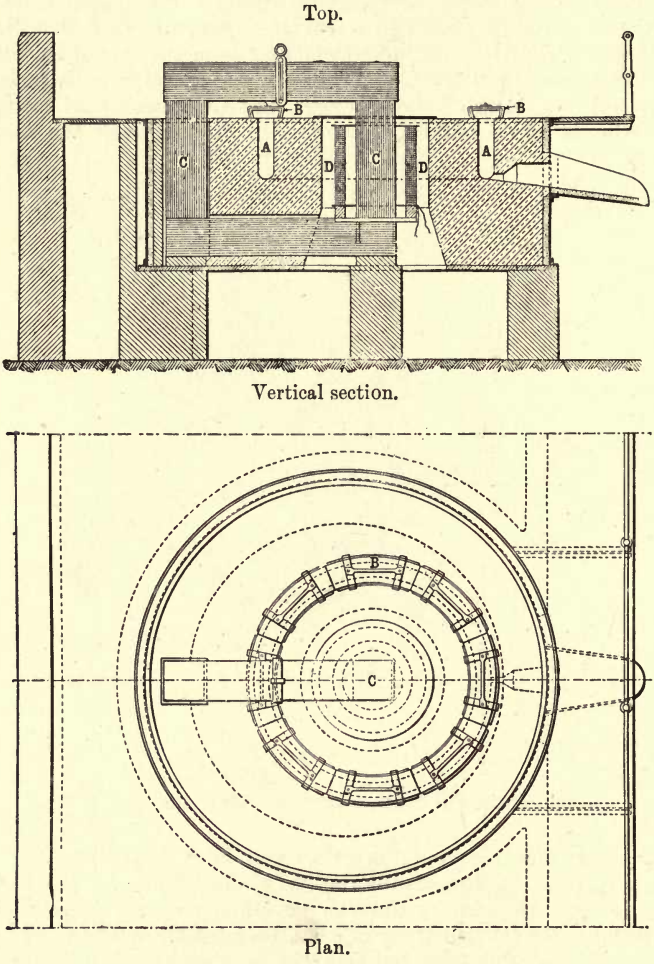


FIG. 105.—The Kjellin furnace.

C C consists of sheets of soft iron to form a magnetic circuit. Thus, D forms what is termed the primary of an electric transformer, A A forming the secondary; and when alternating current is supplied to D, a much larger alternating current, though at lower pressure, is induced in the metal in A A.

The furnace is made of an iron casing resting on brickwork. The casing is filled in with firebrick except the part in the immediate neighbourhood of the channel A A, this part being made of magnesite or silica brick, according as a basic or acid lining is required. The primary is cooled by an air draft, or, if necessary, by water circulation in the space surrounding it.

Röchling and Rodenhauser's Furnace.—Although the Kjellin furnace is very suitable as a refining or crucible furnace in comparatively small sizes, yet if the size is much increased it becomes somewhat inefficient from the electrical point of view. If, for example, such a furnace is supplied with 200 amperes at 500 volts it might be supposed that the power so supplied would be 200 × 500 watts, or 100 kilowatts. But, since the current is alternating, the power is really less, and consequently the furnace is said to have a 'power factor' less than unity. The power factor is merely the ratio of the actual power to the apparent power. For example, if the power absorbed in the above case is only 80 kilowatts, whereas apparently the power is 100 kilowatts, then the power factor is 0·8. In large induction furnaces it might be only 0·5. All alternating current furnaces have a power factor less than unity, but the induction furnace is inferior to others in respect to this quantity. The objection to a low power factor is that for a given pressure the current has to be correspondingly larger than if the power factor were unity, and consequently the generating plant must be larger than would be otherwise necessary (see page 35).

This difficulty has been overcome to a considerable extent in the modified form of Kjellin's furnace due to Röchling and Rodenhauser. In this form the transformer not merely induces current in the molten metal but also in a secondary winding from which current is taken and is used for resistance-heating, so that this type of furnace is often called the 'combination type,' which is thus referred to in Class 5.

Such a furnace is shown in figs. 106 and 107. Unlike the Kjellin furnace, the iron core H (fig. 107) has a coil, A, on each of the vertical legs, and outside these coils are the additional secondary coils, as seen at B. The iron core is seen in section in fig. 106, passing over the top and also beneath the furnace, and the masonry is built round the core and coils with a small space between. The channel for the molten metal passes round each leg of the core, as indicated by the small arrows on each side of fig. 107, and these two channels unite into a single channel, D, between the legs, thus forming roughly a figure 8. It will be noticed that the channels on the outside are narrow, and in the centre they combine to form a wide channel; in this channel of molten metal currents are induced, as in the Kjellin furnace. This action is also assisted by the secondary coils, which are connected up to four corrugated steel plates; two of these are seen

at E, and there are two others indicated at the other side of the furnace. These plates are built into the furnace lining with a

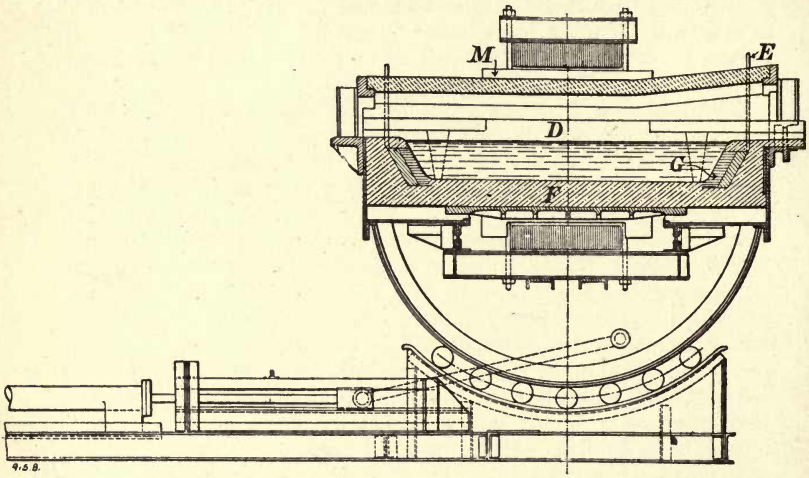


FIG. 106.—Vertical section of Röchling-Rodenhauser furnace.

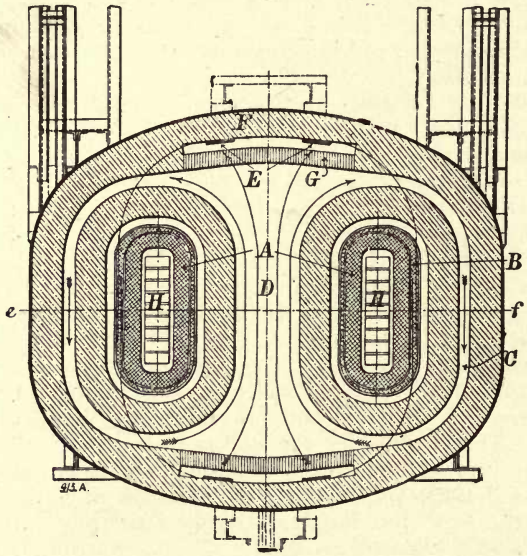


FIG. 107.—Sectional plan of Röchling-Rodenhauser furnace.

compound of magnesite, dolomite, and tar. When the furnace is cold this material does not conduct, and therefore, in starting

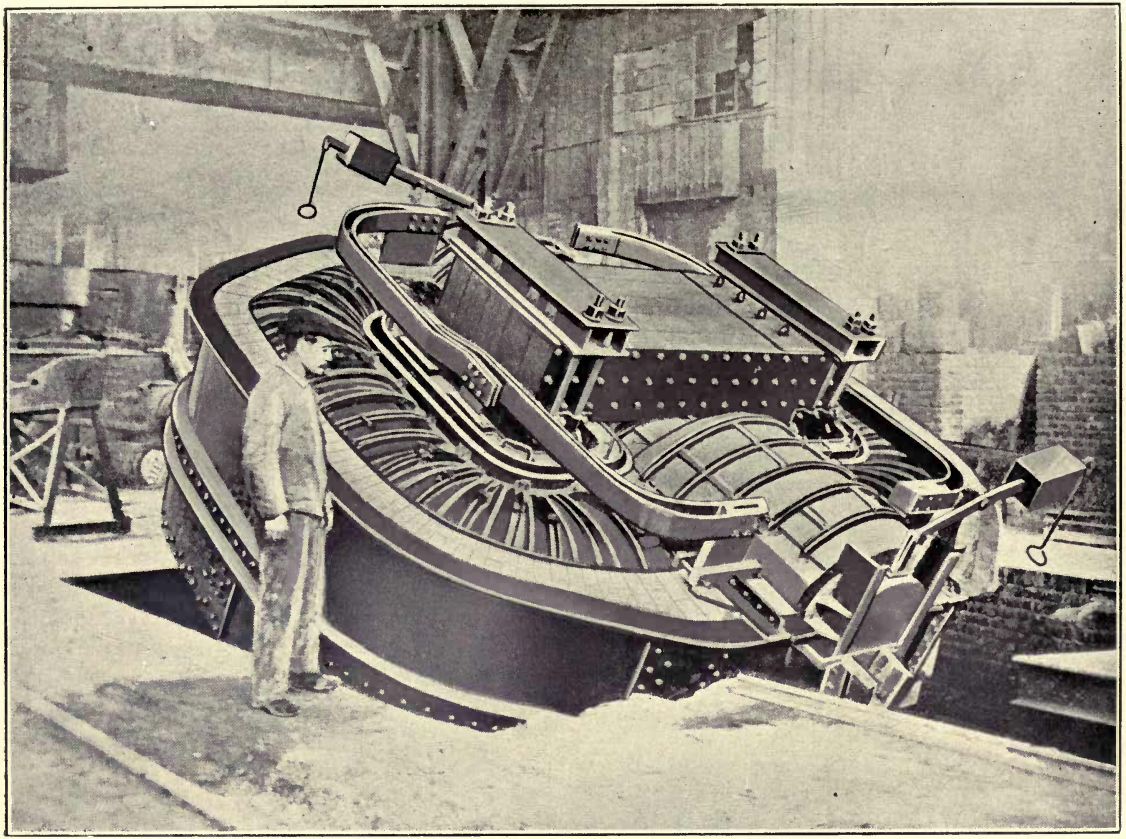


FIG. 108.—Tilting an 8-ton Röchling-Rodenhauser combination furnace.

The core of the transformer is seen in the centre, and the strips on either side of this are the connections from the secondary to the electrode plates embedded in the lining at each end of the furnace.

[*To face p.* 314.

up, these plates do not help the heating, which is thus purely inductive. But when the furnace heats up, the compound conducts electrolytically as a conductor of the 'second class,' and currents flow between the plates on opposite sides of the furnace, as indicated by the long arrows. The lower part of fig. 106 shows the arrangement for tilting the furnace.

A photograph of such a furnace being tilted to discharge the molten metal is reproduced in fig. 108. Here the top of the iron core traversing the furnace is clearly seen, and also the curved strips connecting the secondary winding to the plates at either end.

It is stated that this furnace has a further advantage over the purely induction type in that a higher temperature is obtained, and this is important in enabling the slag to be maintained sufficiently liquid for efficient refining purposes.

Electric Welding and Annealing.

Electric Welding.—Of late years the high temperatures obtainable by the electric current have been used very successfully for welding together iron, steel and copper surfaces. There may be said to be three principal processes :—

(1) That in which the metal is heated, not by an arc but by incandescence, as in the Elihu Thomson process, in which the two pieces to be united are connected by heavy clamps with the opposite poles of a generator and are then brought into contact. As, owing to the unevenness of the surface, contact occurs only at a few points, the current (which must be equal to about 10,000 amperes per square inch of sectional area of the iron near the joint) is conducted through a restricted area, with the result that these portions are raised to incandescence, and, becoming softened, allow the two pieces to be pressed together somewhat; hence a larger area of conductor is provided, but this, being still far less than that of the bar, is still raised to welding heat. Meanwhile surrounding surfaces become superficially oxidised by heat, and so covered with a film of an inferior conductor, with the result that even when these are pressed together the whole mass is raised to the necessary temperature owing to the added resistance in the path of the current. The effect is increased by the fact that the resistance of the iron increases rapidly with rise of temperature. In a space of time varying from a few seconds to two or three minutes, according to the size of the joint, the metal will have been heated sufficiently to allow of the two surfaces being united by pressure. A very low E.M.F., produced by an alternating current transformer, is used, and it is found that to join two 1-inch bars end to end requires the expenditure of about 22 H.P. for one minute.

(2) In a process of which Burton's liquid forge and Lagrange and

Hoho's systems are types, the metal to be heated is connected with the negative pole of the generator (which must give a current of over 110 volts) and is then plunged into a lead-lined vat containing dilute sulphuric acid, or of a suitable saline solution (*e.g.*, sodium carbonate), the lead being connected with the positive pole. The result is that a very powerful current passes through the bath from the lead which acts as anode, to the immersed object, on which hydrogen is generated in large quantities. The resistance at the surface, in part covered as it is with hydrogen, becomes so great that the metal is very rapidly raised to a welding heat; it may then be removed and welded on the anvil in the usual way. In Burton's process the piece is only in part immersed, so that the evolved hydrogen burns and contributes to the heating of the bar. It is obvious that these processes, rather than Thomson's, are the equivalent of the forge, and they may be employed for heating metal otherwise than for welding—for example, for bending or for annealing. But it is questionable whether there are many cases in which they would prove more economical than ordinary forge-heating. It must be remembered, however, that the metal is perfectly clean, being protected from oxidation by the hydrogen in contact with it whilst in the bath.

(3) That in which the electric arc is used. This may be done, as in the Benardos process, by placing together the surfaces to be welded and connecting both with the positive pole of a generator giving a current at 110–120 volts, and from 200 to 300 amperes or more (200 amperes for joining metal $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick), while the negative pole is connected to a rod of carbon which may be held by insulated tongs, and brought into contact with the surfaces. The moment contact is made the current passes, and the carbon is withdrawn, so that an arc is formed, which is commonly 2 or $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length. The metal in the immediate neighbourhood of the arc is rapidly melted, and the surfaces are thus burned together (as in the autogenous soldering of lead); the carbon is then shifted along the joint until the next part is similarly united, and so on, the metal being hammered where possible, in order to improve its quality, but in any case some hammering is given by means of a 'former' adapted to the joint in hand. In the Zerener process, an ingenious adaptation of the deflection of the arc by magnetic action is used: two carbons form the electrodes, and a very powerful electro-magnet, actuated by the current used in welding, is placed with its two poles so arranged that they would be on either side of the arc that forms between the carbons. The result is that the arc is deflected downwards, and may thus be made to play upon the surfaces to be joined. The whole arrangement forms a kind of electric blow-pipe. A current at 60-65 volts pressure and from 3 to 250 amperes may be used, according to the character of the work.

Electric Annealing or Softening. — In the use of hardened steel plate it is frequently necessary to make additional rivet holes, which cannot ordinarily be done without softening the plate and re-hardening. The Thomson Welding Company of America have adapted an electrical heating process for drawing the temper of such plates locally. This is accomplished by resting a couple of copper bars on the same surface of the plate on either side of the part to be softened, and passing through them (and so through the stretch of plate between them) a current of about 3500 amperes at 4 volts. Gradually the current is increased to 6000 amperes. The steel is thus rapidly raised to a dull red heat (sufficient for the purpose), and the current is then gradually reduced again, so that the steel may cool very slowly until it is below about 1100° F., or else it may chill by contact with the mass of cold metal around it, and so become hardened again.

Small furnaces are now coming into use, consisting of baths of metallic salts maintained in the fused condition by passing through the salt an alternating electric current. Such furnaces are found to be very useful for hardening tools, etc., as a very uniform temperature can be maintained.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE RECOVERY OF CERTAIN METALS FROM THEIR SOLUTIONS OR FROM WASTE SUBSTANCES.

When a solution has become spent, and is too highly charged with impurities to be any longer serviceable for electrolytic work, it is desirable so to treat the liquid that the valuable metal is recovered in a form suitable for re-application to the plating work. Such methods as are applicable to the more usual solutions are briefly sketched in this chapter; but it must be understood that they are merely general methods, and modifications of baths by the addition of fresh substances may render recovery by these means incomplete or perhaps impossible; and in many cases the metal may not be entirely regained, even under ordinary circumstances, the amount that is left depending upon the solubility of the precipitated compound in the solution from which it is to be separated.

Cobalt.

The solution should be boiled down until fairly concentrated; if acid (reddens blue litmus-paper), sodium carbonate should be added until it is neutral, or nearly so, but it must still remain clear. The addition now of finely-divided barium carbonate, stirred up in water, will cause the separation of all the iron as peroxide; this is allowed to subside, and the clear liquid containing nearly the whole of the cobalt is poured off. This liquid must be neutral or slightly acidified with acetic acid, and to it must be added an excess of strong solution of potassium nitrite mixed with sufficient acetic acid to prevent it from turning red litmus-paper blue; the whole should be left in a warm place for one or two days. The precipitated double nitrite of cobalt and potassium is then separated from the supernatant liquid, and dissolved in hydrochloric acid; the addition of caustic alkali (potash or soda, not ammonia) to this solution brings down the cobalt practically pure as hydrated oxide, which may be filtered off and dissolved in any acid, the cobalt salt of which it is desired to use. From a simple solution of cobalt, free from iron

and other metals, the pure cobalt may be at once precipitated as hydrated oxide by caustic alkali; but the solution must be boiled, if necessary, until all odour of ammonia has vanished, as the presence of this body interferes with complete precipitation.

Copper.

From acid solutions, fragments of metallic iron suspended in the solution will precipitate all the copper in the metallic state, by simple exchange. Subsequently the copper may be dissolved in warm dilute sulphuric acid containing a small proportion of nitric acid, more of the latter being added by degrees as the action is observed to become less; and in this way it will become converted into copper sulphate, which may be afterwards separated in the form of pure crystals by slow evaporation. The precipitation by iron may be effected by single-cell deposition, as explained in an earlier chapter, by connecting the fragments of iron contained in sulphuric acid within a porous cell, with copper strips placed in the copper solution. This will cause the precipitated metal to deposit upon the copper instead of upon the iron, so that there is no risk of introducing impurities into the spongy copper.

Gold.

From the cyanide solution the gold may be recovered as follows:—Hydrochloric acid is first added in excess, until no further precipitate of gold cyanide is produced; the precipitate is allowed to subside, and is washed twice by pouring water upon it, allowing it to settle, and then pouring away and renewing the water again; then, after filtering, it is dried and fused with an excess of dry sodium carbonate in a clay crucible. But this process is not to be recommended on account of the intensely poisonous nature of the hydrocyanic acid gas, so abundantly evolved during the first treatment with hydrochloric acid; but if it be adopted, this portion of the process must be conducted in a special draught-cupboard, or in the open air with the operator well to the windward of the vessel.

Böttger's method is preferable; he evaporates the whole solution to dryness in a porcelain or enamelled dish, placed over a saucepan containing boiling water. The residue is then to be crushed in a mortar and mixed with an equal weight of lead oxide (litharge) and a thirtieth part of its weight of charcoal powder introduced into a fire-clay crucible and heated to bright redness in a small pot-furnace; a portion of the lead is reduced to the metallic state, and with it will be alloyed all the gold contained in the charge. This alloy is then boiled with nitric acid, in which the lead will dissolve together with any silver or copper that may be present; the gold is left in a finely divided

condition, and after washing may be fused into a single homogeneous mass, or it may be re-dissolved at once to form a fresh gold-bath.

A plate of zinc attached by wire to one of gold, and placed in the original gold-bath, gradually deposits the precious metal upon the gold strip, forming, in fact, a single-cell arrangement, which may be used for recovering the gold directly from the spent solution; but the operation occupies a long time, and other metals are liable to be precipitated subsequently. These latter, however, may be partly separated by boiling with nitric acid, in which gold is insoluble (the separation can never be absolute, because portions of them are locked up within the gold so as to be out of the reach of the acid solvent).

Lead.

From the solution of the oxide in potash, insoluble lead carbonate is produced by bubbling carbonic acid gas through it; this gas is evolved by the action of hydrochloric (muriatic) acid upon chalk or marble contained in a separate vessel which must be closed with a cork through which a tube is passed to conduct the gas to the required spot. The addition of acetic acid to the liquid until it is nearly neutral, followed by the introduction of sodium bicarbonate, will produce the same effect. From the lead acetate solution, sodium carbonate precipitates lead carbonate. This latter substance, however produced, may, after washing, be dissolved in acetic acid, or in any other solvent suited to the particular form of bath which is to be prepared.

Mercury.

This metal is used largely in amalgamating the zinc plates of the galvanic battery, from the residue of which it may subsequently be recovered by distillation. To obtain it pure, it should be distilled *in vacuo*, or at least under reduced pressure; but to recover it fairly clean, in a condition suitable for application once more to amalgamation, the fragments of zinc may be introduced into an iron retort, A (fig. 109), with a tube passing air-tight through one neck of a Woulffe's bottle, B, into water; the other neck of the bottle is connected with a second tube, also dipping beneath water in a second vessel, *d*, as a safeguard against the escape of mercury. On applying heat to the retort by a suitable fire the mercury slowly vaporises, and distilling over, should be entirely condensed in B, any escaping this being collected in *d*. The residue in the retort still contains a little mercury, together with the bulk of the lead and copper originally present in the whole zinc plate, for being more electro-negative than the zinc, the latter dissolves in preference, and leaves the

other metals to accumulate by the amalgamating effect of the mercury. Care should be taken to remove the tube dipping into the water in the Woulffe's bottle before removing the flame from the retort, otherwise water may pass back into the latter.

NICKEL.

From solutions of the double sulphate of nickel and ammonia the green double salt itself is precipitated in a practically pure condition in the form of minute crystals by the addition of successive quantities of a saturated solution of ammonium sulphate, until on standing, and after complete subsidence of the precipitate, the solution is quite decolorised. Advantage is thus taken of the insolubility of the double salt in strong solutions of ammonium sulphate, a fact which was first observed by Unwin. The crystals have only to be filtered, drained free from the liquid

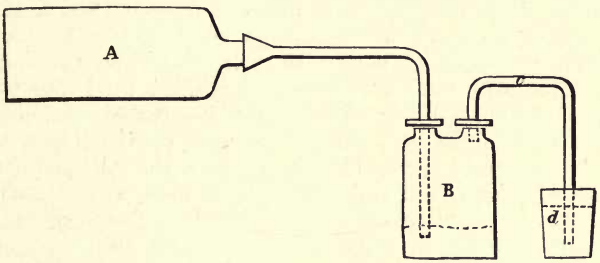


FIG. 109.—Mercury distillation apparatus.

clinging to them, and washed once or twice with a strong solution of ammonium sulphate, and they are ready to form a new bath. The original liquid may with advantage be boiled down to half its bulk, or even less, before applying this treatment.

PLATINUM.

By adding to the bath an excess of a ferrous sulphate solution, and then a caustic alkali, the resulting dark-green coloured precipitate of hydrated ferrous oxide (FeO) will reduce the platinum to the metallic state, and itself become converted to a proportionate extent into ferric oxide (Fe_2O_3). This precipitation should be effected in a covered or corked flask, which should then be allowed to stand for some hours in a warm place, with occasional agitation. On the addition subsequently of an excess of hydrochloric acid, the iron oxides will re-dissolve, but the platinum powder precipitated with them will remain untouched. This finely-divided platinum may then be filtered, washed, and re-dissolved in aqua regia for further use.

Silver.

As in the case of gold solutions, the addition of hydrochloric acid precipitates silver cyanide; but the use of an excess of the acid effects its further conversion into silver chloride. If this precipitate be red in colour the presence of copper cyanide is indicated, which may, however, be effectually removed by boiling it with moderately concentrated hydrochloric acid. The washed silver chloride should then be dried, mixed with soda ash or dried sodium carbonate, and fused in a clay crucible. The acidifying process has the same objections on the score of danger to health, and, therefore, requires the same precautions, as the similar method above described for the treatment of gold solutions.

A second method, allied to the dry process for recovering gold, is also applicable to silver residues. The solution is evaporated to dryness, and the residue is transferred to a crucible, but alone, not mixed with litharge, and fused at a bright red heat. If sufficiently heated, the silver compound, mixed with excess of potassium cyanide and carbonate, will be broken up, and the liquid silver will melt and sink through the fluid slag to the bottom of the pot. When effervescence has ceased, the crucible is removed from the fire, and its contents poured into a hemispherical cast-iron ingot-mould, from which the solidified mass is detached when cold, and broken by a light blow with a hammer, to separate the metal from the slag. The crucible may be used again and again, provided that an examination after each operation reveals no sign of a crack. The fluid contents of the pots may, of course, be allowed to cool *in situ*, by setting the crucible aside on a level surface; but to extract the silver button in this case involves the loss of the pot by fracture. If the heat is insufficient, the silver will remain as a grey spongy mass, from which the slag may be removed by boiling with water containing a small proportion of hydrochloric acid.

The silver should be practically 'fine'; but to ensure the perfect purity of the product, it may be re-fused with carbonate of soda mixed with about one-tenth of its volume of nitre, which will attack the base metals (but not the silver), and cause them to pass into the slag; it will not affect gold or platinum, which are scarcely likely, however, to be present. If small quantities of these metals should by any chance become mixed with the silver, the button must be boiled with pure nitric acid (free from hydrochloric acid), which dissolves silver (and even platinum when present in small proportion with much silver), but leaves the gold as a dark-brown or black powder. But if more than 40 per cent. of gold be present, a certain proportion of silver (increasing with the percentage of gold) will be left with the latter. The silver solution is then filtered from the residue of gold, and is mixed with an excess of hydrochloric acid. In this

way the insoluble silver chloride is formed, which must be filtered, washed, dried, mixed with an equal bulk of sodium carbonate and a little charcoal, and fused at a red heat. Pure silver will thus result, the gold having been left undissolved, while the platinum which had passed into the solution would not be precipitated by the hydrochloric acid, and must, therefore, remain to be extracted from the liquid filtered from the silver chloride precipitate.

CHAPTER XVII.

THE DETERMINATION OF THE PROPORTION OF METAL IN CERTAIN DEPOSITING SOLUTIONS.

In this chapter it is proposed to give outlines of methods by which the depositing solutions of the more important metals in electro-metallurgical use may be assayed, to give at least an

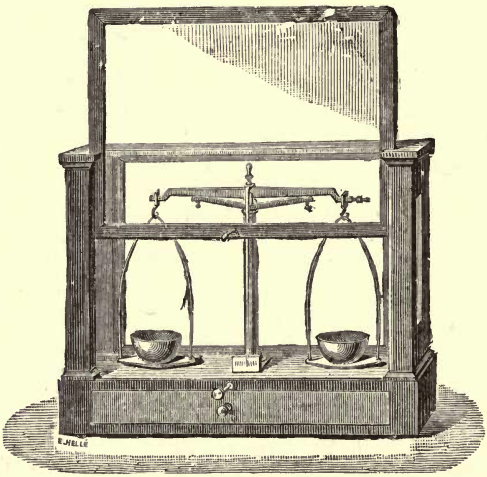


Fig. 110.—Balance.

approximate idea of the quantities contained. For a full explanation of this subject, or for methods of dealing with complicated analytical problems, works on quantitative analysis must be consulted, as it is impossible and undesirable to treat of so wide a subject in detail within the limits of this book.

For this purpose, a fairly delicate balance is essential. It should be enclosed within a glass case, as in fig. 110, to protect it from dust and corrosive fumes, and should be capable of indicating a weight of $\frac{1}{100}$ of a grain. For electrolytic analysis, a

platinum dish, about three-quarters of an inch to an inch in height, and about 3 ins. in diameter, forms a convenient cathode, at once holding the solution and receiving the deposited metal. The anode consists of a circular plate of stout platinum foil about $2\frac{1}{2}$ ins. in diameter, with several perforations to allow gas to escape from beneath it. The platinum sheet is fastened horizontally without solder to the end of a vertical platinum wire attached to the positive pole of the battery, the platinum dish making contact externally with a copper wire attached to the negative pole. Instead of this, a cylinder of platinum foil may be used as cathode, being suspended, with its main axis vertical, within a small beaker, the anode consisting of a coil of platinum wire placed within the cathode. The object of the electrolytic method is to continue the action of the current until every trace of the required metal is precipitated on the platinum cathode; and, as the latter should have been weighed previously, the increase of weight shown after the deposition gives the number of grains of the metal in the quantity of solution taken. The platinum dish should be lightly covered with the two halves of a broken clock glass, 4 ins. in width—that no splashings be lost; these glasses should be rinsed into the solution about a couple of hours before stopping the current. After deposition, the metal must be washed well with water, then rinsed with alcohol, and dried rapidly by heating to the temperature of boiling water.

Antimony.

For the sulphide solution, measure out very accurately half a fluid-ounce of the liquid, transfer it to the weighed platinum dish; dilute it with from 1 to 2 oz. of water; introduce the platinum anode, and pass a current from two Bunsen-cells through the liquid, until a drop of the solution, removed by a glass rod and placed upon a watch-glass, gives no yellow-coloured precipitate (but only white), when mixed with a few drops of hydrochloric acid. Electrolytic experiments of this nature may be conveniently started in the evening, and will be found to be finished on the following morning. When completed, the current is stopped, the anode is removed, the contents of the dish poured into a beaker; the dish rinsed four or five times with pure water, then with alcohol, and finally with a few drops of ether; it is, lastly, deposited in a warm place for a few minutes until the ether has quite evaporated, and is then re-weighed. The increase in weight shows the number of grains of metallic antimony in half an ounce of the original solution.

For the tartar emetic solutions, half an ounce should be taken and mixed with 1 ounce of yellow ammonium sulphide and a like volume of water. It is then electrolysed as before.

Cobalt.

This is a difficult assay for untrained hands—and, indeed, even the simplest methods of dealing with any metal can scarcely be expected to give more than approximate results unless the operator has had some previous training. Probably the best method will be to measure half an ounce of the solution and proceed to obtain the cobalt as the cobalt-potassium nitrite, after the manner described in the last chapter (p. 318). The experiment must, of course, be conducted with great care ; the solutions should be maintained fairly concentrated, and a considerable excess of the potassium nitrite must be used for the precipitation, because the precipitate is less soluble in a liquid containing this salt than in pure water, so that the time required for it to rest in a warm place is shortened—usually one night suffices. The precipitate may then be treated as described, and the second precipitate of hydrated cobalt oxide may be filtered through blotting-paper (see p. 52), washed well, dried on the paper, brushed off from the filter, by means of a camel's-hair brush, into a small weighed porcelain crucible (about an inch in height), heated to dull redness in a smokeless Bunsen-burner or spirit lamp, cooled and weighed in the crucible. The excess of weight over that of the clean crucible gives the weight of the precipitate, which is an oxide of cobalt having the formula Co_3O_4. Multiplying this weight by 0·73 gives the weight of metallic cobalt in the half fluid-ounce of solution taken. If preferred, the nitrite precipitate may be dissolved in a little hydrochloric acid, the solution rendered neutral with ammonia, and a good excess of ammonium oxalate added to produce a clear solution of the double cobalt-ammonium oxalate, which may then be electrolysed in the platinum dish, and the deposited cobalt washed, dried, and weighed as above described for antimony. The solution should be kept warm during electrolysis by resting the dish upon a saucepan of water heated over a gentle flame. The electrolysis must be continued until a drop of the solution gives no black precipitate, or even brown colour, when mixed with a drop of ammonium sulphide in a watch-glass.

Copper.

The simple acid copper solution lends itself so readily to the electrolytic assay, that this would certainly seem to be the most suitable. It is possible to separate every trace of copper from such a solution, so that the method may be made to give absolutely accurate results. The cyanide solution should be acidified with sulphuric acid and boiled until there is no longer any smell of prussic acid, resembling that of bitter almonds. Both these operations must be conducted cautiously and in a

well-ventilated place, on account of the poisonous character of the evolved gas. The latter requires all the more careful handling, because some persons cannot detect it readily by the smell, but only by a sensation in the throat. The liquid is then ready for electrolysis. Half an ounce of either solution may be employed, and electrolysis is continued until the liquid is decolorised, and a drop removed from it strikes no blue colour with an excess of ammonia. The excess-weight of the platinum dish is that of metallic copper in the volume of solution taken.

Gold.

One fluid-ounce of the solution is boiled with an excess of hydrochloric acid in a well-ventilated spot until there is no further smell of hydrocyanic acid; an excess of a clear solution of ferrous sulphate is then added, and the mixture is allowed to stand all night in a warm place. The precipitated gold powder is then filtered from the solution, which should now be quite free from precious metal. It is washed many times on the filter with pure water, and, after drying, is placed with the filter-paper in a small weighed porcelain crucible, and heated over a spirit-lamp or a non-luminous gas-flame, until the paper is completely burnt to a white ash. The crucible is re-weighed with its contents, on cooling, and thus the weight of metallic gold in one fluid-ounce of the liquid is determined. The precipitate is pure gold, so that no further calculation is necessary.

Lead.

Add to half an ounce of the solution 3 ounces of pure water, an excess of sulphuric acid (until a further addition no longer produces a white precipitate) and an equal volume of spirits of wine. Allow the mixture to stand for a few hours; filter off the white lead sulphate precipitate, and wash the precipitate on the filter several times with a mixture of equal volumes of spirits of wine and water. This washing must be very thorough, or the trace of residual acid left in the precipitate will char or weaken the paper when it is dried. A drop from the last washing but one should not redden blue litmus-paper. The paper and contents are dried, the heavy white powder is brushed into a weighed porcelain crucible, heated over a non-luminous flame, cooled and re-weighed. The increase of weight multiplied by 0·683 gives the weight of metallic lead in the sample taken.

Nickel.

To half an ounce of the solution add a fair excess of ammonium sulphate, together with about 4 oz. of water, and then oxalic acid. If this should produce a precipitate, more ammonium sul-

phate must be added until the solution is clear. Excess of ammonia is now introduced, any precipitate is filtered off and washed with water containing ammonia, the washings being added to the filtrate. The filtered solution and washings are then mixed with a further small portion of ammonium oxalate, evaporated to convenient bulk in a porcelain dish, and electrolysed for metallic nickel as above described.

Platinum.

To half an ounce of the solution add an excess of a ferrous sulphate solution, and then excess of caustic potash. The mixture is kept in a warm place for an hour or two with occasional stirring; an excess of hydrochloric acid is now added, so that the liquid reddens blue litmus-paper, and the precipitated metallic platinum, which remains undissolved, is filtered and burned with the paper after the manner described under the heading of Gold in this chapter. The final precipitate should be pure metallic platinum.

Silver.

The solutions may be treated electrolytically, using the current from one Bunsen-cell only, as a stronger current tends to deposit pulverulent or flaky metal which peels off during the process of deposition. The silver is, of course, deposited and weighed in the metallic state.

CHAPTER XVIII.

POWER REQUIRED FOR ELECTROLYTIC WORK.

Calculation of Power required for Electrolysis.—It has been shown in Chapter II. that the power expressed in watts absorbed in electrical work is found by multiplying the strength of current used, expressed in amperes, by its pressure in volts. Hence the power absorbed in any electrolytic vat may be readily determined, provided the current conditions are known. Thus, supposing a P.D. of 0·3 volt is necessary to force an electric current through a certain copper electrotype bath, with a current-density of 10 amperes per sq. ft. of cathode surface, an expenditure of $10 \times 0{\cdot}3$ or 3 watts will be required per sq. ft. of surface, and if the total area of the cathode were 249 sq. ft. there would be needed 3×249 or 747 watts, which is practically 1 H.P. In other words, in such a copper bath as that described, 1 H.P. will be absorbed in the vat itself in the deposition of ten times the electro-chemical equivalent of copper per second on each of the 249 sq. ft. of cathode surfaces used. So that

$$\text{H.P. required per unit area of cathode surface} = \frac{\text{P.D.} \times \text{C.D.}}{746}$$

where P.D. is the potential difference expressed in volts between the anode and cathode, and C.D. is the current density expressed as the number of amperes employed per unit area of cathode.

Using this formula for an alkaline copper bath, in which a P.D. of 4 volts is driving a current of 0·025 amperes per sq. in. of cathode surface through the bath,

$$\text{the H.P. required per sq. in. of surface would be } \frac{4 \times 0{\cdot}025}{746};$$

but, as the square inch is a very small unit for calculations of this magnitude, the equivalent in amperes per sq. ft. may be more conveniently taken (see Table XXIX., p. 391);

$$\text{the H.P. required per sq. ft. of surface would then be } \frac{4 \times 3{\cdot}7}{746} = \frac{14{\cdot}8}{746},$$

which is approximately 0·02 H.P.; but as the H.P. required per sq. ft. of the acid copper bath is $\frac{1}{249}$ H.P. ($=0{\cdot}004$ H.P.), it is

evident that the alkaline bath absorbs almost exactly five times as much power as the acid bath.[1]

In the same way it may be shown that in nickel baths using a P.D. of 2 volts and a C.D. of 3 amperes per sq. ft.,

$$\text{the H.P required per sq. ft. of cathode is } \frac{2\times 3}{746}=\frac{6}{746},$$

or about 0·008 H.P., which is approximately double that used in the acid copper bath.

In silver baths with a P.D. of 0·6 volt and a C.D. of 3 amperes per sq. ft.,

$$\text{the H.P. per sq. ft. of cathode is } \frac{0\cdot 6\times 3}{746}=\frac{1\cdot 8}{746}, \text{ or about } 0\cdot 0024 \text{ H.P.}$$

In all these calculations only the actual power required for the bath has been taken into account. The power required from the generator will be greater, inasmuch as the loss of power in overcoming the resistance of the copper cables and wires used to conduct the current to the baths and that of the various joints and electrical connections in the circuit have been neglected. But with a good arrangement of the plant, so that stout copper leads are used and the baths are in close proximity to the generators, and all joints and connections are thoroughly clean, this loss may be practically negligible. Where, however, a dynamo is used, the conversion of mechanical into electrical energy absorbs an amount of power varying with the size and construction of the dynamo. As a rule the efficiency of the small dynamos used in electroplating is less than that of the larger machines employed in the heavier work of smelting or refining. If the efficiency be taken in round numbers at 85 per cent., it is obvious that the H.P. required from the engine driving the dynamo will have to be in excess of that required for the vat itself (neglecting resistance of leads) in the proportion of 100 : 85, or, in other words, the H.P. of the engine will have to be $1\frac{1}{7}$ times as great as that found by the calculations indicated above.

Board of Trade Units required for Electrolysis.—Electricity is charged for by supply authorities by the Board of Trade unit, which, as already stated, is one kilowatt-hour or a power of 1000 watts passing for one hour. Since the horse-power hour is equal to 746 watt-hours, it is evident that the number of Board of Trade

[1] It is obviously unnecessary to work out these calculations to obtain simply a comparison of the power required to work different baths : it suffices to compare the respective products of P.D. × C.D. Thus the H.P. required for the acid is to that for the alkaline bath in the ratio $0\cdot 3\times 10 : 4\times 3\cdot 7 = 3 : 14\cdot 8$.

Generally, in electro-chemical work, only continuous current has to be considered. If alternating currents are in question, it must be remembered that the power is not necessarily given by the product of voltage and current; this gives the apparent power, but the actual power may be considerably less, as mentioned in Chapter II. (p. 35).

units required per hour for any given work will be approximately $1\frac{1}{3}$ times the horse-power hours required for the same work; and the calculation may be made by the formulæ given above, if 1000 be substituted for 746 in the denominator of the fraction.

The watt is the unit of *activity* or power, and expresses the rate of doing electrical work, just as the horse-power is the mechanical unit of activity, and it is easy to eliminate, if required, the question of time. The term 'horse-power' conveys the idea that work is being done at a rate equivalent to the raising of 550 lbs. through the height of 1 ft. in each second of time during which the power is applied; or, of course, to the lifting of 1 lb. through 550 ft. in each second. Hence, a 'horse-power hour' means that an amount of work has been done equivalent to 550 lbs. being raised through the space of 1 foot during every second for an hour; *i.e.*, since there are 3600 seconds in an hour, to 550 lbs. being lifted through 3600 ft., or 550×3600 lbs. being lifted through 1 ft. during that interval of time. Hence 550×3600 ft. lbs. represents the total energy equivalent to 1 H.P.-hour. Now a current of 1 ampere is one in which 1 coulomb of electricity passes every second. Hence a watt is used to indicate a current in which 1 coulomb of electricity flows per second under a pressure of 1 volt, or one in which 2 coulombs flow per second at a pressure of $\frac{1}{2}$ volt, or 3 coulombs at $\frac{1}{3}$ volt, $\frac{1}{4}$ coulomb at 4 volts, or any number of coulombs at such a pressure that the number of coulombs per second multiplied by the number of volts is unity. The term 'kilowatt-hour' expresses the idea that a current of 1000 amperes, *i.e.*, of 1000 coulombs per second, has been flowing for an hour under a pressure of 1 volt, so that it is equivalent to 1000×3600 coulombs of electricity at a pressure of 1 volt, or 3,600,000 volt-coulombs. It may therefore be 1,800,000 coulombs at 2 volts, 7,200,000 coulombs at $\frac{1}{2}$ volt, 3600 coulombs at 1000 volts, or any other number of coulombs, provided that the product of coulombs $\times$ volts = 3,600,000.

From this the quantity of any metal that may be deposited by a Board of Trade unit of electricity may be found as follows:—

$$\text{Weight in grammes of any metal deposited by B. T. unit} = \frac{\text{Eq.} \times 3{,}600{,}000}{\text{P.D.}},$$

where Eq. is the electro-chemical equivalent in grammes and P.D. is the voltage between the electrodes of the vat.

Since the last column but two in Table XXVIII. (p. 390) shows the weight in grains of each element deposited by a current of 1 ampere in an hour, the figures there given may be utilised for the purpose of calculation to obtain the required result in pounds instead of in grammes. These numbers (which we will term Dep.) are found by converting the electro-chemical equivalent from grammes into grains and multiplying the product by 3600; hence

Dep. is the equivalent of Eq. × 3600 in the above formula, and so

$$\text{weight in grains of any metal deposited by B. T. unit} = \frac{\text{Dep.} \times 1000}{\text{P.D.}}, \text{ or}$$

$$\text{weight in lbs. deposited by B. T. unit} = \frac{\text{Dep.} \times 1000}{\text{P.D.} \times 7000} = \frac{\text{Dep.}}{\text{P.D.} \times 7}.$$

Thus, in the case of the acid copper bath, where a voltage of 0·3 is used,

$$\text{lbs. of Cu deposited from the acid bath by 1 B. T. unit} = \frac{18{\cdot}26}{0{\cdot}3 \times 7} = 8{\cdot}7.$$

With the alkaline bath worked at a pressure of 4 volts, and remembering that the copper is in the cuprous condition, so that its electro-chemical equivalent is double that of the cupric copper in the acid bath,

$$\text{lbs. of Cu deposited from the alkaline bath by 1 B. T. unit} = \frac{36{\cdot}52}{4 \times 7} = 1{\cdot}3.$$

From this it is seen that a given amount of electrical energy will deposit $\frac{8{\cdot}7}{1{\cdot}3}$ $(= 6{\cdot}7)$ times as much copper from the acid bath as from the alkaline bath. That this must be so is obvious from the fact that although the E.M.F.'s applied respectively in the two cases are in the ratio of 0·3 : 4 (or 1 : 13·3), yet a given quantity of electricity deposits twice as much copper from the alkaline as it does from the acid bath, so that the ratio of the energies required is $1 : \frac{13{\cdot}3}{2}$, or nearly 1 : 6·7. At first sight, however, this may seem to be in contradiction to the results of the calculations at the beginning of the chapter, by which it was shown that the power absorbed per sq. ft. of cathode surface in the alkaline bath was 5 (not 6·7) times that required in the acid bath. But the discrepancy is apparent, not real. It must be remembered that the earlier numbers (ratio 5 : 1) represent power absorbed *per unit* of *electrode area*, while the later (ratio 6·7 : 1) represent energy required *per unit of weight of metal deposited*, and the rate of deposition in the acid bath was taken as 10 amp. per sq. ft., whilst in the alkaline bath it was only 3·7 amp. per sq. ft. Making allowance for the fact that in the latter case each ampere deposits twice as much copper as in the former case, the ratio of copper deposited in the two baths is 10 : 7·4 (not 10 : 3·7). That this is correct may be seen from the fact that the ratio 10 : 7·4 is practically the same as the ratio 6·7 : 5.

It must not be forgotten that in these latter calculations, as in the former, the loss of energy in the dynamo or in the motor-dynamo and in the leads has been neglected; and due allowance must be made, as before, for these losses in estimating the gross energy that would be required. It should also be noted that, on account of subsidiary reactions, the amount of metal deposited by

a given quantity of current is never quite in accordance with theory, although, under favourable conditions, it should be nearly so.

Cost of Electricity.—The actual cost of electricity varies enormously, according to the system of generation and distribution. The battery is one of the most costly methods of producing electricity, and by estimating the consumption of material in the battery and calculating the cost there is no difficulty in determining the expenditure required per unit. Professor Ayrton, in his *Practical Electricity*, has worked this out for several cells, taking the lowest cost of materials, at wholesale rates, and excluding prime cost of battery or expenditure on renewal of porous cells or other relatively durable parts. The numbers are as follows, the value of the copper deposited in the battery whilst in use being deducted in the case of the Daniell-cell :—

COST OF 1 BOARD OF TRADE UNIT (Kilowatt-hour).

Using Daniell-cells,	. . . . .	11d.
,, Grove-cells,	. . . . .	1s.
,, Potassium bichromate cells,	. . .	1s. 3d.
,, Leclanché-cells,	. . . . .	1s. 5d.

When the materials are bought at retail prices, the cost per unit of electricity delivered at the terminals of the battery would range from 1s. 6d. to 2s., or even higher.

W. R. Cooper, in his *Primary Batteries*, gives the theoretical cost per unit from a Daniell-cell as 8·4d. and from a chromic acid cell as 14·1d., but it must be remembered that such figures take no account of local action, impurities, handling, manufacture of plates, interest on capital, etc., so that in practice the cost would be very much greater.

The cost per unit of public electricity supply at the consumers' premises varies in different towns, and in some towns according to the quantity required and the purpose to which it is applied. Under favourable circumstances it may be as low as 1d. or 2d. per unit, in other cases it may be 6d. per unit (or more); but in the worst case it is far less costly than battery-current. It must be remembered that a considerable addition is made to the cost by the necessity to convert the current at the town pressure to that at which it is to be used. Using a combination of a small motor and dynamo with, let us say, an efficiency of 80 per cent. each, the combined efficiency is only 64 per cent., and the cost of the current as supplied must be multiplied by say (roughly) 1·5, in order to find the cost per kilowatt-hour at a pressure suitable for distribution to the vats.

In public electricity supply the cost of distribution (that is, the cost of the mains and of their upkeep and the loss of energy by resistance) forms a very large item in the consumer's bill; more-

over, at present, while a large portion of the current generated is still used for lighting purposes, the cost of generation is enormously enhanced by the necessity to put down a plant sufficiently large to cope with the maximum demand for current in the early hours of the evening, when light is most wanted, much of the plant standing idle for the remainder of the day. If the load could be equalised, so that it should be practically constant at all hours of the day, a much smaller plant could be made to yield the same total output. Hence the charge for power is usually less than the charge for lighting purposes.

In large electrical works, where current is constantly required (night and day)—as, for example, in copper refineries—the conditions are much more favourable. In large establishments the generating plant may be larger than that of many of the smaller 'central stations' giving a public supply, so that the greater economy of large plant is utilised to the full, and at the same time a steady current is in continuous use, and the cost of distribution is minimised, because the generating station is close to the place where the current is to be used. Under such circumstances the cost of production per unit need not exceed ½d. where coal is cheap and good, or, say, ¾d., including capital charges and depreciation. It has been calculated that with continuous (night and day) running, where coal is about 4s. or 5s. a ton, the cost per kilowatt-year need not, with the best possible plant, exceed £10, which is equal to 0·27d. per unit.

The price at which electric power can be purchased depends very much upon the size of the undertaking by which it is produced, and also on how many hours per day the energy is used continuously. In the case of electro-chemical work, current is often used day and night continuously, and therefore current is obtainable at very favourable rates for loads of this kind. The electricity undertakings in this country supply a great deal of energy for lighting as well as for power, but since current for lighting is required for a comparatively small number of hours per day (in other words, what is termed the 'load factor' is low), the generating plant is not used continuously to its full extent for light so much as for power, and thus the cost per unit is higher for light owing to capital and other charges. Nevertheless, very low average costs are obtainable, and in some of the largest undertakings the average cost per unit, including capital charges, is about 1½d. or less, and thus it follows that the total cost of producing a unit for power purposes, particularly if the load is more or less continuous, is considerably less than even this low figure. On the other hand, in the case of small undertakings, and where the load is chiefly a lighting one, the cost is much higher, and less favourable rates are obtainable.

Where water-power is available, the price of power depends chiefly upon the cost of developing the power, that is, upon the

cost of the hydraulic works and plant involved. At Niagara the charge per H.P.-year is from £3, 10s.; at Sault Ste. Marie, in Canada, it is a little over £2; whilst in parts of Norway, where conditions are particularly favourable, the cost per H.P.-year is less than £1. E. A. Ashcroft[1] estimates the cost per H.P.-year to be £6, 9s. 6d. by steam plant, £5, 5s. by gas plant, and £1, 10s. to £4 by water-power.

Absorption of Power in Conductors.—In order to ascertain the actual loss of power in conductors, and so to form a true estimate of the waste due to the employment of unnecessarily long or thin leads, it is only necessary to know the resistance of the conductor and the strength of current flowing. When a current flows through a circuit, it is well known that the loss of pressure in any section due to overcoming electrical resistance is proportional to that resistance, so that the amount of power absorbed in any part of the circuit may be found (as in the case of the electrolytic vats described earlier in the chapter) by multiplying the current-strength in amperes by the potential difference at the two ends of the section under examination. So if the difference of potential between the two ends of a wire (say between one terminal of a dynamo and the corresponding terminal of the vat) be known, the loss of power will be $C \times E$, where C = amperes flowing, and E the potential difference in volts between the two ends of the wire. But, since, according to Ohm's law, $C = \frac{E}{R}$, and since, therefore, $E = CR$, E may be eliminated from the expression $C \times E$, and the expression CR may be substituted for it. Thus the loss of power in watts is equal to $C \times CR$ or to C^2R, where R is resistance in ohms; or, *the loss in any rod or wire is found by multiplying its resistance in ohms by the square of the current passing through it.*

Thus if a current of 100 amperes be passed through 50 yards of No. 00 (Imperial standard wire gauge) copper wire, with an area of 0·095 sq. in. in cross section, and a resistance of 0·0128 ohm in all, the loss of power will be $100^2 \times 0{\cdot}0128 = 128$ watts, or almost exactly $\frac{1}{6}$th of a horse-power.

Again with a current of 30 amperes passing through 50 yards of No. 8 (standard W.G.) copper wire with a total resistance of 0·06 ohm, the loss of power will be $30^2 \times 0{\cdot}06 = 54$ watts, or about 0·07 H.P.

In the case of alternating currents the relation is apt to be more complicated and the drop of pressure greater than with the continuous current (see p. 36).

Influence of Size of Conductor on Absorption of Power.—It will be noticed that the loss of power in conductors varies as the *square* of the current-strength. Independently, therefore, of the danger that would accrue through the overheating of a conductor if

[1] *Transactions of the Faraday Society*, vol. iv., 1908.

it be used for too large a current, there is a great and increasing loss of power. Thus, to take two concrete examples :—

It has been shown in the last paragraph that when a current of 30 amperes is passed through 50 yards of No. 8 copper wire, the loss of power is 54 watts or 0·07 H.P.; if 60 amperes were passed, the loss would not be 108 watts or 0·14 H.P., but $60^2 \times 0{\cdot}06$ or 216 watts or 0·28 H.P.; and if 90 amperes were passed the loss would be, not 158 watts or 0·21 H.P., but 486 watts or 0·65 H.P.

As has been mentioned above, the overloading of a wire with current means a rise of temperature which, if the current were in very great excess of normal, might cause risk of fire; but even where there is no such danger to be apprehended, there is not only the greater loss of power already described, but there is an increased resistance and therefore further loss of power, because the conductivity of a wire when warm is inferior to that of the same wire when cold. A general rule at one time adopted was that the sectional area of copper conductors should be calculated for the current which they were to carry in the proportion of 1 sq. in. per 1000 amperes. The Institution of Electrical Engineers, in their revised rules for wiring for the supply of electrical energy, have recommended a formula by which the sectional area of copper wire or cable may be calculated, according to the current to be transmitted, provided the external temperature does not exceed 100° F., the conductors being insulated and laid in casing or tubing—bare wire, being more free to radiate heat, could, of course, take a higher current-density. The formula given by them as the result of careful experiment is—

$$\text{Log } C = 0{\cdot}82 \log A + 0{\cdot}415,$$

or

$$C = 2{\cdot}6A^{0{\cdot}82},$$

where C = current in amperes, and A = area in thousandths of a square inch.

Table XXXVIIA on page 398 shows in Column 2 the maximum current in amperes allowable for wires or cables of different sizes, according to this formula. Column 4 gives the total length of wire or conductor of the size specified in Column 1, along which there will be a P.D. of 1 volt, when the maximum current allowed in Column 4 is passing. From this the loss of power is readily found, because the number of amperes in Column 4 multiplied by 1 volt gives the number of watts converted into heat in overcoming the electrical resistance of the wire along the length named in Column 5. Column 3 gives the corresponding length for the same wire with the current given in Column 2.

To take two examples by way of illustration :—

(1) A No. 18 wire (standard wire gauge) may, under normal conditions of temperature, be allowed to take a current of 4·2

amperes, and with this current passing, the potential of the wire at any one point will be 1 volt higher than it is at a point 18 yards nearer the negative pole of the dynamo or battery; and in every 18 yards of the wire there will be a loss of 4·2 watts with the current of 4·2 amperes flowing.

(2) A cable of 19 strands of No. 20 wire may carry a current, at normal temperature, of 30 amperes, and there will be a P.D. of 1 volt between any two points 26 yards apart, so that the loss of power will be 30 watts for every 26 yards of cable with the maximum current allowable.

Influence of Material of Conductor on Absorption of Power.— It is obvious that, if the loss of electrical energy in a conductor when a constant current is flowing through it varies with the resistance of the conductor, the absorption of power in wires of the same sectional area but made of different metals will vary in inverse proportion to the conductivities of the metals used. Thus, for example, since the relative conductances (see p. 31) of copper and iron are approximately 100 : 16, an iron wire will absorb $\frac{100}{16}$ or rather more than 6 times as much power as a copper wire of the same diameter and length; and the current of 100 amperes which causes a loss of nearly $\frac{1}{6}$th H.P. in 50 yards of copper wire of No. 00 gauge (see pp. 335, 336) will cause a loss of about 1 H.P. in 50 yards of an iron wire of the same gauge.

CHAPTER XIX.

MODERN THEORIES OF ELECTROLYSIS.

Modern Theories of Electrolysis.—Within the last few years much work has been done in the field of electro-chemistry, tending to explain the phenomena of electrolysis. It would be impossible, even if it were desirable, in the short space here available to describe this work in detail; and they who would study the subject exhaustively must, therefore, be referred to some of the larger text-books dealing with the theories of electro-chemistry. A short survey of one or two of the principal observations and theories is, however, here necessary.

It should be observed that although the theory of ionic dissociation is very widely accepted as the true explanation of electrolysis, or at least as a very useful working hypothesis, it is based upon premises which are distasteful, and even repugnant, to a number of eminent physical chemists. It has done so much, however, to advance electro-chemical knowledge, and is accepted by so large a number of thinkers, that the author has endeavoured to give a few broad outlines of the theory.

Solution Pressure.—It is well known that many substances, such as gold and silver, are insoluble in water; whilst others, such as copper sulphate, silver nitrate, and potassium cyanide are readily soluble, and that the degrees of solubility of the different members of the latter class are very varied. Each soluble compound has its own constant degree of solubility under constant conditions—thus 37 parts of crystallised copper sulphate, and no more, are always soluble in 100 parts of pure water at 10° C. But the solubility of each substance is largely dependent on temperature.

Now this phenomenon is comparable with certain phenomena connected with vaporisation. Water, at all temperatures, tends to evaporate, and the higher the temperature the greater is the tendency to do so. Nevertheless, at any one temperature the tendency is always constant and can be measured; it is known as the *vapour pressure* of water. The 'vapour pressure' of a liquid expresses, then, its tendency to pass into the form of vapour. The corresponding tendency of a solid to pass into

solution, when immersed in a solvent such as water, is known as its *solution pressure*, and this solution pressure is constant under any given set of conditions, but varies definitely with a definite change of the conditions.

Osmotic Pressure.—It is well known that when a liquid is placed in contact with air in a closed vessel, evaporation goes on steadily until the air becomes 'saturated'; thus, water introduced into the bottom of a dry bottle evaporates until the air in the bottle is saturated with water vapour, and then the evaporation ceases. As the vapour passes into the air, it exerts a pressure in the atmosphere within the bottle, and the partial pressure of this vapour tends to prevent further evaporation, until at last the pressure of the accumulated vapour in the air is equal to the pressure or tendency of the water particles to vaporise, and equilibrium is attained. Similarly, when a soluble substance is placed in (say) pure water, it passes, at first, rapidly into solution, owing to its solution pressure, but, as the dissolved molecules accumulate in the water, they exert a back pressure, similar to the back pressure of the water vapour in air, and so gradually lessen the tendency of the solid to dissolve, until at last the point of equilibrium is reached, when the back pressure of the dissolved particles equals the solution pressure of the substance. This back pressure is known as *Osmotic Pressure*, and is susceptible of measurement. Just as the motion of the particles of any gas, when mixed with another gas, causes the one to diffuse into the other, until they are uniformly mixed, so does the motion of the molecules of a dissolved substance cause diffusion until the mixture is uniform; but in the case of solutions, owing to the greater density of the solvent, diffusion is vastly more slow than in the case of gases.

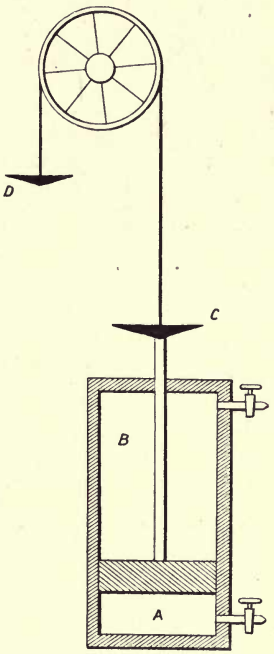


FIG. 111.

If a cylinder with a counterpoised piston (fig. 111), sliding air-tight within it, be so arranged that there is air in the space A beneath the piston, while the space B above it is rendered vacuous, the pressure of the air in A will cause the balanced piston to rise until it touches the top of the cylinder, but if weights are placed on the tray C, they will counteract the expansive pressure of the air, and the piston will be forced downward to some extent, the

greater the weight on C the greater being the compression of the air in A. Equilibrium will be attained only when the expansive pressure in A exactly equals the compressive pressure exerted by the weights on the piston, for the rising of the piston is due to the expansive force of the air in A.

If, instead of air, a solution, say of sugar in water, is placed in A, and B is left vacuous, there can be no expansion, because the liquid in A is incapable of expanding like a gas; yet the dissolved sugar has the same *tendency* to expand—that is, to diffuse through a larger volume—as had the air in the former experiment. To show this tendency, it is only necessary to provide, in place of the vacuum, a substitute which will enable the sugar to diffuse as air expands into a vacuum. This can be effected by filling the space B with pure water and using a piston made of a porous material, through which water, but not dissolved sugar particles, can pass freely. Water can now pass from A into B or *vice versa*, but the sugar, being unable to pass through the piston, must all remain in A. The expansive force (*i.e.*, the osmotic pressure) of the sugar in the solution in A now becomes effective (but, of course, very slowly), because water passes freely through the piston as the latter rises, and the pure water passing into A from above plays the part of the vacuum through which the sugar particles can diffuse; the diffusion will be found to take place gradually until the material is evenly distributed through the liquid and the piston has risen to the top of the cylinder. By placing weights on C, the osmotic pressure of the dissolved sugar could be counterbalanced, and this pressure, at any position of the piston, *i.e.*, at any degree of dilution, could be measured. Not exactly in this way, but by an analogous method, the osmotic pressures of various substances have been determined.

Speaking generally, and referring mainly to very dilute and therefore unsaturated solutions, it is worthy of note that such substances when in solution seem to obey the ordinary laws of gases. It is even true that the actual pressure exerted by each molecule of the substance in the dilute solution is the same as if it were in the gaseous state diffused through a space equal to the volume of the solution. Further, Boyle's law is obeyed, for the osmotic pressure exerted in a given volume of the solution is proportional to the number of molecules present. Thus, the osmotic pressure exerted by 20 grains of sugar in a cubic inch of water is just double that exerted by 10 grains in the same volume. So also is Avogadro's law applicable, for equal numbers of molecules of different substances exert equal osmotic pressures; thus the pressure exerted by 500 molecules of sugar in a given volume of water would be the same as that caused by 500 molecules of alcohol, although the actual weights present in the two cases would be in the proportion of 342 : 46, which are the respective molecular weights of the two compounds.

Electrolytes. — The osmotic pressures exerted by certain substances do not, at first sight, obey the law last quoted. Solutions of organic substances in solvents such as benzene or ether, or of many soluble substances in water, behave generally in accordance with the law. But the whole class of substances known as electrolytes, when dissolved in water, behave abnormally. The osmotic pressures of their solutions are in excess of the normal. In very dilute solutions, the pressure exerted by such substances as sodium chloride (NaCl), hydrochloric acid (HCl), potassium nitrate (KNO_3) and silver nitrate ($AgNO_3$), give about twice the pressure that an equal number of molecules of (say) sugar or alcohol dissolved in the same volume of liquid would show, and it is remarkable that these substances are the salts or compounds of monovalent atoms. Similarly, such substances as copper chloride ($CuCl_2$) and potassium sulphate (K_2SO_4) give nearly three times the normal pressure; and these are the compounds of divalent metals or acids. It is supposed, then, that each molecule of the salt in the very dilute solution breaks up, in the case of those substances which exhibit twice the normal pressure into two parts, and in the case in which the pressure is thrice the normal into three parts, each of the dissociated parts then producing as high an osmotic pressure as the whole molecule would produce. Analogies for this are to be found—for example, the vapour density of heated ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) is only half the normal, owing to the fact that the vapour of the salt dissociates at high temperatures into HCl and NH_3, and thus occupies twice the volume that would be required for the undissociated vapour at the same temperature.

Ions.—The theory, then, assumes that sodium chloride, NaCl, when dissolved in a large volume of water, becomes broken up into the two separate parts Na and Cl; that hydrochloric acid dissociates into H and Cl; potassium nitrate into K and NO_3, and silver nitrate into Ag and NO_3, each molecule forming two separate simpler entities, which are known as *Ions*, and are recognisable as the materials that are deposited at the electrodes of a solution undergoing electrolysis. Again copper chloride ($CuCl_2$) breaks up into three parts ($Cu + Cl + Cl$), as does also potassium sulphate K_2SO_4 ($K + K + SO_4$). At first sight it seems contrary to all the teachings of chemistry that two such substances as Na (sodium) and Cl (chlorine) should exist uncombined in the same aqueous solution, especially as sodium is known to decompose water with great violence, and chlorine is distinguished by a most unpleasant smell that is entirely lacking in solutions of pure sodium chloride (common salt). But it is certain that even if they be diffused as ions through the liquid, they do not exist in the condition familiar to chemists. It is assumed that the ions carry heavy charges of electricity, those of metals carrying positive charges, and those of non-metals (chlorine and the like) or

acid radicals—*i.e.*, certain non-metallic groups of atoms (such as NO_3 or SO_4)—carrying negative charges. It is supposed that the charges of all monovalent ions are equal, and that the charge of every divalent ion is double, and that of each trivalent ion is three times, that of a monovalent ion, and so on. Hence sodium chloride is assumed to dissociate into the sodium ion, Na, with a positive charge, and the chlorine ion, Cl, with an exactly equal (but opposite) negative charge, the resulting electrical effect in the solution being *nil*, because the free ions are diffused equally through the solution, and the positive electricity of the one set exactly neutralises the negative electricity of the other. So also with silver nitrate, the positive charges of the silver ions, Ag, exactly neutralise the negative charges of the NO_3 ions. In the case of copper chloride, the divalent copper ion, Cu, carries a double charge of positive electricity, which is neutralised by the two singly charged monovalent chlorine ions (Cl + Cl), separated simultaneously with the Cu at the moment of dissociation.

The actual weight of an ion must be exceedingly small, but can only be roughly derived. Since, however, its chemical formula or symbol is known, it is convenient in making calculations to think of it as having a gramme-equivalent weight; the weight of a silver gramme ion would thus be its atomic weight in grammes, viz., 108 grammes (nearly), and that of a NO_3 gramme ion would be $(N = 14) + (O_3 = 48) = 62$ grammes. The actual electrical charge of such a monovalent ion is regarded as 96,540 coulombs, which is the exact quantity of electricity necessary to deposit precisely one equivalent weight of the ion in grammes, viz., 1 gramme of hydrogen or 108 grammes of silver.

Electrolytic Conduction.—It is especially to be noted that solutions of substances which do not show some sign of dissociation in solution are non-conductors of electricity. Water alone does not dissociate, and is, therefore, when pure, practically a non-conductor; and the addition of sugar (which does not dissociate) cannot render it a better conductor, whereas the presence of a mere trace of an acid or a salt (such as sodium chloride, or copper sulphate) capable of dissociation into ions, renders it to some extent a conductor at once. There would appear, therefore, to be a direct connection between the separation of the salt into ions, or *Ionisation* as it is termed, and its power of conducting electricity. It would seem that when a current of electricity is led through a solution, it is conducted onward by the separate ions existing in the solution, each carrying its own charge and conveying the electricity piecemeal, so to speak, from one electrode to the other. Every ion takes a definite charge, and the transfer of electricity is accompanied by a migration of the ions. As the ions carry definite charges and have definite weights, it is evident that the transport of electricity is accompanied by, and proportional to, the transport of matter, every 96,540 coulombs of electricity being accompanied

by 1 gramme ion (or atom) of a monovalent element such as sodium (weighing 23 grammes), or of silver (weighing 108 grammes), or of chlorine (weighing 35·5 grammes); or by one gramme equivalent of a divalent ion such as copper (weighing $\frac{63{\cdot}5}{2}$ grammes) or of sulphur tetroxide (SO_4) weighing $\frac{96}{2}$ grammes. Thus Faraday's laws of electrolysis follow as a matter of course from the ionisation theory. The electrical charge is essential to the existence of an ion, and if it be removed, the ion at once becomes converted into the corresponding element (or group of elements) with the properties so familiar in chemistry.

Electrolytic Solution Pressure.—It has been stated above that a soluble salt passes into solution when placed in a solvent, and that it has a certain solution pressure. A salt is made up of a combination of a positive with a negative ion, and the solution of the salt, accompanied by a partial ionisation, does not affect the apparent electrical condition of the solution. If, however, a metal such as zinc be placed in water, and zinc ions be formed in the solution, each of such ions must take a definite charge of electricity, so that positively charged ions would then exist in the solution without any balance of negatively charged ions. But if any portion of zinc did so pass into solution as an ion, there would necessarily be liberated at the same moment an equal and opposite charge of negative electricity in the zinc plate, because it is not possible to generate either positive or negative electricity alone. The solution would thus be positively charged, and the zinc negatively, and this would counteract any tendency for more zinc ions to take up charges and pass into solution. The special tendency of any metal to ionisation when placed in a liquid is known as the *Electrolytic Solution Pressure*, to distinguish it from the 'solution pressure' of salts. But, as in the case of solution pressure, electrolytic solution pressure is opposed by osmotic pressure; thus, if a metal were placed in a solution of one of its own salts, the osmotic pressure of the ions of that metal already in the solution would tend to prevent the passage of fresh ions of the same kind into the liquid. If the osmotic pressure were less than the electrolytic solution pressure of the metal, ions would tend to pass into solution and to charge the solution positively, while the metal itself would, up to a certain point, be charged negatively, as already shown; but if the osmotic pressure were greater than the electrolytic solution pressure, it would not only prevent the passage of fresh metallic ions into the solution, but would contrariwise tend to deposit some of the positive ions from the liquid on to the metal, so that the metal would be positively charged, and the negatively charged ion set free in the solution would impart to the liquid a negative charge; whilst, if the osmotic pressure were exactly equal to the electrolytic solution

pressure, no change at all would be observable, as the system would be in stable equilibrium. It has actually been observed that the so-called electro-positive metals, such as potassium and sodium, zinc, cadmium, and iron, are charged negatively when placed in solutions of their salts, whilst such metals as copper, mercury, gold, and platinum, having electrolytic solution pressures that are low as compared with their osmotic pressures, usually become charged with positive electricity.

It is thus possible to arrange the metals in an order corresponding to their behaviour in this respect. In this way we obtain again the electro-chemical series, as it has been given above, and find a new explanation of the series. Some idea of the actual electrolytic solution pressures of certain common metals is gained from the following numbers, taken from Le Blanc:—

	Atmospheres.		Atmospheres.
Zinc,	$=9{\cdot}9\times10^{18}$	Lead,	$=1{\cdot}1\times10^{-3}$
Cadmium,	$=2{\cdot}7\times10^{6}$	Hydrogen,	$=9{\cdot}9\times10^{-4}$
Iron,	$=1{\cdot}2\times10^{4}$	Copper,	$=4{\cdot}8\times10^{-20}$
Cobalt,	$=1{\cdot}9$	Mercury,	$=1{\cdot}1\times10^{-16}$
Nickel,	$=1{\cdot}3$	Silver,	$=2{\cdot}3\times10^{-17}$

It will be noticed that some of these values are enormously high, and some extremely small. It should be remembered, however, that such figures only represent the striving of the molecules to pass into the ionic state, or the osmotic pressures which the metallic ions already in solution would have to exert to prevent ionisation of the metal. No such pressures have been directly or indirectly observed.

But there is a very close connection between the heat that would be generated by the chemical changes taking place in such a cell, if no current were produced, and the electro-motive force of any current that is generated. It thus appears that, in the case of electro-positive metals, heat is generated when a metal passes into the ionic condition, and this is termed the heat of ionisation. It is not rendered sensible in electro-chemical operations because it is converted into electrical energy, and this is expended to a large extent outside the cell in which the action has taken place. The heat of ionisation for certain metals has been calculated by Ostwald, as shown (expressed in calories) in the following Table:—

Metal.	Symbol and Valency.	Heat of Ionisation of 1 Equivalent Weight.	Metal.	Symbol and Valency.	Heat of Ionisation of 1 Equivalent Weight.
		Grm. cals.			Grm. cals.
Potassium .	K′	61,000	Cadmium .	Cd″	8,100
Sodium .	Na′	56,300	Cobalt .	Co″	7,300
Magnesium .	Mg″	53,400	Nickel .	Ni″	6,800
Iron . .	Fe″	10,000	Copper .	Cu″	− 8,800
Zinc . .	Zn″	16,300	Silver . .	Ag′	−26,200

Thus a given quantity of electricity is conducted equally by equivalent weights of all metals alike, but the electro-motive force necessary to set the particles in continuous motion varies with different ions, and depends upon conditions intimately connected with the heats of formation of the compounds in use. So, also, the force with which an ion clings to its electrical charge varies with, and is measurable by, the heat of ionisation, those metals which evolve the most heat in becoming converted into ions requiring the greatest expenditure of energy to make them relinquish their charges and re-assume the metallic state. This must evidently be so, the heat absorbed in the latter process being exactly equal to that evolved in the former.

Simple Exchange of Metals.—It has been shown that when a metal (*e.g.*, zinc) is placed in water it tends to form ions, but that the tendency is checked by the fact that the positive charges necessary to the independent existence of the ions can only be derived from the rest of the zinc, which must, therefore, become charged negatively, so that ionisation stops almost as soon as it has begun.

It is evident also that no appreciable proportion of any ions, whether positive or negative, can exist in a solution without being accompanied by a number of ions of the opposite kind, carrying in all a charge equal and opposite to their own, otherwise the solution would give evidence of strong electrification. Water is but slightly dissociated into its ions hydrogen (H) and hydroxyl (OH). If now zinc be placed in water, and if we suppose it to displace hydrogen (as we shall shortly see that it does in sulphuric acid), then zinc (Zn) and OH ions would exist side by side in the solution. The chemical compound, zinc hydroxide $Zn(OH)_2$, represented by this combination, is, however, one which is comparatively insoluble in water, that is to say, it scarcely dissociates into ions at all. Hence, if zinc is to have any action on water in which it is immersed, it must rob hydrogen ions of their charges and set free the hydrogen as a gas and form, instead, free Zn and OH ions; but the action must stop almost at once, because solid undissolved and insoluble zinc hydroxide $Zn(OH)_2$ would be formed on the surface of the zinc, and so gradually prevent further contact between the water and the zinc. But when an acid, sulphuric acid for example, is substituted for water, the action is different, for zinc sulphate ($ZnSO_4$) is soluble in water. Sulphuric acid in aqueous solution is largely dissociated into the ions H and SO_4; and hydrogen is an element which has a much lower electrolytic solution pressure than zinc—or, in other words, its ions cling to their charges of positive electricity far less tenaciously than do the zinc ions. Hence the greater electrolytic solution pressure of the zinc tends to carry zinc ions into the solution; and this is now possible, because, by contact with hydrogen ions already in the solution, the

metallic zinc particles are able to take up the charges of positive electricity necessary to convert them into ions. In this process the hydrogen ions lose their charges, and, therefore, their existence as ions, and the hydrogen is deposited in the gaseous state. This, then, is the explanation of the observed fact that zinc, when placed in sulphuric acid, evolves bubbles of hydrogen gas. Similarly, zinc in copper sulphate solution deposits copper by exchange; and any metal tends to pass into solution as an ion when it has the opportunity of taking the charges from the ions of another metal of lower electrolytic solution pressure contained in the solution. Only those metals whose electrolytic solution pressure is higher than that of hydrogen are able to evolve the latter element as a gas, when dipped into a solution containing free hydrogen ions, *i.e.*, into an acid. It follows, also, that the acids which are the most completely ionised in solution (that is to say, the acids whose solutions contain the greatest number of free ions) are those in which the zinc and hydrogen exchange places most readily—because in such solutions there must be the largest number of free hydrogen ions in contact with the metal. It is found that the so-called strong acids—sulphuric, hydrochloric, and nitric acids—are those which are most completely dissociated into ions when mixed with water, and this, of course, explains the readiness with which they act upon metals, such as zinc. Acetic acid and the organic acids, as a class, dissociate but little, and therefore have proportionately slight action on zinc.

It is, then, obvious that the heat evolved by the action of an acid upon a metal is equal to the difference between the heat of ionisation of the metal (as it passes into the ionic state) in solution, and that of the hydrogen ions as they assume the gaseous or elementary condition).

In such a solution zinc will continue to dissolve until the solution is saturated with it; but the action will go on more and more slowly, because the accumulation of zinc ions in the liquid will cause an increasing osmotic pressure, which opposes the entrance of more zinc ions into the bath, and because the free hydrogen ions are gradually replaced by zinc ions.

The Various Cases of Solution.—It is well to distinguish between the different kinds of solution which commonly occur. From what has been said it will be gathered that, first, there is the solution of a non-electrolyte, such as sugar, which dissolves in, say, water with a certain solution pressure. Secondly, there is the case of a compound solid, such as sodium chloride, which dissolves in water, also with a certain solution pressure, and which in the process of solution dissociates into ions. In neither of these cases is there ordinary chemical change as expressed by an equation. Thirdly, we have the case of a simple metallic body, such as sodium, which can dissolve only by decomposing the solvent, and, since solution takes place in the ionised condition

(single ions being produced instead of pairs of combined ions being separated), the solvent action can only be effected by driving another ion, such as hydrogen, having a lower electrolytic solution pressure, on to the metal, where it is liberated. If the electrolytic solution pressure is sufficiently great, solution continues until the water is all decomposed. Fourthly, there is the case of a metal such as zinc, whose solution pressure is sufficient to enable the zinc to replace hydrogen, but only to a comparatively small extent. In thus speaking of zinc, reference is made to pure, or practically pure, zinc. The hydrogen thrown down on to the zinc prevents any considerable action; but if the zinc is coupled up in the sulphuric acid to an electro-negative metal, such as platinum or copper, solution of the zinc continues and the hydrogen is then liberated on the electro-negative element. It is this class of solution which is important for voltaic action. If the electrolytic solution pressure of a metal is so high that it decomposes the solvent readily, then it is useless for voltaic purposes, because solution takes place whether the circuit is closed or not, and thus the chemical energy cannot be converted into electrical energy.

Simple Cells.—If two isolated plates of metal are immersed in an electrolyte, each will exert its own electrolytic solution pressure and will become negatively or positively charged, according to the nature of the metal. Possibly neither will have a sufficiently high solution pressure to dissolve to an appreciable extent. But if the two plates are joined externally by a wire, a different state of things is set up. The metal with the greater solution pressure, and therefore more highly charged negatively, will receive positive electricity from the other plate, and its charge being thus reduced, it will be free to pass more ions into solution; on the other hand, the plate with the smaller solution pressure, owing to its altered electrical condition, will be free to have hydrogen ions precipitated upon it and thus to have its electrical state maintained. It should be noticed that in such a case the hydrogen no longer appears on the metal that is passing into solution, but on the other plate.

Thus there will be set up a flow of positively charged ions through the solution from the metal which has the higher solution pressure to the other plate, and of negatively charged ions in the opposite direction; and the electro-motive force which causes this circulation will depend mainly upon the difference between the electrolytic solution pressures of the two electrode-metals, or in other words, the difference between their heats of ionisation.

To take a concrete example. Copper and zinc plates are separately immersed in sulphuric acid. The electrolytic solution pressure of zinc is higher than that of hydrogen, so that simple exchange takes place: hydrogen ions are converted into hydrogen

molecules which escape in the form of gas at the copper plate if the circuit is closed (as we have just seen in the preceding section), and zinc molecules are changed into ions, each (divalent) zinc ion taking its positive charge from two hydrogen ions and passing into the solution, whilst the excess energy of this change is rendered evident in the form of heat, so that the metal and solution become sensibly warmer. The copper has a negative solution pressure, and so does not displace any hydrogen. Perfectly pure zinc does not deposit hydrogen (*i.e.*, decompose dilute acid) when simply immersed, the action no doubt being stopped after the first instant by the negative charge of the metal as already described, and ionisation can only proceed if by some means sufficient charges of positive electricity can be supplied to satisfy the ions of zinc. This is effected when the zinc and copper plates are united by a wire. The copper has a positive charge when immersed in the acid, and can now give up some of its charge through the wire to the zinc. The positive charge of the copper is renewed at the expense of hydrogen ions on its surface, which thus become converted into free hydrogen gas. In this way it is possible to picture the higher solution pressure of the zinc tending to force the atoms of this metal to take up their proper charges of positive electricity and so to become ions, and to pass through the solution towards the copper, to which the weaker hydrogen ions in front of them give up their charges; the positive charges of the hydrogen are thus imparted to the copper plate, and, passing through the wire, assist in the ionisation of zinc. This action can evidently go on until all the free hydrogen ions have given up their charges through the copper plate and the wire to zinc ions, that is, until all the free acid is neutralised and only zinc sulphate exists in solution. It is obvious that the action could not proceed if zinc ions were to give up their charges at the surface of the copper and be there deposited, because the expenditure of energy required to form zinc ions at one plate would be exactly equalled by that required to discharge the ions and deposit metallic zinc at the other plate; and there would be no force available to cause the circulation of the ions. The falling off in the strength of a copper-zinc battery can, of course, be explained partly by the gradual diminution in the number of free hydrogen ions available at the surface of the copper plate, as they are, little by little, replaced by zinc ions, but chiefly by the polarisation caused by the gaseous hydrogen deposited on the copper having a higher solution pressure than that metal, so that the difference between the solution pressures at the two plates is much lower than it was when the zinc was opposed to copper alone. Thus, at first, the potential difference between zinc and copper would be represented by the difference between the electrolytic solution pressures of zinc and copper. But as this pressure is in each case measured by the potential difference

between the metal and the solution in which it is immersed, the *potential difference* (written P.D. for the sake of brevity) between copper and zinc in sulphuric acid would be:—P.D. between copper and sulphuric acid *minus* P.D. between zinc and sulphuric acid. The P.D. of copper and sulphuric acid is about 0·5, or, as it may be written, +0·5, because the copper becomes charged with positive electricity, and the P.D. of zinc and sulphuric acid is about 0·6, or, as it must now be written, −0·6, because the zinc is charged negatively. Hence the initial P.D. between copper and zinc is $+0{\cdot}5-(-0{\cdot}6)=0{\cdot}5+0{\cdot}6=1{\cdot}1$ volts. Owing, however, to polarisation, the P.D. almost immediately falls off, so that usually only 0·7 or 0·8 volt is observed.

If cadmium had been used instead of copper, the P.D. of the two metals would have been much less, because the electrolytic solution pressure of cadmium is relatively high.

The P.D. of cadmium and sulphuric acid is about −0·2 (cadmium being charged negatively), so that the P.D. of cadmium and zinc is $-0{\cdot}2-(-0{\cdot}6)=-0{\cdot}2+0{\cdot}6=+0{\cdot}4$. In this case each metal becomes charged negatively when immersed alone, but the cadmium, having the lower electrolytic solution pressure, takes the place of the copper and acts as the positive pole or cathode. If silver were substituted for copper, the E.M.F. would be even greater than that between zinc and copper, because the solution pressure of silver is lower than that of copper. The E.M.F. of silver and zinc in sulphuric acid would then, at first, be about $+0{\cdot}7-(-0{\cdot}6)=0{\cdot}7+0{\cdot}6=1{\cdot}3$ volts. In every case, however, the P.D. would rapidly fall off owing to polarisation.

Local Action.—No further explanation of impure zinc dissolving in acid without being opposed to a plate of a metal of lower electrolytic solution pressure is necessary, as the effect of local action described on p. 39 can obviously be as readily harmonised with the new theories as with the old. Local action is seen to be due to electro-negative impurities having a lower electrolytic solution pressure than that of zinc.

Two-fluid Cells.—It has been seen that no action could be anticipated if pure zinc and copper be opposed to one another in a normal solution of zinc sulphate containing no free hydrogen ions. If, now, a porous partition be placed across the cell between the two plates, and sulphuric acid be poured into the portion containing the zinc, and normal zinc sulphate solution, free from acid, into the half containing the copper, no appreciable action could be expected, because, although the zinc is immersed in acid, and there is no osmotic pressure tending to retard its solution, yet the solution or ionisation of any of the zinc could only occur if deposition of ions took place at the surface of the copper, and the only ions that could be there deposited would be zinc, which it has already been shown will not be thrown down. If, however, the

sulphate of zinc be placed in the zinc compartment, and the sulphuric acid on the copper side, action will take place freely: the tendency of zinc to ionise will be accompanied by the tendency of the hydrogen ions to give up their charges to the copper, and so the action will proceed, zinc ions from the zinc sulphate travelling through the porous partition into the copper compartment, forcing the hydrogen ions before them into contact with the copper, and making room for fresh zinc ions behind.

Other two-fluid cells may also be explained according to the newer theories. Thus in the Daniell-cell, the zinc is immersed in sulphuric acid or in zinc sulphate contained in a porous pot, the copper in copper sulphate. Here, in the former case, the zinc can be readily ionised, and can displace some of the hydrogen ions in the acid, which pass through the porous cell into the copper sulphate solution, and there displace copper ions which deposit on the copper plate, and impart their charges through the connecting wire to the zinc, and so enable it to become ionised. The zinc at the outset has not to contend against any back osmotic pressure, seeing that there are no zinc ions in the solution initially, whilst the deposition of the copper ions is actually assisted by the osmotic pressure of the copper ions in the copper sulphate solution outside the porous cell. The battery is obviously constant, as the element which is de-ionised is the same as that on which it is deposited; and it is, moreover, clear that the solution outside the porous pot should be kept saturated with copper sulphate, not only because there will then be always in contact with the copper a sufficiency of free copper ions to give up the quantity of electricity necessary to charge the zinc as it is ionised, without calling upon any free hydrogen ions that may be at hand (and which are more reluctant to give up their charges than are copper ions), but because the greatest assistance is to be derived from the osmotic pressure of the copper salt when the solution is most nearly saturated.

It is most important here to observe that the newer theories afford an explanation of the fact that if two pieces of the same metal (connected together) be immersed on different sides of a porous division, in solutions of the same substance but of different strengths, a current is produced. Thus, suppose a strip of copper, bent into the shape of a ∩, be immersed in a cell divided by a porous partition into two compartments, so that one of the limbs rests in a strong solution, and the other in a weak solution of copper sulphate, the electrolytic solution pressure of the copper is, of course, the same in both fluids, but in a stronger solution it is opposed by a greater osmotic back pressure than it is in the weaker solution. Hence there will be a tendency for the copper to dissolve in the compartment containing the weaker solution and to send its ions through this solution to the porous partition, and through this to the stronger side. Thus the current

flows through the solution from the copper plate in the weak liquid to that in the strong, and thence through the copper strip outside the cell back to the original plate. Meanwhile, anions charged with negative electricity are supposed to be passing from the cathode through the solution towards the anode, and are so migrating from the cathode cell through the porous division to the anode cell (*vide inf.*). It is true that, even if one solution were one hundred times as strong as the other, the potential difference between the two plates could not amount to one quarter of a volt. But it is a fact that must be borne in mind in practical working, as it shows the necessity for keeping the solutions uniform in strength, and explains why, if a plated article be left in a bath which is not well mixed, the deposit may dissolve off the portion that is immersed in the weaker solution and thicken on the other portions. This action may, of course, be greatly assisted by any concentration of acid in the one portion, and by the difference in conductance of the solutions, but it must be remembered that it will occur wherever there is a difference in the concentration of ions in different parts of the same liquid, even though only a mere trace of acid may be present. The use of a porous pot is not, of course, essential; provided the two solutions of unequal concentration are in contact with one another, and each with one of the copper strips, the latter being joined by a metallic connection. The phenomenon is therefore observable if a single piece of copper be so immersed in a solution of copper that one part of the metal rests in a stronger portion of the liquid than does the rest of the metal.

Electrolysis.—After what has been said concerning the theory of batteries, the elementary explanation of the mechanism of electrolysis according to these hypotheses should be simple. Two plates are immersed in a uniform solution. The solution must be one in which a neutral salt is wholly or in part dissociated into ions, charged respectively with positive and negative electricity, otherwise it could not act as a conductor of electricity. The plates are connected to the opposite poles of a generator of electricity, so that one, the anode, is kept supplied with positive electricity at a certain potential, and the other with negative electricity. Immediately the positively charged ions, which had previously been in motion without any uniformity of direction, will commence to move in a constant direction from the plate which is receiving a constant supply of positive electricity towards that—the cathode—which is supplied with negative electricity, and the ions which carry negative charges will also have imparted to them uniformity of direction, but opposite to that of the positive ions, namely, towards the positively charged anode. Thus there will be a stream of positive ions moving towards the cathode and there giving up their charges and being converted from the ionic to the neutral or elementary condition, and a stream of negative ions moving towards and giving up their charges to the anode.

Thus to picture the simplest case first:—Copper sulphate dissolved in water is partly dissociated into positively charged Cu ions and negatively charged SO_4 ions homogeneously distributed through the liquid. Two copper plates are immersed in the solution; the plates, being alike, have equal tendencies to dissolve (or the same electrolytic solution pressure), and the copper sulphate solution, being homogeneous, exerts the same osmotic back pressure on the two plates. Even, therefore, if the plates be joined by a wire, no action can take place. Meanwhile it may be supposed that the ions of both kinds have more or less motion in all directions throughout the solution; possibly even the free ions may be constantly changing places with atoms of the same kind existing in as yet undissociated molecules. Now it may be supposed that the copper plates are connected severally to the two poles of a battery. One plate becomes an anode, the other a cathode. At once there is an increase in the potential difference between the positively charged anode and the surrounding solution, and this is equivalent to establishing an increased electrolytic solution pressure for the anode plate. Thus the copper tends to be converted into ions, which derive their charges from the positive electricity of the anode plate, and so pass into the solution as positive ions. The supplying battery being supposed of constant E.M.F., the potential at the anode remains the same, or, in other words, as fast as a part of the positive charge is withdrawn from it by the newly-formed ions, it receives an additional supply from the battery, sufficient to maintain the same potential difference between the anode and the solution. At the same time the potential difference between the cathode connected with the negative pole of the battery and the surrounding solution is altered, but, of course, in the opposite direction to that of the anode, for while the anode becomes markedly positive to the solution, the cathode becomes markedly negative. This is equivalent to the creation of a strong negative solution pressure, that is to say, of a tendency, not for the copper of the plate to be ionised into the solution, but to attract to itself positively charged ions from the solution. Thus while one portion of copper is receiving charges from the battery, and so being ionised, at the anode, another portion is giving up charges, and so becoming neutral metallic copper at the cathode, and there is a constant flow of copper ions in a steady stream from the anode to the cathode; moreover, each ion is of definite weight and is charged with a definite quantity of electricity. So copper dissolves into the solution at the anode and is deposited at the cathode; the positive electricity led in, so to speak, from the battery at the anode is carried by the copper ions through the solution to the cathode, and the quantity dissolved from the one must be equal to the quantity deposited at the other, and each quantity must be dependent entirely on the quantity of electricity passing through the

solution. The current carried depends partly on the number of free ions in the solution—a very weak solution cannot conduct as well as a stronger solution, because it contains fewer of the ions at any moment in contact with the electrode—and partly on the potential difference between the electrodes, that is, between the anode and the solution at one side, and the cathode and the solution at the other—because the higher the P.D. the greater the added solution pressure at the one pole and negative pressure at the other. But while Cu ions are travelling from anode to cathode, negative SO_4 ions must be passing in the opposite direction, delivering up their negative charges at the anode. Since there is no electrification of the solution observable anywhere except at the surfaces of the electrodes, it follows that although the Cu ions are migrating steadily from anode to cathode, there are an equal number of oppositely charged SO_4 ions near them, otherwise the solution at some places would show an excess of positive electricity owing to the excess of Cu ions at those points, and at other places an excess of negative electricity due to free SO_4 ions. Simultaneously with the formation of one Cu ion at the anode, another is discharged at the cathode; at the same time an SO_4 ion is delivered at the anode, where its negative charge is exactly equal to the positive charge imparted to the copper ion at that moment launched from the anode into the solution, so that the two constituents of the molecule Cu and SO_4 become free ions in the liquid at the anode surface at the same instant, and the result is the same as if a molecule of copper sulphate, $CuSO_4$, were there added to the solution in the dissociated condition; whilst the Cu ion deposited at the cathode leaves there an unneutralised SO_4 ion at the very moment when it is required to take the place of an SO_4 ion which has set off on its migration towards the anode. Hence the transport of ions, and, therefore, of electricity, through the solution is continuous, and practically the only resistance to the flow of the current is the frictional resistance of the solutions to the ions passing through it. As solutions of salts become more mobile when they are heated, they then offer less frictional resistance to the ions, and so the conductivity of salt solutions is higher as the temperature is raised. The balancing of the equal and opposite pressures at the anode and cathode, when anodes of the same metal as that undergoing deposition are used, accounts for the fact that with pure copper solutions an exceedingly low E.M.F. suffices to cause copper to be deposited.

Electrolysis with Insoluble Anodes.—The principal difference between this case and that last described is that with insoluble anodes the anion does not meet with a positively charged metal ion passing into the solution from the anode. Its negative charge is therefore given up to the anode, and the ion ceases to be an ion and becomes an ordinary uncharged element or group

of elements. Groups of elements which are supposed to exist together in the ionic state are usually unstable when their charges are removed, so that a decomposition is then observed. Thus the anion, SO_4, of sulphuric acid and sulphates cannot exist as an uncharged chemical group, and so breaks up in contact with the water, forming free oxygen and sulphuric acid thus:—

$$SO_4 + H_2O = H_2SO_4 + O.$$

But since no metal is being ionised at the anode, the liquid, at least so long as metal is being deposited at the cathode, is gradually becoming weaker. Hence electrolysis with insoluble anodes, in cases where metals are deposited at the cathode, is characterised by the deposition at the anode of the element constituting the anion, or the evolution of oxygen gas or one of the constituents of the anion, and also by the gradual removal of the cations from the solution.

If sulphate of copper solution be electrolysed between a platinum anode and a copper cathode, copper will be deposited at the latter, and, since the platinum does not dissolve, SO_4 will be deposited at the anode, and will there break up, in the presence of water, into sulphuric acid and oxygen; the nett result of the experiment will be the deposition of metallic copper on the copper plate and bubbles of oxygen on the platinum, and the accumulation of sulphuric acid in the solution. Gradually all the copper will be deposited, and then, if the applied pressure be sufficient to cause hydrogen ions to give up their charges at the cathode, the sulphuric acid will itself be electrolysed, and hydrogen ions will be caused to discharge at one pole, and oxygen will, as before, appear at the other, re-forming sulphuric acid, so that the result is the same as if water only were decomposed. In this case the copper and the platinum exert their own solution pressures, and these in such a way that the copper *tends* to become ionised and to pass into the solution, so that the action of electrolysis is opposed to the tendency of the metals forming the electrolytic cell, and therefore the current passed into the latter must be able to exert sufficient pressure to overcome the difference between the solution pressures of platinum and copper in a solution of copper sulphate, and to deposit oxygen upon the platinum electrode. Even if electrolysis be commenced with two platinum electrodes, the cathode soon receives a sufficient deposit of copper to cause it to act as a copper plate, and after that time the electrolysis is carried on as between a platinum anode and a copper cathode.

Secondary Actions.—It has been stated above that when an unstable complex anion, such as the group SO_4, is deposited, it breaks up by chemical action unless it is re-absorbed into the solution along with an equivalent cation detached from a soluble anode. But, to consider the electrolysis of a sulphate with an insoluble anode (for example, platinum):—some water may be

electrolysed (but not much, as it is but slightly dissociated or ionised), and there is in consequence a little hydroxyl formed, but chiefly SO_4 is deposited, and this forms free oxygen, as alread described. Should there be contained in the liquid in contact with the anode a substance that is capable of a higher degree of oxidation, as, for example, ferrous sulphate, some or all of the free oxygen will be absorbed in converting this substance into the corresponding compound containing a larger proportion of oxygen, ferric sulphate, or, if suitable organic substances are present, they may be oxidised, or, as it were, burned by a process of liquid combustion. The evolution of oxygen would then be wholly or in part suppressed, and the heat that, in an ordinary chemical experiment, would be produced by this oxidation, would be rendered available for reducing the total E.M.F. required for the reactions at the electrodes. These anode reactions are actually employed in many electro-chemical operations. But chemical changes may also occur at the cathode, if any metal or cation be there deposited that is really capable of decomposing water. Thus when potassium or sodium salts in solution in water are electrolysed, potassium or sodium ions become converted into metal at the cathode; and as either metal is capable of attacking water with great energy, the metal itself is not seen, but only the hydrogen that results from its action on water. When mercury is employed as cathode, the deposited alkali metal becomes dissolved to some extent in, and diffused through, the mercury, and so removed from the possibility of attack by water except on the exposed surface of the mercury. The formation of a true amalgam of mercury and the alkali metal testifies to the reality of this deposition, and the reaction is utilised in certain electrolytic processes for the production of caustic soda from solutions of common salt and the like.

Electrolysis of Mixed Solutions and Double Salts.—When a current is passed through a mixed solution of several electrolytes, the conductivity of the liquid is found still to be dependent on the number of free ions. It thus appears that all the free ions in the liquid are engaged in the transport of electricity from one pole to the other, cations from anode to cathode, and anions in the opposite direction. But it is well known that if a current of moderate density be used with a solution containing several metals, only the one with the lowest electrolytic solution pressure (the most electro-negative) will be deposited at first, and then the others in turn, in the reverse order of their solution pressures. Thus in a solution of cadmium, copper, and silver, silver alone would be deposited first, then silver with an increasing percentage of copper, then copper, next copper with an increasing percentage of cadmium, and lastly cadmium alone, supposing always that the E.M.F. applied is sufficient to allow of the deposition of the cadmium with its relatively high solution pressure. Remembering

that a metal with high solution pressure is able to become ionised at the expense of the ions of metals with lower solution pressure, this action may be thus explained: All the free ions alike—cadmium, copper and silver—are migrating and carrying charges from anode to cathode, but at the cathode surface the current deposits that ion which requires least E.M.F. to overcome its electrolytic solution pressure and to cause it to give up its positive charge to the cathode; even if the ion of another metal with higher solution pressure were deposited, the deposited metal would exchange with an equivalent of the metal with lower solution pressure, and would pass again into solution. So long, then, as there is a sufficient number of ions of the metal with lowest solution pressure (*e.g.*, silver) in contact with the cathode to carry to the cathode the whole volume of the current passing, only that metal, silver, will be deposited. But as, in course of time, more and more of the silver in the solution is deposited at the cathode, the quantity left will sooner or later be insufficient to carry the whole of the current to the cathode surface; then ions of the metal with the next lowest solution pressure (copper) will begin to be deposited. At first only very little copper will deposit with the silver, but as the silver ions become fewer, the proportion of the copper ions discharged must increase, until, at last, all the silver is thrown down, and only copper and cadmium remain in the solution. Just in the same way the gradual exhaustion of the copper ions will lead to the co-deposition of cadmium, and, finally, when all the silver and all the copper are deposited, cadmium ions only will be available to carry the electricity through the solution, and give up their charges at the cathode plate.

Electrolysis of Solutions of Complex Acids.—Where, however, the solution is not merely a mixture of two electrolytes or a solution of a double salt, but a chemical compound, the action of the current is different. A mixture of copper sulphate and nickel sulphate would act as described above; copper first, and then (if the solution were kept neutral) nickel, would be deposited at the cathode, and SO_4 (and hence oxygen) only at the anode. But if gold cyanide be dissolved in potassium cyanide solution, the resulting liquid does not behave in the same way. It may be shown that the gold travels with the ion which migrates from cathode to anode, and only the potassium migrates from anode to cathode; yet the gold is deposited only at the cathode. This is due to chemical reaction. The ions of such a cyanide ($KAuCy_2$) are apparently K and $AuCy_2$, the K ion giving up its charge at the cathode, but immediately attacking the solution in contact with it and depositing not hydrogen but gold from the liquid around, because potassium can break up the complex aurocyanide of potassium that is present.

$$KAuCy_2 + K + H_2O = 2KCy + Au + H_2O.$$

Thus gold is deposited at the cathode, not because ions of free gold exist in the liquid, but because potassium is deposited and exchanges with the gold in some of the complex substance $KAuCy_2$ in contact with the cathode. At the same time gold does not form at the anode, because the ion $AuCy_2$ cannot exist alone in the liquid, but breaks up into cyanogen, Cy, and gold cyanide AuCy, which re-dissolves in the free potassium cyanide in the solution, re-forming potassium aurocyanide. The free cyanogen is then able, with its negative charge, to allow the passage of another atom of gold which withdraws its positive charge from the anode and passes into the ionic condition. It will thus be understood that in a gold bath there is a great tendency for gold cyanide to deposit on the anode, and also that, as there is no constant migration of gold to the cathode, but rather contrariwise, the deposition of potassium must be made to take place so slowly that the natural diffusion of the salts in the solution may ensure that there is always sufficient of the aurocyanide in contact with the cathode to allow of the exchange of the whole of the potassium for gold without water being decomposed and hydrogen deposited. Thus, also, silver travels in the anion in the electrolysis of the double cyanide of silver and potassium, and the silver is deposited by exchange with the potassium which, as cation, is deposited at the cathode.

The double chloride of platinum and sodium Na_2PtCl_6 behaves similarly, breaking up into the anion $PtCl_6$ (which decomposes) and the cation Na; so that it is not merely a double salt, but a platino-chloride of sodium, and platinum is deposited at the cathode only by secondary action. The ferrocyanides and ferricyanides, and many other complex salts, behave similarly, the iron or other metal being present in a complex anion.

If it be true that in the case of these complex salts some of the metal to be deposited is travelling in the anion, and, therefore, away from the cathode, it is obvious that the current-density used for electrolysis should be low, otherwise the liquid around the cathode might become exhausted and the deposited cation would fail to find in the solution in contact with it any of the metal with which it is intended to exchange places. In the case of potassium or sodium compounds, hydrogen would then be deposited by exchange with the alkali-metal. The danger is, of course, greatest in the case of very dilute solutions.

Effects of the Migration of the Ions.—It has already been mentioned that different ions travel at different velocities. Thus, if the potassium ion move through a solution so weak that it may be regarded as infinitely dilute with a velocity of 0·00006 centimetres per second, when there is a fall of electrical potential of 1 volt per centimetre traversed, and the liquid is at 18° C.,

Kohlrausch has shown that some of the principal elements will travel at the velocities given in the following table :—

Table, showing the velocities of individual ions, expressed as the number of centimetres traversed by the ions in 100,000 *seconds.*

Ion.	Cms. traversed in 1 × 100,000 secs.	Ion.	Cms. traversed in 1 × 100,000 secs.
H	320	OH	165
NH_4	66	I	69
K	66	Cl	69
Ag	57	NO_3	64
Na	45	ClO_3	57
Li	36	$C_2H_3O_2$	36

The conductivity of the solution depends then—partly on the number of free ions, because only free ions are able to conduct; partly upon the nature of the ions, because each monovalent ion carries half as much electricity as a divalent, one-third as much as a trivalent ion, and so on; and partly upon the combined rates at which the different ions in the solution migrate through it in one direction or the other. Obviously, other things being equal, the faster the charged ions can travel the greater will be the conductivity. Hence the solutions which contain most free hydrogen or hydroxyl ions are those which conduct best. Water, which would contain both of these ions, if it were appreciably dissociated, would be one of the best of liquid conductors; but as it is not ionised, no advantage is derived from the ions, and it is almost a non-conductor. The acids, however, which all contain free H ions are good conductors, and the hydroxides are fair conductors. Thus, on comparing solutions containing equal numbers of free ions in a given volume, it will be found that, if hydrochloric acid, let us say, have a conductivity of 320 + 69, or 389, potassium chloride would have a conductivity of 66 + 69, or 135 (*i.e.*, it is only one-third as good a conductor as a hydrochloric acid solution of equivalent strength), sodium chloride would have a conductivity of 45 + 69, or 114, sodium nitrate a conductivity of 45 + 64 = 109, and so on. This is evident from the above table, because there it is shown that each ion has its own rate of migration, which is independent of the nature of the compound of which it had formed a part. The caution must again be given that such numbers as these are only strictly comparable when the substances are practically completely dissociated, that is to say, when the solutions are exceedingly dilute, or at least when the degree of dissociation is known.

Now, seeing that the ions move with varying velocity, and

that in a given solution the number of anions giving up their charges to the anode in a given time may, therefore, be greater (or less) than the number of cations striking the cathode in the same time, the question may be asked—Why are there not disproportionate amounts of the ions discharged and deposited at the two electrodes? The answer may, perhaps, be best given diagrammatically.

To take first the case of a solution in which the two ions travel with equal velocities:—Let A and C be the (insoluble) anode and cathode respectively, in an electrolyte (let us say dilute solution of potassium chloride) of uniform strength contained in a vessel divided into two by the porous partition P. The uppermost section represents the distribution of the ions in the solution before the current passes; the second section the same solution after 2×96540 coulombs of current have passed, that is, after sufficient current to deposit twice the equivalent weight of potassium and chlorine have been conducted through the solution; and the lowest division the same after 4×96540 coulombs have passed.

For the sake of clearness there are supposed to be only a limited number of ions, and these are only shown in the centre of the cell, in order to allow for the representation of the motion

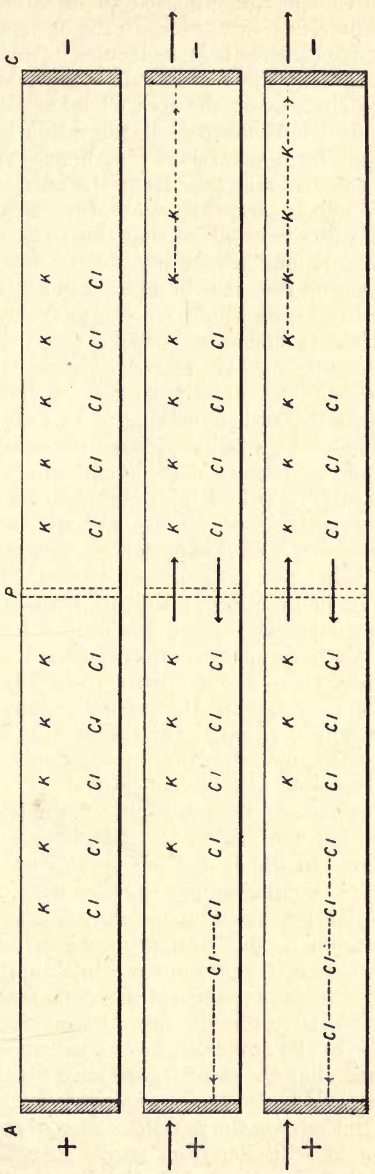


FIG. 112.

towards one or other electrode, and the rates of migration of K and Cl ions are supposed to be equal, which is very nearly, but not precisely, accurate. In the uppermost cell there are supposed to be five (dissociated) molecules in each compartment, the positive charges of the five K ions being exactly neutralised by the negative charges of the five Cl ions. But now 2×96540 coulombs of electricity are passed, migration takes place, one coulomb, conveyed by a potassium ion, moves through the porous partition as the ion migrates from the anode to the cathode side, and one coulomb is carried by a chlorine ion through the partition in the opposite direction, so that there are now 6 Cl ions instead of 5, and 4 K ions instead of 5 on the anode side, and 4 Cl ions and 6 K ions on the cathode side. Hence there are, in each compartment, 4 ions of each kind with charges neutralising one another, and on the anode side an excess of 2 negatively charged Cl ions, and on the cathode side an excess of 2 positively charged K ions. These charged ions, of course, lose their charges in contact with the electrodes, and so, ceasing to be ions, they deposit in the ordinary uncharged conditions (metal or non-metal, as the case may be). Thus the passage of 2 coulombs of electricity is accompanied by the migration of 1 ion in each direction, and by the separation of 2 equivalents of an element at each electrode. Similarly, the passage of 4 coulombs means the transfer of 2 anions from the cathode compartment to the other, and of 2 cations in the opposite direction, with the separation of 4 equivalents at each electrode. But there are still 3 ions of each kind neutralising each other's charges on either side of the partition, or, in other words, there are as many molecules of KCl (dissociated though they may be) in the anode compartment as there are in the cathode division. This is equivalent to saying that when the velocities of migration of the two ions are equal, the distribution of the molecules is unaffected.

Effect of Unequal Ionic Velocities on the Concentration of the Electrolyte at the Electrodes.—Next, a case may be considered in which one ion travels at twice the rate of the other. This is approximately the case with copper sulphate, in which the SO_4 ion travels at about double the rate of the Cu ion. Using the same method of diagrammatic illustration as before, the uppermost section represents a dilute solution of copper sulphate before any current is passed, the second section the same solution after 6×96540 coulombs have passed, and the lowest the same after 12×96540 coulombs have been passed. Here it must be remembered that Cu and SO_4 are both divalent, so that each ion transports a double charge of electricity, namely, 2×96540 coulombs.

In this case the middle section of the figure shows that the migration of 1 Cu ion from anode to cathode chamber is accompanied by the migration of 2 SO_4 ions in the opposite direction, each of which carries a double charge or 2 coulombs of electricity, so

that 4 coulombs are transported by 2 ions in one direction, and 2 coulombs by 1 ion in the opposite direction. It will be seen that in spite of the uneven rate of travel, there are 3 Cu ions discharging their double loads of electricity at the cathode, and 3 SO_4 ions giving up their negative charges at the anode, and hence the 6 coulombs of electricity deposit 3 atoms of Cu and 3 SO_4 ions. But it will be noted that while there remain on the anode side 5 Cu ions electrically neutralised by 5 SO_4 ions, or 5 dissociated molecules of copper sulphate, there are only 4 sets of mutually neutralised ions, or 4 molecules of dissociated copper sulphate in the cathode compartment. This inequality is still more clearly shown in the lowest section of the diagram, where, as it will be seen, there are 6 SO_4 ions discharged and 4 dissociated $CuSO_4$ molecules left in the anode cell, while there are 6 Cu ions discharged and 2 dissociated $CuSO_4$ molecules left in the cathode cell.

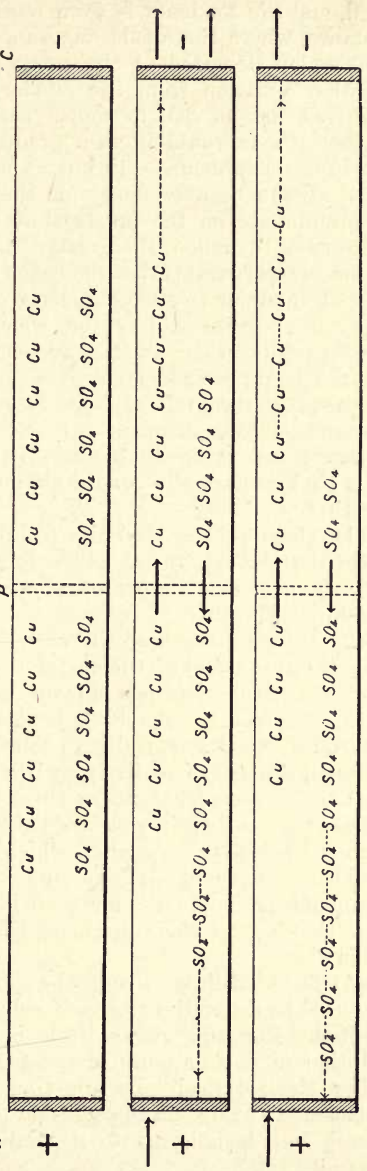


FIG. 113.

The effect, then, of the unequal rate of migration of the ions is to cause an accumulation or concentration of molecules of the electrolyte immediately around the electrode, towards which are migrating the ions that move with the greater rapidity. Thus, as has been shown, there is a tendency for the solution around the anode in a copper sulphate bath to become stronger than that around

the cathode. In electro-plating, soluble anodes are generally used, and the tendency is even more marked than in the above instance, where the anode was supposed to be insoluble, because each anion liberated at the anode carries back with it into the solution a cation from the anode. If no migration of anions occurred (say of SO_4 in copper sulphate), the copper deposited at the cathode would leave a gradually increasing excess of acid ion in the neighbourhood; but as migration always occurs, there must always be a tendency for the molecules of the electrolyte to accumulate on the anode side, and the greater the relative velocity of the anion, the greater this accumulation will be. The lesson to be learned is that the baths must be kept very thoroughly stirred, in order to keep the composition uniform. Attention is especially necessary, however, when double cells are used with porous partitions between, as in some electro-metallurgical operations. The problem is also of special importance in electro-chemical work, such as that of caustic soda manufacture by electrolysis from common salt.

Conditions of Electrolysis.—By the light of modern theories, it is obvious that the conditions most favourable to electrolysis are that—

(1) The liquid around the (soluble) anode should contain as little of the anode metal as possible in solution, because in that case the back osmotic pressure opposing the solution of the anode is minimised, whilst

(2) The liquid around the cathode should contain as much as possible in solution of the metal to be deposited, as the osmotic pressure at this electrode is favourable to deposition.

(3) The solution should be kept as uniform as possible, so that interfering local actions due to solutions of different density or of different degrees of acidity may be prevented.

It is obvious that these three conditions are incompatible unless porous diaphragms are employed to keep the anode and cathode solutions separate, which is usually a course to be avoided, as there are no materials that can generally be economically employed for such diaphragms in practical work, and the loss in their use more than compensates for the gain otherwise.

(4) The E.M.F. used must be sufficient when insoluble anodes are used to neutralise the back solution pressure of the metal deposited. For this reason it is commonly possible in a mixed solution of two or more metals to separate one metal from the other electrolytically by applying an E.M.F. at the electrodes sufficient to overcome the solution pressure of the most negative metal, but insufficient to neutralise that of the other metal present.

CHAPTER XX.

A GLOSSARY OF SUBSTANCES COMMONLY EMPLOYED IN ELECTRO-METALLURGY.

In using the various chemical preparations, it is impossible to be too careful, as in all operations connected with electro-metallurgy the most scrupulous cleanliness and thoughtful attention are necessary, especially on the part of one who is unaccustomed to handling chemical apparatus and reagents.

In opening fresh bottles of acid or of ammonia, especially in hot weather, the stopper must be first carefully cleansed externally, and must then be covered with a stout cloth before attempting to remove it, because it is frequently wetted with the liquid contained in the bottle, and if there be any pressure from within, drops of the fluid may be scattered in all directions when the stopper is loosened, and may fall upon the clothes, hands, or face, and are likely to cause blindness if they should happen to penetrate to the eye. In tropical climates the strong ammonia solution boils violently as soon as it is uncorked; and as this is evidence of a strong internal pressure, it is safer to surround the bottle in several folds of cloth before attempting to open it, lest the application of the slight force, sometimes required to loosen the stopper, may cause the bottle itself to burst should it be defective.

The following simple rules should be carefully observed:—

In opening any bottle, first dust the whole surface and then clear away from the neck all dirt or loose particles of sealing-wax, cork, or luting; see that the corkscrew does not break off particles of cork into the bottle.

In loosening the refractory stopper of a bottle containing any inflammable substance, on no account apply the heat of a flame; and in decanting any such liquid, or opening any such bottle, see that it is not in the vicinity of a lamp or flame of any kind, or even of any heated substance if the liquid be carbon bisulphide.

On removing the cork or stopper, never place it with the smaller end downwards upon the table, as it is very likely to pick up foreign matter from the surface and transfer it to the bottle as soon as it is re-inserted.

Never allow a bottle to remain open to the air longer than

necessary, and always see that it is closed with its original stopper.

If the solid contents of a bottle require loosening, always apply a stout glass or glazed procelain rod, carefully cleaned before insertion. On no account use a metal rod, unless it be made of platinum or other material which cannot be corroded by the substance with which it is brought in contact.

Never pour the contents of a bottle into a dirty vessel, or upon an unclean surface.

Never place chemical substances directly upon the metal pan of a balance, but always upon a tared plate of glass (*i.e.* one whose weight is known, or compensated for), though a sheet of clean glazed paper may suffice if the substance is dry and not deliquescent (that is, does not tend to become moist by exposure to damp air).

In returning an excess of any substance into store, see that it is placed in the right bottle or vessel.

Never mix a strong acid with a strong alkali, and even when both are diluted, let the mixture be effected gradually.

Never add water to strong sulphuric acid, but if it be desired to dilute the acid, let it be added little by little, with constant stirring, to the required bulk of water.

Never employ vessels of a kind which are used for domestic purposes to contain chemical reagents. Dangerous results may follow the leaving of acids or poisonous substances in ordinary tumblers or wine glasses. Let the vessels used for chemical work be restricted to this duty, and let no others be employed.

Note.—In the following glossary, the specific gravity of a substance refers to its weight as compared with that of an equal bulk of pure distilled water at the same temperature. The acids are given first.

Acetic Acid, $CH_3 . CO_2H$, or $C_2H_4O_2$.—A monobasic and somewhat feeble acid, the chief acid constituent of vinegar. It may be bought as *glacial acetic acid*, which is practically the pure substance, and is a crystalline solid at ordinary temperatures. It is more usually obtained somewhat diluted with water. The *acidum aceticum* of the British Pharmacopœia contains from 32 to 33 per cent. of the pure acid, and has a specific gravity of 1·044. With bases it forms *acetates*.

Benzoic Acid, $C_6H_5 . CO_2H$, or $C_7H_6O_2$.—A monobasic weak organic acid, obtained as colourless plates very slightly soluble in water, which should leave little or no residue when burnt upon a sheet of thin platinum held over a flame. Its salts are termed *benzoates*.

Boric Acid, H_3BO_3. — Commonly known as *boracic acid*; a mineral body and the acid basis of borax; it is a white crystal-

line solid, fairly soluble in water. Dissolved in warm spirits of wine and ignited, the liquid burns with a brilliant and characteristic green flame. It is tribasic, and its salts are called *borates.*

Citric Acid, $C_3H_4(OH).(CO_2H)_3$, or $C_6H_8O_7$.—A white translucently-crystalline, solid, tribasic, organic acid, readily soluble in water (100 parts in 75 of cold or 50 of hot water). It forms *citrates* with metallic oxides.

Hydrochloric Acid, HCl. — The pure body is a gas under ordinary conditions. It is intensely soluble in water, and its solution is sold under the above name or that of *muriatic acid.* The stronger solutions emit pungent white fumes in air, owing to a partial evaporation of the contained gas, which recondenses in the form of clouds in contact with atmospheric moisture. A saturated solution contains about 40 per cent. of the pure gas, and has a specific gravity of 1·2; the actual saturation percentage depends upon the temperature, as the acid is less soluble in hot water than in cold. The acid of commerce has usually a specific gravity of about 1·150, equal to 30 per cent. of pure HCl; the *acidum hydrochloricum* of the British Pharmacopœia contains about 32 per cent., with a specific gravity equal to 1·16. The liquid should be colourless, but the commercial muriatic acid is generally yellow, owing to the presence of iron and other impurities; only the pure acid, however, should be used for most electro-metallurgical processes, though the crude liquid may often be employed for cleansing purposes. The acid is monobasic, and its salts are termed *chlorides.*

Hydrocyanic Acid, HCN.—Commonly known as *prussic acid.* This also is bought as an aqueous solution of HCN, which is a liquid of low boiling-point. It smells strongly of bitter almonds and is a deadly poison, so that its use in the arts is to be strongly deprecated whenever it can be avoided. The British Pharmacopœia solution contains 2 per cent. of the pure acid. When used, the greatest care must be exercised, as the vapour evolved by a strong solution is itself extremely poisonous, and even when diluted considerably with air, produces giddiness and headache. Its salts are designated *cyanides*; the acid is monobasic.

Nitric Acid, HNO_3.—Commercially known as *aqua fortis.* It is a very powerful and corrosive monobasic acid, which must be handled with great care. It stains the skin and other animal substances a bright yellow, which becomes intensified by the application of an alkali or of soap; its oxidising power is so intense that the accidental fracture of a carboy of the acid has been known to set fire to straw which happened to surround it. The pure acid (HNO_3) has a specific gravity of 1·52. The acid

commonly sold in commerce has a specific gravity of 1·45, equal to 77 per cent. of pure HNO_3, while a weaker acid, containing 70 per cent. (specific gravity = 1·42) is also to be had, and constitutes in fact the *acidum nitricum* of the British Pharmacopœia, while others even less concentrated are likewise to be procured. The stronger solutions fume in the air. When pure, the liquid should be colourless, but owing to partial decomposition into lower oxides of nitrogen, it frequently possesses a straw-coloured or yellow tint, becoming in the commoner kinds, orange and, finally, green, when it is commercially termed *nitrous acid.* The salts of nitric acid are called *nitrates.*

When mixed with hydrochloric acid in the proportion of 1 to 3 (HNO_3 : HCl) the liquid is known as *aqua regia*, and assumes an orange colour due to the presence of the gas nitrosyl chloride (NOCl) formed by the union. This liquid is endowed with the highest oxidising powers, dissolving even the precious metals which resist the attack of either acid singly.

Oxalic Acid $(CO_2H)_2$ or $C_2H_2O_4$.—A dibasic organic acid, which forms a white crystalline solid containing 2 molecules of water ($C_2H_2O_4 . 2H_2O$). It is readily soluble in water or alcohol, and is a powerful poison. It forms *oxalates.*

Sulphuric Acid, H_2SO_4.—Known as *oil of vitriol.* A dibasic and most powerful mineral acid. When perfectly pure, it is a colourless and odourless, oily liquid of specific gravity 1·842. It combines most energetically with water, and in doing so generates much heat, so that dilution even of the ordinary commercial acid with water must be effected with the greatest care. Large volumes must never be thoughtlessly mixed, nor should the water be added to the acid, lest a sudden generation of steam of explosive violence result, and the dangerously corrosive liquid be scattered in all directions. The acid is in all cases to be added to the water in a very gentle stream, and with constant stirring. The acid of commerce is diluted in various degrees, but is always concentrated. The salts formed from this acid are *sulphates.*

Tannic Acid, $C_{14}H_{10}O_9$.—A pale yellow solid and weak organic acid, readily soluble in water. It burns completely away when heated upon a metallic plate, and yields a blue-black colour when added to solutions containing iron. It forms *tannates.*

Tartaric Acid, $C_2H_2(OH)_2 . (CO_2H)_2$ or $C_4H_6O_6$.—It is a colourless crystalline solid, which readily dissolves in water. It is a weak dibasic organic acid, forming salts which are known as *tartrates.*

Alcohol, $C_2H_5(OH)$ or C_2H_6O.—Pure or *absolute alcohol* has a strong affinity for water, so that the alcohol usually bought

generally contains a small quantity of the diluent. It should be colourless and have a specific gravity of 0·7939. It is commonly sold under the name of *spirits of wine*, or *rectified spirit*, which contains about 16 per cent. of water, and has a specific gravity of 0·838. *Proof spirit* is a mixture carrying 49·24 per cent. of pure alcohol and is the standard with which alcoholic liquids are compared in commerce. *Methylated spirit* contains a certain amount of methylic alcohol or wood spirit, and frequently has a quantity of resinous matter added to it to render it unfit for drinking, so that it may not be liable to excise duties, and shall yet be available for most of the purposes for which spirit is required in the arts. Such a product should on no account be used for electro-metallurgical work without previous thought as to the probable consequences of using it. For example, the effect of washing an object in the sophisticated spirit and then plunging it into the electrolytic bath would be the introduction of undesirable organic impurities into the latter, and even the formation of a non-conductive coating upon the surface of the article itself; because water added to the impure alcohol throws down the resinous substances in the form of a white precipitate. Such spirit tends to burn with a smoky flame. Alcohol should, therefore, be tested by burning, when the flame should be almost non-luminous, and by the addition of water to a sample, which addition should produce no turbidity.

Aluminium, Al.—A white silvery element with an almost imperceptible bluish shade. It is extremely light (the specific gravity being only 2·58), is very malleable and ductile, takes a high polish, and is not liable to tarnish in air. It melts at about 1160° F. It is largely used in alloys, and for manufacture of objects where combined lightness and strength are required. Its principal common impurities are iron and silicon.

Aluminium Chloride, Al_2Cl_6.—A white, sometimes yellowish substance, which in the anhydrous condition absorbs water with great avidity; and, having once absorbed it, cannot be induced to part with it, the action of heat upon the hydrated crystalline salt ($Al_2Cl_6 . 12H_2O$) causing decomposition, with the formation of alumina and hydrochloric acid. It must, therefore, be stored in perfectly air-tight jars. In small quantities it volatilises at 356° to 365° F. without fusion, but in a large bulk it may be induced to melt first.

Aluminium-Sodium Chloride, $Al_2Cl_6 . 2NaCl$. — This salt is made by heating the simple aluminium chloride with common salt. It is more useful than the latter for electro-reduction by the fusion method, because, melting at 365° F., it volatilises only at a red heat; moreover, it is less readily attacked by aqueous vapour.

Aluminium-Potassium Sulphate, $Al_2(SO_4)_3 . K_2SO_4 . 24H_2O$.—Commonly known as *potash alum*. It is a crystalline substance, with an astringent taste, and is readily soluble in water, 12 parts of alum dissolving in 100 parts of water at the ordinary temperature, 357 parts at the boiling-point. It is a double sulphate of alumina and potash. *Ammonia alum* is exactly analogous, the potassium sulphate being simply replaced by ammonium sulphate ($Al_2(SO_4)_3 . (NH_4)_2SO_4 . 24H_2O$), and is for most purposes interchangeable with potash alum. Soda alum is similar, but is more readily soluble in water.

Ammonium Hydrate, $NH_3 . H_2O$.—Commonly termed *ammonia* or *spirits of hartshorn*. It is simply water saturated with ammonia gas (NH_3). It is a powerful alkali, and is, therefore, useful to neutralise the acid properties of any substance. As it has an overpoweringly pungent odour, care must be taken in using the stronger solutions. It is obtainable in the market as *ammonia fortiss.*, with a specific gravity of 0·880, which is almost saturated with the gas and contains about 36 per cent. of pure NH_3. Bottles of the liquid must be opened cautiously in hot weather, because the warmer water cannot dissolve so large a volume except under pressure; and the excess is given off, sometimes with considerable violence, directly the pressure is released by the removal of the stopper. A weaker solution, *ammoniæ liquor fortior*, containing 32·5 per cent. of NH_3 (specific gravity = 0·891) is that recognised by the British Pharmacopœia, and is safer for use in the heat of summer. By exposure, ammonia gas is gradually evolved, so that it must be stored in closely-stoppered bottles in order to preserve the strength of the solution unimpaired. By regarding the formula as $NH_4 . OH$, it becomes the hydrate of the hypothetical metal-like substance ammonium (NH_4). This radical or group of elements, NH_4, behaves in its chemical relations exactly as a monovalent metal, combining with acids to form ammonium salts.

Ammonium Carbonate, $(NH_4)_2CO_3$, and the **Bicarbonate**, $(NH_4)HCO_3$, are white solid substances, soluble in water and smelling strongly of ammonia. The commercial salt is not a pure carbonate, but is in part carbamate; it is, however, suitable for the purposes to which it is generally applied. As an alkaline carbonate it takes the place of ammonia itself in neutralising acids, carbonic acid gas being evolved while the ammonium salt of the stronger acid is formed.

Ammonium Chloride, NH_4Cl.—A white substance occurring in commerce in the form of tough fibrous crystals, odourless, and soluble in water (100 parts of cold water dissolve 35 parts, and of boiling water 77 parts of the salt).

Ammonium Nitrate, NH_4NO_3.—A colourless crystalline body, 200 parts of which dissolve in 100 parts of cold water. Heated gently it melts and is afterwards decomposed into nitrous oxide gas (laughing gas = N_2O) and water, leaving no residue.

Ammonium Sulphide, $(NH_4)_2S$, and **Hydrosulphide**, NH_4HS, may be prepared by passing hydrogen sulphide gas into a solution of ammonia. It is at first colourless, but by gradual decomposition becomes yellow. It is generally bought as an amber-coloured, frequently almost orange, fluid. The many products of decomposition do not seriously interfere with its general utility except in so far as they weaken the solution of the sulphide itself.

Ammonium Sulphate, $(NH_4)_2SO_4$.—A white crystalline solid of which 100 parts of cold water dissolve 50, of hot water 100 parts.

Ammonium Salts of the acids just described should leave no fixed residue when heated over a flame upon a piece of sheet metal.

Antimony, Sb.—A white, highly crystalline and extremely brittle metal. The commercial ingots have usually a very crystalline surface, which resembles the fern-like appearance of frost upon window-glass, from which the name *star antimony* is derived, and which is regarded by many as an infallible criterion of the purity of the metal, but which must not be relied upon too closely. This metal has a specific gravity of 6·8, and melts at 800° F. The principal objectionable impurities likely to occur in ordinary antimony are sulphur, arsenic, tin, lead, silver, bismuth, and iron. It is only procurable in the cast condition, because on account of its brittleness it cannot be rolled.

Antimony Chlorides.—There are two chlorides—the *trichloride* or *antimonious chloride*, $SbCl_3$, known as *butter of antimony*, which is that more usually required for electro-metallurgical work; and the *pentachloride* or *antimonic chloride*, $SbCl_5$. The former is a colourless crystalline substance melting at 164° F. It may be prepared in crude form, mixed with excess of acid, by dissolving antimony, or the sulphide, in hydrochloric acid to which a little nitric acid has been added to increase its oxidising action. The pentachloride is a colourless fuming liquid having a most unpleasant odour.

Antimony Sulphide, Sb_2S_3, occurs in nature as *stibnite* or *antimony glance*. It is usually bought as grey needle-shaped crystals sub-metallic in lustre. The pentasulphide, Sb_2S_5, requires no notice here.

Antimony-Potassium Tartrate, $KSbC_4H_4O_7$, commonly known as *tartar emetic*. A white crystalline substance, of which 100 parts of cold water dissolve 5 parts, while a like volume of hot water dissolves 50 parts.

Aqua Fortis.—See Acid, Nitric.

Aqua Regia.—See under Acid, Nitric.

Bees'-wax.—The substance of which the honeycomb is built up. It is usually of a yellow or brown colour, the specific gravity ranging from 0·958 to 0·960, and the melting-point from 144° to 156° F. in different samples. It dissolves readily in oils and in ether, but not in water. Its chief adulterants are—mineral matter, starch or flour, and water, the presence of these being detected on melting the sample; and resinous or fatty substances, vegetable waxes and paraffin, which influence the specific gravity and the melting-point. When melted it should give a clear liquid free from any cloudiness, and should not indicate the presence of water by the formation of two layers of fluid.

Bismuth, Bi.—A highly crystalline and very brittle metal, resembling antimony, but having a faint pinkish colour. Like antimony it cannot be rolled or drawn into a wire, but, on the contrary, may be crushed into a powder with an ordinary pestle and mortar. It melts at 515° F., and has a specific gravity of 9·759. It is one of the most useful constituents of fusible metal. The commonest objectionable impurities are—sulphur, iron, lead, copper, arsenic, and silver.

Bismuth Nitrate, $Bi(NO_3)_3 + 3H_2O$.—Made by dissolving the metal in dilute nitric acid; it is precipitated as a white basic bismuth sub-nitrate by the addition of much water.

Black Lead.—See Plumbago.

Brass is an alloy of copper and zinc, the percentage of the former varying from 70 to 60. Special alloys are made for certain purposes, many containing tin and lead. *Sterro metal* is a brass to which a small percentage of iron has been added, while other complex alloys are made containing iron and manganese in addition to other bodies, to give additional strength or stiffness to the metal. Ordinary brass, unless specially made from the purest virgin metal, generally contains notable proportions of iron and lead and sometimes of tin.

Bronze.—This term embraces the class of alloys of copper and tin, and includes bell-metal and gun-metal. The proportion of

tin varies from 5 to 20, the average sample containing about 10 per cent. Some samples have a small percentage of zinc added, others manganese and iron; in fact the remarks made in regard to brass apply equally to bronze in this matter. Certain alloys are wrongly called by this term, for example, aluminium bronze, which contains 10 per cent. of aluminium, but no tin. Some forms of manganese bronze also contain only a nominal percentage of tin, and the alloy is then really a complex brass with a very small, but sufficient, percentage of manganese.

Cadmium, Cd.—A soft and very malleable bluish-white metal not unlike zinc, with which element it is commonly associated in nature. Its specific gravity should lie between 8·6 and 8·8, while its melting-point is about 608° F. It is rarely used in the arts in the metallic form, except in the manufacture of fusible alloys.

Cadmium Bromide, $CdBr_2$.—A white crystalline substance soluble in water.

Cadmium Chloride, $CdCl_2 . 2H_2O$.—A similar body, of which 140 parts are soluble in 100 of water. It is made by dissolving the metal in hydrochloric acid and evaporating.

Cadmium Sulphate, $3CdSO_4 . 8H_2O$.—A white crystalline substance, 59 parts dissolving in 100 parts of water.

Calcium Carbonate. See Chalk.

Chalk ($CaCO_3$) is a natural rock composed of calcium oxide (lime) and carbonic acid. On strongly heating it the carbon dioxide (CO_2) is driven off, and the pure calcium oxide remains as *quicklime* (CaO). Limestone has the same composition as chalk, and behaves similarly. A particular kind of lime, selected from that burnt in the neighbourhood of Sheffield, has found especial favour among metal-polishers. As the burnt lime, by contact with the air, rapidly absorbs first water, and thus becomes *slaked* ($Ca(OH)_2$), and then carbon dioxide, and so becomes reconverted into calcium carbonate, lime which is to be stored for any length of time must be preserved in air-tight cases until it is required for use. For polishing purposes it must be uniformly soft and free from gritty particles, which would give rise to scratches; treated with dilute hydrochloric acid, a sample of quicklime should dissolve with but slight effervescence, and leave no residue undissolved. Chalk or *whiting* should dissolve with brisk effervescence, but this also should leave no appreciable residue.

Cobalt, Co.—A metal similar to, and generally occurring in nature with, nickel. It has a specific gravity of from 8·5 to 8·7, and a high melting-point, approximating that of iron. It is readily soluble in sulphuric (dilute), hydrochloric, and nitric acids, forming cobalt sulphate, chloride, and nitrate respectively.

Cobalt Chloride, $CoCl_2 . 6H_2O$.—A dark red crystalline body readily soluble in water; it may be prepared by dissolving the metal, its oxide or carbonate, in just sufficient hydrochloric acid. It is well to use a deficiency of the latter in order to ensure the neutrality of the solution.

Cobalt Nitrate, $Co(NO_3)_2 . 6H_2O$.—A pink crystalline soluble substance prepared like the chloride but with nitric acid. It is readily procurable in the market.

Cobalt Sulphate, $CoSO_4 . 7H_2O$.—It resembles the two last-named salts in the manner of preparation (but using sulphuric acid); 100 parts of cold water dissolve 35 parts of the salt.

Cobalt-Ammonium Sulphate, $CoSO_4 . (NH_4)_2SO_4 . 6H_2O$. — A pink salt which may be made by adding the right proportion of ammonium sulphate to cobalt sulphate (47 : 100), and then dissolving them and evaporating them together until a good crop of crystals has separated.

Copper, Cu.—A red metal with a fusing-point of about 1920° F., and a specific gravity of 8·9 to 8·95 according to its condition —whether it is simply cast or has been afterwards rolled or hammered. By reason of its extreme malleability and ductility it may be readily obtained in the form of rolled plate or foil, and of rod or wire. It is most readily attacked by nitric acid, but is slowly dissolved when immersed in heated hydrochloric or sulphuric acids. The metal is frequently found *native* (that is, in the metallic state in nature), but is most usually smelted from ores in which it is combined with sulphur as sulphide, or with oxygen and perhaps other acid substances as oxide, or oxidised compounds. Such metal often contains small percentages of sulphur, lead, bismuth, arsenic, antimony, and iron, with sometimes traces of silver and gold, and, more rarely, of nickel, cobalt, and tin. There are two classes of copper salts—one, *cupric*, containing more oxygen or other electro-negative element, formed from the oxide CuO, and yielding generally blue- or green-coloured salts and solutions; the other, *cuprous*, prepared from the sub-oxide, Cu_2O, and giving nearly colourless solutions. The former, which are more usual, alone need be referred to here.

Copper Acetate, $Cu(C_2H_3O_2)_2 . H_2O$. — Dark green crystals moderately soluble in water, formable by dissolving cupric oxide or carbonate in acetic acid.

Copper Carbonate, $CuCO_3$.—Occurs in nature as malachite and allied minerals. The artificial carbonate is a green substance, insoluble in water, but readily decomposed by mineral acids (as well as by many of organic origin) yielding the copper compound of the added acid, and carbon dioxide gas, the evolution of which gives rise to great effervescence. The so-called carbonate is usually mixed with hydrated oxide and has the formula— $CuCO_3 . Cu(OH)_2$.

Copper Chloride, $CuCl_2 . 2H_2O$. — Blue-green crystals, readily soluble in water. May be prepared by treating an excess of oxide or carbonate with hydrochloric acid, filtering, and evaporating the resulting solution.

Copper Cyanides.— The *cupric cyanide,* $Cu(CN)_2$, precipitated by potassium cyanide from copper sulphate solutions, is very unstable, rapidly changing by exposure into *cupro-cupric cyanide,* $Cu(CN)_2 . Cu_2(CN)_2$, and cyanogen gas; the former, when solid, forms green crystals, which are again decomposed at the temperature of boiling water into cuprous cyanide, Cu_2 cyanogen; and this latter forms several double cyanides with $(CN)_2$, and potassium—for example, $Cu_2(CN)_2 . KCN . H_2O$, $Cu_2(CN)_2 . 2KCN$ and others, which are for the most part verys oluble in water.

Copper Nitrate, $Cu(NO_3)_2 . 3H_2O$.—Blue crystals, very soluble in water, and rapidly absorbing moisture from the air. Excess o metal, oxide or carbonate treated with nitric acid yields the salt.

Copper Sulphate, $CuSO_4 . 5H_2O$.—Commercially known as *blue vitriol*; it is the commonest compound of copper. It forms blue crystals, of which 100 parts of cold water dissolve about 40, and of hot water about 200 parts. It is so largely used in the arts that it may be procured everywhere; it may be made the starting-point for making other compounds of the metal. By adding to an aqueous solution of the salt a quantity of sodium carbonate, dissolved in water, a green solid precipitate of copper carbonate is produced; this may be allowed to subside, filtered, washed well, and dissolved in any acid which will produce the required salt.

Glue.—For moulding, the ordinary best glue in the market, made from bones, should be used. It should be quite transparent, although perhaps dark in colour, hard, and brittle when sharply struck, and must be free from particles of foreign matter.

When soaked in water it should swell and absorb about five or six times its weight of the water. *Gelatine* is only a specially pure and clean form of glue, and *isinglass* is similar in composition.

Glue, Marine.—There are several descriptions of this useful cementing material. A commonly employed glue is made by dissolving a little india-rubber very carefully and with the aid of heat in twelve times its weight of coal-tar naphtha, adding to it twenty times its weight of shellac, and finally pouring it upon a flat cold surface to solidify and harden. It is only necessary to warm the glue and to apply it to the gently-heated surfaces that are to be united. It also makes a good waterproof and non-conductive lining when painted thickly upon the interior surfaces of tanks for cold solutions.

Gold, Au.—A yellow metal of high specific gravity (19·26) and fusing-point (1915° F.). It is the most malleable and ductile of metals, and combines with these properties that of a very good electric conductivity. In nature it occurs in the metallic state, almost invariably associated with silver, and often with copper and iron. In commerce it is met with as fine gold, and in various alloys of which the principal has the standard value of the British sovereign gold—91·67 of gold to 8·33 of copper. These alloys are described as being so many carats fine; thus, if an alloy contain 22 parts of pure gold in 24 it is said to be 22-carat gold, if it contain $\frac{18}{24}$ of its weight of the pure metal it is 18-carat gold, and so forth; the remaining metal may be copper or silver, separately or together, according to the colour which the metal is required to have; the sovereign is made of 22-carat gold $\left(\frac{22}{24}=\frac{91{\cdot}6}{100}\right)$.

Gold is insoluble in nitric, hydrochloric, or sulphuric acid alone, but readily dissolves in a mixture of the two former (aqua regia), and in a very finely-divided condition may be made to dissolve in a mixture of the first and third. To prepare pure gold from the alloy on a small scale is a simple matter. If the alloy contain less than 40 (or more safely 30) per cent. of the precious metal, mere prolonged boiling in nitric acid will dissolve the copper and silver, but leave the gold untouched in the form of a black powder, which is very heavy, and requires only to be washed several times, by stirring it up with repeated additions of cold water, allowing it to settle and pouring off one batch of water each time before adding fresh, and then to be dried and fused to yield the metal practically in a state of purity. The solution must be effected in a glass or glazed earthen- or stone-ware vessel, which will not be attacked by the strong acid; and should be carried on in the open air or in a well-ventilated fume-cupboard. But if the alloy contain a larger percentage of gold,

the other metals are not completely removed by the acid, and the original mixture must be treated with aqua regia. The gold will now be in solution; any undissolved white residue is probably silver chloride, which is formed by the agency of the hydrochloric acid and is insoluble in the liquid. It should be allowed to subside, and should be washed once or twice by decantation and filtered. The solution should now be transferred to an evaporating dish or other vessel, in which it may be evaporated to the consistency of a thick syrup, by placing it over a saucepan of boiling water. By this time the bulk of the nitric acid will have been boiled away, and the residue will be a strong, but more or less impure, solution of gold chloride containing hydrochloric acid. The liquid is now diluted, and a quantity of a solution of ferrous sulphate is added, and the mixture is allowed to stand for a day or two in a warm place. The ferrous salt becomes converted into a ferric compound at the expense of the gold oxide, and the gold should thus be liberated completely as pure precipitated metal, of dark brown or black colour, which may be washed, dried, and fused as before. The fusion may be made in a small clay crucible under a cover of a few grains of borax by way of flux for residual impurities. Oxalic acid is sometimes substituted for ferrous sulphate as a precipitant.

Gold Chloride, $AuCl_3 . 2H_2O$.—A most soluble and deliquescent yellow crystalline substance, which may be prepared as described in the latter portion of the last paragraph, but using pure gold instead of alloyed metal as the basis.

Gold Cyanides.—On adding a neutral gold chloride solution to one of potassium cyanide, there is produced *potassium auricyanide*, $2KAu(CN)_4 . 3H_2O$, which in the solid condition forms colourless tabular crystals, that are very soluble in hot water, but decompose at about 400° into *potassium aurous cyanide*, AuCN . KCN, and cyanogen gas. This latter body, potassium aurous cyanide, is formed by dissolving aurous oxide, Au_2O, or even finely-divided gold in potassium cyanide solution; it is a colourless, crystalline, and very soluble salt. Simple *aurous cyanide*, AuCN, is an insoluble lemon-yellow substance.

Gold, Fulminating, $Au_2O_3 . (NH_3)_4$.—A brown or green powder, obtainable by adding ammonia or ammonium carbonate to a solution of gold chloride. It should never be allowed to become dry, for in this condition it is liable to explode with great violence. So long as it is moist, there is no danger attending its use.

Gold Sulphide, Au_2S_3.—Obtained by passing sulphuretted hydrogen gas into a solution of the chloride; it then appears as a black precipitate, soluble in alkaline sulphides.

Graphite.—See Plumbago.

Gutta-percha.—A gum prepared from the exudation of certain trees in the Malay Peninsula and Islands. It is usually procurable in sheets. As a moulding material it is valuable, because at the temperature of boiling water it is extremely plastic and may be worked into any required shape, which it will retain on cooling, when it again becomes hard yet somewhat elastic. It is a non-conductor of electricity.

Iron, Fe.—The fusing-point of the pure metal is very high. The iron of commerce is never pure. In the condition in which it is melted from the ore as *pig-iron* or *cast-iron* it is more readily fusible, but is highly charged with impurities, derived from the ore, fuel, and flux, and contains varying proportions of carbon, sulphur, phosphorus, silicon, and manganese, frequently accompanied by other elements also, the foreign matter in the aggregate amounting to from 4 to 7 or more per cent. In this condition it is hard, brittle, and unworkable. By refining away the greater proportion of these impurities, the melting-point is greatly raised, and at the same time the metal becomes soft, ductile, and malleable, and is known as *malleable-* or *wrought-iron*, which may be rolled into sheets of any degree of thinness. Wrought-iron is the purest form of marketable iron, but even this is not pure, containing perhaps 0·5 per cent. of foreign substances. Between wrought- and cast-iron is another form—*steel*—the characteristics of which are chiefly governed by the percentage of carbon, which may range from 1½ per cent. in the harder varieties of tool steel to practically nothing in *mild-steel*.

The latter of these alone, from its greater purity, enters into competition with wrought-iron as a rival in the manufacture of anodes.

The metal is soluble in either of the three common mineral acids, and forms two classes of salts, one (*ferric*) with more oxygen, of which the peroxide, Fe_2O_3, is typical, the other (*ferrous*) of which the protoxide, FeO, is the basis. The latter are readily converted into the former by the addition of oxygen, even by absorption from the air; but unless there be an excess of acid in the bath the effect of the peroxidisation will be the precipitation of basic salt (see p. 231). It is for this reason that neutral ferrous solutions rapidly become turbid with a yellowish slimy deposit.

Iron Chlorides.—*Ferrous Chloride*, $FeCl_2 . 4H_2O$, and *ferric chloride*, $Fe_2Cl_6 . 12H_2O$, are both very soluble crystalline bodies—the former bluish, the latter yellow in colour.

Iron Sulphate.—*Iron protosulphate*, *ferrous sulphate*, or *green vitriol*, $FeSO_4 . 7H_2O$, is a green crystalline substance, often yellowish on the exterior, owing to the formation of ferric com-

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

pounds with the aid of atmospheric oxygen. On account of this tendency to peroxidation, this and other ferrous compounds should not be exposed more than necessary to the air. 100 parts of cold water dissolve about 70 parts of the salt, of hot water 330 parts. The *ferric* sulphate, $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$, demands only casual mention in this place.

Iron-Ammonium Sulphate, $FeSO_4.(NH_4)_2SO_4.6H_2O$, is a body similar to the last, but with a bluer shade of colour, and is much less liable to alteration by exposure to air, and is therefore preferable to the former for many reasons. 100 parts of cold water dissolve 16 parts of this salt.

Lard.—The pure white lard is used; as it is frequently adulterated with water and solid substances, it should be melted and allowed to stand for some time in this condition. The bulk of the water and heavier matter will sink to the bottom, and the purified fat, which should now be quite transparent, may be drawn off from above, or removed by ladles into vessels wherein it may be allowed to solidify. It should melt at a temperature of about 110·5° F.

Lead, Pb.—One of the softest of metals, it is very malleable, but, having a low tenacity, is deficient in ductility; it may be rolled into sheet, but not drawn into wire. Its fusing-point is 625° F., and its specific gravity 11·25 in the cast state, or 11·39 when it has been condensed by rolling. On account of its ready fusibility it may be cast into slabs, or it may be rolled into sheet for use as anodes. Commercial lead, frequently very nearly pure, is never absolutely so. It always contains at least a trace of silver, often with varying proportions of antimony, tin, copper, iron, and sulphur. It is readily dissolved in nitric acid, and slowly in boiling hydrochloric acid. Sulphuric acid, except of the most concentrated description, is almost without action on the metal. Both chloride and sulphate of lead are practically insoluble in their respective acids, so that very soon the metallic surface becomes coated with a deposit which prevents further action. The salts of lead are formed from the basis of the monoxide (litharge = PbO), in which the metal is divalent, although two other oxides, *red lead*, Pb_3O_4, and *peroxide*, PbO_2, are known.

Lead Acetate, $Pb(C_2H_3O_2)_2$.—A readily soluble white crystalline substance, easily formed by dissolving lead oxide or carbonate in acetic acid. It is very commonly known as *sugar of lead.*

Lead Nitrate, $Pb(NO_3)_2$, forms soluble white crystals (100 parts of water dissolve about 54 parts in the cold, or 135 parts when heated).

Lime.—See Chalk.

Magnesium, Mg.—A white divalent metal, readily becoming dull in moist air. When ignited at a slightly elevated temperature, it continues to burn with a most brilliant white light, until it is completely converted into oxide. It has a very low specific gravity (1·75), and fuses at 1380° F. It forms one oxide, magnesia, MgO, which is the basis of the various salts of the metal.

Magnesium Chloride, $MgCl_2 . 6H_2O$.—A most soluble and deliquescent crystalline salt (100 parts of water dissolve 280 parts in the cold, or 782 parts of the body when heated). It must be stored in a closely-stoppered bottle.

Magnesium Sulphate, $MgSO_4 . 7H_2O$.—Commonly known as *Epsom salts.* It forms white crystals, easily procurable, of which 100 parts of cold water dissolve about 70.

Mercury, Hg.—Frequently called *quicksilver.* It is the only known metal which is liquid at ordinary temperatures; it solidifies at −38°·9 F., and boils at 680° F. Its specific gravity at the normal temperature is 13·59. Mercury has a great tendency to dissolve other metals, and so to form *amalgams*; it must not, therefore, be stored in, or allowed to come into contact with, clean surfaces of any metal commonly in use except iron or platinum, with which it does not combine. Gold and silver are especially liable to be dissolved, and as articles of jewellery are thus readily spoiled by mercury, the greatest care must be taken in using it. Gold becomes white and dulled by it, and requires the application of strong heat to effect its removal; and the surface is then left 'dead,' so that it must be re-polished. Mercury, therefore, should not unnecessarily be introduced into the workroom containing electro-plated goods awaiting treatment; but if used for any purpose it should be carefully preserved from contact with any article liable to be spoiled by it. In consequence of its proneness to combine with other metals, mercury is rarely quite pure. If it be required clean, it may be spread in a shallow dish and covered with dilute nitric acid, with which it should be stirred from time to time. The base metals, such as zinc, copper, and lead, being more electro-positive than mercury, tend to dissolve first; but a certain amount of the mercury itself dissolves also, and forms mercurous nitrate. This sub-nitrate assists in the removal of the other metals by simple exchange; gold and silver, which are more negative than mercury, are, of course, unaffected by the treatment. The solution which has been used for cleaning mercury may be used again and again to treat fresh samples, so long as it contains either an excess of acid, or an appreciable quantity of mercury in solution. This may be ascertained by the blue litmus-paper

test in the former case, or in the latter, by adding a drop of hydrochloric acid to a little of the solution placed in a test tube, when a dense white precipitate of mercurous chloride (calomel) is at once produced if mercury be present. Mercurous nitrate solution may be substituted for nitric acid at the outset if preferred. The most satisfactory method of purification, however, is to distil the mercury from a glass retort, and, preferably, under diminished atmospheric pressure, effected by adopting a system of hermetically-joined retort and condenser connected to an air pump. In this way the boiling-point of the mercury may be greatly lowered, and the probability of simultaneous distillation of small quantities of zinc and lead is diminished. A rough test, commonly applied to indicate the presence of any considerable percentage of base metal, is conducted by placing a drop of the mercury upon an inclined surface of smooth glass or glazed porcelain; if pure, it should retain its spherical shape and roll over the surface, leaving no trace behind; but if impure, it assumes an elongated form and tends to leave a grey trail behind it, or, in other words, it is said to *tail*. Mercury may be monovalent or divalent, and thus forms two oxides, *mercurous* (Hg_2O) and *mercuric* (HgO), with their corresponding salts. As these salts deposit mercury on base metal by simple immersion, and the reduced mercury then amalgamates with the remainder of the other metal, their solutions must be used in the operating room with as much circumspection as quicksilver itself.

Mercury Chlorides.—*Mercurous chloride* or *calomel*, Hg_2Cl_2, and *mercuric chloride* or *corrosive sublimate*, $HgCl_2$.—The former is a heavy white powder insoluble in water; the latter an extremely poisonous, white, crystalline body, of which about 7 parts dissolve in 100 parts of cold, 53 in a like weight of hot water.

Mercurous Nitrate, $Hg_2(NO_3)_2 . 2H_2O$.—A white, crystalline, very poisonous substance, which may deposit basic salt when treated with water, but is readily soluble in water containing a little nitric acid. It is best made by treating an excess of mercury with cold dilute nitric acid. The hot concentrated acid tends to produce mercuric nitrate, $Hg(NO_3)_2$.

Nickel, Ni.—A white metal of specific gravity 8·9 and very high fusing-point. Formerly it could be obtained only in the cast condition, but by improved methods of treatment it is now readily procurable rolled into sheet of any required size. The chief impurities affecting its use are iron, copper, cobalt, and arsenic. It forms two oxides, but the chief salts belong to the monoxide group (NiO), in which it is divalent. Nickel is slowly dissolved by sulphuric or hydrochloric acids, rapidly by nitric acid, the attack being always favoured by heating.

Nickel Carbonate, $NiCO_3$.—An insoluble, pale apple-green powder. An impure carbonate containing an excess of oxide is produced by adding potassium or sodium carbonate to the solution of a nickel salt.

Nickel Chloride, $NiCl_2 . 6H_2O$.—Green soluble crystals, resulting from the solution of oxide, metal, or carbonate in hydrochloric acid.

Nickel Citrate, $Ni(C_6H_5O_7)_2 . 14H_2O$. — A soluble green body formed by dissolving nickel oxide or carbonate in citric acid.

Nickel Nitrate, $Ni(NO_3)_2 . 6H_2O$.—Green crystals, of which 50 parts are soluble in 100 of cold water. May be formed like the chloride, substituting nitric for hydrochloric acid.

Nickel Sulphate, $NiSO_4 . 7H_2O$.—The most generally known and used salt of nickel. It is full green in colour, and is soluble in water to the extent of 37 parts in 100.

Nickel-Ammonium Sulphate, $NiSO_4 . (NH_4)_2SO_4 . 6H_2O$.—Resembles the last, but 100 parts of water dissolve only 5·5 parts of the salt. It may be made by dissolving together nickel sulphate and ammonium sulphate, and evaporating the solution until crystals are obtained.

Phosphorus, P.—A non-metallic elementary substance procurable in two modifications—vitreous and amorphous. The *vitreous phosphorus* is sold in colourless or yellowish translucent sticks which gradually become slightly opaque, especially upon the surface. It is poisonous, and is insoluble in water, but dissolves very readily in certain liquids, of which carbon bisulphide is a type. It is a most oxidisable body, and takes fire spontaneously when exposed to the air; it must, therefore, be preserved under water, and should only be removed from it when required for use, and then all operations must be conducted rapidly and carefully. If it is required to cut the blocks into smaller fragments, they should be placed singly in a shallow dish containing sufficient water to cover them completely; they may then be cut with a penknife, but on no account should they be so cut except under water, as the friction of the knife may suffice to inflame the phosphorus when in contact with air. Fragments must be prevented from clinging under the finger nail, as should they inflame subsequently, very troublesome sores may be produced. The pieces should be rapidly dried between pieces of blotting-paper, and used without delay, being handled as little as possible; it is safer for those unaccustomed to work with chemical substances to hold them with light brass tongs.

Phosphorus is soluble in oils and in carbon bisulphide; its

solution in the latter substance is used occasionally to assist in the metallisation of electrotype moulds (see pp. 146, 149), but it is a most dangerous liquid to work with, owing to the readiness with which the solvent evaporates and leaves upon any object a thin film of phosphorus which often takes fire spontaneously. This solution and its destructive properties have long been known under the name of *Greek fire*. This, and indeed all operations involving the use of stick-phosphorus, should be undertaken only by experienced persons, and should, if possible, be excluded from common workshop use.

The *amorphous* (or red) phosphorus, which is prepared by heating the vitreous variety to 464° F. with suitable precautions for the exclusion of air, is not spontaneously inflammable at ordinary temperatures, and is not poisonous; but as it is insoluble in carbon bisulphide, it is useless for the purposes to which this element is usually applied in electro-metallurgy.

Plaster of Paris, from the mineral *gypsum*.—This is a more or less pure *calcium sulphate*, $CaSO_4$. Its use as a plaster depends upon the property possessed by the substance after heating (two-thirds of the water having been expelled by this heating) of taking to itself a quantity of water in chemical combination, to form the fully hydrated salt, $CaSO_4 . 2H_2O$. In doing this a considerable amount of heat is evolved, expansion ensues, and the cream formed by the admixture of water and the powdered material sets into a substance which rapidly hardens as the combination becomes complete and the excess of liquid is absorbed. Since the value of the plaster is dependent upon its power of absorbing water, it must never be allowed to remain exposed to the moisture of the air, from which it would slowly extract its full measure of water of hydration, but must be preserved in well-closed vessels. Gypsum which has been overburnt refuses to absorb water, and is, therefore, useless. A sample of the plaster when made into a cream with water should become warm, and in the course of half an hour set into a firm, solid, but porous mass. For moulding purposes the plaster must be free from foreign matter, especially from gritty particles.

Platinum, Pt.—A heavy, brilliantly-white metal, unalterable in air, very ductile and malleable, and of extremely high fusing-point. Its specific gravity is 21·5. It dissolves only in aqua regia, being unaffected by either hydrochloric or nitric acid alone, and forms two sets of salts, corresponding to the oxides PtO and PtO_2 respectively.

Platinic Chloride, $PtCl_4 . 5H_2O$. — Red crystals soluble in water; but the substance usually known by this name is *hydro-*

platinic chloride, $PtH_2Cl_6 . 6H_2O$. This results from evaporating a solution of the metal in aqua regia, together with a good excess of hydrochloric acid, and thus forms red-brown, very soluble—and, indeed, deliquescent—crystals.

Plumbago, sometimes known as *graphite* or *black-lead*.—It is an impure natural variety of carbon; and is found very abundantly in Cumberland and in Ceylon. Being a conductor of electricity, it is largely used for facing non-conductive surfaces, which are to receive an electro-deposit of any metal. It should be very finely crushed, even to an impalpable powder. As some varieties are very inferior conductors, samples should be tested for efficiency in this respect before final selection for use.

Potassium Acetate, $KC_2H_3O_2$.—White soluble crystals; 100 parts of cold water dissolving about 230 of the salt.

Potassium Carbonate, $2K_2CO_3 . 3H_2O$.—White crystals very soluble in water; often used in the anhydrous state, when 100 parts of water dissolve about 105 parts of the solid. It is decomposed, with effervescence, by the addition of acid.

Potassium Bicarbonate, $KHCO_3$.—A much less soluble salt (25 in 100) which may be formed by passing carbon dioxide (carbonic acid gas) through a strong solution of the normal carbonate.

Potassium Citrate.—White soluble crystals formed by just neutralising citric acid with potassium carbonate.

Potassium Cyanide, KCN.—A white opaque solid, generally bought in irregular lumps or in sticks. It is very soluble in water; and, owing to its becoming decomposed by even the weakest acids, carbonic acid among the number, it gradually alters by exposure to the air, especially in large towns where the atmosphere is laden with carbon dioxide, slowly evolving hydrocyanic acid, which imparts to it the peculiar and characteristic faint smell of bitter almonds. It is a deadly poison, and must be used with the utmost caution. Taken internally in minute quantities it may cause instant death, while the solution passing into the blood through cuts in the hand gives rise to painful sores and blood-poisoning; even the fumes, in a badly-ventilated room, cause headache and depression. The commercial cyanide is rarely pure; that known as *gold cyanide* is the best, the *silver cyanide* is inferior. It should always be tested before use, as it frequently contains less than half its weight of the pure salt.

Potassium Ferrocyanide, $K_4FeC_6N_6 . 3H_2O$.—*Yellow prussiate of potash.*—Yellow crystals, of which 25 parts dissolve in 100 of water. A very commonly procurable substance. It gives a deep blue precipitate of Prussian blue when mixed with a solution of ferric chloride.

Potassium Hydroxide (*Potassium Hydrate*), KHO.—*Caustic Potash.*—A most powerful caustic alkali bought, like the cyanide, in sticks or cakes. It is soluble in water with evolution of much heat; and substances, moistened with the solution, give rise to a peculiar slimy sensation of the skin when touched. It should never be allowed to enter the mouth, as even dilute solutions almost immediately remove the lining of tender skin. Should such an event happen, the mouth should be at once rinsed several times with water and then with very dilute acetic acid. This body, whether in the solid state or in solution, must be carefully stored in well-closed vessels, as it rapidly becomes converted into carbonate by absorption of carbonic acid from the air, and thus loses its caustic properties.

Potassium Iodide, KI.—An intensely soluble, white crystalline substance, 150 parts of which dissolve in 100 of cold water. It is decomposed by nitric acid with separation of iodine, which colours the solution yellow if dilute, or produces a dark, almost black precipitate if it be concentrated. Strong sulphuric acid has a similar effect.

Potassium Binoxalate, KC_2HO_4 — *Salt of Sorrel.* — White crystals, not largely soluble in cold water, but imparting to it an acid reaction, turning blue litmus-paper red.

Potassium Thiocyanate (*Potassium Sulphocyanide*), KCNS.—A very soluble white salt, absorbing much heat (or, as it is more commonly said, producing great cold) when dissolved in water. Its solution gives a blood-red colour when mixed with ferric chloride.

Potassium Bitartrate, $KC_4H_5O_6$—*Cream of Tartar.*—A somewhat insoluble acid salt, 100 parts of water dissolving only 0·5 parts in the cold or 7 at the boiling temperature. It is colourless when pure, but the commercial crude *tartar* or *argol*, which is a by-product in the wine industry, is usually stained purple. The pure salt may be made from this by dissolving it in water, filtering it and allowing it to crystallise on cooling.

Potassium-Sodium Tartrate, $KNaC_4H_4O_6 . 4H_2O$—*Rochelle-* or *Seignette-salt.*—A very soluble, white, crystalline substance, which may be made by adding 4 parts of potassium bitartrate and 3 of

crystallised sodium bicarbonate, little by little, to 12 parts of boiling water, and then cooling in order to allow crystals to deposit.

Rosin, or *Colophony*.—One of a large series of bodies termed resins, exuded by certain trees. Common rosin is deep amber to brown in colour, and should be translucent and brittle. It becomes slightly but distinctly softened at a temperature of 120° F., and as the temperature rises increases in softness until it becomes viscous, and, finally, semi-liquid at about the temperature of boiling water.

Silver, Ag.—A very white and unalterable metal with a specific gravity of 10·4 to 10·5 and a fusing-point of 1740° F. It is extremely malleable and ductile, and is at the same time the best known conductor of heat and electricity. It combines readily with sulphur, and is thus rapidly covered with a black tarnish of silver sulphide in the atmosphere of towns. Alloyed with copper it is used for silver coinage, the amount of alloy varying in different countries, the English standard being 92·5 of silver to 7·5 of copper. To prepare *fine silver* (*i.e.*, pure silver) from such an alloy, the metal should be dissolved in nitric acid in a glass or glazed earthenware vessel; any black residue is gold, of which there is frequently a small quantity present, and must be filtered off. To the solution (which is blue, owing to the presence of copper) a common salt solution, or better, dilute hydrochloric acid, is slowly added, so long as it continues to produce a white curdy precipitate. The liquid is stirred well to promote the subsidence of the latter, and then allowed to settle; a little more of the salt or acid is now added, which should produce no further precipitate (if it should do so, more must be added, until the whole of the silver has thus been thrown down). Any addition of common salt beyond that necessary for complete precipitation only tends to re-dissolve the silver chloride formed, which is fairly soluble in brine; thus, hydrochloric acid is to be preferred as a precipitant, because a moderate excess is without action on the silver salt. The blue copper solution is now poured away from the heavy silver chloride, which is then stirred up with fresh water, and allowed to subside. This washing *by decantation* is repeated several times, the wash waters being disregarded. The chloride is then collected on a filter, dried, and mixed with an equal bulk of dried sodium carbonate, transferred to a fire-clay crucible, and heated to a bright-red heat in a clear charcoal- or coke-fire. As soon as fusion commences, effervescence will be observed, due to the mutual decomposition which occurs between the silver chloride and sodium carbonate, whereby sodium chloride and silver carbonate are produced, the latter body being dissociated at the temperature of the operation into carbon

dioxide, oxygen, and metallic silver, the two former escaping in the gaseous state, the latter sinking through the slag by virtue of its higher specific gravity, and collecting into a fused mass at the bottom of the pot. When the contents of the crucible are tranquil they are poured, with the aid of a pair of large bent iron tongs, into an iron ingot-mould of cup-shape, from which, when cold, the silver and slag (that is, the fused salt) are readily removed and separated one from the other. Silver forms one set of salts derived from the oxide, Ag_2O, in which the metal is monovalent. Moist silver salts should not be allowed to come into contact with clean surfaces of base metals, which will decompose them by simple exchange; nor should they be exposed unnecessarily to white light, by which many of them are gradually decomposed and darkened in colour.

Silver Carbonate, Ag_2CO_3.—A pale yellow, insoluble substance, formed by adding a carbonate of soda solution to one of a soluble silver salt such as the nitrate.

Silver Chloride, AgCl—*Horn silver.*—A white substance gradually passing through a gradation of shade from violet to black by exposure to white light. It is practically insoluble in water, but dissolves to some extent in solutions of sodium chloride, and readily in ammonia, and in sodium thiosulphate (hyposulphite) or potassium cyanide solutions. It is formed, as described above under the head of fine silver, by adding hydrochloric acid or common salt to a solution of silver nitrate.

Silver Cyanide, AgCN.—A white insoluble salt, best formed by gradually adding a potassium cyanide solution to one of silver nitrate, carefully watching the formation of the precipitate, and allowing it to subside after each addition of cyanide, so that, immediately another drop of the potash salt fails to produce a further precipitate or cloudiness in the liquid, all further addition is stopped, otherwise the silver cyanide will begin to re-dissolve in the excess of the precipitant. The liquid is then washed several times by decantation, as in the case of the chloride. To obtain the pure cyanide, only distilled water must be used; ordinary spring- or river-water, or even rain-water, contains chlorides, which cause the contamination of the cyanide by silver chloride. The essentials for success are pure substances, and precisely the right proportion between the silver nitrate and potassium cyanide. The silver cyanide dissolves readily in ammonia and sodium thiosulphate as well as in potassium cyanide.

Silver Iodide, AgI.—Has a pale yellow colour; it is readily formed by adding potassium iodide to silver nitrate solutions. It is insoluble in water, and practically even in strong ammonia;

strong potassium iodide liquor, however, dissolves a fair proportion of the salt.

Silver Nitrate, $AgNO_3$—*Lunar Caustic.*—A white crystalline body, obtainable readily in crystals, but sometimes fused into sticks. It dissolves readily in water. In making solutions of this or of any other silver salt, only distilled water should be employed; all other waters, owing to the presence of chlorine, produce a cloudiness or even a distinct precipitate of silver chloride.

Silver Oxide, Ag_2O.—A deep brown, or almost black, insoluble powder, obtained by adding caustic soda or potash to silver nitrate solution.

Silver Sulphate, Ag_2SO_4. — Brilliant white crystals, only slightly soluble in cold water, but more so in boiling water: they are also soluble in strong sulphuric acid, from which they are partly reprecipitated by the addition of water.

Sodium Carbonate, $Na_2CO_3 . 10H_2O$—*Washing Soda* or *Soda Crystals.*—Very soluble, colourless, alkaline crystals. It behaves chemically like potassium carbonate. An impure kind, containing, *inter alia*, caustic soda and various foreign salts, is sold as a non-crystalline powder under the name of *soda ash*, which is suitable for fluxing in obtaining fine silver or gold, but should not be employed in making up electrolytic baths. A similar variety, commonly known as *refined alkali*, is purer, but still not always safe.

Sodium Bicarbonate, $NaHCO_3$. — A white soluble powder, whose relation to the carbonate is analogous to that between the corresponding potassium salts.

Sodium Chloride, NaCl—*Common Salt*; *Table Salt*; *Rock Salt*; or *Bay Salt*; the latter are not always pure.—The pure salt should form white cubical crystals, of which 100 parts of cold water dissolve 36 parts, hot water taking up slightly more. The natural varieties, or rock salt, frequently contain a considerable percentage of iron, which imparts a brown or purple tint to the body; while salt obtained from sea-water is often found to contain magnesium compounds and other bodies.

Sodium Citrate.—Soluble colourless crystals formed by neutralising citric acid with sodium carbonate.

Sodium Hydroxide (*Sodium Hydrate*), NaOH—*Caustic Soda.*—White soluble lumps of a highly caustic character resembling potassium hydrate (which see) in properties and effects.

Sodium Phosphate.—There are three principal phosphates—the *orthophosphate*, $Na_3PO_4 . 12H_2O$; the *pyrophosphate*, $Na_4P_2O_7 . 10H_2O$; and the *metaphosphate*, $NaPO_3$. All of them are white bodies soluble in water; but the orthophosphate, or rather the *disodium-orthophosphate*, $Na_2HPO_4 . 12H_2O$, in which one atom of hydrogen takes the place of one of sodium, is that more commonly met with. The pyrophosphate is sometimes used in making up baths.

Sodium Sulphite, $Na_2SO_3 . 7H_2O$.—White soluble crystals, with an alkaline reaction.

Sodium Bisulphide, $NaHSO_3$, is a similar body, but with an acid reaction. Both are compounds of soda with sulphurous acid.

Sodium Thiosulphate (*Sodium Hyposulphite*), $Na_2S_2O_3 . 5H_2O$.—Colourless soluble crystals, which have the property of dissolving silver salts by forming a soluble double thiosulphate of silver and soda.

Sodium Stannate, Na_2SnO_3.—A white substance soluble in water, formed by fusing either stannic oxide (the dressed ore, *tin stone*, or *cassiterite* may be used) with caustic soda; or the metal itself with caustic soda to which sodium nitrate has been added. The aqueous solution, when evaporated, yields crystals containing water of crystallisation.

Sodium Tartrate, $Na_2C_4H_4O_6 . 2H_2O$. — White and soluble crystals, much more soluble in hot than in cold water.

Sulphur, S, formerly better known as *brimstone*.—Obtainable as *flowers of sulphur* and as stick or *roll* sulphur, both of which are pale yellow in colour, but the latter variety is crystalline and soluble in carbon bisulphide, while the former is amorphous and insoluble. It melts at 238° F., and will yield sharp impressions of objects, so that it is occasionally useful in obtaining casts. Mixed with iron sulphide it forms the basis of *Spence's metal*, of which medallions and plaques have been sometimes made, and may thus come into the hands of the electrotyper. Being very fragile, objects made of sulphur or Spence's composition must not be subjected to pressure in taking casts from them with other moulding materials. Sulphur is, of course, very inflammable, and, therefore, requires care in melting.

Tin, Sn.—A white, soft, very fusible and malleable metal, too weak to possess any great ductility, with specific gravity 7·29, and fusing-point 450° F. It is not readily tarnishable, and therefore retains its brilliancy for a long time when exposed to the air. Easily soluble in hydrochloric acid or aqua regia, but

converted into an insoluble white oxide by nitric acid. It forms two series of salts, corresponding to the oxides, *stannic*, SnO_2, in which it is tetravalent, and *stannous*, SnO, where it is divalent. Commercially, tin frequently contains traces of lead, tungsten, iron, copper, antimony, or arsenic.

Tin Tetrachloride, $SnCl_4$—*Stannic Chloride.* — A colourless, fuming liquid, boiling at 248° F. It forms several solid hydrates, mostly crystalline, by the addition of water; such are the *butter of tin* and *oxymuriate of tin.*

Tin Dichloride, $SnCl_2 . 2H_2O$—*Stannous Chloride* or *Tin Salt.* —A white soluble crystalline substance, formed by dissolving tin in hydrochloric acid.

Varnish—*Lacquer Varnish.*—The formulæ for this varnish, which is used for protecting metallic surfaces from tarnish, are almost innumerable. Perhaps the best are those in which seed lac is dissolved in from 8 to 10 parts of the strongest spirits of wine, freed as far as possible from water, and coloured by the addition of dragon's blood or gamboge (say from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of a part), or by mixtures of these, according to the particular tint that it is desired to obtain.

Stopping-off Varnish.—Since the object of this class of varnish is to prevent the formation of an electrolytic deposit upon any desired portion of an article, the requirements are evidently—a non-conductive material, easily applied and with facility removable, which shall not be attacked by the solution in which it is to be immersed, and which should of preference be coloured in such a way that the portions of the surface protected by it may be seen at a glance, for convenience of application. To resist ordinary bath-solutions used cold, almost any varnish is applicable, and common copal varnish, mixed with a colouring medium, will be found suitable; or asphalt varnish may be used, as for the back of electrotype plates. But for hot cyanide solutions other materials are required, although copal varnish is often used, and for this work, a mixture of 44 per cent. rosin with 26 of bees'-wax, 17 of sealing-wax, and 13 of jeweller's rouge, may be applied with advantage, provided that the best materials alone are employed in preparing it.

Zinc, Zn.—A bluish-white divalent metal, fusible at 783° F., easily distilled at a higher temperature. Specific gravity, 7·1. It is brittle in the cold, and above 250° F., but near the temperature of boiling water it is sufficiently malleable to admit of rolling into thin sheets. It forms one class of salts only, from the monoxide, ZnO. The chief impurities in the commercial metal are lead, iron, cadmium, and arsenic.

Zinc Acetate, $Zn(C_2H_3O_2)_2 . 3H_2O$. — Very soluble white crystals.

Zinc Carbonate, $ZnCO_3$.—A white insoluble substance, prepared by adding sodium carbonate in excess to a solution of any zinc salt. It is decomposed by acids with effervescence.

Zinc Chloride, $ZnCl_2$. — A very soluble and deliquescent white, opaque, soft mass; may be prepared by dissolving zinc or its oxide or carbonate in hydrochloric acid.

Zinc Cyanide, $Zn(CN)_2$. — A white substance insoluble in water, but readily so in potassium cyanide solutions. Prepared by precipitating a solution of zinc sulphate with one of potassium cyanide; of course, carefully avoiding excess of the latter.

Zinc Oxide, ZnO.—A white substance, becoming yellowish when strongly heated, but returning to its original colour on cooling. The *hydroxide*, or hydrated oxide, $Zn(OH)_2$, is precipitated when an exact equivalent of caustic alkali is added to a solution of a zinc salt; an excess of the alkali tends to redissolve the precipitate.

Zinc Sulphate, $ZnSO_4 . 7H_2O$—*White Vitriol*.—Soluble white crystals; the commonest salt of zinc. It may be prepared like the chloride, of course substituting sulphuric for hydrochloric acid. 100 parts of water dissolve about 50 of the salt in the cold, and nearly 100 at the boiling-point.

ADDENDA.

TABLE XXVIII.—Giving Data for calculating the Weight and Thickness of Deposit produced by a known Current or Current-Density in a given Time for certain of the commoner Metals.

Metal.	Atomic Weight.	Equivalent Weight.	Specific Gravity.	Electro-chemical Equivalent.	Weight deposited per hour by current of 1 ampere.		Thickness of Deposit produced in 1 hour by current of:—	
					Grammes.	Grains.	1 ampere per square decimetre.	1 ampere per square inch.
							mm.	inch.
Aluminium . .	27	9·0	2·6	0·00009317	0·3354	5·175	0·0129	0·007875
Antimony . .	122	40·6	6·8	·00042025	1·5130	23·350	·0222	·013584
Arsenic . . .	75	25	5·8	·00025880	0·9317	14·378	·0161	·009806
Bismuth . . .	210	70	9·8	·00072464	2·6087	40·258	·0266	·016251
Cadmium . . .	112	56	8·6	·00057971	2·0870	32·207	·0243	·014811
Chromium . .	52·5	17·5	7·0	·00018116	0·6522	10·052	·0093	·005687
Cobalt	59	29·5	8·7	·00030538	1·0994	16·966	·0126	·007715
Copper (Monovalent)	63·5	63·5	8·9	·00065735	2·3665	36·520	·0265	·016208
,, (Divalent) .	63·5	31·7	8·9	·00032867	1·1832	18·260	·0133	·008104
Gold . . .	196·6	65·5	19·3	·00067806	2·4410	37·670	·0127	·007721
Iridium . . .	197	49·2	21·1	·00050932	1·8335	28·296	·0087	·005291
Iron (Divalent) .	56	28	8·1	·00028986	1·0435	16·103	·0128	·007826
Lead . . .	207	103·5	11·4	·00107140	3·8571	59·525	·0338	·021134
Magnesium . .	24·3	12·1	1·7	·00012526	0·4509	6·959	·0265	·016190
Manganese . .	55	27·5	8·0	·00028468	1·0248	15·816	·0128	·007821
Nickel . . .	59	29·5	8·5	·00030538	1·0994	16·966	·0129	·007894
Palladium . .	106·5	26·6	11·4	·00027536	0·9913	15·298	·0087	·005291
Platinum . . .	197	44·3	21·2	·00045859	1·6509	25·478	·0078	·004743
Silver . . .	108	108	10·6	·00111800	4·0249	62·113	·0380	·023142
Tin (Divalent) . .	118	59	7·3	·00061077	2·1988	33·932	·0302	·018414
Zinc	65	32·5	7·1	·00033644	1·2112	18·691	·0171	·010415

Note.—These figures are based on Lord Rayleigh's number for the electro-chemical equivalent of hydrogen=0·000010352. This (0·000010352 gramme H *per second*) is equal to 6·9503 c.c. H or 10·4255 c.c. mixed gas (H_2+O) *per minute*.

TABLE XXIX.—Showing the Value of Equal Current-Densities as expressed in Amperes per Square Decimetre, per Square Foot, and per Square Inch of Electrode Surface.

Amperes per square decimetre.	= Amperes per square foot.	= Amperes per square inch.	Amperes per square decimetre.	= Amperes per square foot.	= Amperes per square inch.	Amperes per square decimetre.	= Amperes per square foot.	= Amperes per square inch.
0·05	0·46	0·0032	**0·8**	7·43	0·0516	6·20	57·6	**0·4**
0·054	**0·5**	0·0035	0·86	**8**	0·0555	6·46	**60**	0·4167
0·077	0·72	**0·005**	**0·9**	8·36	0·0581	**7**	65·0	0·4516
0·1	0·93	0·0064	0·93	8·64	**0·06**	7·53	**70**	0·4861
0·11	**1**	0·0069	0·97	**9**	0·0625	7·75	72·0	**0·5**
0·15	1·44	**0·01**	**1**	9·29	0·0645	**8**	74·3	0·5161
0·2	1·86	0·0129	1·08	**10**	0·0694	8·61	**80**	0·5555
0·22	**2**	0·0139	1·09	10·08	**0·07**	**9**	83·6	0·5806
0·3	2·79	0·0193	1·24	11·52	**0·08**	9·30	86·4	**0·6**
0·31	2·88	**0·02**	1·39	12·96	**0·09**	9·69	**90**	0·6250
0·32	**3**	0·0208	1·55	14·4	**0·1**	**10**	92·9	0·6452
0·4	3·71	0·0258	**2**	18·6	0·1290	10·76	**100**	0·6944
0·43	**4**	0·0278	2·15	**20**	0·1389	10·85	100·8	**0·7**
0·46	4·32	**0·03**	**3**	27·9	0·1935	12·40	115·2	**0·8**
0·5	4·64	0·0323	3·10	28·8	**0·2**	13·95	129·6	**0·9**
0·54	**5**	0·0348	3·23	**30**	0·2083	15·50	144·0	**1**
0·6	5·57	0·0387	**4**	37·1	0·2581	**20**	185·8	1·2903
0·62	5·76	**0·04**	4·30	**40**	0·2778	21·53	**200**	1·3889
0·65	**6**	0·0417	4·60	43·2	**0·3**	**30**	278·7	1·9355
0·7	6·50	0·0452	**5**	46·4	0·3226	31·0	288	**2**
0·75	**7**	0·0486	5·38	**50**	0·3478	32·3	**300**	2·0833
0·77	7·20	**00·5**	**6**	55·7	0·3871	46·5	432·0	**3**

By this table the current-density may be expressed in amperes per square decimetre, square foot, or square inch, any one of them being given. Thus a current of 1 ampere per square decimetre has the same electrolytic value as one of 9·29 amperes per square foot, or 0·0645 per square inch. To find the value of intermediate numbers not shown above, add together the various numbers representing the hundreds, tens, units, and decimals of the given quantity. Thus 27·5 amperes per square decimetre (=20+7+0·5) is equivalent to 185·8+65+4·64=255·44 amperes per square foot, or 1·2903+0·4516+0·0323=1·7742 amperes per square inch.

TABLE XXX.—Showing the Specific Gravities of Sulphuric, Nitric, and Hydrochloric Acids corresponding to varying Percentages of Pure H_2SO_4, HNO_3, and HCl in the Liquids respectively.

%	H_2SO_4.	HNO_3.	HCl.	%	H_2SO_4.	HNO_3.	HCl.	%	H_2SO_4.	HNO_3.	HCl.
100	1·8426	1·500	...	66	1·568	1·3783	...	33	1·247	1·1895	1·1640
99	1·8420	1·498	...	65	1·557	1·3732	...	32	1·239	1·1833	1·1584
98	1·8406	1·496	...	64	1·545	1·3681	...	31	1·231	1·1770	1·1536
97	1·8400	1·494	...	63	1·534	1·3630	..	30	1·223	1·1709	1·1484
96	1·8384	1·491	...	62	1·523	1·3579	...	29	1·215	1·1648	1·1433
95	1·8376	1·488	...	61	1·512	1·3529	...	28	1·2066	1·1587	1·1382
94	1·8356	1·485	...	60	1·501	1·3477	...	27	1·1980	1·1515	1·1333
93	1·8340	1·482	...	59	1·490	1·3427	...	26	1·190	1·1467	1·1282
92	1·8310	1·479	...	58	1·480	1·3376	...	25	1·182	1·1403	1·1232
91	1·8270	1·476	...	57	1·469	1·3323	...	24	1·174	1·1345	1·1182
90	1·8220	1·473	...	56	1·4586	1·3270	...	23	1·167	1·1286	1·1131
89	1·8160	1·470	...	55	1·448	1·3216	...	22	1·159	1·1227	1·1081
88	1·8090	1·467	.	54	1·438	1·3163	...	21	1·1516	1·1168	1·1031
87	1·802	1·464	...	53	1·428	1·3110	...	20	1·144	1·1109	1·0981
86	1·794	1·460	...	52	1·418	1·3056	...	19	1·136	1·1051	1·0931
85	1·786	1·457	...	51	1·408	1·3001	...	18	1·129	1·0993	1·0882
84	1·777	1·453	...	50	1·398	1·2947	...	17	1·121	1·0935	1·0832
83	1·767	1·450	...	49	1·3886	1·2887	...	16	1·1136	1·0878	1·0783
82	1·756	1·446	...	48	1·379	1·2826	...	15	1·106	1·0821	1·0734
81	1·745	1·4424	...	47	1·370	1·2765	...	14	1·098	1·0764	1·0684
80	1·734	1·4385	...	46	1·361	1·2705	...	13	1·091	1·0708	1·0635
79	1·722	1·4346	...	45	1·351	1·2644	...	12	1·083	1·0651	1·0586
78	1·710	1·4306	...	44	1·342	1·2583	...	11	1·0756	1·0595	1·0537
77	1·698	1·4269	...	43	1·333	1·2523	...	10	1·068	1·0540	1·0487
76	1·686	1·4228	...	42	1·324	1·2464	...	9	1·061	1·0485	1·0438
75	1·675	1·4189	...	41	1·315	1·2402	...	8	1·0536	1·0430	1·0389
74	1·663	1·4147	...	40	1·306	1·2341	1·1966	7	1·0464	1·0375	1·0340
73	1·651	1·4107	...	39	1·297	1·2277	1·1922	6	1·039	1·0320	1·0292
72	1·639	1·4065	...	38	1·289	1·2212	1·1878	5	1·032	1·0267	1·0244
71	1·627	1·4023	...	37	1·281	1·2148	1·1840	4	1·0256	1·0212	1·0196
70	1·615	1·3978	...	36	1·272	1·2084	1·1786	3	1·019	1·0159	1·0148
69	1·604	1·3945	...	35	1·264	1·2019	1·1738	2	1·013	1·0106	1·0098
68	1·592	1·3882	...	34	1·256	1·1958	1·1689	1	1·0064	1·0053	1·0049
67	1·580	1·3833	...								

Note.—The sulphuric acid numbers are quoted from Otto, those for nitric acid from Ure; while the hydrochloric acid figures are compiled by interpolation from Ure. Liquid hydrochloric acid is practically saturated with 40 per cent. of HCl gas.

TABLE XXXI.—Showing the Specific Gravities of Solutions corresponding to the Degrees of the Baumé Hydrometer.

Degree Baumé.	=Specific Gravity.	Degree Baumé.	=Specific Gravity.	Degree Baumé.	=Specific Gravity.	Degree Baumé.	=Specific Gravity.
0	1·000	19	1·147	37	1·337	55	1·596
1	1·007	20	1·157	38	1·349	56	1·615
2	1·014	21	1·166	39	1·361	57	1·634
3	1·020	22	1·176	40	1·375	58	1·653
4	1·028	23	1·185	41	1·388	59	1·671
5	1·034	24	1·195	42	1·401	60	1·690
6	1·041	25	1·205	43	1·414	61	1·709
7	1·049	26	1·215	44	1·428	62	1·729
8	1·057	27	1·225	45	1·442	63	1·750
9	1·064	28	1·235	46	1·456	64	1·771
10	1·072	29	1·245	47	1·470	65	1·793
11	1·080	30	1·256	48	1·485	66	1·815
12	1·088	31	1·267	49	1·500	67	1·839
13	1·096	32	1·278	50	1·515	68	1·864
14	1·104	33	1·289	51	1·531	69	1·885
15	1·113	34	1·300	52	1·546	70	1·909
16	1·121	35	1·312	53	1·562	71	1·935
17	1·130	36	1·324	54	1·578	72	1·960
18	1·138						

Note.—The specific gravity of a solution is rapidly ascertained by floating in it a weighted glass tube closed at both ends, with a bulb in the centre and a long, thin glass tube above, which carries a graduated scale upon it. This instrument sinks deeper in solutions of low density than in those of high gravity; and the actual specific gravity is found by the level at which the liquid stands on the graduated portion when the apparatus is floating freely in it. *Hydrometers* of this kind are sometimes graduated so that the specific gravity is read off direct from the scale, others are graduated by Baumé's method; and the reading may then be converted into the number representing the true density, by reference to the above table.

Specific gravities are sometimes expressed according to Twaddell's hydrometer. This scale can be converted into ordinary figures by multiplying by 5, dividing by 1000, and adding unity. Thus 1° Twaddell is specific gravity 1·005, 2° is 1·010, and so on.

TABLE XXXII.—Densities of Solutions of Crystallised Copper and Zinc Sulphates.

Copper Sulphate.				Zinc Sulphate.			
Percentage by Weight of $CuSO_4.5H_2O$.	Density.	Percentage by Weight of $CuSO_4.5H_2O$.	Density.	Percentage by Weight of $ZnSO_4.7H_2O$.	Density.	Percentage by Weight of $ZnSO_4.7H_2O$.	Density.
2	1·0126	14	1·0923	5	1·0289	35	1·2285
4	1·0254	16	1·1063	10	1·0588	40	1·2674
6	1·0384	18	1·1208	15	1·0899	45	1·3083
8	1·0516	20	1·1354	20	1·1222	50	1·3511
10	1·0649	22	1·1501	25	1·1560	55	1·3964
12	1·0785	24	1·1659	30	1·1914	60	1·4451

Note.—The pure salt is supposed to be dissolved in pure distilled water.

TABLE XXXIII.—Showing the Specific Electrical Resistances[1] of different Sulphuric Acid Solutions at various Temperatures (*Fleeming Jenkin*).

Specific Gravity of Acid.	Temperatures (Fahrenheit).							
	32°	39°·2	46°·4	53°·6	60°·8	68°	75°·2	82°·4
1·10	1·37	1·17	1·04	0·92	0·84	0·79	0·74	0·71
1·20	1·33	1·11	0·93	0·79	0·67	0·57	0·49	0·41
1·25	1·31	1·09	0·90	0·74	0·62	0·51	0·43	0·36
1·30	1·36	1·13	0·94	0·79	0·66	0·56	0·47	0·39
1·40	1·69	1·47	1·30	1·16	1·05	0·96	0·89	0·84
1·50	2·74	2·41	2·13	1·89	1·72	1·61	1·32	1·43
1·60	4·32	4·16	3·62	3·11	2·75	2·46	2·21	2·02
1·70	9·41	7·67	6·25	5·12	4·23	3·57	3·07	2·71

TABLE XXXIV.—Showing the Specific Electrical Resistances[1] of different Copper Sulphate Solutions at various Temperatures (*Fleeming Jenkin*).

No. of parts of Copper Sulphate dissolved in 100 parts of water.	Temperatures (Fahrenheit).						
	57°·2	60°·8	64°·4	68°	75°·2	82°·4	86°
8	45·7	43·7	41·9	40·2	37·1	34·2	32·9
12	36·3	34·9	33·5	32·2	29·9	27·9	27·0
16	31·2	30·0	28·9	27·9	26·1	24·6	24·0
20	28·5	27·5	26·5	25·6	24·1	22·7	22·2
24	26·9	25·9	24·8	23·9	22·2	20·7	20·0
28	24·7	23·4	22·1	21·0	18·8	16·9	16·0

[1] By the term *Specific Resistance* in the above tables is meant the resistance in ohms between the opposite faces of a centimetre cube of the substance in question. The diminution of resistance accompanying a rise of temperature should be especially remarked.

TABLE XXXV.—THE ELECTRICAL RESISTANCE OF PURE COPPER WIRES OF VARIOUS DIAMETERS.

No. of Wire B.W.G.	Resistance of 1 foot in ohms.	Number of feet required to give Resistance of 1 ohm.	No. of Wire B.W.G.	Resistance of 1 foot in ohms.	Number of feet required to give Resistance of 1 ohm.	No. of Wire B.W.G.	Resistance of 1 foot in ohms.	Number of feet required to give Resistance of 1 ohm.	No. of Wire B.W.G.	Resistance of 1 foot in ohms.	Number of feet required to give Resistance of 1 ohm.
0000	·0000516	19358	7	0·000329	3043·4	17	0·00316	316·1	27	0·04159	24·0
000	·0000589	16964	8	·000391	2557·1	18	·00443	225·5	28	·05432	18·4
00	·0000737	13562	9	·000486	2057·7	19	·00603	165·7	29	·06300	15·9
0	·0000922	10857	10	·000593	1686·5	20	·00869	115·1	30	·07393	13·5
1	·000118	8452·6	11	·000739	1352·5	21	·01040	96·2	31	·10646	9·4
2	·000132	7575·1	12	·000896	1116·0	22	·01358	73·6	32	·13144	7·6
3	·000159	6300·1	13	·001180	847·7	23	·01703	58·7	33	·16634	6·0
4	·000188	5319·9	14	·001546	647·0	24	·02200	45·5	34	·21727	4·6
5	·000220	4545·9	15	·002053	487·0	25	·02661	37·6	35	·42583	2·4
6	·000258	3870·3	16	·002520	396·8	26	·03286	30·4	36	·66537	1·5

TABLE XXXVI.—Actual Diameters corresponding to the Numbers of the Old Birmingham Wire Gauge.

Gauge Number.	Diameter.		Gauge Number.	Diameter.		Gauge Number.	Diameter.	
	Inch.	Millimetres.		Inch.	Millimetres.		Inch.	Millimetres.
0000	0·454	11·53	11	0·120	3·05	24	0·022	0·56
000	·425	10·79	12	·109	2·77	25	·020	·51
00	·380	9·65	13	·095	2·41	26	·018	·46
0	·340	8·63	14	·083	2·11	27	·016	·41
1	·300	7·62	15	·072	1·83	28	·014	·36
2	·284	7·21	16	·065	1·65	29	·013	·33
3	·259	6·58	17	·058	1·47	30	·012	·305
4	·238	6·04	18	·049	1·24	31	·010	·254
5	·220	5·59	19	·042	1·07	32	·009	·229
6	·203	5·16	20	·035	0·89	33	·008	·203
7	·180	4·57	21	·032	·81	34	·007	·178
8	·165	4·19	22	·028	·71	35	·005	·127
9	·148	3·76	23	·025	·63	36	·004	·102
10	·134	3·40						

TABLE XXXVIa.—Diameters corresponding to the Numbers of the American (Brown & Sharpe's) Standard Wire Gauge.

Gauge Number.	Diameter.		Gauge Number.	Diameter.		Gauge Number.	Diameter.	
	Inch.	Millimetres.		Inch.	Millimetres.		Inch.	Millimetres.
0000	0·46	11·68	12	0·0808	2·05	27	0·0142	·361
000	·4096	10·44	13	·0720	1·83	28	·0126	·320
00	·3648	9·26	14	·0641	1·63	29	·0113	·287
0	·3249	8·24	15	·0571	1·45	30	·0100	·254
1	·2893	7·35	16	·0508	1·29	31	·00893	·227
2	·2576	6·54	17	·0453	1·15	32	·00795	·202
3	·2294	5·83	18	·0403	1·02	33	·00708	·180
4	·2043	5·19	19	·0359	0·912	34	·0063	·160
5	·1819	4·62	20	·0320	·813	35	·00561	·142
6	·1620	4·11	21	·0285	·724	36	·005	·127
7	·1443	3·66	22	·0253	·642	37	·00445	·113
8	·1285	3·26	23	·0226	·574	38	·00397	·101
9	·1144	2·90	24	·0201	·510	39	·00353	·09
10	·1019	2·59	25	·0179	·455	40	·00314	·08
11	·0907	2·30	26	·0159	·404			

TABLE XXXVII.—Diameters and Areas of Cross-section corresponding to the Numbers of the Standard (Imperial) Wire Gauge.

Gauge No.	Diameter.		Area.		Gauge No.	Diameter.		Area.		Gauge No.	Diameter.		Area.	
	Inch.	Millimetres.	Sq. in.	Sq. mm.		Inch.	Millimetres.	Sq. in.	Sq. mm.		Inch.	Millimetres.	Sq. in.	Sq. mm.
7/0	0·500	12·70	0·1963	126·68	13	0·092	2·34	0·00665	4·29	32	0·0108	0·27	0·0000916	0·059
6/0	·464	11·79	·1691	109·09	14	·080	2·03	·00503	3·24	33	·0100	·25	·0000785	·051
5/0	·432	10·97	·1466	94·56	15	·072	1·83	·00407	2·63	34	·0092	·23	·0000665	·043
4/0	·400	10·16	·1257	81·07	16	·064	1·63	·00326	2·07	35	·0084	·21	·0000554	·036
3/0	·372	9·45	·1087	70·12	17	·056	1·42	·00246	1·59	36	·0076	·19	·0000454	·029
2/0	·348	8·84	·0951	61·36	18	·048	1·22	·00181	1·17	37	·0068	·17	·0000363	·023
0	·324	8·23	·0824	53·19	19	·040	1·02	·00126	0·81	38	·0060	·152	·0000283	·018
1	·300	7·62	·0707	45·60	20	·036	0·91	·00102	·66	39	·0052	·132	·0000212	·014
2	·276	7·01	·0598	38·59	21	·032	·81	·000804	·52	40	·0048	·122	·0000181	·012
3	·252	6·40	·0499	32·18	22	·028	·71	·000616	·40	41	·0044	·112	·0000152	·0098
4	·232	5·89	·0423	27·27	23	·024	·61	·000452	·29	42	·0040	·102	·0000126	·0081
5	·212	5·38	·0353	22·77	24	·022	·56	·000380	·24	43	·0036	·091	·0000102	·0066
6	·192	4·88	·0290	18·68	25	·020	·51	·000314	·20	44	·0032	·081	·0000080	·0052
7	·176	4·47	·0243	15·70	26	·018	·46	·000254	·16	45	·0028	·071	·0000062	·0040
8	·160	4·06	·0201	12·97	27	·0164	·42	·000211	·14	46	·0024	·061	·0000045	·0029
9	·144	3·66	·0163	10·51	28	·0148	·38	·000172	·11	47	·0020	·051	·0000031	·0020
10	·128	3·25	·0129	8·30	29	·0136	·35	·000145	·094	48	·0016	·041	·0000020	·0013
11	·116	2·95	·0106	6·82	30	·0124	·32	·000121	·078	49	·0012	·030	·0000011	·00073
12	·104	2·64	·00849	5·48	31	·0116	·29	·000106	·068	50	·0010	·025	·00000073	·00051

TABLE XXXVIIa.[1]—Showing Maximum Currents for Copper Conductors insulated and laid in Casing or Tubing.

1 Wire or Cable.		2	3	4
Size S.W.G.[2]	Approximate Area in square inch.	Maximum Current in amperes for high external Temperature.	Approximate amperes per square inch in col. 2.	Total Length in yards of Lead and Return giving 1 volt drop.[3]
18 or 62/38 or 97/40	<0·0018	4·2	2,300	18
3/22	>0·0018	4·2	2,300	18
17 or 130/40	0·0024	5·4	2,200	19
3/20	0·0031	6·4	2,150	19
16 or 110/38 or 172/40	0·0032	6·8	2,100	20
15	0·0041	8·2	2,000	21
7/22	0·0043	8·5	2,000	21
14 or 172/38 or 7/21½	0·0050	9·8	1,950	21
3/18	0·0054	10·3	1,950	21
7/20	0·0071	13·0	1,850	22
7/18	0·013	21·0	1,700	25
19/20	0·019	29·0	1,550	27
7/16	0·022	33·0	1,500	28
19/18	0·034	47·0	1,400	30
7/14	0·035	48·0	1,400	30
19/16	0·061	75·0	1,250	33
19/14	0·096	108·0	1,150	36
37/16	0·12	130 0	1,100	37
19/13	0·16	136 0	1,100	38
37/14	0·19	187·0	1,050	40
61/13	0·31	350·0	900	47
91/12	0·77	625·0	800	51

[1] This table, with the exception of the approximate areas in column 1, which have been added, forms part of a table given in the *Wiring Rules of the Institution of Electrical Engineers.*

[2] The double figures in this column refer to the number of strands of the given number of wire in a cable: thus 3/22 means a cable of 3 strands of No. 22 wire.

[3] For example, 18 yards means that the distance between the two points is 9 yards.

TABLE XXXVIII.—Comparison of Centigrade and Fahrenheit Thermometers.

Fah.	Cent.	Fah.	Cent.	Fah.	Cent.	Fah.	Cent.	Fah.	Cent.	Fah.	Cent.
Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.	Deg.
32	0	66	18·9	100	37·8	133	56·1	166	74·4	199·4	93
33	0·5	66·2	19	100·4	38	134	56·7	167	75	200	93·3
33·8	1	67	19·4	101	38·3	134·6	57	168	75·5	201	93·9
34	1·1	68	20	102	38·9	135	57·2	168·8	76	201·2	94
35	1·7	69	20·5	102·2	39	136	57·8	169	76·1	202	94·4
35·6	2	69·8	21	103	39·4	136·4	58	170	76·7	203	95
36	2·2	70	21·1	104	40	137	58·3	170·6	77	204	95·5
37	2·8	71	21·7	105	40·5	138	58·9	171	77·2	204·8	96
37·4	3	71·6	22	105·8	41	138·2	59	172	77·8	205	96·1
38	3·3	72	22·2	106	41·1	139	59·4	172·4	78	206	96·7
39	3·9	73	22·8	107	41·7	140	60	173	78·3	206·6	97
39·2	4	73·4	23	107·6	42	141	60·5	174	78·9	207	97·2
40	4·4	74	23·3	108	42·2	141·8	61	174·2	79	208	97·8
41	5	75	23·9	109	42·8	142	61·1	175	79·4	208·4	98
42	5·5	75·2	24	109·4	43	143	61·7	176	80	209	98·3
42·8	6	76	24·4	110	43·3	143·6	62	177	80·5	210	98·9
43	6·1	77	25	111	43·9	144	62·2	177·8	81	210·2	99
44	6·7	78	25·5	111·2	44	145	62·8	178	81·1	211	99·4
44·6	7	78·8	26	112	44·4	145·4	63	179	81·7	212	100
45	7·2	79	26·1	113	45	146	63·3	179·6	82	213	100·5
46	7·8	80	26·7	114	45·5	147	63·9	180	82·2	213·8	101
46·4	8	80·6	27	114·8	46	147·2	64	181	82·8	214	101·1
47	8·3	81	27·2	115	46·1	148	64·4	181·4	83	215	101·7
48	8·9	82	27·8	116	46·7	149	65	182	83·3	215·6	102
48·2	9	82·4	28	116·6	47	150	65·5	183	83·9	216	102·2
49	9·4	83	28·3	117	47·2	150·8	66	183·2	84	217	102·8
50	10	84	28·9	118	47·8	151	66·1	184	84·4	217·4	103
51	10·5	84·2	29	118·4	48	152	66·7	185	85	218	103·3
51·8	11	85	29·4	119	48·3	152·6	67	186	85·5	219	103·9
52	11·1	86	30	120	48·9	153	67·2	186·8	86	219·2	104
53	11·7	87	30·5	120·2	49	154	67·8	187	86·1	220	104·4
53·6	12	87·8	31	121	49·4	154·4	68	188	86·7	221	105
54	12·2	88	31·1	122	50	155	68·3	188·6	87	250	121
55	12·8	89	31·7	123	50·5	156	68·9	189	87·2	302	150
55·4	13	89·6	32	123·8	51	156·2	69	190	87·8	400	204
56	13·3	90	32·2	124	51·1	157	69·4	190·4	88	482	250
57	13·9	91	32·8	125	51·7	158	70	191	88·3	572	300
57·2	14	91·4	33	125·6	52	159	70·5	192	88·9	752	400
58	14·4	92	33·3	126	52·2	159·8	71	192·2	89	932	500
59	15	93	33·9	127	52·8	160	71·1	193	89·4	1112	600
60	15·5	93·2	34	127·4	53	161	71·7	194	90	1292	700
60·8	16	94	34·4	128	53·3	161·6	72	195	90·5	1472	800
61	16·1	95	35	129	53·9	162	72·2	195·8	91	1652	900
62	16·7	96	35·5	129·2	54	163	72·8	196	91·1	1832	1000
62·6	17	96·8	36	130	54·4	163·4	73	197	91·7	2282	1250
63	17·2	97	36·1	131	55	164	73·3	197·6	92	2732	1500
64	17·8	98	36·7	132	55·5	165	73·9	198	92·2	3182	1750
64·4	18	98·6	37	132·8	56	165·2	74	199	92·8	3632	2000
65	18·3	99	37·2								

TABLE XXXIX.—Avoirdupois Weight.

	=Ounces.	=Drachms.	=Grains.	=Grammes.
1 Pound	16	256	7,000	453·25
1 Ounce	1	16	437·5	28·33
1 Drachm	0·062	1	27·34	1·77

TABLE XL.—Troy Weight.

	=Ounces.	=Pennyweights.	=Grains.	=Grammes.
1 Pound	12	240	5,760	372·96
1 Ounce	1	20	480	31·08
1 Pennyweight . .	0·05	1	24	1·55

TABLE XLI.—Apothecaries' Weight.

	=Ounces.	=Drachms.	=Scruples.	=Grains.	=Grammes.
1 Pound . . .	12	96	288	5,760	372·96
1 Ounce . . .	1	8	24	480	31·08
1 Drachm . .	0·125	1	3	60	3·38
1 Scruple . .	0·042	0·33	1	20	1·29

TABLE XLII.—Imperial Fluid Measure.

	=Quarts.	=Pints.	=Fluid Ounces.	=Fluid Drachms.	=Minims.	=Weight in Grains.	=Cubic Inches.	=Litres.	=Cubic Centimetres.
1 Gallon . .	4	8	160	1,280	76,800	70,000	277·276	4·541	4,541
1 Quart . . .	1	2	40	320	19,200	17,500	69·319	1·135	1,135·2
1 Pint . . .	0·5	1	20	160	9,600	8,750	34·659	0·567	567·6
1 Fluid ounce .	0·025	0·05	1	8	480	437·5	1·733	0·0284	28·34
1 Fluid drachm	0·0031	0·0062	0·125	1	60	54·7	0·217	0·0035	3·55
1 Minim . .	0·00005	0·0001	0·0021	0·0167	1	0·91	0·0036	0·00006	0·059

TABLE XLIII.—For the Inter-Conversion of Certain Standard Weights and Measures.

Value to be converted.	Length.		Area.		Volume.						Weight.	
	Of inches equals millimetres.	Of millimetres equals inches.	Of square inches equals square decimetres.	Of square decimetres equals square inches.	Of cubic inches equals cubic centimetres.	Of cubic centimetres equals cubic inches.	Of gallons equals litres.	Of litres equals gallons.	Of cubic inches equals pints.	Of pints equals cubic inches.	Of grains equals grammes.	Of grammes equals grains.
0·05	1·2	0·002	·003	0·77	0·82	0·003	0·227	·011	·0015	1·73	·003	0·772
·1	2·5	·004	·006	1·55	1·64	·006	·454	·022	·003	3·47	·006	1·543
·2	5·1	·008	·013	3·10	3·28	·012	·909	·044	·006	6·93	·013	3·086
·3	7·6	·012	·019	4·65	4·92	·018	1·363	·066	·009	10·40	·019	4·630
·4	10·2	·016	·026	6·20	6·55	·024	1·817	·088	·011	13 86	·026	6·173
·5	12·7	·020	·032	7·75	8·19	·031	2·272	·110	·014	17·33	·032	7·716
·6	15·2	·024	·039	9·30	9·83	·037	2·726	·132	·017	20·79	·039	9·259
·7	17·8	·028	·045	10·85	11·47	·043	3·180	·154	·020	24·26	·045	10·803
·8	20·3	·031	·051	12·40	13·11	·049	3·635	·176	·023	27·73	·052	12·346
·9	22·9	·035	·058	13·95	14·75	·055	4·089	·198	·026	31·19	·058	13·889
1·0	25·4	·039	·064	15·50	16·39	·061	4·543	·220	·029	34·66	·065	15·432
2	50·8	·079	·129	31·00	32·77	·122	9·087	·440	·058	69·32	·130	30·865
3	76·2	·118	·193	46·50	49·16	·183	13·630	·660	·087	103·98	·194	46·297
4	101·6	·157	·258	62·00	65·54	·244	18·174	·880	·115	138·64	·259	61·729
5	127·0	·197	·323	77·50	81·93	·305	22·717	1·100	·144	173·29	·324	77·162
6	152·4	·236	·387	93·00	98·31	·366	27·261	1·321	·173	207·95	·389	92·594
7	177·8	·275	·452	108·50	114·70	·427	31·804	1·541	·202	242·61	·454	108·026
8	203·2	·315	·516	124·00	131·09	·488	36·348	1·761	·231	277·27	·518	123·459
9	228·6	·354	·581	139·50	147·47	·549	40·891	1·981	·260	311·93	·583	138·891
10	254·0	·394	·645	155·01	163·86	·610	45·434	2·201	·289	346·59	·648	154·323
20	508·0	·787	1·290	310·01	327·72	1·221	90·869	4·402	·577	693·18	1·296	308·647
30	762·0	1·181	1·935	465·02	491·58	1·831	136·304	6·603	·866	1039·77	1·944	462·970
40	1016·0	1·575	2·581	620·02	655·44	2·441	181·738	8·804	1·154	1386·36	2·592	617·294
50	1270·0	1·969	3·226	775·03	819·30	3·051	227·173	11·005	1·443	1732·95	3·240	771·617
60	1523·9	2·362	3·871	930·04	983·15	3·662	272·607	13·206	1·731	2079·5	3·888	925·941
70	1777·9	2·756	4·516	1085·04	1147·01	4·272	318·042	15·407	2·020	2426·1	4·536	1080·264
80	2031·9	3·150	5·161	1240·05	1310·87	4·882	363·477	17·608	2·308	2772·7	5·184	1234·588
90	2285·9	3·543	5·806	1395·05	1474·73	5·493	408·911	19·809	2·596	3119·3	5·832	1388·911
100	2539·9	3·937	6·451	1550·06	1638·59	6·103	454·346	22·010	2·885	3465·9	6·480	1543·235
200	5079·8	7·874	12·903	3100·12	3277·18	12·206	908·692	44·019	5·770	6931·8	12·960	3086·470
300	7619·8	11·811	19·354	4650·18	4915·78	18·308	1363·037	66·029	8·656	10397·7	19·440	4629·704
400	10159·7	15·748	25·806	6200·24	6554·37	24·411	1817·383	88·039	11·541	13863·6	25·920	6172·939
500	12699·7	19·685	32·257	7750·3	8192·96	30·514	2271·729	110·048	14·426	17329·5	32·399	7716·174
1000	25399·4	39·371	64·514	15500·6	16385·92	61·028	4543·458	220·097	28·852	34659	64·799	15432·348

From this table any ordinary conversions up to 2000 units may be readily made. For example:—It is required to find the number of cubic centimetres equal to 1728 cubic inches.

$$1728 = 1000 + 700 + 20 + 8 \text{ cubic inches.}$$

But a reference to the sixth column shows that

	1000	cubic inches	=	16,385·92	cubic centimetres
	*700	,, ,,	=	11,470·01	,, ,,
	20	, ,,	=	327·72	,, ,,
	8	,, ,,	=	131·09	,, ,,
Add together:	1728	,, ,,	=	28,314·74	,, ,,

The Bronzing of Copper and Brass Surfaces.

It is often desired to give newly deposited copper the appearance of age and to destroy the brilliant metallic lustre which it possesses at first. The methods of accomplishing this end are numerous. In all cases it is desirable to start with a clean metallic surface, freed from grease by immersion in potash, or by any other suitable cleansing process. To obtain a red bronze tone, the metal is brushed over with finely-powdered crocus, or a mixture of crocus and black-lead, made up into a paste with a little water, and is then heated on a metal plate above a clear fire until the powder has become dark. After cooling, the whole surface is thoroughly brushed; if necessary the process may be repeated to produce a darker colour. The bronzing is due to the oxidation of the copper superficially by the heated crocus; a better lustre is obtained by finally rubbing persistently with a brush which is from time to time passed over the surface of a cake of bees'-wax. Slightly wetting the clean surface of copper articles with very dilute nitric acid, or with a solution of ferric chloride and nitrate, or with a solution of copper nitrate, followed by drying and heating, also effects the required oxidation and produces a brown bronze.

Dark brown or black bronzing has sometimes been effected by merely brushing the surface with plumbago or vegetable black, conveyed in a suitable medium followed by a varnish or lacquer. The formation of the black copper sulphide on the surface of the metal, by painting with dilute alkaline sulphide solution (such as ammonium sulphide), gives the same appearance. The superficial precipitation of other metals, such as platinum, gold, or arsenic, is often adopted also; a very weak solution of platinic chloride, or of gold chloride, or a solution of 1 oz. of arsenious acid (*white arsenic*), and 1 oz. of ferrous sulphate in 12 oz. of water, answering the purpose well. After aplying any of these solutions, the object must be well washed and dried, and finally lacquered. A mere bronze-coloured varnish, recommended by Hutton for bronzing brass work, is made by dissolving 5 parts of aniline purple and 10 parts of fuchsine in 100 parts of methylated spirit, and then adding 5 parts of benzoic acid, and boiling until the liquid has attained the desired colour.

An excellent black bronzing for brass is obtained by dissolving copper carbonate in an aqueous solution of ammonium carbonate. The best results are obtained with gilding metal, which after cleansing thoroughly need only be immersed for a short time in the liquid, after which the object is swilled in water and dried out. One of the secrets of success is to avoid the presence of even traces of chlorides in the bronzing solution. In their presence the black coating is liable to scale or to lighten in colour after a short time.

Green bronzes are made by converting the surface of the article into the

* Note that the equivalent of 700 cubic ins. is found by multiplying the figure for 70 by 10.

green basic acetate or carbonate of copper, and may be produced by exposing the article for a time to the vapour of acetic acid. Any acid vapour in moderation will afford the same result. One method, recommended by Napier, consists in enclosing the object immediately above a little dry bleaching powder contained in a closed vessel, until the required effect is produced.

Antidotes to Poisons.

Most of the metallic-plating and the cleansing solutions are extremely poisonous, and stress has already been laid upon the dangers both of using domestic drinking utensils for any purposes connected with the work of electro-plating, and of dipping the bare arm or hand into any of the depositing liquids. Unforeseen accidents, however, may occur and may demand the application of speedy remedial measures. Amateur doctoring is to be strongly deprecated, and medical aid should be sought at once; but upon a sudden emergency it may be necessary to administer relief, pending the arrival of the physician. In any case of poisoning by swallowing, simple emetics should at once be given—for example, lukewarm water, mustard and water, ipecacuanha, or even zinc sulphate (of the latter from 10 to 30 grains are often given), the two first-named are better for domestic application; while these are preparing, the patient may often induce vomiting by thrusting the forefinger as far as possible down the entrance to the throat. The nature of the subsequent remedies will depend upon the character of the poison, thus:—

Acids.—Mineral acids, such as sulphuric, nitric, hydrochloric, or glacial acetic acids, require an alkali to neutralise them; magnesia, chalk, whiting, lime water, or carbonate of soda may be administered stirred up with water. Failing these, the acid must be diluted by copious draughts of water; olive oil, milk, or white of egg may then be given.

Alkalies.—Caustic alkalies demand neutralisation with a mild acid, such as vinegar, or the juice of an acid fruit, such as the lemon or lime, or by extremely dilute acetic, citric, or tartaric acids. Then oil or white of egg may be taken.

Antimony.—For the chloride solution, magnesia or sodium carbonate are used; for tartar emetic, a vegetable astringent is to be applied; very strong tea may answer the purpose; then barley water or the like; small doses of stimulants being given from time to time.

Arsenic.—Freshly made hydrated ferric oxide with magnesia is often employed.

Copper.—White of egg mixed with water, plenty of milk, water, or barley-water or the like should be taken. Some have used calcined magnesia stirred with water.

Cyanides.—Freshly precipitated peroxide of iron with an alkaline carbonate, such as potassium carbonate; plenty of fresh air should be available; the coldest possible water should be poured over the head and down the spine; and the atmosphere around the patient may with advantage contain a little chlorine; for example, a little dilute acid may be poured upon bleaching powder in a saucer placed at some distance to windward of the patient.

Lead.—A very dilute solution of sulphuric acid or a solution of magnesium or sodium sulphate may be administered; some use sodium phosphate; the object in each case being the formation of an insoluble salt of lead. This should be followed by an active purgative. Milk or white of egg may be plentifully taken.

Mercury.—Albuminous fluids (white of egg) should be given in sufficient quantity, mixed preferably with milk; a large excess of the albumen is not advisable, the quantity generally recommended being the white of one egg to each 4 grains (about) of mercuric chloride taken. Then barley-water or its equivalent is allowable.

Oxalic Acid and Oxalates.—Lime-water or chalk may be used; but alkaline carbonates should not be applied, because they form intensely poisonous oxalates.

Silver Nitrate.—Common salt in solution forms insoluble silver chloride.

Zinc Salts.—Warm demulcent drinks, such as barley-water, to be given.

In all the above cases the application of the special remedy must be preceded by the use of strong emetics, except perhaps in the case of strong acids, when water should be taken to effect dilution before inducing the vomiting.

Acids which have been spilled upon the hands or upon the floor of the room should be neutralised with chalk after dilution. The vapour of acid in the atmosphere of a room may be neutralised by the vapour of ammonia.

INDEX.

Accumulators, electrical, 74.
Acetic acid, 364.
Acid, effect of, in copper-baths, 133.
  final cleansing in, 112.
  nitric, as depolariser, 46.
    strength for Grove's battery, 48.
Acid-bath for copper deposit, 128.
  -resisting composition (vat-lining), 96.
Acids, opening bottles of, 363.
  organic, resistance of cobalt to, 227.
    use in nickeling, 221.
  specific-gravity tables, 392.
  various, 390–401.
Adams, metallisation of moulds, 150.
  nickeling solution, 218.
Adhesion of copper surfaces prevented, 152.
  low, of nickel deposits (cause), 225.
  non-, of deposits (cause), 76.
Agate burnishers, 121.
Ageing of silver-baths, 183.
Agitation of solutions, necessary, 90.
Agitator, von Hübl's, 98.
  for baths, 98.
Air, effect of, on iron-baths, 231.
  pure, need of, 92.
  use of, in circulating solutions, 277.
Alcohol, 366.
Alkali, action of, on grease, 109.
  without action on mineral oils, 109.
Alkaline cleansing liquid, 110.
  copper-baths, 129.
Alkalinity of nickel-baths, cause of, 220.
Alloy, backing-, electrotypers', 164.
  lead-tin-, for polishing steel, 122.
  standard silver-coinage, 186.
Alloys, aluminium, produced, 293.
  copper, cleansing of, 112.
  deposition of, 32, 256.
  fused, electrolysis of, 32.
  fusible, 147.
  gold, 204.
  lead, stripping silver from, 190.
Alloys, nature of deposit, 261.
  tin, cleansing of, 114.
Alternate-current dynamo, 68.
Aluminium and its compounds, 367.
  carbide, 293.
  chloride, 367.
  deposition of, 254.
  deposition on, 114.
  -nickel alloy, 266.
  reduction of, 11, 293, 294.
  smelting of, 295.
Alums, 368.
Alu-ni, 266.
Amalgamation of battery zincs, 39.
  of gold, 206.
Amalgams, 378.
American Postal Telegraph Co.'s plant, 140.
American Smelting and Refining Co., 274.
Ammeter, 84.
  advantages of, 78, 80.
  position of, in electrotype circuit, 154.
  use of, in art-electrotyping, 170.
Ammonia, 368.
  alum, 368.
  solution, opening bottles of, 368.
  use of, in hot copper-baths, 131.
Ammonium compounds, 368.
  sulphide, use in electrotyping, 168.
Amorphous phosphorus, 381.
Amperage, best, for electro-deposition, 78.
  surface-, interconversion of units, 391.
Ampere, value of the, 34.
Animal forms reproduced in copper, 171.
Anion, meaning of term, 27.
Annealing, effect of, on hammered metals, 110.
    on iron deposit, 235.
    on nickel deposit, 217.
  electric, 317.

Anode, meaning of term, 27.
plate, form of, 97.
slime (copper), 132.
Anodes, antimony, 252.
arrangement of, in art-work, 168.
brassing, 261.
carbon, use of, 222.
choice of, 88.
coating on, by lead, 250.
cobalt, 229.
copper, 131.
behaviour in refining, 269.
refinery, 274.
-regulus, use of, 279.
size for, 132.
gold, 204.
incrustation on, in brassing, 263.
insoluble, use of, 28, 29, 89, 353.
iron, 234.
lead, effect of, in copper-bath, 169.
nickel, 222.
arrangement of, 252.
silver, 186.
appearance during electrolysis, 182.
arrangement of, 192.
size of, 89.
soluble, effect of, 27.
use of, 29, 88.
supplementary, use of, 171.
suspension of, 96, 97.
tin, 248.
various, effect of, 30.
wire-skeleton, for statuary, 168.
zinc, 243.
Antidotes to poisons, 403.
Antimony and its compounds, 369.
anodes, 252.
behaviour in copper-refining, 270.
deposited, nature of, 252.
depositing solutions, 251.
deposition of, 250.
explosive, 252.
extraction of, 289.
solutions, assay of, 325.
Antique silver, 197.
Apothecaries' weight, 400.
Aqua fortis, 113, 365.
regia, 366.
Argol, 383.
Armature, dynamo, 70.
direction of current in, 69.
varieties of, 70.
Arsenic, behaviour in copper-refining, 271.
effect of, in brassing-bath, 260.
Art-electrotyping, 165.
Ashcroft and Swinburne, zinc extraction process, 288.
Assay of depositing solutions, 324.
Atomic weight, definition of, 15.
weights of elements, 19.
Atoms, meaning of term, 15.
Autogenous soldering of lead, 95.
Avoirdupois weight, 400.

Backing of copper electrotypes, 164.
-metal for electrotypes, 164.
Balance, plating-, 100.
correction in use of, 102.
sensitive, 324.
Barometer dials, dead-gilding of, 210.
silvering of, 177.
Barrel, rotating-, for plating small goods, 105.
Base-bullion, refining of, 281.
Basis-metal, influence on colour in gilding, 209.
use of term, 116.
Baths (*see* Solutions).
arrangement of, in copper-refining, 274.
cyanide, spontaneous alteration of, 182.
electrotype, arrangement of, 153.
old, recovery of metal from, 318.
plating, arrangement of, 85.
Battery, arrangement of, 53.
bichromate, 49.
Bunsen's, 47.
costliness of, 37, 333.
Cruickshank's, 3.
Daniell's, 42.
Breguet's, 44.
gravity, 45.
Kuhlo's, 44.
Meidinger's, 44.
post-office, 45.
depolarisation of, 41.
direction of current in, 24.
economical arrangement of cells, 54.
Edison-Lalande, 50.
effect of size of plates, 53.
for brassing, 257.
for cadmium-plating, 245.
for cobalt-plating, 229.
for copper-depositing, 128.
for electrotype, 154.
for gilding, 201.
for iron-depositing, 236.
for nickel-plating, 220.
for silvering, 179.
for tinning, 248.
for zinc-depositing, 241.
Grove's, 46.
injurious fumes from, 48, 92.
invention of, 3.
Leclanché's, 50.
local action on zinc, 39.
maximum efficiency of, 56.

Battery, parts of, 38.
polarisation of, 40.
position of, in plant, 93.
practical hints on, 51.
principle of, 24, 38.
screws, 57.
secondary, 74.
single- and two-fluid, 41, 347, 349.
size of, effect on current, 53.
Smee's, 41.
switch-board for, 57.
theory of, 347.
thermo-electric, 59.
Clamond's, 64.
direction of current in, 60.
Gülcher's, 66.
reversal of current in, 62.
wastefulness of, 66.
weakening of, 40.
-zincs, amalgamation of, 39.
need for purity, 39.
Baumé's hydrometer, value of degrees, 393.
Bay salt, 386.
Beardslee's cobalting solution, 228.
Becquerel's cobalting solution, 228.
electro-chromy, 255.
-gilding, 202.
electrolytic works, 5.
ore-treatment, 279.
Bedstead tubes, brass-coated, 263.
Bees'-wax, 370.
cracking of, on cooling, 145.
use of, in moulding, 145.
Benardos electric welding process, 316.
Benzene, use of, in cleansing, 108.
Benzoic acid, 364.
Benzoline, use of, in cleansing, 108.
Bertrand's bismuth solution, 254.
cadmium solution, 245.
palladium solution, 254.
Bessemer's copper-plating, 5.
Betts' process for refining lead, 282.
Bichromate battery, 49.
Binding-screws, 57.
Birmingham wire-gauge, value of numbers, 396.
Bismuth, 370.
behaviour of, in copper-refining, 270.
deposition of, 254.
use of, in fusible alloys, 147.
Bisulphide of carbon for bright-plating, 8, 185.
Black deposit in bright-silver bath, 186.
on silver anodes, 182.
gold deposit, 205.
Black-lead, 382.
application to moulds, 149.
water-repelling action of, overcome, 163.
Black-leading machine, 162.
process, invention of, 7.
wax (type) moulds, 161.
Blas and Miest's copper ore-treatment, 280.
Blende, roasting of, 287.
treatment of, 287.
Blocks, wood-, electrotyping of, 165.
Blood-poisoning from plating solutions, 103.
Board of Trade Unit, 36, 330.
used in electrolysis, 331.
Bobs for polishing, 118.
Boden's nickeling solution, 218.
Bookbinders' type, brassing of, 263.
Boracic acid, 364.
Borcher's antimony extraction, 289.
refining of lead, 282.
system of copper-refining, 276.
Boric acid, 364.
use of, in nickeling, 221.
Böttger's cobalting solution, 228.
iron-plating solution, 233.
platinating solution, 239.
silvering solution, 180.
Box-wood sawdust, use of, 136.
Brass, 370.
anode, 261.
cause of incrustation on, 263.
bronzing of, 402.
cobalting of, 229.
coppered by immersion, 125.
deposit, colour of, controlled, 261.
nature of, 257.
depositing solutions, 257, 258.
deposition of, 32, 257.
final cleansing of, 112.
gilding of, by immersion, 199.
nickeling of, 223.
platinising of, 237, 238.
silvering of, 176, 191.
stripping of nickel from, 222.
of silver from, 189.
wire scratch-brushes, 119.
Brassing of small goods, 105.
Braun's immersion gilding, 199.
Breguet's Daniell-cell, 44.
Briant (de), gilding solution, 202.
Bright-dipping of metals (in acid), 113.
-plating, 8, 185.
-silver bath, use of, 185.
Brightness of silver anodes during electrolysis, 182.
Brimstone, 387.
Britannia metal, cleansing of, 114.
gilding of, 211.
nickeling of, 218, 227.
silvering of, 191.
stripping silver from, 190.
unsuited for silvering, 188.

Bronze, 370.
depositing solutions, 264.
deposition of, 263.
gilding of, by immersion, 199.
Bronzing of copper and brass, 402.
Brown & Sharpe wire-gauge, 396.
Brown copper-deposit, cause of, 156.
Brown gold, cause of, 203, 206.
Brown-Neil process of recovering tin from tin scrap, 290.
Brunel's brassing solutions, 258.
Brushes of dynamo, 69.
position of, 73.
regulation of, 73.
scratch-, 119.
Building-tools for wax moulds, 161.
Bullion, base-, refining of, 281.
Bunsen's cell, 48.
electro-smelting of magnesium, 296.
Burnishing, 121.
and scratch-brushing contrasted, 122.
deposited copper, 138.
effect of, on metals, 122.
nickel, difficulty in, 224.
Burnt nickel, 217.
Burton's liquid forge, 315.
Busts, moulding from, 148, 166.
Butter of antimony, 369.
of tin, 388.
Buttons, silvering of, 176.

CADMIUM, 371.
deposition of, 245.
use of, in fusible alloys, 147.
Calamine, treatment of, 286.
Calcium carbide, production of, 294.
sulphate, 381.
Calculations as to disposition of vats, 154.
as to thickness of deposit, 79.
Calomel, 379.
Calorie, value of the, 35, 36.
Campbell's platinum-silver bath, 266.
Canadian Government Commission appointed to report on electro-thermic iron and steel processes, 299.
Carbon anodes, use of, 222.
bisulphide for bright-plating, 8, 185.
chloride, use in bright silvering, 185.
Cast-iron, 376.
as anode, 89, 234.
nickeling of, 225.
preliminary cleansing of, 135.
refining (electrolytic), 289.
(electro-thermal), 297.
tinning of, 248.
Cast-metal anodes, 89.
Cast-nickel anodes, 222.
Castner's sodium smelting process, 297.
Casts, electrotype, 143.
Cathode for copper-refining, 273.
meaning of term, 27.
motion imparted to, 99.
secondary actions at, 354.
suspension of, 97, 152.
Cathodes, unlike, on same rod, effect of, 192.
Cation, meaning of term, 27.
Caustic alkali cleansing-baths, 110.
lunar, 386.
potash, 383.
soda, 386.
Cell (*see* Battery).
direction of current in, 24, 347.
economical arrangement of, 56.
principles of voltaic, 24, 347.
size of, effect on current, 53.
Cells, porous, preservation of, 51.
simple, 347.
single-fluid and two-fluid, 349.
Centigrade thermometer scale, 35.
and Fahrenheit scales compared, 399.
Chalk, 371.
Charcoal rendered non-conductive, 292.
Chases for use in electrotyping, 157.
Chemical combination, heat of, 21, 22, 344.
energy, relation of, to electrical, 23, 344.
formulæ, 16.
symbols, 16.
Chlorides, 365.
of carbon and sulphur for bright-plating, 185.
Chromium, deposition of, 245.
Circuit, short, 39.
divided-, distribution of current in, 39.
Citric acid, 365.
use of, in nickeling, 221.
Clamond's thermo-electric battery, 64.
Cleanliness, necessity for, 77, 108.
Cleansing, electrolytic, 115.
finished electrotypes, 171.
for nickeling, care in, 224.
liquids, acid, 112.
alkaline, 109, 111.
cyanide, 113.
objects for plating, 108.
Clock-dials, dead-gilding of, 210.
Coal and zinc as electrical generators, 37.
Cobalt and its compounds, 372.
anodes, 229.

Cobalt and its compounds, behaviour of, in copper-refining, 270.
characteristics of, 227.
depositing solutions, 228.
deposition of, 229.
-nickel alloy deposited, 219.
recovery of, from old baths, 318.
resistance of, to organic acids, 227.
solutions, assay of, 326.
Cobley's copper ore treatment, 279.
Coils, resistance-, 81.
Coinage, standard silver, 186.
Coins, electrotyping of, 165.
moulding from, 144.
Collodion, use in bright-silvering, 185.
Colophony, 384.
Colour of brass-deposit controlled, 262.
of gold, 204, 205.
affected by impurities, 203.
-deposit controlled, 205.
Coloured silver-deposit, cause of, 187.
Colouring, 122.
of gold (dry), 212.
Colours, iridescent, produced, 255.
Combination, chemical, heat of, 20, 21, 344.
Commission appointed by Canadian Government to report on electro-thermic iron and steel processes, 299.
Commutator, dynamo-, 69.
sparking of, 73.
tending of, 73.
Compass-needle, use of, 83.
Composition, moulding-, conductive, 146, 149.
elastic, 148, 166.
fluid, moulding with, 145.
gutta-percha, 143.
wax, use of, 145.
use of, in elastic, 166.
Compound-wound dynamo, 70.
Compounds, definition of term, 15.
Conditions of electrolysis, 362.
Conduction, electrolytic, 32, 342, 358.
Conductivity, electrical, 30, 358.
of metals, 31.
of oxides and sulphides, 379, 380.
of mould ensured, 149.
Conductors, choice of metals for, 31, 337.
copper, maximum currents for, 398.
loss of power in, 335.
maximum current for, 336, 398.
size of, 335.
Connecting screws, 57.
Continuous current, conversion of alternating current into, 76.
dynamo, 67.
Converter, rotary, 76.
Copper and its compounds, 372.
and its alloys, final cleansing of, 112.
anodes, 131.
behaviour in refining, 269.
for art electrotyping, 167.
slime on, 132.
use of, in brassing, 261.
-baths, acid, 128.
alkaline, management of, 131.
effect of anode-size on, 132.
of lead anode on, 169.
temperature for, 130, 131.
bronzing of, 402.
conductors, maximum current for, 336, 398.
crude, impurities in, 268.
deposit, character of, 132, 156.
relation to current-strength, 133
to nature of solution, 133.
colours of, 156.
drying of, 136.
spread of, 170.
strength of, 133.
tenacity of, 134, 138.
depositing iron upon, 236.
-depositing prior to silvering, 191.
deposition by battery, 127.
by immersion, 124.
consolidation of coat, 124.
by single-cell process, 126.
of, on copper, 152.
on iron rollers, 137.
on wax, 163.
power absorbed in, 329.
solutions for, 128, 130.
effect of, on colour of gold, 204.
on colour of silver, 187.
electrolytic moulds of, 142.
electro-plating with, 135.
electrotype, backing of, 164.
nature of metal required, 133.
plates, suspension of, 152.
separated from plate, 157.
from wax, 163.
extraction from ores, 278.
Hoepfner, 280.
Siemens and Halske, 280.
gilding by immersion, 198.
native, treatment of, 279.
-nickel-zinc alloys deposited, 265.
nickeling of, 224.
-plates, iron-facing of, 235.
reproduction of, 152.
platinising of, 237.
printing-surfaces, nickeled, 227.
recovery of, from old baths, 319.
from wash-waters, 136.
refined, foreign metals in, 271.
form of, 277.

Copper-refining, bath arrangement, 274.
behaviour of foreign metals, 270.
current-strength for, 272.
electrolytic, 268.
loss of energy in, 275.
relation of E.M.F. to inter-electrode space, 273.
renewing old bath, 277.
solution for, 273.
spacing of electrodes, 273.
systems of, 275.
reflectors, manufacture of, 173.
-regulus, use as anode, 279.
silvering of, 176, 191.
solutions, assay of, 326.
spongy, used, 150.
stripped from iron, 236.
stripping of nickel from, 223.
of silver from, 189.
sulphate as a depolariser, 42.
solutions, specific gravity of, 393.
specific resistance of, 394.
thick deposits of, 136, 137.
thickness of coat required, 136, 168.
-tin alloys, deposition of, 263.
-zinc alloys, deposition of, 265.
tubes deposited, 137.
wires, resistance of, 395.
-zinc alloys, deposition of, 257.
Coppering metals before gilding, 211.
Correction for plating-balance, 102.
Corrosion of anodes in refining, 269.
Corrosive sublimate, 379.
Cost of electricity, 333.
Coulomb, value of, 35, 79.
Couples, thermo-, arrangement of, 64.
Cowles' aluminium-reduction, 11, 292.
Cowper-Coles' extraction and refining of iron, 289.
process for manufacture of copper wire, 140.
process for manufacture of reflectors, 173.
process for manufacture of seamless tubes and sheets of copper, 138.
rotating cathodes, 138.
zinc bath, 243.
Cream of tartar, 383.
Crown of cups, Volta's, 3.
Cruickshank's electrolytic experiments, 3.
Cryolite, 295.
Crystalline character of deposits, 138.
Crystallisation of battery fluids, 52.
Cub. ins. and cub. cms., interconversion of, 401.
and pints, interconversion of, 401.
Current, alternating, converted into continuous, 76.
-density, 36.
effect of, in electrotyping, 156.
on brass-deposit, 261.
on deposits, 78.
on silver-deposit, 187.
excessive, safe-guarded, 170.
for aluminium smelting, 296.
for copper-refining, 272.
for lead-refining, 282.
for nickeling, 220.
for zinc-deposition, 244.
maximum, for electrotyping, 134.
for wax-moulds, 164.
measured without instruments, 155.
permissible effect of motion of solution on, 90.
relation to nature of copper-deposit, 133.
unit of measurement, 34.
densities, equivalents in different units, 391.
-detector, 82.
direction of, found, 83.
in armature, 69.
in battery, 24, 347.
in thermal battery, 60.
distribution of, in divided circuit, 39.
from public supply, use of, 75.
in coils rotating near magnet, 68.
maximum, for copper conductors, 336, 398.
measurement of, 83, 84, 154.
regulated by anode, 205.
regulation of, in electrotyping, 156.
reversal of, in dynamo, 68.
in thermopiles, 62.
short-circuiting of, indicated, 80.
sources of, 37.
weight and thickness of deposit by, 390.
Cut-out for check on current, 170.
Cyanide-bath, discovery of, 8.
poisonous fumes from, 92.
spontaneous alteration of, 182.
Cyanide cleansing-liquid, 113.
copper-baths, 129.
free, in gold-bath, 203.
in silver-bath, 181.
gold-bath, made up, 203.
of potassium, 382.
silver-baths, 180.
Cyanides, 365.
solution of organic matter by, 184, 207.
Cylinders, iron, coppering of, 137.
mixing-, 125.

DANIELL-CELL, 5, 42.
Darcet's fusible alloy, 147.
De la Rue's discovery of electrotyping, 5.
Dead-dipping of objects, 113.
-gilding, 209.
-lustre on silver, 197.
-nickeling, 227.
Deakin and Smith's rotatory plating apparatus, 105.
Decantation, washing by, 384.
Dechaud and Gaultier's ore treatment, 278.
Deligny's copper ore treatment, 280.
Densities of copper and zinc sulphates in solution, 393.
Density, current, 36.
of silver-bath, effect of increasing, 201.
unequal, in solutions, 212, 365.
Dépierre's copper-bath, 130.
Depolarisation of battery, 41.
by chromic acid, 49.
by copper sulphate, 43.
by nitric acid, 46.
mechanical, 41.
Deposition, electro-, early, 4, 5, 8.
of alloys, 32, 257.
of aluminium, 254.
of antimony, 250.
of bismuth, 254.
of brass, 257.
of bronze, 263.
of cadmium, 245.
of chromium, 245.
of cobalt, 227.
of copper, 124.
of German-silver, 265.
of gold, 198.
of iron, 230.
of lead, 250.
of nickel, 216.
of palladium, 254.
of platinum, 237.
of silver, 175.
(bright), 185.
(non-electrolytic), 177.
of tin, 245.
of zinc, 240.
on electro-positive metals, 85, 345.
Deposits, conditions of formation, 28.
crystalline character of, 138.
effect of varying currents on, 78.
non-adhesion of, cause of, 77, 78.
relation to current-density, 79.
roughness, cause of, 277.
ruined by want of cleanliness, 108.
slimy, on copper-anodes, 132.
striated, cause of, 89.
thickness, calculation of, 79.
Deposits, time required for given, 79.
uneven, cause of, 89, 277.
weighing of, in bath, 100.
weight and thickness of, 390.
weight of, calculated, 79.
per B.T. unit, 330.
Desmur's nickeling solution, 218.
Detector, current-, 82.
Diameters, actual, of wire-gauges, 396, 397.
Dilute solutions, effect of (coppering), 132.
Dipping in acid, need for, 112.
in potash-vat, 111.
Direction of current found, 83.
in battery, 24, 347.
in dynamo-armature, 68.
in thermal battery, 60.
of lines of magnetic force, 68.
Dirt, effect of, in gold-bath, 203.
Dirty brass-deposit, cause of, 263.
Distance between electrodes, 89.
Divalent, meaning of term, 17.
Divided-circuit, current-distribution in, 39.
Doctor, use of, in gilding, 208.
Wagener and Netto's, 104.
Dolly for polishing, 118.
Double salt solutions, electrolysis of, 355.
Doucet and Lambotte's zinc-extraction, 287.
Drainage, system of, 93.
Drum for coating small goods, 105, 125.
Dry colouring of gold, 212.
pile, 3.
Drying of coppered goods, 136.
of nickeled goods, 226, 227.
of zinced goods, 244.
Ductility of deposited copper, 134.
Dynamo armature, 70.
direction of current in, 68.
classed by magnet-windings, 70.
driving-power for, 74.
efficiency of, 330.
field-magnets of, 70.
for copper-depositing, 128.
for copper-refining, 272.
invention of, 4, 8.
management of, 73.
necessity of, for large works, 141.
position of brushes in, 69.
position of, in works, 93.
reversal of current in, 69.
sparking of, 73.
theory of, 67.

EDISON-LALANDE-CELL, 50.
Efficiency, maximum, of battery, 56.

Elastic moulding-composition, 148, 166.
moulds, invention of, 8.
Elasticity of deposited-copper, 134.
Electric and chemical energy, relation of, 23, 24.
conductivity of metals, 31.
connection-gripper, 159.
current, direction found, 83.
resistance, unit of, 34.
'Electricias' nickeling solution, 218.
Electricity, cost of, 77, 333.
derivation of term, 2.
generated, 24.
supply, public, use of, 75.
voltaic and static, 25.
Electro-chemical equivalents, 390.
series, 22.
-chromy, 255.
-deposition, 26.
arrangement of vats, 86.
current-strength for, 78.
early experiments, 3, 5, 8.
limit of E.M.F. for, 29.
relation of current and time, 79.
-etching, 2, 173.
-metallurgy, definition of, 1.
scope of, 2.
-motive force, best for depositing, 78.
counter-, 29.
limit of, in depositing, 29.
meaning of term, 25.
unit of, 34.
-negative, meaning of term, 22.
-ore-extraction, scope for, 267.
-plating, definition of, 2.
essentials for baths, 86.
of positive metals, 85.
-positive, meaning of term, 22.
-thermal refining of iron and steel, scope for, 299.
-smelting, 290.
of aluminium, 295.
of iron, 297.
of magnesium, 296.
of sodium, 297.
Electrodes, altering position of, at first, 194.
distance between, 89.
manner of connecting, 97.
of suspending, 97.
meaning of term, 27.
Electrolysis, conditions for, 32, 351, 362.
meaning of term, 26.
of complex acids, 356.
of double salts, 355.
of ferric solutions, 231.
of mixed solutions, 355.
Electrolysis of silver-potassium cyanide, 181.
power absorbed in, 329.
theories of (modern), 338.
with insoluble anodes, 353.
Electrolyte, agitation of, 90, 98.
meaning of term, 28, 341.
Electrolytic assay, 325.
cleaning, 115.
conduction, 32, 342, 358.
etching, 173.
extraction of antimony, 289.
of copper, 278.
of gold, 283.
of iron, 289.
of lead, 283.
of zinc, 286.
moulding, 142.
preparation of brass-bath, 260.
of silver-bath, 184.
recovery of tin, 290.
refining of antimony, 289.
of copper, 268.
of gold, 284.
of iron, 289.
of lead, 281.
of silver, 284.
scope for, 267.
stripping of gold, 206.
of nickel, 223.
of silver, 190.
Electro-thermal processes, 294.
Electrotype-baths, arrangement, 153.
-copper for anodes, 169.
separation from plate, 157.
thickness for, 157, 164.
-plate, backing of, 164.
final cleansing of, 171.
preparation of, 164.
-supporters, 152.
Electrotyping, 142.
arrangement of vats, 86, 153.
art-, anodes in, 169.
excess current prevented, 170.
calculation of current-strength, 154.
chases, type, etc., to be used for, 157.
coins, medals, etc., 165.
definition of term, 2.
deposit on wax, 163.
irregular, 89.
earliest experiments in, 5.
maximum current-strength for, 133.
mechanical finish of plates, 157.
moulding-compositions, 143.
nature of copper required, 132.
printers', 151.
regulation of current, 156.
separating copper from matrix, 157.

Electrotyping, statuary, 166.
supporting of plate in bath, 152.
use of guiding-wires, 170.
in various printing processes, 172.
measuring instruments, 154.
wood-blocks, 165.
Elements, definition of term, 18.
electro-positive and -negative, 22.
list of, 19.
Elkington's copper ore treatment, 279.
early patents, 5.
gilding solution, 199, 200.
Elmore's solid-deposited tubes, 138.
Elsner's bronzing solution, 264.
silver-bath (battery), 180.
(immersion), 176.
tinning-bath, 249.
zincing-bath, 242.
Emery-wheels, use of, 122.
Emetic, tartar, 370.
E.M.F. (*see* Electro-motive force).
Enamelled iron for tanks, 95.
Energy, transformations of, 23.
Engraved steel plates copied, 151.
Epsom salts, 378.
Equations, chemical, use of, 17.
Equivalent weights, 19.
Equivalents, electro-chemical, 79, 390.
Etching, electrolytic, 173.
Ewers, gilding lips of, 208.
Exchange, simple, of metals, 345.
Extensibility of deposited copper, 134.

Fahrenheit and Centigrade scales compared, 399.
thermometer-scale, 35.
Faraday's laws of deposition, 4.
Faure's accumulator, 74.
Fearn's tinning solutions, 249.
Ferric and ferrous compounds, 230, 376.
salts, result of electrolysing, 231.
File-marks, removal of, 117.
Filigree-work, gilding of, 210.
Filter-paper, folding of, 52.
Fine gold, preparation of, 374.
silver, preparation of, 384.
Finishing, 122.
Fizeau's gilding solution, 202.
Floating typographic formes, 158.
Floors, suitable, 92.
Force, electro-motive, 25.
physical, 14.
Forces, correlation of, 23.
Forge, liquid, Burton's, 315.
Forks, supported in silver-vat, 191.
Formes, printers', electrotyping of, 157.
floating of, 158.
Formes, printers', moulding from, 159.
preparation of, 157.
Formulæ, chemical, 16.
French weights and measures, 400, 401.
Frosted gold, 209.
Fulminating gold, 375.
Fumes from batteries injurious, 42, 48, 92.
cyanide-bath dangerous, 92.
Furnace, electric, Cowles', 292.
Girod's, 309.
Héroult's, 303.
Keller's, 305.
Kjellin's, 311.
Röchling and Rodenhauser's, 313.
Siemens', 290.
Stassano's, 309.
for colouring gold, 213.
muffle-, for cleansing, 109.
Furnaces, electric, advantages of, 300.
for iron and steel, types of, 302.
Fused alloys, electrolysis of, 32.
salts, electrolysis of, 32, 294.
Fusible metals, 147.
Fusion by electricity, 290.

Gallons and litres, interconversion, 401.
Galvanic battery, principles of, 24, 38.
Galvani's experiments, 3.
Galvanised iron, 27, 241.
'Galvanit,' 196.
Galvanography, 172.
Galvanometers, 83.
astatic, 84.
Galvanoscope, 82.
Gaultier and Dechaud's ore treatment, 278.
Gauze, wire-, plating of, 108.
Gelatine, 374.
hardening of, 148.
use of, in moulding, 148.
German-silver, cobalting of, 229.
deposition of, 265.
final cleansing of, 112.
nickeling of, 227.
silvering of, 180.
stripping silver from, 189.
Gilding by battery, solutions for, 201.
by immersion, 198.
colour of gold in, 204, 205.
dead-, 209.
starting of deposit, 210.
discoloured patches in, 207.
irregular surfaces, 208.
management of process, 206.
of electro-positive metals, 211.

Gilding of watch-movements, 213.
of wire, 103.
parcel, 212.
quicking prior to, 206.
stripping of gold before, 206.
thin, failure of, 209.
use of 'doctor' in, 208.
old baths, 204, 207.
-vat, 205.
water-, 200.
Gilt plumbago, 150, 162.
surfaces, ornamentation of, 212.
Girod electric refining furnace for iron, 309.
Glass, silvering of, 173.
Glass-tube insulator for wires, 191.
-vats, cement for, 94.
Glazing of steel, 122.
Glossary of substances used, 363.
Glue, 373.
marine, 374.
use of, in moulding, 144.
Glycerin, use of, in iron-bath, 232.
Glyphography, 172.
Gold and its compounds, 374.
amalgamation by mercury, 206.
anode, 204.
behaviour of, in copper-refining, 270.
character of deposit, 204, 205.
coin, 374.
colour, control of, 204, 205.
affected by basis metal, 209.
by impurities, 203.
coloured, 204, 205.
colouring of (dry), 212.
-cyanide of potassium, 382.
dead-, 209.
deposition of (*see* Gilding).
extraction, 283.
fulminating, 375.
properties of, 198.
pure, preparation of, 374.
recovered in copper-refining, 277.
in lead-refining, 282.
recovery from old baths, 319.
refining, 284.
solubility of, in cyanide-bath, 203.
-solutions, assay of, 327.
standard, 374.
stripping of old coat, 206.
Gore's antimony-bath, 251.
brassing-bath, 258.
experiments with explosive antimony, 252.
gilding-bath (battery), 202.
(immersion), 199.
silvering-bath (battery), 180.
(immersion), 176.
silvering-pastes, 176.
tinning-bath, 246.
Graining of surfaces (watch-movements), 213.
Grains and grammes, interconversion of, 401.
Gramme, value of, 34, 401.
Gramme's dynamo, 9.
Graphite, 382.
Gravity, Daniell's, cell, 45.
Grease, removal from objects, 108.
solubility in cyanides, 207.
Greek fire, 381.
Greenawalt gold extraction process, 284.
Green-bronzing, 402.
gold, 204.
Grippers, electric connection, 159.
Grounding in burnishing, 121.
Grouping of battery-cells, 54.
Grove's cell, 46.
Guericke's electrical machine, 2.
Guiding wires for art-moulds, 170.
Gutta-percha, 376.
action of cyanides upon, 184.
compositions, moulding, 144.
moulding by, 143, 144.
Gypsum, 381.

Haanel, advantages of electric smelting of iron, 300.
Hall's aluminium extraction process, 296.
Halske (*see* Siemens).
Handling of cleansed objects, 112.
Hand-polishing, 118.
Hardening of gelatine, 148.
Hardness of deposited iron, 235.
of deposited nickel, 216.
of deposited platinum, 240.
Hartmann and Weiss, cobalting by, 228.
Hartshorn, spirits of, 385.
Haydn's system of copper-refining, 276.
Heat evolved in chemical union, 20.
unit of, 35.
Heating of potash-vat, 110.
of solutions, 96.
Heeren's brassing solution, 258.
Hern's tinning solution, 249.
Héroult's aluminium extraction process, 296.
electric crucible furnace for iron, 303.
smelting furnace for iron, 305.
Hess' brassing solution, 258.
Hides for polishing, 118.
Higgins' bichromate cell, 49.
Hippopotamus hide for polishing, 118.
Hoe's black-leading machine, 162.
toggle-press, 160.

Hoepfner's copper extraction process, 280.
zinc extraction process, 288.
Hoho-Lagrange electric welding, 316.
Hook for anode suspension, 97.
Hooks and eyes, tinning of, 245.
Horse-power hour, 331.
cost of, 333.
relation to kilowatt, 36, 331.
unit, 35, 331.
Hospitalier's nickeling-bath, 218.
Hossauer's coppering-bath, 130, 141.
Hot solutions, stopping-off varnish for, 388.
vats for, 96.
Hübl (von), experiments on copper depositing, 133.
solution agitator of, 98.
Hydrochloric acid, 365.
sp. gr. table, 392.
Hydrocyanic acid, 365.
Hydrogen, 16.
absorbed by iron-deposit, 235.
co-deposit of, effect of, 132, 187.
deposition of, in zincing, 243.
Hydrometer, Baumé's, value of degrees, 393.
Twaddell's, value of degrees, 393.
Hygienic precautions to be observed, 92.
Hyposulphite silver-bath, 184.

Immersion, antimony deposited by, 250.
copper extraction by, 278.
coppering by, 124.
gilding by, 198.
platinising by, 237.
silvering by, 175.
tinning by, 247.
Imperial fluid measure, 400.
wire-gauge numbers, value of, 397.
Impurities, behaviour in copper-refining, 270.
effect on gold-bath, 203.
in copper anode, effect of, 131.
in refined copper, 271.
in silver-bath, effect of, 183.
Inches and millimetres, interconversion of, 401.
Incrustation on anode in brassing, 263.
Installation, arrangement of, 92.
Institution of Electrical Engineers, rules for copper conductors, 336, 398.
Instruments, current-measurement without, 155.
Insulation of suspending wires, 190.
Insulators, electrical, 30.
Intaglios, production of, 142.
Intensity of current, meaning of term, 34.
Interconversion of amperes per sq. ft., sq. in., and sq. dm., 391.
of thermometer scales, 399.
of weights and measures, 401.
Internal surfaces, gilding of, 208.
Iodide silver-bath, 184.
Ionic velocities, effect of unequal, 360.
Ionisation, 342.
heat of, 344.
Ions, charges on, 341.
meaning of term, 27, 341.
migration of, 342, 357.
rate of, 358.
Iron and its compounds, 376.
anodes, 234.
behaviour of, in copper-refining, 270.
cast, cleansing of, 135.
unsuited for anodes, 89.
character of deposit, 235.
cleansing of, 113.
cobalting of, 229.
coppering, by immersion, 2, 125.
coppering-baths for, 129, 130.
deposit, absorption of hydrogen by, 235.
preservation from rust, 236.
deposition of, 237.
electro-thermal production and refining of, 297.
electrotyping, 236.
extraction, 289.
electro-thermal, energy required for, 301.
facing of copper-plates, 230.
galvanised, 241.
gilding of, by battery, 211.
by immersion, 200.
nickeling of, 224.
refining, 289.
rollers, coppering of, 137.
silvering of, 176, 180.
solutions, 230.
red precipitate in, 231.
stripping of nickel from, 223.
of old coat, 236.
of silver from, 190.
tinning of, 246.
vats, use of, 95, 96.
Isinglass, 374.

Jacobi, electrotyping by, 5.
Jamieson's rule for current-direction, 82.
Japing's brassing-bath, 258.
copper-baths, 130.
zinc-bath, 242.
Jewreinoff's platinating-bath, 239.

Johnson and Morris' brassing-bath, 258.
German-silver-bath, 265.
Jointing of lead-lined vats, 107.
Jordan, electrotyping by, 5.
Joule, 36.
Jugs, gilding lips of, 208.

Kasalowsky's copper-bath, 130.
Keith, refining of lead, 282.
Keller's electric refining furnace for iron, 305.
electric smelting furnace for iron, 308.
Kermes mineral from antimony-bath, 252.
Kick's gilding-bath, 202.
Kiliani's experiments on zinc-deposition, 243.
Kilowatt, 36, 333.
-hour, 36, 333.
Kjellin's electric refining furnace for iron, 311.
Klein's iron-bath, 232, 233.
Knight's metallisation of moulds, 150.
Kopp's immersion copper-bath, 125.
Kuhlo's Daniell-cell, 44.
Kühn's silvering-paste, 176.

Lacquer varnish, 388.
Lagrange-Hoho, electric welding by, 315.
Lake Superior copper, treatment of, 279.
Lambotte and Doucet's zinc-extraction, 287.
Lamp-reflectors, silvering of, 173.
Lanaux and Roseleur's platinating-bath, 239.
Langbein's cobalting, 229.
coppering-bath, 130, 141.
gilding-bath, 203.
iron-bath, 234.
nickeling-bath, 218.
platinating bath, 239.
use of rotating cathodes for depositing copper, 139.
Lard, 377.
clarification of, 144.
Large surfaces, plating of, 104.
Lathe for polishing, 118.
Lead and its compounds, 377.
anode, effect of, in copper-bath, 169.
behaviour in copper-refining, 270.
-carbonate used in wax-moulding, 145.
cleansing of, 114.
coppering-bath for, 130.
crude, impurities in, 281.
deposition of, 250.
Lead extraction, 283.
gilding of, 211.
-lined vats, jointing of, 107.
-peroxide, colours of films, 255.
deposit on anode, 250.
recovery from old baths, 320.
refined, impurities in, 282.
refining of, 281.
sheet-, anodes for statuary, 169.
solutions, assay of, 327.
stripping of silver from, 190.
-tree, 250.
unsuited for silvering, 188.
use of, in accumulators, 74.
in fusible alloys, 147.
vats, jointing of, 95, 107.
Lead, black-, application to moulds, 149.
Leather bobs for polishing, 118.
Leaves, nature-prints from, 172.
Leclanché-cell, 50.
Leeson's elastic moulds, 8.
Length, unit of, 35.
Lenoir's automatic cut-out, 169.
statuary-moulding, 167.
Lerebour's gilding solution, 202.
Lesmonde's platinising cell, 238.
Létrange's zinc-extraction, 287.
Levol's gilding solution, 202.
Lichtenberg's fusible alloy, 147.
Light, need for, 92.
Lime, quick and slaked, 371.
Sheffield, use in polishing, 119.
Lines of force, magnetic, 72.
Lipowitz's fusible alloy, 147.
Lips of ewers, gilding of, 208.
Liquid forge, Burton's, 315.
Liquids, conductivity of, 32.
Litre, value of the, 35.
Litres and gallons, interconversion of, 401.
Lobstein's tinning-bath, 249.
Local action, meaning and effect of, 39, 349.
thickening of silver-deposits, 195.
Lonyet's zinc-bath, 242.
Looseness of deposit, causes of, 77.
Lubrication in scratch-brushing, 120.
Luckow's zinc-extraction, 286.
Lüdersdorf's tinning-bath, 246.
Lunar caustic, 386.

Magnesium and its compounds, 378.
electro-smelting of, 296.
Magnet, dynamo-, exciting of, 70.
field-, of dynamo, 70.
lines of force around, 68.
Magnetic iron-deposit, 235.
Magneto-electric machines, invention of, 4.

Maistrasse's tinning-bath, 249.
Manganese, behaviour in copper-refining, 271.
Manufactured goods prepared for silvering, 188.
Marchese's copper ore treatment, 280.
Marine glue, 374.
use in moulding, 144.
Marks, striated, cause of, on deposits, 89.
Materials for moulding, 143.
Matter, definition of, 14.
Matthiessen's magnesium-smelting, 296.
Measurement of current, 83.
without instruments, 155.
units of, 34.
Measures and weights, 400.
Measuring apparatus, electrical need for, 77.
instruments, position in circuit, 154.
Medals and medallions, electrotyping of, 144, 165.
Meidinger's Daniell-cell, 44.
Melting-points of fusible alloys, 147.
Mercury and its compounds, 378.
danger to gold, 206.
in plate powders, 178.
protection of battery-zincs by, 39.
quicking by, 115.
recovery of, from old zincs, 320.
use of, in fusible alloys, 148.
Meritens Plating Co.'s silver-baths, 180.
Metal, backing-, for electrotypes, 164.
Spence's, 387.
Metallisation of moulds, 149, 150, 162.
Metallo-chromes, 255.
Metals and metalloids, 19, 20.
best current for depositing, 78.
conductance of, 31.
electro-chemical series, 22.
-positive and -negative, 22.
coating of, 85.
fusible, use in moulding, 147.
list of, 19.
precious, recovered in copper-refining, 277.
recovered in lead-refining, 281.
simple exchange of, 345.
thermo-electric series of, 60.
thermo-electro-motive force of, 61.
unlike, effect of hanging, on same cathode-rod, 192.
Methylated spirit, 367.
Metre, value of the, 35.
Micro-volts, 60.
Miest and Blas, copper ore treatment by, 280.
Migration of ions, 342, 357.
rate of, 358.
varying velocity of, 360.
Millimetres and inches, interconversion of, 401.
Milward's bright-plating solution, 8.
Mineral oils, cleansing from, 109.
Mixed solutions, electrolysis of, 33, 355.
Mixing-drum, 125.
Mixture of solution, necessary in brassing, 262.
Modern theories of electrolysis, 338.
Moebius silver-refining process, 284.
Molecule, definition of term, 15.
Monovalent, meaning of term, 17.
Mop (*mopping*), 122.
Morris and Johnson's brassing-bath, 258.
German-silver-bath, 265.
Motion of bath effected, 98.
of cathodes, 99.
Motor-generator, 76.
Moulding-box for wax, 158.
by electrolysis, 142.
-composition, conductive, 146, 149.
elastic, 148, 166.
from coins and medals, 144, 165.
natural objects, 171.
statuary, 166.
steel-plates, 144.
type, 145, 157.
undercut models, 143.
wax-models, 167.
wood-blocks, 165.
in sections, 167, 168.
materials, 143.
with elastic composition, 148.
gutta-percha, 143.
mixtures, 144.
plaster of Paris, 146.
sealing-wax, 149.
wax, 158.
-compositions, 145.
Moulds, elastic, invention of, 8.
guiding-wires in, 170.
metallisation of, 149, 150, 162.
rendered conductive, 149.
wax, electrical connection with, 162.
maximum current for, 164.
parting of copper from, 164.
plumbagoing, 161.
trimming and building up, 160.
wetting of surface, 163.
Mud in copper-refining, composition of, 271.
Muffle-furnace for cleansing, 109.
Multiple system of copper-refining, 275.

Munro's tinning solution, 249.
Murray's black-leading process, 7.

NÄGEL'S nickeling-bath, 218.
Native copper, treatment of, 279.
Natural objects, reproduction of, 171.
Nature-prints of leaves, 172.
Negative plate and pole of battery, 38.
Net, wire-, plating of, 104.
Netto and Wagener's 'doctor,' 104.
Neutral point, thermo-electric, 62.
Newton's fusible alloy, 147.
Nickel and its compounds, 379.
  anodes, 222.
  -baths, 218.
    cause of alkalinity in, 220.
  behaviour in copper-refining, 270.
  burnt, production of, 217.
  character of metal, 216.
  -cobalt alloy deposited, 218.
  -copper-zinc alloy deposited, 265.
  -deposit, advantages of, 216.
    cause of peeling, 226.
    dark coloured, cause of, 225.
    hardness of, 217.
    polishing of, 122.
    thickness of, 225.
  -plating, uses of, 216.
  recovery from old baths, 321.
  solutions, assay of, 327.
  stripping old coats, 222.
Nickeling, arrangement of anodes, 222, 225.
  battery for, 220.
  careful preparation needed, 122, 224.
  finishing, 227.
  rotatory plating apparatus for, 105.
  small goods, 105.
  solutions, 218, 220.
  suspension of objects for, 105, 225.
  time required for, 226.
  -vats, 222.
Nickel-silver, gilding of, 211.
    silvering of, 191.
Niello work, 197.
Nitric acid, 365.
    as depolariser, 46.
    dip, 112.
    specific gravity tables, 392.
Nitrous acid, 112, 366.
Non-conductors, electrical, 30.
Non-metals and metals, 19, 20.

OBERNETTER'S iron-bath, 233.
Ohm, value of the, 34.
Ohm's law, 4, 54.
Oil of vitriol, 366.
Oil, removal of, 109.
Ore treatment, Becquerel's, 5.
  early experiments in, 9.
  scope for, 268.
Ores, antimony-, treatment of, 289.
  copper-, treatment of, 278.
  zinc-, treatment of, 286.
Organic acids, resistance of cobalt to, 229.
    use of, in nickeling, 221.
  dirt, destruction of, 109.
  matter, danger of, to silver-baths, 184.
    effect of, on gold-bath, 203.
Ornamentation of gilt surfaces, 212.
  of silver sufaces, 196.
Osmotic pressure, 339.
Oxalic acid, 366.
Oxidised silver, 196.

PALLADIUM deposit, advantages of, 254.
  deposition of, 254.
  properties of, 254.
Paracelsus on coppering iron, 2.
Paraffin, cleansing from, 109.
Parallel arrangement of battery-cells, 55.
    of plating-vats, 86.
    of refining-vats, 274.
Parcel-gilding, 212.
Parchment-paper for porous partition, 127.
Paris, plaster of, 381.
Parkes' elastic moulding-composition, 148.
  metallisation of moulds, 149.
  silvering-bath, 180.
  wax moulding-composition, 146, 149.
Patera's treatment of copper-liquors, 278.
P.D., 349.
Peeling of nickel-deposits, cause of, 226.
Pens, steel, coppering of, 124.
Person and Sire's zinc-bath, 242.
Petroleum, cleansing from, 109.
Pewter, stripping of silver from, 190.
  unsuited to silvering, 188.
Pfanhauser's gilding-bath, 202.
  nickeling-bath, 218.
  silvering-bath, 180.
Phosphorus, 380.
  compositions in type-moulding, 162.
  production of, 294.
  solutions, danger of, 171.
  use of, in moulding, 146, 149.
Pickles for cleansing, 114.
Pile, dry, 3.
Pinholes in copper-deposit cause of, 164.
  in iron-deposit, 234.

Pins, immersion tinning of, 247.
Pints and cubic inches, interconversion of, 401.
Planté accumulator, 74.
statuary anodes, 168.
Plaster of Paris, 381.
as porous partition, 127.
made waterproof, 147.
use of, in moulding, 146, 168.
Plastic moulding materials, 144.
Plate-restoring powders, 178.
Plates, anode-, form of, 97.
battery-, 38.
copper-, reproduced, 152.
steel-, copied, 151.
Platinating, 238, 240.
Plating apparatus, rotatory, 105.
-balances, 100.
bright-, invention of, 8.
Platining, 240.
Platinising, 237, 240.
silver, 196.
Platinum and its compounds, 381.
behaviour in copper-refining, 271.
characteristics of, 237.
deposition of, 237.
dipping-baskets, 112.
recovery from old baths, 321.
resisting power of deposit, 237.
scratch-brushing of, 240.
-silver alloy deposited, 266.
solutions, assay of, 328.
stripping of, 240.
-wire anodes for statuary, 168.
Plumbago, 382.
application to moulds, 149, 161.
increasing conductivity of, 150.
water-repelling action of, overcome, 163.
Plumbagoing wax moulds, 161.
Poisoning of blood by plating-baths, 103.
Poisons, antidotes to, 403.
Polarisation of battery, 40.
prevention of, 41.
of electrolyte, 29.
Poles of battery, 38.
Polishing before nickeling, 224.
hides for, 118.
-lathe, 118.
of surfaces, 117.
Porosity of deposits, 138.
Porous cell of battery, 42.
preservation of, 51.
Positive metals, plating of, 85.
plate and pole of battery, 38.
Post Office Daniell-cell, 45.
Potash alum, 368.
cleansing solution, 109, 110.
-vat, 110.
Potassium compounds, 382.
cyanide, cleansing by, 113.
use in silver-baths, 179.
Potential difference, 349.
Potential, meaning of term, 25.
Pott's nickeling-bath, 218.
Powder, silver-, obtained, 214.
plate-restoring, 178.
Powdery copper-deposit, cause of, 132.
Powell's nickeling solutions, 218.
Power, cost of, 333.
factor, 36, 313.
loss of, in conductors, 335.
required for electrolysis, calculation of, 329.
unit of, 35, 331.
Press for moulding from type, 159.
Pressure, electrolytic solution-, 343.
of electric current, 25.
osmotic-, 339.
solution-, 338.
Primary battery, 75.
Printers' electrotyping, 151.
formes, moulding from, 157.
Printing-plates, copper, iron-faced, 230.
nickeled copper, life of, 227.
-surfaces, nickeled, 227.
various, production of, 172.
Projections on deposit, cause of, 90.
Proof-spirit, 367.
Prussiate of potash, yellow, 383.
Prussic acid gas evolved from cyanide-baths, 92.
Pumice, scouring with, 117.
Puscher's immersion copper-bath, 125.
Pyrites, burnt Spanish, treatment of, 278.

Quantity and intensity of current, 35.
Quicking of objects, 115.
before gilding, 206.
Quicklime, 371.
Quicksilver, 378.

Rag-gilding, 209.
Réaumur thermometer and scale, 35.
Red-lead, 385.
Refining, electro-, scope for, 267.
of copper, electrolytic, 268.
of iron (electrolytic), 289.
electro-thermal, 297.
of lead, 281.
of silver, electrolytic, 284.
Reflectors, electrolytic manufacture of, 173.
silvering of, 176, 178.
Regulation of current in electrotyping, 156.

Regulus, copper-, use as anode, 279.
Resistance, effect of varying, on deposit, 80.
electrical, of copper wires, 395.
relation of, to power required, 336.
specific, of copper-sulphate solutions, 394.
of sulphuric acid, 394.
unit of measurement, 34.
Resistance-coils, 81.
Resistances, use of, 81.
Rochelle salt, 383.
Röchling and Rodenhauser's electric refining furnace for iron, 313.
Rock salt, 386.
Rodenhauser and Röchling's electric refining furnace for iron, 313.
Rogers Plating Co.'s silver-baths, 180.
Rollers, iron, coppering of, 137.
Rooms for plating, arrangement of, 92.
Rose's fusible alloy, 147.
Roseleur's antimony-bath, 251.
brassing-bath, 258, 260.
coppering-bath, 129, 130.
gilding-bath (battery), 202.
(immersion), 198, 199, 200.
nickeling-bath, 218.
plating-balance, 100.
platinising-bath, 238.
quicking-bath, 116.
silvering-bath (battery), 180.
(immersion), 176.
silvering-pastes, 178.
tinning-bath (battery), 248.
(immersion), 246.
wire-gilding process, 103.
Roseleur and Lanaux's platinating-bath, 239.
Rosin, 384.
use of, in moulding, 146, 165.
Rotary converter, 76.
Rotatory plating apparatus, 105.
Rouge, use of, 122.
Round's tin-silver-bath, 266.
Rue (de la), discovery of electrotyping, 5.
Rules for handling chemicals, 263.
Ruolz (de) bronzing solution, 264.
gilding-bath, 202.
Russell and Woolrich's brassing-bath, 258.
cadmium-bath, 245.
Rust, preservation of iron-deposit from, 232.
Rust-coloured precipitate in iron vats, 231.
Ryhiner's iron-plating solution, 233.

SALT, common, 386.
Salts, fused, electrolysis of, 32.
Salzede's (De la) brassing-bath, 258.
bronzing-bath, 264.
Sand, scouring with, 117.
Trent, use of, in polishing, 118.
Sartoria's tinning-bath, 249.
Satin finish to silver, 197.
Sawdust for drying, 136.
Schmöllnitz waters, coppering iron by, 2.
treatment of, 278.
Schneider and Szontagh system of circulating electrolyte, 276.
Scratch-brushes, 119.
-brushing, 119.
during deposition, 194, 207.
effect of, 122.
of platinum, 240.
Scratches, unobliterated, 89.
Screws, binding-, for batteries, 57.
Sealing-wax, use of, in moulding, 149.
Secondary actions in electrolysis, 354.
batteries, 74.
Sectional moulding, 167.
Seebeck's discovery of thermo-electricity, 4.
Seignette salt, 383.
Selective chemical union, 21.
Series arrangement of battery cells, 55.
of plating-vats, 86.
of refining-vats, 274.
electro-chemical, 22.
system of copper-refining, 275.
thermo-electric, of metals, 60.
Shape of object, effect on thickness of coat, 89.
Sheffield lime, 371.
used in polishing, 119.
'Sherardising,' 241.
Short-circuiting of current, 39.
avoided in art-electrotyping, 170.
indicated, 80.
Shunt-wires, distribution of current in, 39.
Siemens' electric furnace, 290.
Siemens and Halske's antimony-extraction process, 289.
copper ore treatment process, 280.
gold-extraction process, 283.
zinc-extraction process, 288.
Signets, moulding from, 149.
Silver and its compounds, 384.
anodes, 186.
appearance during electrolysis, 182.
antique, 197.
-bath, bright, use of, 194.
controlled by anode appearance, 182.

Silver-bath cyanide, 181.
effect of age on, 183.
electrolytic preparation of, 184.
iodide, 184.
limits of density for, 183.
suspension of objects in, 191.
thiosulphate, 184.
behaviour of, in copper-refining, 271.
bright, deposit, 8, 185.
presence of sulphur in, 186.
coin, standard, 186, 384.
-cyanide of potassium, 382.
cyanide, preparation of, 179, 385.
use of, in silver-bath, 179.
dead lustre produced, 197.
-deposit, character of, 187.
final treatment of, 194.
non-adhesive, cause of, 182.
thickening of, locally, 195.
thickness of, 187, 195.
deposition of, by battery, 179.
by immersion, 175.
from pastes, 175, 177.
on glass, 173.
electrode arrangement, 192.
non-electrolytic, 177.
effect of, on colour of gold, 203.
electro-refining of, 284.
electrotype, use of, 151.
electrotyping with, 196.
German-, deposition of, 265.
final cleansing of, 112.
gilding of soft-soldered goods, 211.
gilt, dead lustre on, 209.
niello-work, 197.
oxidised, 197.
plate, polishing of, 121.
platinised by immersion, 237.
-platinum alloy deposited, 266.
-potassium cyanide, electrolysis of, 181.
-powder obtained, 214.
pure, preparation of, 384.
recovered in copper-refining, 277.
in lead-refining, 281.
from old baths, 322.
refining of, 284.
solutions, assay of, 328.
for separate current, 180.
preparation of, 179.
spongy, prepared, 214.
standard, 186, 384.
striking-bath, use of, 193.
stripping of old coat, 188.
sub-cyanide dissolved, 194.
-surfaces, ornamentation of, 196.
-tin alloy deposited, 266.
Silvered plumbago used, 150, 162.
Silvering of glass, 173.
Silvering-vat, 186.
Single-cell deposition of copper, 126.
extraction of copper, 278.
gilding by, 201.
platinising by, 238.
silvering by, 178.
tinning by, 247.
-fluid battery, 41.
Sire and Person's zinc-bath, 242.
Skeleton wire statuary anodes, 168.
Slaked lime, 371.
Slate vats, 94.
Slime on copper anode, 132.
rusty, in iron-baths, 231.
Slimes, copper-refining, composition of, 271.
Slinging of objects in silver-vat, 191.
Small objects, coating of, 105, 135.
Smee's battery cell, 41.
book on electro-metallurgy, 8.
platinising, 238.
Smelting, electro-, 290.
of aluminium, 295.
of iron, 297.
of magnesium, 296.
of sodium, 297.
Smith's system of copper-refining, 276.
Smith and Deakin's rotatory plating apparatus, 105.
Snowdon, nickeling, 223.
Soda alum, 368.
ash, 386.
cleansing-vat, 110.
Sodium compounds, 386.
smelting, 297.
Softening of deposited iron, 235.
Soldering of lead-vats, 95.
Solder-lines, gilding of, 211.
Solution of anode in copper-refining, 269.
pressure, 338.
electrolytic, 343.
various cases of, 346.
Solutions, agitation of, effected, 98.
necessary, 90.
circulation of, 90, 98, 276.
copper and zinc sulphates, sp. gr., 393.
depositing-, assay of, 324.
heating of, 96.
homogeneity of, need for, 90.
potash, vat for, 110.
quicking-, 115.
recovery of metals from, 318.
Sorrel, salt of, 383.
Sparking of dynamo-commutator, 73.

Specific gravity of silver-baths, 183.
tables for acids, 392.
for copper and zinc sulphate solutions, 393.
resistance of copper sulphate solution, 394.
of sulphuric acid, 394.
Spence's metal, 387.
Spencer, electrotyping by, 6.
Spermaceti, use in moulding, 146.
Spirits of hartshorn, 368.
of wine, 367.
Sponginess of anode in refining, 270.
Spongy copper-deposit, cause of, 156.
silver prepared, 214.
Spoons supported in vat, 191.
thickness on bowls increased, 195.
Spots on silver-deposit, 193.
Sprague's platinating-bath, 239.
Sq. ins. and dms., interconversion of, 401.
Stalmann's system of copper-refining, 276.
Stannate of soda, 387.
Stannous and stannic compounds, 387.
Star antimony, 369.
Stassano's electric refining furnace for iron, 309.
Statuary, moulding from, 148, 166.
Steam-heated plating-vat, 96.
potash-vat, 110.
Stearine, use of, in moulding, 146.
Steel, 376.
burnishers, 121.
cleansing of, 113.
coppering of, 151.
electro-thermal production, 297.
electro-thermal energy required for, 301.
-facing of copper-plate, 230, 235.
gilding of, 199, 200, 211.
hardened, zincing of, 241.
nickeling of, 224.
pens, coppering of, 124.
-plates, copying of, 151.
moulding from, 144.
preservation of, 151.
polishing of, 122.
silvering of, 180.
stripping nickel from, 223.
Steele's gilding-bath, 201.
tinning-bath, 249.
Stein's silver-paste, 176.
Stereotyping, 151.
Stibnite, 369.
Stirring of bath effected, 98.
need for, 90.
Stopping-out varnish, 388.
Straightening of electrotypes, 164.
Striation marks on deposits, 89.
Striking of nickel, 225.
Striking-bath for silver, 193.
Stripping of old gold coats, 206.
of iron coats, 236.
of nickel coats, 222.
of platinum coats, 240.
of silver coats, 188.
Stylography, 172.
Sub-cyanide of silver in silver-deposit, 187.
Sublimate, corrosive, 379.
Suet, use of, in moulding, 146.
Sugar, use of, in moulding, 148.
of lead, 377.
Sulphide of ammonium, use of, in electrotyping, 168.
Sulphides as anodes, 279, 281.
Sulphur, 387.
chloride for bright-plating, 185.
presence in bright-silver deposits, 186.
Sulphuric acid, 366.
specific gravity tables, 392.
specific resistance of, 394.
Supply, public electricity, use of, 75.
Surface amperage, units interconverted, 391.
Suspension of electrodes, 98.
of objects in depositing-vats, 105, 135, 191.
of objects in potash-vat, 111.
Swan's-down used in dollying, 122.
Swinburne and Ashcroft's zinc-extraction process, 288.
Switch-board for battery, 57.
Symbols, chemical, 16.
of elements, 19.
Szontagh and Schneider's system of circulating electrolyte, 276.

TABLE-SALT, 386.
Tallow, clarification of, 144.
used in moulding, 166.
Tanks for solutions, 94.
Tannic acid, 366.
Tarnish to be removed from objects, 108.
Tartar, cream of, 383.
emetic, 370.
Tartaric acid, 366.
Telegraph-wires, coppering of, 140.
Temperature, effect of, on resistance of baths, 394.
unit of measurement, 35.
Tenacity of deposited copper, 134, 138.
Tetravalent, meaning of term, 17.
Theories of electrolysis, modern, 338.
Thermal (electro-) processes, 294.

Thermo-electric battery, 59.
Clamond's, 64.
direction of current in, 60.
Gülcher's, 66.
invention of, 4.
reversal of current in, 62.
wastefulness of, 66.
neutral-point, 62.
series of metals, 60.
Thermo-electro-motive force of metals, 61.
Thermometer-scales, interconversion of, 399.
Thermopile (*see* Thermo-electric battery).
Thick copper-deposits on iron, 137.
iron-deposits, 236.
tin-deposits, 249.
Thickening of deposits at bottom, 90.
of silver coat locally, 195.
Thickness of deposit, calculation of, 79.
of film determined, 156.
of metal deposited by any known current, 390.
for copper-deposit, 136.
for copper electrotype, 157.
for copper in statuary, 168.
for gold, 209.
for nickel, 225.
for silver, 187, 195.
unequal, on long articles, 194.
Thiosulphate silver-bath, 184.
Thompson's cobalting-bath, 228.
switch-board, 58.
Thomson's electric annealing process, 317.
electric welding process, 315.
Thom's platinating-bath, 240.
Tin and its compounds, 387.
anodes, 248.
behaviour in copper-refining, 270.
cleansing of, 114.
-copper alloys, deposition of, 263.
coppering-bath for, 130.
-foil, grades of, 248.
nickeling of, 218.
-plate, 248.
platinising of, 238.
-powder as conductor, 150, 162.
recovery from tin scrap, 290.
-salt, 388.
-silver alloy, deposition of, 266.
stripping of silver from, 190.
unsuited for silvering, 188.
use in fusible alloys, 147.
Tinning solutions for battery, 249.
for immersion, 246.
for single-cell process, 246, 247.
Toggle-press, 160.
Tools for burnishing, 122.
Treacle, use of, in moulding, 148.
Trent sand for polishing, 118.
Tripoli-powder, use of, 121.
Trivalent, meaning of term, 17.
Troy-weight, 400.
Tubes, formation of (copper), 137.
Turpentine, Venice, use of, 145.
Tuttle, refining silver, 286.
Twaddell's hydrometer, value of degrees, 393.
Two-fluid battery, 41, 349.
Type, bookbinders', brassing of, 263.
cleansing and preparation of, 158.
moulding from, 157.
to be used for electrotyping, 157.
Typographical matter, electrotyping of, 157.

UNDERCUT moulding, 143, 148.
Uneven deposits, cause of, 90.
Units of measurement, 34.
Urquhart's electrotyping of medals, 165.
wax-moulding, 146.

VALENCY, meaning of term, 17.
Varnish, acid-resisting, 214.
for interior of vats, 95.
lacquer, 388.
non-conductive, 152, 388.
use of, 6, 136.
stopping-off, 152, 214, 388.
Varrentrapp's iron-bath, 233.
Vat for gilding, 105.
iron-depositing, 234.
nickeling, 222.
potash solutions, 110.
silvering, 186.
Vats, arrangement of, for copper-refining, 274.
for plating, 85.
description of, 94.
lead-lined, jointing of, 107.
supporting objects in, 97.
Vegetable forms reproduced, 171.
Ventilation, need for, 92, 94.
system of, 94.
Vermilion pigments, nickeled surfaces for printing with, 227.
Vitriol, blue-, 373.
green-, 376.
oil of, 366.
white-, 389.
Volkmer's brassing-bath, 258.
iron-bath, 233.
nickeling-bath, 218.
silvering-bath, 180.
wax moulding-composition, 146.
Volt, value of the, 34.

Volta's experiments, 3.
Voltage, best, for metal-deposition, 78.
reduction of, 76.
Voltaic cell, principles of, 24, 38.
pile, 3.
Voltmeter, 84.
advantages of, 78.
position of, in circuit, 154.

Wagener and Netto's 'doctor,' 104.
Wagner's gilding-bath, 202.
Wahl's gilding-bath, 199.
platinating-baths, 239.
silvering-baths (battery), 180.
(immersion), 176.
tinning-bath, 246.
Walenn's iron-bath, 233.
Walker's wax moulding-composition, 146.
Walrus-hide for polishing, 118.
Wash-waters, recovery of copper from, 136.
Watch-movements, gilding of, 213.
Water, composition of, 16.
-gilding, 200.
power, cost of, 334.
supply, good, need for, 93.
to be used in operations, 85.
waste, removal of, 93.
Watt, value of the, 35.
Watt's brassing-bath, 258.
cobalting-bath, 228.
copper-baths, 130.
German-silver-bath, 265.
gilding-baths, 202.
nickeling-baths, 218.
platinating-bath, 239.
silvering-baths, 176, 180.
silvering-paste, 176.
wax moulding-composition, 146.
zincing solution, 242.
Wax, bees'-, 370.
compositions, use of, 145.
in elastic moulding, 166.
cracking of, on cooling, 145.
melting of, 159.
models, moulding from, 167.
moulding with, 146.
with pressure, 159.
moulds, copper deposited on, 163.
electrical contact with, 162.
maximum current-strength for, 164.
parting of copper from, 164.
plumbagoing of, 161.
trimming and building up, 160.
wetting of surface, 163.
sealing-, moulding with, 149.
Weak currents, effect in coppering, 133.
effect in electrotyping, 156.
solutions, effect in coppering, 132.
Weighing deposit in bath, 100.
correction for, 102.
Weight, atomic, definition of, 16.
of deposit, calculation of, 79.
unit of, 34.
Weights and measures, 400.
interconversion of, 401.
atomic, of elements, 19.
equivalent, 19, 20.
Weil's bronzing-bath, 264.
copper-baths, 126, 130.
Weiss and Hartmann's cobalt-bath, 228.
Weiss' brassing-bath, 258.
bronzing-bath, 264.
copper-bath, 130.
gilding-bath, 202.
iron-bath, 233.
nickel-baths, 218.
silvering-baths, 180.
tinning-bath, 249.
wax moulding-composition, 146.
zinc-bath, 242.
Welding, electric, 315.
Weston's nickeling solutions, 218, 221.
White-lead, use in wax moulding, 145.
Whitening of small goods, 175.
Whiting, 371.
cleansing by, 111.
Wilde's first dynamo, 9.
coppering of iron rollers, 137.
Wire anode for statuary, 168.
-gauges, diameters of, 396, 397.
-gauze, plating of, 104.
-gilding process, 103.
marks, to avoid, 135.
scratch-brushes, 119.
Wires, conducting, loss of power in, 335.
maximum current for, 335.
copper, resistances of, 395.
guiding-, for art moulds, 170.
telegraph, coppering of, 140.
Wiring of goods for nickeling, 225.
for silveting, 191.
Wohlwill's gold-refining process, 284.
Wolfe and Pioche's ore-treatment, 9.
Wollaston's coppering of silver, 3.
Wood-blocks, electrotyping of, 158, 165.
Wood's brassing-bath, 258.
fusible alloy, 147.
gilding-bath, 202.
Wooden vats, use of, 95.
Woolrich and Russell's brassing-bath, 258.
cadmium-bath, 245.

Wright's cyanide-bath, 8.
Wrought-iron, 376.

YELLOW stain on scratch-brushed platinum, 240.

ZERENER'S electric welding process, 316.
Zinc and its compounds, 388.
anodes, 243.
used in brassing, 261.
battery-, amalgamation of, 39.
costliness of, 37, 333.
mercury from, 51.
behaviour of, in copper-refining, 270.
characteristics of, 241.
cleansing of, 114.
-copper alloys, deposition of, 257.
-copper-nickel alloy deposited, 265.
coppering baths for, 130.
Zinc, dead-gilding of, 211.
deposition of, 241.
effect of current-density, 243.
dust, use of, in zinc-bath, 243, 244.
extraction of, 286.
gilding of, by battery, 211.
by immersion, 199.
local action on, 39.
nickeling of, 218, 224, 227.
ores, electro-magnetic and electrostatic treatment of, 288.
quicking of, 116.
silvering of, 191.
solutions for depositing, 242.
spongy deposits, cause of, 244.
stripping of silver from, 190.
sulphate solutions, sp. gr. of, 393.
tinning of, 246.
Zinin's silvering-bath, 180, 184.
Zosimus on the coppering of iron, 2.

PRINTED BY NEILL AND CO., LTD., EDINBURGH.

CHARLES GRIFFIN & COMPANY,

LIMITED.

A SELECTION FROM

CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL WORKS.

MESSRS. CHARLES GRIFFIN & COMPANY'S PUBLICATIONS may be obtained through any Bookseller in the United Kingdom, or will be sent on receipt of a remittance to cover published price and postage. To prevent delay, Orders should be accompanied by a Cheque or Postal Order crossed "UNION OF LONDON AND SMITH'S BANK, Chancery Lane Branch."

Telephone—
1634 City.

LONDON:

Telegrams—
Explanatus.

12 EXETER STREET, STRAND.

D T. 64. 3-x.

PAGE

ADAMS (W. P.), Motor Car Mechanism, - 21
AITKEN (T.), Road Making, - - - 63
ALFORD (C. J.), Mining Law. - - - 42
ALLINGHAM (W.), Meteorology, - - 34
ANDREWS (L.), Electricity Control, - 29
ANGLIN (S.), Design of Structures, - 15
ARCHBUTT & DEELEY, Lubrication, - 22
ATHERTON (Wm.), Design of Beams, - 15
BARKER (D. W.), Works, by, - - 33, 34
BERINGER (J. J. & C.), Assaying, - - 51
BICHEL & LARSEN, Explosives, - - 43
BILES (Prof.), Works by, - - - 19, 31
BJÖRLING (P. R.), Peat, - - - - 59
BLACKMORE (E.), Mercantile Marine, - 33
BLOUNT & BLOXAM, Chemistry. - - 55
BLYTH (A. Wynter), Foods and Poisons, 56
BOHLE & ROBERTSON, Transformers, - 29
BORCHERS (Dr.), Electric Smelting, - 52
BROUGH (B. H.), Mine Surveying, - - 41
BROWNE (W. R.), Works by, - - - 26
BRUCE (Robt.), Food Supply, - - - 45
BUCK (R. C.), Algebra & Trigonometry, - 35
BURNS (D.), Colliery Electricity, - - 42
BUTLER, Carburettors, - - - - 21
BUTTERFIELD, (W. J. A.), Gas, - - 61
CAIN & THORPE, Synthetic Dyestuffs, - 66
CARTER (H. R.), Long Fibre Spinning, - 67
CASTELL-EVANS, Chemical Tables. - 55
CHATLEY (H.), Works by, - - - 23, 31
CLARK (J.), Soil Bacteria - - - - 57
CLAYWORKER'S HANDBOOK, - - 59
COLE (Prof. G. A. J.), Works by, - 46, 71
COLE (W. H.), Light Railways, - - - 20
COLLINS (H. F.), Lead and Silver, - - 49
COX (S. H.), Prospecting for Minerals, - 45
CROTCH (A.), Telegraphic Systems, - 30
CUNNINGHAM, Docks and Harbours, - 16
DAVEY (H.), Pumping Machinery, - - 17
DAVIS (J. R. A.), Works by, - - - 70
DIXON (C.), Bird Life, - - - - - 71
DONKIN (Bryan), Works, - - - - 22
DUERR (Geo.), Bleaching, &c., - - - 68
DUNBAR (Prof.), Sewage Treatment, - 60
DUPRÉ & HAKE. Manual of Chemistry, - 69
EICHHORN, Wireless Telegraphy, - - 29
ELHERIDGE (R.), Geology, - - - 46
FARNSWORTH, Cons. Steel Work, - - 15
FARRELL (F. J.), Dyeing and Cleaning, - 68
FIDLER (Prof.), Bridge-Construction, - 15
FIELD (E. R.), Mining Report Book, - 42
FOSTER (Sir C. Le Neve). Works by, - 39
GAIRNS (J. F.), Loco. Compounding, - 20
GATEHOUSE (F.), Cement Handbook, - 60
GINSBURG (Dr.) Shipmasters' Duties, - 36
GISSING (F. T.), Peat, - - - - 59
GOLDING (H. A.), Bonus Tables, - - 25
—— Horse-Power Computers, - - - 25
GROSSMANN (J.), Chem. Engineering, - 69
GRÜNWALD (J.), Enamelling on Metal, - 63
GULLIVER (G.), Metallic Alloys - - 52
GURDEN (R.), Traverse Tables, - - 25
GUTTMANN (O.), Blasting, - - - 43
HALSE (E.), Spanish Mining Terms, - 42
HANNAN (W. I.), Textile Fibres, - - 67
HARBORD (F. W.), Steel, - - - - 50
HARRISON (J. W.), Sanitation, - - 62
HEIL & ESCH, Rubber Goods, - - - 65
HEWLETT (G.), Dict. Sea Terms, - - 37
HEYLIN (H.), Cot. Weavers' Handbook, - 67
HICKS (J. A.), Mineral Oil Testing, - - 54
HOBBS (L.), Engine Design, - - - 18
HODGSON (R. E.). Emery Grinding, - 23
HOCHWINKEL (G.), Signalling in Mines, 43
HUGHES (H. W.), Coal Mining, - - 40
HUGHES-GIBB (Mrs.), Works by, - - 70
HURST (Chas.), Works by, - - - 24
HURST (G. H.). Works by. - - - 64
INGLE (H.), Agricultural Chemistry, - 57
JAGGER (J. E.), Mechanical Drawing, - 24
JAMIESON (Prof.). MANUALS, - - - 27
JOHNSON (J. C. F.), Getting Gold, - - 44
JUDE (A.), Steam Turbine, - - - 19
JULIAN (H. F.) and SMART (E), Cyaniding Gold and Silver Ores, - - 44
KASSNER (T.), Gold Seeking, - - - 44
KERR (G. L.), Works by, - - - 40

PAGE

KNECHT & RAWSON, Dyeing, - - 6
LAFAR, Technical Mycology, - - - 58
LAMBERT, Glue, Gelatine, &c., - - - 65
LARARD (C. E.), Eng. Calculations, - 25
LAW (E. F.), Alloys, - - - - - 49
LAWN (J. G.), Mine Accounts, - - - 42
LEEDS (F. H.), Acetylene, - - - - 61
LIECKFELD (G.), Oil Motors, - - - 21
LIVERSIDGE, Engine-Room Practice, - 19
MACKENZIE (T.), Mechanics, - - - 35
MACLEOD (W. A.) and WALKER (C.), Metallurgical Chemistry, - - - - 51
M'LAREN, (R. S.), Elem Mech. Eng., 25, 75
McMILLAN (W. G.). Electro-Metallurgy, - 52
—— & BORCHERS Electric Smelting, - 52
McWILLIAM, Foundry Practice, - - 53
MASTIN (J.) Scientific Romances - - 76
MESSUM (S.). Hydrographic Surveying, - 16
MIDDLETON (R. E.) Water Supply, - 61
MILL (Dr. R. H.) New Lands, - - - 45
MILLAR (W. J.), Latitude & Longitude, - 36
MITCHELL (C. A.), Flesh Foods, - - 56
—— & HEPWORTH (T. C.), Inks, - - 65
MORGAN (J. J.), Works by, - - 52, 53
MUNRO & JAMIESON'S Elect. Pkt-bk., - 30
MUNRO (R. D.), Works by, - - - 23
NAYLOR (W.) Trades' Waste, - - 60
NICHOLSON (W.), Smoke Abatement, - 60
NORMANDY (F.), Sea Water Distillation, 17
NORTH (S.), Oil Fuel, - - - - - 54
OPPENHEIMER (C.), Works by, - - 58
OSMOND & STEAD, Micro. Anal. Metals, 52
PARK (J.), Works by, - - - - 41, 44
PEARCE (W. J.), Painting, - - - 64
PETTIGREW (W. F.), Loco. Eng., - - 20
PHILLIPS & BAUERMAN, Metallurgy, - 51
PHIPSON (Dr. T. L.), Earth's Atmosphere, 46
POYNTING (J. H.), Mean Density, - - 72
—— & THOMSON, Physics, - - - 73
PRAEGER (R. L.), Open Air Botany, - 71
PUPPE (J.), Rolling Mills, - - - - 23
RANKINE'S Works, - - - - - 28
RAWSON, GARDNER, & LAYCOCK, Dictionary of Dyestuffs, - - - - 66
REDGRAVE (G. R.), Cements, - - - 60
REDWOOD (Sir Boverton). Petroleum, - 54
—— & THOMSON, Handbook, Petroleum, 54
REED (Sir E. J.), Stability of Ships, - - 31
REID (Geo., M.D.), Sanitation, - - - 62
RICHMOND (H. D.), Works by, - - 57
RIEMER (J.), Shaft Sinking. - - - 43
ROBERTS-AUSTEN, Metallurgy, - - 48
ROBINSON (Prof.), Hydraulics, - - - 17
ROSE (T. L.), Gold. Metallurgy of, - - 48
ROTHWELL (C. F. S.), Textile Printing, 67
SCHWARTZ (Dr. von), Fire Risks, - - 61
SEATON (A. E.), Works by, - - - 18
SEXTON (Prof.) Works by, - - 51, 69
SHELTON-BEY, Mechanic's Guide, - - 26
SHOWELL (P. G.), Navigation Definitions, 37
SINDALL, Paper Technology, - - - 59
SMITH (C. A.), Suction Gas Plants, - - 22
SMITH (J. W.), Dustless Roads. - - 63
SMITH (Prof. R. H.), Works by - - 26
SMITH (W.), Shipmaster's Medical Help, 36
SOLOMON (H. G.), Electricity Meters, - 29
SOLON, Ceramic Literature, - - - 59
STEWART (R. W.), Elementary Physics, - 72
STRICKLAND (F.), Petrol Motors, - - 21
SUPLEE (H. H.), Mech. Pocket-Book, - 26
—— The Gas Turbine, - - - - - 22
SYKES (Dr. W. J.), Brewing, - - - 58
TRAILL (T. W.), Boilers, - - - - 19
TROTMAN (S. R.), Leather, - - - 65
TUNZELMANN (G.), Electrical Theory, - 30
TURNER (Thos.), Works by, - 50, 51, 53
WALTON (T.), Works by, - - - 32, 36
WANG (C. Y.). Antimony, - - - - 50
WEBER (Dr. C. O.), India Rubber - - 65
WELLS (S. H.), Engineering Drawing, - 24
WIGLEY (T. B.), Jeweller's Art. - - 53
WILLOUGHBY (Dr. E. F.), Milk, - - 57
WOOD (Francis), Sanitary Engineering, - 62
WORDINGHAM, Electrical Stations, - 29
WRIGHT (Dr. A.) Oils and Fats, - - 55
ZERR & RÜBENCAMP, Colour Manuf. - 64

FIFTH EDITION, Revised. In Large 8vo. Pp. i-xxiv + 511. With 255 Diagrams, Examples, and Tables, and a Chapter on Foundations. Cloth, 16s.

THE DESIGN OF STRUCTURES:

A Practical Treatise on the Building of Bridges, Roofs, &c.

BY S. ANGLIN, C.E.,

Master of Engineering, Royal University of Ireland, late Whitworth Scholar, &c.

"We can unhesitatingly recommend this work not only to the Student, as the BEST TEXT-BOOK on the subject, but also to the professional engineer as an EXCEEDINGLY VALUABLE book of reference."—*Mechanical World.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-xiv + 236. With 201 Illustrations. 6s. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO

THE DESIGN OF BEAMS,

GIRDERS, AND COLUMNS

IN MACHINES AND STRUCTURES.

With Examples in Graphic Statics.

BY WILLIAM H. ATHERTON, M.Sc., M.I.MECH.E.

"A very useful source of information. . . . A work which we commend very highly."—*Nature.*

FOURTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. Royal 8vo. Pp. i-xxx + 456. With 239 Illustrations in the Text, and 13 Lithographic Plates. Handsome Cloth. Price 30s.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON

BRIDGE-CONSTRUCTION:

Being a Text-Book on the Construction of Bridges in Iron and Steel.

FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS, DRAUGHTSMEN, AND ENGINEERS.

BY T. CLAXTON FIDLER, M. INST. C.E.,

Late Prof. of Engineering, University College, Dundee.

"The new edition of Mr. Fidler's work will again occupy the same CONSPICUOUS POSITION among professional text-books and treatises as has been accorded to its predecessors. SOUND, SIMPLE, AND FULL."—*The Engineer.*

In Medium 8vo. Pp. i-xv + 248. With 103 Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d. net.

CONSTRUCTIONAL STEELWORK:

Being Notes on the Practical Aspect and the Principles of Design, together with an Account of the Present Methods and Tools of Manufacture.

BY A. W. FARNSWORTH,

Associate Member of the Institute of Mechanical Engineers.

"A worthy volume, which will be found of much assistance. . . . A book of particular value."—*Practical Engineer.*

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth, Gilt. With 37 Folding Plates and nearly 500 Illustrations in the Text. 30s. net.

The Principles and Practice of
DOCK ENGINEERING.

BY BRYSSON CUNNINGHAM.

GENERAL CONTENTS.

Historical and Discursive.—Dock Design.—Constructive Appliances.—Materials.—Dock and Quay Walls.—Entrance Passages and Locks.—Jetties, Wharves, and Piers.—Dock Gates and Caissons.—Transit Sheds and Warehouses.—Dock Bridges.—Graving and Repairing Docks.—Working Equipment of Docks.—INDEX.

"We have never seen a more profusely-illustrated treatise. It is a most important standard work, and should be in the hands of all dock and harbour engineers."—*Steamship.*
"Will be of the greatest service to the expert as a book of reference."—*Engineer.*

In Large 8vo. Pp. i - xii + 283. With 18 Plates, 11 Tables, and 220 Illustrations in the Text. 16s. net.

A COMPANION VOLUME TO "DOCK ENGINEERING."

THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF
HARBOUR ENGINEERING.

BY BRYSSON CUNNINGHAM.

CONTENTS.—Introductory.—Harbour Design.—Surveying, Marine and Submarine.—Piling.—Stone, Natural and Artificial.—Breakwater Design.—Breakwater Construction.—Pierheads, Quays, and Landing Stages.—Entrance Channels.—Channel Demarcation.—INDEX.

"The best and most complete book we have seen on the subject."—*Steamship.*
"This is a standard work . . . sure to prove a valuable book of reference."—*Shipping World.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated.

HYDROGRAPHIC SURVEYING.

For the Use of Beginners, Amateurs, and Port and Harbour Masters.

BY COMMANDER S. MESSUM, R.N.,

Instructor in Nautical Surveying, R.N. College, Greenwich.

CONTENTS.—Sextant.—Protractor.—Station Pointer.—Theodolite.—Projections.—Symbols and Abbreviations.—Plotting and Triangulation of a Small Plan.—Mast-head Angle Survey.—Meridian Distances.—APPENDIX.—INDEX.

THIRD EDITION, *Thoroughly Revised and Enlarged. Pp.* i-xvi + 227. *With* 60 *Plates and* 71 *other Illustrations. Handsome Cloth.* 25*s. net.*

HYDRAULIC POWER
AND
HYDRAULIC MACHINERY.

By HENRY ROBINSON, M.INST.C.E., F.G.S.,

FELLOW OF KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON; PROF. EMERITUS OF CIVIL ENGINEERING, KING'S COLLEGE, ETC., ETC.

CONTENTS —Discharge through Orifices.—Flow of Water through Pipes.—Accumulators. —Presses and Lifts.—Hoists.—Rams.—Hydraulic Engines.—Pumping Engines.—Capstans. —Traversers. — Jacks. — Weighing Machines. — Riveters and Shop Tools. — Punching, Shearing, and Flanging Machines. — Cranes. — Coal Discharging Machines. — Drills and Cutters.—Pile Drivers, Excavators, &c.—Hydraulic Machinery applied to Bridges, Dock Gates, Wheels and Turbines.—Shields. — Various Systems and Power Installations — Meters, &c.—INDEX.

"The standard work on the application of water power."—*Cassier's Magazine.*

Second Edition, Greatly Enlarged. Pp. i-xiv + 336. *With Frontispiece,* 12 *Plates. and* 279 *other Illustrations.* 21*s. net.*

THE PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTION OF

PUMPING MACHINERY
(STEAM AND WATER PRESSURE).

With Practical Illustrations of ENGINES and PUMPS applied to MINING, TOWN WATER SUPPLY, DRAINAGE of Lands, &c., also Economy and Efficiency Trials of Pumping Machinery.

By HENRY DAVEY,

Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Member of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, F.G.S., &c.

CONTENTS —Early History of Pumping Engines—Steam Pumping Engines - Pumps and Pump Valves—General Principles of Non-Rotative Pumping Engines—The Cornish Engine, Simple and Compound—Types of Mining Engines—Pit Work—Shaft Sinking—Hydraulic Transmission of Power in Mines—Electric Transmission of Power—Valve Gears of Pumping Engines — Water Pressure Pumping Engines — Water Works Engines — Pumping Engine Economy and Trials of Pumping Machinery—Centrifugal and other Low-Lift Pumps—Hydraulic Rams Pumping Mains, &c.— INDEX.

"By the 'one English Engineer who probably knows more about Pumping Machinery than ANY OTHER.' . . . A VOLUME RECORDING THE RESULTS OF LONG EXPERIENCE AND STUDY."—*The Engineer.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 6*s. net.*

SEA WATER DISTILLATION.

By FRANK NORMANDY, of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

CONTENTS.—Distilling Machinery.—Sea Water.—Steam.—Multiple Distillation.—The Evaporator.—The Distilling Condenser.—Pumping Machinery.—Useful Memoranda:— The Filter, Prevention of Corrosion and Decay of Metals, Removal of Scale, Cleaning, Overhauling, &c.—INDEX.

"The analytical treatment of the problem is concise and comprehensive in its scope." —*Marine Engineer.*

SIXTEENTH EDITION, *Thoroughly Revised. Large 8vo, Cloth. pp.* i-xxiv+712. *With* 250 *Illustrations, reduced from Working Drawings, and* 8 *Plates.* 21*s. net.*

A MANUAL OF
MARINE ENGINEERING:
COMPRISING THE DESIGNING, CONSTRUCTION, AND WORKING OF MARINE MACHINERY.

By A. E. SEATON, M.I.C.E., M.I.Mech.E., M.I.N.A.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—PART I.—Principles of Marine Propulsion. PART II.—Principles of Steam Engineering. PART III.—Details of Marine Engines: Design and Calculations for Cylinders, Pistons, Valves, Expansion Valves, &c. PART IV.—Propellers. PART V.—Boilers. PART VI.—Miscellaneous.

"The Student, Draughtsman, and Engineer will find this work the MOST VALUABLE HANDBOOK of Reference on the Marine Engine now in existence."—*Marine Engineer.*

TENTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. Pocket-Size, Leather. 8s. 6d.

A POCKET-BOOK OF
MARINE ENGINEERING RULES AND TABLES,

FOR THE USE OF

Marine Engineers, Naval Architects, Designers, Draughtsmen, Superintendents and Others.

BY A. E. SEATON, M.I.C.E., M.I.Mech.E., M.I.N.A.,

AND

H. M. ROUNTHWAITE, M.I.Mech.E., M.I.N.A

"The best book of its kind, and the information is both up-to-date and reliable.'—*Engineer*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With Frontispiece, 6 Plates, 65 other Illustrations, and 60 Tables. 12s. 6d. net.

THE SCREW PROPELLER
And other Competing Instruments for Marine Propulsion.

BY A. E. SEATON, M.INST.C.E., M.I.MECH.E., M.I.N.A.

"Contains all that is useful to know about the screw propeller. . . . Thoroughly up-to-date."—*Steamship.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 4s. 6d. net.

THE THERMO-DYNAMIC PRINCIPLES OF ENGINE DESIGN.

BY LIONEL M. HOBBS,

Engineer-Lieutenant, R.N.; Instructor in Applied Mechanics and Marine Engine Design at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich.

"Serves its purpose admirably . . . should prove of invaluable service . . . well up-to-date."—*Shipping World.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. Cloth. Profusely Illustrated.

THE THEORY OF THE STEAM TURBINE.

A Treatise on the Principles of Construction of the Steam Turbine, with Historical Notes on its Development.

BY ALEXANDER JUDE.

CONTENTS.—Fundamental.—Historical Notes on Turbines.—The Velocity of Steam.—Types of Steam Turbines.—Practical Turbines.—The Efficiency of Turbines, Type I.—Trajectory of the Steam.—Efficiency of Turbines, Types II., III. and IV.—Turbine Vanes.—Disc and Vane Friction in Turbines.—Specific Heat of Superheated Steam.—Strength of Rotating Discs.—Governing Steam Turbines.—Steam Consumption of Turbines.—The Whirling of Shafts.—Speed of Turbines.—INDEX.

"One of the latest text-books . . . also one of the best . . . there is absolutely no padding."—*Sir William White* in the *Times* Engineering Supplement.

In Large Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 131 Illustrations. 6s. net.

LECTURES ON THE MARINE STEAM TURBINE.

BY PROF. J. HARVARD BILES, M.INST.N.A.,
Professor of Naval Architecture in the University of Glasgow.

"This is the best popular work on the marine steam turbine which has yet appeared."—*Steamship.*

SIXTH EDITION, Revised. Large Crown 8vo. Pp. i-xi + 392. With 5 Plates and 111 Illustrations in Text. 6s. net.

ENGINE-ROOM PRACTICE:

A Handbook for Engineers and Officers in the Royal Navy and Mercantile Marine, including the Management of the Main and Auxiliary Engines on Board Ship.

BY JOHN G. LIVERSIDGE, ENGR.-COMMR. R.N., A.M.I.C.E.

Contents.—General Description of Marine Machinery.—The Conditions of Service and Duties of Engineers of the Royal Navy.—Entry and Conditions of Service of Engineers of the Leading S.S. Companies.—Raising Steam.—Duties of a Steaming Watch on Engines and Boilers.—Shutting off Steam.—Harbour Duties and Watches.—Adjustments and Repairs of Engines.—Preservation and Repairs of "Tank" Boilers.—The Hull and its Fittings.—Cleaning and Painting Machinery.—Reciprocating Pumps, Feed Heaters, and Automatic Feed-Water Regulators.—Evaporators.—Steam Boats.—Electric Light Machinery.—Hydraulic Machinery.—Air-Compressing Pumps.—Refrigerating Machines.—Machinery of Destroyers.—The Management of Water-Tube Boilers.—Regulations for Entry of Assistant Engineers, R.N.—Questions given in Examinations for Promotion of Engineers, R.N.—Regulations respecting Board of Trade Examinations for Engineers, &c.

"This VERY USEFUL BOOK. . . . ILLUSTRATIONS are of GREAT IMPORTANCE in a work of this kind, and it is satisfactory to find that SPECIAL ATTENTION has been given in this respect."—*Engineers' Gazette.*

FOURTH EDITION, Revised. Pocket-Size, Leather. Pp. i-xiii + 583. 12s. 6d.

BOILERS, MARINE AND LAND:

THEIR CONSTRUCTION AND STRENGTH.

A HANDBOOK OF RULES, FORMULÆ, TABLES, &C., RELATIVE TO MATERIALS, SCANTLINGS, AND PRESSURES, SAFETY VALVES, SPRINGS, FITTINGS AND MOUNTINGS, &C.

FOR THE USE OF ENGINEERS, SURVEYORS, BOILER-MAKERS, AND STEAM USERS.

BY T. W. TRAILL, M. INST. C.E., F.E.R.N.,
Late Engineer Surveyor-in-Chief to the Board of Trade.

"Contains an ENORMOUS QUANTITY OF INFORMATION arranged in a very convenient form. . . A MOST USEFUL VOLUME . . . supplying information to be had nowhere else."—*The Engineer.*

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

THIRD EDITION, Revised. Pp. i-xv+356. With Frontispiece, 8 Plates and 218 Illustrations in the Text. 21s.

A MANUAL OF
LOCOMOTIVE ENGINEERING:

A Practical Text-Book for the Use of Engine Builders, Designers and Draughtsmen, Railway Engineers, and Students.

BY WILLIAM FRANK PETTIGREW, M.INST.C.E.

Contents.—Historical Introduction, 1763-1863.—Modern Locomotives: Simple.—Modern Locomotives: Compound. Primary Consideration in Locomotive Design.—Cylinders, Steam Chests, and Stuffing Boxes.—Pistons, Piston Rods, Crossheads, and Slide Bars.—Connecting and Coupling Rods.—Wheels and Axles, Axle Boxes, Hornblocks, and Bearing Springs.—Balancing.—Valve Gear.—Slide Valves and Valve Gear Details.—Framing, Bogies and Axle Trucks, Radial Axle Boxes.—Boilers.—Smokebox. Blast Pipe. Firebox Fittings.—Boiler Mountings.—Tenders. Railway Brakes.—Lubrication.—Consumption of Fuel, Evaporation and Engine Efficiency.—Repairs, Running, Inspection, and Renewals.—Three Appendices.—Index.

"The book is very truly a full treatise on the locomotive to date."—*Cassier's Magazine.*

"The work CONTAINS ALL THAT CAN BE LEARNT from a book upon such a subject. It will at once rank as THE STANDARD WORK UPON THIS IMPORTANT SUBJECT."—*Railway Magazine.*

In Large 8vo. Pp. i-xxi+189. With Frontispiece and 148 other Illustrations. 8s. 6d. net.

LOCOMOTIVE COMPOUNDING AND SUPERHEATING.

BY J. F. GAIRNS.

CONTENTS.—Introductory.—Compounding and Superheating for Locomotives.—A Classification of Compound Systems for Locomotives.—The History and Development of the Compound Locomotive.—Two-Cylinder Non-Automatic Systems.—Two-Cylinder Automatic Systems.—Other Two-Cylinder Systems.—Three-Cylinder Systems.—Four-Cylinder Tandem Systems.—Four-Cylinder Two-Crank Systems (other than Tandem).—Four-Cylinder Balanced Systems.—Four-Cylinder Divided and Balanced Systems.—Articulated Compound Engines.—Triple-Expansion Locomotives.—Compound Rack Locomotives.—Concluding Remarks Concerning Compound Locomotives.—The Use of Superheated Steam for Locomotives.—INDEX.

"A welcome addition to the library of the railway engineer."—*Engineering Times.*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xi+339. With 9 Plates. 16s.

LIGHT RAILWAYS

AT HOME AND ABROAD.

BY WILLIAM HENRY COLE, M.INST.C.E.,

Late Deputy-Manager, North-Western Railway, India.

"The whole subject is EXHAUSTIVELY and PRACTICALLY considered. The work can be cordially recommended as INDISPENSABLE to those whose duty it is to become acquainted with one of the prime necessities of the immediate future."—*Railway Official Gazette.*

In Crown 8vo, Handsome Cloth. Very Fully Illustrated.

MOTOR-CAR MECHANISM AND MANAGEMENT.

By W. POYNTER ADAMS, M.Inst.E.E.

PART I.—THE PETROL CAR. 5s. net.

Second Edition. Pp. i-xii + 204. With 36 Illustrations, including 6 Plates and Frontispiece.

"Should be carefully studied by those who have anything to do with motors."—*Automobile and Carriage Builders' Journal.*

PART II.—ELECTRICAL AND PETROL ELECTRICAL MOTOR CARS. 5s. net.

Pp. i-x + 202. With 50 Illustrations, including Frontispiece and 3 Plates, contains also 13 page Glossary.

"Cleverly written . . . will be found of considerable value.—*Practical Engineer*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Pp. i.ix + 376. With 12 Folding Tables and 329 Illustrations. 18s. net.

A MANUAL OF PETROL MOTORS AND MOTOR-CARS.

Comprising the Designing, Construction, and Working of Petrol Motors.

By F. STRICKLAND.

General Contents.—Part I.: Engines.—Historical.—Power Required.—General Arrangement of Engines.—Ignition.—Carburettors.—Cylinders, Pistons, Valves, &c.—Crank Shafts, Crank Chambers, Cams, Runners, Guides, &c.—Pumps.—Flywheels.—Pipe Arrangements.—Silencers.—Engine Control, Balancing.—Motor Cycle Engines.—Marine Motors.—Two-Cycle Motors.—Paraffin Carburettors.—Gas Producers Part II.: Cars.—General Arrangements.—Clutches.—Transmission.—Differential Gears.—Universal Joints.—Axles.—Springs.—Radius Rods.—Brakes.—Wheels.—Frames.—Steering Gear.—Radiator.—Steps, Mudguards, Bonnets, &c.—Lubrication.—Ball Bearings.—Bodies.—Factors of Safety.—Calculations of Stresses.—Special Change Speed Gears.—Special Cars.—Commercial Vehicles.—Racing Cars.—Index.

"Thoroughly practical and scientific. . . . We have pleasure in recommending it to all."—*Mechanical Engineer.*

In Medium 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xv + 272. With 306 Illustrations. 15s. net.

OIL MOTORS.

Their Development, Construction, and Management.

By G. LIECKFELD. (Authorised English Edition).

Contents.—Liquid Fuels for Power Production.—Development of the Petrol and Paraffin Motors.—Working of the Later Paraffin and Petrol Engines.—Ignition Devices.—Examples of Stationary Petrol, Alcohol, Paraffin, and Crude Oil Engines.—Automobiles.—Ship Boat, and Air-ship Engines.—Vehicles, &c., Driven by Internal Combustion Engines.—Erection and Attendance of Engines Driven with Liquid Fuel.—Correcting Irregularities in Running.

"One of the most comprehensive publications we have perused, and one that can be thoroughly recommended."—*Petroleum Review.*

In Demy 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xi + 176. With 130 Illustrations. 6s. net.

CARBURETTORS, VAPORISERS, & VALVES,

used in Internal Combustion Engines.

By EDWARD BUTLER, M.I.Mech.E.

"Mr. Butler writes with an intimate practical knowledge of his subject, and the book is one we have every pleasure in recommending."—*Mechanical Engineer.*

FOURTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. With additional Illustrations. Large 8vo, Handsome Cloth. 25s. net.

A TEXT-BOOK ON
GAS, OIL, AND AIR ENGINES.

By BRYAN DONKIN, M.INST.C.E., M.INST.MECH.E.

Revised throughout by T. GRAVES SMITH. With important New Chapter by Prof. BURSTALL.

In Quarto, Handsome Cloth. With Numerous Plates. 25s.

THE HEAT EFFICIENCY OF STEAM BOILERS
(LAND, MARINE, AND LOCOMOTIVE).

With Tests and Experiments on Different Types, Heating Value of Fuels. Analyses of Gases, Evaporation, and Suggestions for Testing Boilers.

By BRYAN DONKIN, M.INST.C.E.

"Probably the MOST EXHAUSTIVE *resumé* that has ever been collected. A PRACTICAL BOOK by a thoroughly practical man."—*Iron and Coal Trades Review.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-vii + 198. With 55 Illustrations. 5s. net.

SUCTION GAS PLANTS.

By PROF. C. A. SMITH, of the East London Technical College.

CONTENTS.—Introduction.—Details of Construction.—Fuel and Testing.—Application and Uses of Suction Plants.—Working the Plant.—Typical Plants.—Plants for Special Purposes.—Total H.P.—Effluent.—Cost of Gas Production.—The Gas Engine.—Bibliography.—Calorific Value of Coal Gas.—Of Solid Fuels.—Gas Analysis.—Destruction of Tar in the Producer.—Detection of CO in Exhaust —Capital Cost.—INDEX.

"This book is one we can cordially recommend as affording a complete knowledge of the theoretical aspect of Suction Plants."—*Gas World.*

In Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-iv + 262. With 93 Illustrations. 12s. 6d. net.

THE GAS TURBINE.

Progress in the Design and Construction of Turbines Operated by Gases of Combustion.

By HENRY HARRISON SUPLEE, B.Sc.

SECOND EDITION. Large 8vo, Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xxxi × 538. With 157 Illustrations, 97 Tables, &c. 21s. net.

Lubrication & Lubricants:

A Treatise on the Theory and Practice of Lubrication, and on the Nature, Properties, and Testing of Lubricants.

BY

LEONARD ARCHBUTT, F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Chemist to the Mid. Ry. Co.

AND

R. M. DEELEY, M.I.Mech.E., F.G.S.
Chief Loco. Super., Mid. Ry. Co.

CONTENTS.—I. Friction of Solids.—II. Liquid Friction or Viscosity, and Plastic Friction.—III. Superficial Tension.—IV. The Theory of Lubrication.—V. Lubricants, their Sources, Preparation, and Properties.—VI. Physical Properties and Methods of Examination of Lubricants.—VII. Chemical Properties and Methods of Examination of Lubricants.—VIII. The Systematic Testing of Lubricants by Physical and Chemical Methods.—IX. The Mechanical Testing of Lubricants.—X. The Design and Lubrication of Bearings.—XI. The Lubrication of Machinery.—INDEX.

"A most valuable and comprehensive treatise on a subject of the greatest importance to engineers."—*Engineering.*

In Crown 8vo, Cloth. Illustrated with Diagrams. 3s. net.

THE FORCE OF THE WIND.

By HERBERT CHATLEY, B.Sc. Eng. (Lond.),

Professor of Civil Engineering, Tong Shan Engineering College, N. China.

CONTENTS. — Practical Importance of Wind Pressure. — Impulsive Force of the Wind.—Variations in Velocity.—Stream Line Theory.—Stress in Structures due to Wind.—Windmills.—Train and Motor Resistance.—Effect of Wind on Water.—Scouring Effect of Wind.—INDEX.

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 22 Diagrams. 3s. 6d. net.

STRESSES IN MASONRY.

By HERBERT CHATLEY, B.Sc. Eng. (Lond.).

CONTENTS.—Strength of Stone.—Walls.—Columns and Piers.—Brackets and Cantilevers.—Simple Arches.—Vaults and Skew Arches.—Domes.—Retaining Walls and Domes.—Artificial Stone.—Re-inforced Concrete.—INDEX.

In Handsome Cloth. With 11 *Folding Tables.*

EXPERIMENTAL INVESTIGATIONS ON THE POWER REQUIRED TO DRIVE

ROLLING MILLS.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN OF J. PUPPÉ.

FOURTH EDITION. *Pp.* i-xii + 157. *With* 50 *Illustrations. Cloth,* 4s. 6d.

STEAM-BOILERS:

THEIR DEFECTS, MANAGEMENT, AND CONSTRUCTION

By R. D. MUNRO,

Chief Engineer of the Scottish Boiler Insurance and Engine Inspection Company.

"A valuable companion for workmen and engineers engaged about Steam Boilers, ought to be carefully studied, and ALWAYS AT HAND."—*Coll. Guardian.*

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

KITCHEN BOILER EXPLOSIONS: Why

they Occur, and How to Prevent their Occurrence. A Practical Handbook based on Actual Experiment. With Diagram and Coloured Plate. 3s.

In Crown 8vo, Cloth. Pp. i-xii + 180. *With* 143 *Illustrations.* 5*s. net.*

EMERY GRINDING MACHINERY.

A Text-Book of Workshop Practice in General Tool Grinding, and the Design, Construction, and Application of the Machines Employed.

By R. B. HODGSON, A.M.INST.MECH.E.

"Eminently practical . . . cannot fail to attract the notice of the users of this class of machinery, and to meet with careful perusal."—*Chem. Trade Journal.*

In Crown Quarto. Cloth. Fully Illustrated.

AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK ON

MECHANICAL DRAWING.

By JOHN E. JAGGER, M.Sc.(Vic)., Whit. Sch.

A work produced from Notes and Observations made during many years of Practice and Teaching, and presenting the subject of Machine Construction and Drawing in a rational manner.

Fifth Edition, Thoroughly Revised and Greatly Enlarged. Pp. i-x+258. With 10 Plates and 246 other Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d.

VALVES AND VALVE-GEARING:

A Practical Text-book for the use of Engineers, Draughtsmen, and Students.

By CHARLES HURST, Practical Draughtsman.

Part I.—Steam Engine Valves.
Part II.—Gas Engine Valves and Gears.
Part III.—Air Compressor Valves and Gearing.
Part IV.—Pump Valves.

"Mr. Hurst's valves and valve-gearing will prove a very valuable aid, and tend to the production of Engines of scientific design and economical working. . . . Will be largely sought after by Students and Designers."—*Marine Engineer.*

"As a practical treatise on the subject, the book stands without a rival."—*Mechanical World.*

Hints on Steam Engine Design and Construction. By Charles Hurst, "Author of Valves and Valve Gearing." Second Edition, Revised. In Paper Boards, 8vo., Cloth Back. Pp. i-vi+62. With 32 Illustrations. Price 1s. 6d. net.

Contents.—I. Steam Pipes.—II. Valves.—III. Cylinders.—IV. Air Pumps and Condensers.—V. Motion Work.—VI. Crank Shafts and Pedestals.—VII. Valve Gear.—VIII. Lubrication.—IX. Miscellaneous Details.—Index.

"A handy volume which every practical young engineer should possess."—*The Model Engineer.*

Fifth Edition. In Two Parts, Published Separately.

A TEXT-BOOK OF

Engineering Drawing and Design.

By SIDNEY H. WELLS, Wh.Sc., A.M.I.C.E., A.M.I.Mech.E.

Vol. I.—Practical Geometry, Plane, and Solid.
Pp. i-xi+149. With 101 Illustrations, and an Appendix of 43 pages with 70 Illustrations. 4s. 6d.

Vol. II.—Machine and Engine Drawing and Design.
Pp. i-xi+321. With over 200 Illustrations. 4s. 6d.

"A capital text-book, arranged on an excellent system, calculated to give an intelligent grasp of the subject, and not the mere faculty of mechanical copying. . . . Mr. Wells shows how to make complete working-drawings, discussing fully each step in the design."—*Electrical Review*

SECOND EDITION, Enlarged. In Crown 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-xiii+463. With 212 Illustrations. 6s. net.

PRACTICAL CALCULATIONS FOR ENGINEERS.

BY CHARLES E. LARARD,

A.M.Inst.C.E., M.I.Mech.E., Wh.Exh.,
Head of the Mechanical Engineering Department at the Northampton Institute, London, E.C.

AND H. A. GOLDING, A.M.I.Mech.E.

"Exactly what it should be in order to make it useful to students and practitioners of engineering."—*Manchester Guardian.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xii+282. With 107 Illustrations. 5s. net.

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING FOR BEGINNERS.

BY R. S. M'LAREN.

CONTENTS.—Materials.—Bolts and Nuts, Studs, Set Screws.—Boilers.—Steam Raising Accessories.—Steam Pipes and Valves.—The Steam Engine.—Power Transmission.—Condensing Plant.—The Steam Turbine.—Electricity.—Hydraulic Machinery.—Gas and Oil Engines.—Strength of Beams, and Useful Information.—INDEX.

"The best of its kind we have seen, and should be in the hands of every apprentice."—*Steamship.*

SIXTH EDITION. Folio, strongly half-bound, 21s.

TRAVERSE TABLES:

Computed to Four Places of Decimals for every Minute of Angle up to 100 of Distance.

For the Use of Surveyors and Engineers.

BY RICHARD LLOYD GURDEN,

Authorised Surveyor for the Governments of New South Wales and Victoria.

*** *Published with the Concurrence of the Surveyors-General for New South Wales and Victoria.*

"Those who have experience in exact SURVEY-WORK will best know how to appreciate the enormous amount of labour represented by this valuable book. Every Surveyor in active practice has felt the want of such assistance FEW KNOWING OF THEIR (the Tables) PUBLICATION WILL REMAIN WITHOUT THEM."—*Engineer.*

Strongly Bound in Super Royal 8vo. Cloth Boards. 7s. 6d. net.

BONUS TABLES:

For Calculating Wages on the Bonus or Premium Systems.

For Engineering, Technical and Allied Trades.

BY HENRY A. GOLDING, A.M.I.MECH.E.,

"Cannot fail to prove practically serviceable to those for whom they have been designed."—*Scotsman.*

HORSE-POWER COMPUTERS.

BY H. A. GOLDING, A.M.I.MECH.E., A.M.I.A.E.

For Steam, Gas, and Oil Engines. Complete with Explanatory Pamphlet. In Box. 5s. net.

For Petrol Motors. Complete with Explanatory Pamphlet. In Envelope. 6d. net.

Detailed Prospectus on Application.

SECOND EDITION, *Revised.* *In Crown 8vo, extra, with Diagrams and Folding-Plate.* 7s. 6d. net.

THE CALCULUS FOR ENGINEERS AND PHYSICISTS,

INTEGRATION AND DIFFERENTIATION,

With Applications to Technical Problems;

AND

CLASSIFIED REFERENCE LIST OF INTEGRALS.

BY PROF. ROBERT H. SMITH, A.M.INST.C.E., M.I.MECH.E., &c.

"Interesting diagrams, with practical illustrations of actual occurrence, are to be found here in abundance. THE VERY COMPLETE CLASSIFIED REFERENCE TABLE will prove very useful in saving the time of those who want an integral in a hurry."—*The Engineer.*

In 4to, Boards. *7s. 6d.*

MEASUREMENT CONVERSIONS

(English and French):

43 GRAPHIC TABLES OR DIAGRAMS, ON 28 PLATES.

Showing at a glance the MUTUAL CONVERSION of MEASUREMENTS in DIFFERENT UNITS

Of Lengths, Areas, Volumes, Weights, Stresses, Densities, Quantities of Work, Horse Powers, Temperatures, &c.

For the use of Engineers, Surveyors, Architects, and Contractors.

BY PROF. ROBERT H. SMITH, A.M.INST.C.E., M.I.MECH.E., &c.

THIRD EDITION. Pocket Size, Leather Limp, with Gilt Edges and Rounded Corners, printed on Special Thin Paper, with Illustrations, pp. i-xii + 834. Price 18s. net.

THE MECHANICAL ENGINEER'S REFERENCE BOOK.

BY HENRY HARRISON SUPLEE, B.Sc., M.E.

"We feel sure it will be of great service to mechanical engineers."—*Engineering.*

With Diagrams. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 4s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MECHANICS:

An Introduction to the Study of Force and Motion.

BY WALTER R. BROWNE, M.A., M.INST.C.E.

"Clear in style and practical in method, 'THE STUDENT'S MECHANICS' is cordially to be recommended from all points of view."—*Athenæum.*

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

FOUNDATIONS OF MECHANICS.

Papers reprinted from the *Engineer.* In Crown 8vo, 1s.

SECOND EDITION. Crown 8vo. Illustrated. 7s. 6d.

THE MECHANIC'S GUIDE.

A Handbook for Engineers and Artisans. With Copious Tables and Valuable Recipes for Practical Use.

BY W. VINCENT SHELTON-BEY,

Foreman to the Imperial Ottoman Gun Factories, Constantinople.

WORKS BY

ANDREW JAMIESON, M.Inst.C.E., M.I.E.E., F.R.S.E.,

Formerly Professor of Electrical Engineering, The Glas. and W. of Scot. Tech. Coll.

PROFESSOR JAMIESON'S ADVANCED TEXT-BOOKS.

In Large Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated.

STEAM AND STEAM-ENGINES, INCLUDING TURBINES AND BOILERS. For the Use of Engineers and for Students preparing for Examinations. With 800 pp., over 400 Illustrations, 11 Plates, many B. of E., C. and G., Questions and Answers, and all Inst. C.E. Exams. on *Theory of Heat Engines.* Sixteenth Edition, Revised. 10s. 6d.

"The Best Book yet published for the use of Students."—*Engineer.*

APPLIED MECHANICS & MECHANICAL ENGINEERING. Seventh Edition. In Five Volumes. *Including All the Inst. C.E. Exams.* in Section A, (1) Applied Mechanics; (2) Strength and Elasticity of Materials; (3a) Theory of Structures; Section B (Group ii.) Hydraulics; Theory of Machines. Also B. of E.; C. and G. Questions

Vol. I.—**Applied Mechanics.** Large Cr. 8vo. Pp. i-xviii + 382. 6s.
,, II.—**Strength of Materials.** Large Cr. 8vo. Pp. i-xviii + 264. 5s.
,, III.—**Theory of Structures.** Large Cr. 8vo. Pp. i-xviii + 232. 5s.
,, IV.—**Hydraulics.** Large Cr. 8vo. Pp. i-xvi + 274. 5s.
,, V.—**Theory of Machines.** Large Cr. 8vo. Shortly.

*** *In Five volumes, each complete in itself, and sold separately.*

PROFESSOR JAMIESON'S INTRODUCTORY MANUALS

Crown 8vo. With Illustrations and Examination Papers.

STEAM AND THE STEAM-ENGINE (Elementary Manual of). For First-Year Students, forming an Introduction to the Author's larger Work. Twelfth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 3/6

"Should be in the hands of every engineering apprentice."—*Practical Engineer.*

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY (Practical Elementary Manual of). For First-Year Students. With Stud Inst. C.E. and B. of E. Exam. Questions. Eighth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 3/6.

"A thoroughly trustworthy Text-book. Practical and clear."—*Nature.*

APPLIED MECHANICS (Elementary Manual of). For First-Year Students. With B. of E., C. and G.; and Stud. Inst. C.E. Questions. Ninth Edition, Revised and Greatly Enlarged. 3/6.

"The work has very high qualities, which may be condensed into the one word 'clear.'"—*Science and Art.*

A POCKET-BOOK of ELECTRICAL RULES and TABLES For the Use of Electricians and Engineers. By John Munro, C.E., and Prof. Jamieson. Pocket Size. Leather, 8s. 6d. Nineteenth Edition.

[See p. 30.

WORKS BY W. J. MACQUORN RANKINE, LL.D., F.R.S.

Thoroughly Revised by W. J. MILLAR, C.E.

A MANUAL OF APPLIED MECHANICS: Comprising the Principles of Statics and Cinematics, and Theory of Structures, Mechanism, and Machines. With Numerous Diagrams. Crown 8vo, Cloth. EIGHTEENTH EDITION. 12s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF CIVIL ENGINEERING: Comprising Engineering Surveys, Earthwork, Foundations, Masonry, Carpentry, Metal Work, Roads, Railways, Canals, Rivers, Waterworks, Harbours, &c. With Numerous Tables and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth. TWENTY-THIRD EDITION. 16s.

A MANUAL OF MACHINERY AND MILLWORK: Comprising the Geometry, Motions, Work, Strength, Construction, and Objects of Machines, &c. With nearly 300 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth. SEVENTH EDITION. 12s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF THE STEAM-ENGINE AND OTHER PRIME MOVERS. With a Section on GAS, OIL, and AIR ENGINES, by BRYAN DONKIN, M.Inst.C.E. With Folding Plates and Numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth. SEVENTEENTH EDITION. 12s. 6d.

USEFUL RULES AND TABLES: For Architects, Builders, Engineers, Founders, Mechanics, Shipbuilders, Surveyors, &c. With APPENDIX for the use of ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS. By Professor JAMIESON, M.Inst.C.E., M.I.E.E. EIGHTH EDITION. 10s. 6d.

A MECHANICAL TEXT-BOOK: A Practical and Simple Introduction to the Study of Mechanics. By Professor RANKINE and E. F. BAMBER, C.E. With Numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, Cloth. FIFTH EDITION. 9s.

*** *The* "MECHANICAL TEXT-BOOK" *was designed by* Professor RANKINE *as an* INTRODUCTION *to the above Series of Manuals.*

MISCELLANEOUS SCIENTIFIC PAPERS. Part I. Temperature, Elasticity, and Expansion of Vapours, Liquids, and Solids. Part II. Energy and its Transformations. Part III. Wave-Forms, Propulsion of Vessels, &c. With Memoir by Professor TAIT, M.A. With fine Portrait on Steel, Plates, and Diagrams. Royal 8vo. Cloth. 31s. 6d.

"No more enduring Memorial of Professor Rankine could be devised than the publication of these papers in an accessible form. . . . The Collection is most valuable on account of the nature of his discoveries, and the beauty and completeness of his analysis." —*Architect.*

ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING.

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Large 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-xvi+496.
With 145 Illustrations, including 7 Plates. 24s. net.

CENTRAL ELECTRICAL STATIONS:

Their Design, Organisation, and Management.

BY CHAS. H. WORDINGHAM, A.K.C., M.INST.C.E., M.INST.MECH.E.,
Late Memb. of Council Inst. E. E., and Electrical Engineer to the City of Manchester:
Electrical Engineer-in-Chief to the Admiralty.

"One of the MOST VALUABLE CONTRIBUTIONS to Central Station literature we have had for some time."—*Electricity.*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xv+231. With 2 Plates and 204 other Illustrations. 12s. 6d. net.

ELECTRICITY CONTROL.

A Treatise on Electric Switchgear and Systems of Electric Transmission.

BY LEONARD ANDREWS,
Associate Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Member of the Institution of Electrical Engineers, &c

General Principles of Switchgear Design.—Constructional Details—Circuit Breakers or Arc Interrupting Devices.—Automatically Operated Circuit-Breakers.—Alternating Reverse Current Devices.—Arrangement of 'Bus Bars, and Apparatus for Parallel Running.—General Arrangement of Controlling Apparatus for High Tension Systems.—General Arrangement of Controlling Apparatus for Low Tension Systems.—Examples of Complete Installations.—Long Distance Transmission Schemes.

"Not often does the specialist have presented to him so satisfactory a book as this. . . . We recommend it without hesitation to Central Station Engineers, and, in fact, to anyone interested in the subject."—*Power.*

Large 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-x+333 and 307 Illustrations. 16s. net.

ELECTRICITY METERS.

BY HENRY G. SOLOMON, A.M.Inst.E.E.

"An earnest and successful attempt to deal comprehensively with modern methods of measuring current or power in electrical installations."—*Engineering.*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated.

TRANSFORMERS.

BY HERMANN BOHLE, M.I.E.E.,
Prof. of Electrotechnics, S.A. College, Cape Town,
AND PROFESSOR DAVID ROBERTSON, B.Sc., A.I.E.E., OF BRISTOL.

CONTENTS.—General Principles.—Magnetising and No-Load Currents.—Losses in Transformers.—Iron Losses.—Copper Losses.—Temperature Rise.—Magnetic Leakage.—Leakage Inductance.—Vector Diagrams for Transformers.—Systematic Testing of Transformers.—Insulating Materials.—Examples of Construction.—Design of Transformers.—Applications of Transformers.—Regulating and Phase-Changing Transformers.—INDEX.

In Large 8vo. Pp. i-x+116. With 79 Illustrations. 8s. 6d. net.

WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY.

BY GUSTAVE EICHHORN, PH.D.

"Well written . . . and combines with a good deal of description a careful investigation of the fundamental theoretical phenomena."—*Nature.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-xvi + 268. With 222 Illustrations. 5s. net.

TELEGRAPHIC SYSTEMS,
AND OTHER NOTES.

A Handbook of the Principles on which Telegraphic Practice is Based.

By ARTHUR CROTCH, of the Engineer-in-Chief's Department, G.P.O.

CONTENTS.—Batteries, Primary and Secondary.—Universal Battery Working.—Duplex Telegraphy.—Duplex and Quadruplex Telegraphy.—Automatic Telegraphy.—Multiplex Telegraphy.—The Hughes Type Printing Instrument.—The Baudot System.—The Murray Type Printing Telegraph.—Test and Battery Boxes.—Circuit Concentration, &c.—Repeaters.—Submarine Telegraphy.—Wireless Telegraphy.—INDEX.—LIST OF DIAGRAMS OF CONNECTIONS.

"This book is a particularly good one . . . we can thoroughly recommend it . . . a handy book of ready reference."—*Electrical Review.*

"The treatise will be of much help to the telegraph engineer, and to the student in his preparatory training and it can be thoroughly recommended."—*Electrician.*

NINETEENTH EDITION. Leather, Pocket Size, with 810 pages. 8s. 6d.

A POCKET-BOOK OF
ELECTRICAL RULES & TABLES

FOR THE USE OF ELECTRICIANS AND ENGINEERS.

By JOHN MUNRO, C.E., & PROF. JAMIESON, M.INST.C.E., F.R.S.E.

"WONDERFULLY PERFECT. . . . Worthy of the highest commendation we can give it."—*Electrician.*

GRIFFIN'S ELECTRICAL PRICE-BOOK: For Electrical, Civil, Marine, and Borough Engineers, Local Authorities, Architects, Railway Contractors, &c. Edited by H. J. DOWSING. SECOND EDITION. 8s. 6d.

ELECTRIC SMELTING AND REFINING. [See p. 52.
ELECTRO-METALLURGY, A Treatise on. [See p. 52.
ELECTRICAL PRACTICE IN COLLIERIES. [See p. 42.
ELECTRICAL SIGNALLING IN MINES. [See p. 43.

In Large Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth.

ELECTRICAL THEORY
AND THE
PROBLEM OF THE UNIVERSE.

By G. W. DE TUNZELMANN, B.Sc., LONDON,

Member of the Institute of Electrical Engineers; formerly Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy, H.M.S. "Britannia," Dartmouth.

CONTENTS.—Fundamental Electrical Phenomena.—Units and Measurement.—Meaning and Possibility of a Mechanical Theory of Electricity.—The Ether.—The Ether as a Framework of Reference for Motion.—The Relations between Ether and Moving Matter.—Electric Conduction in Gases.—The Faraday-Maxwell Theory.—The Electron Theory.—Magnetism and the Dissipation of Energy.—Contract Electrification and Electrolysis.—Metallic Conduction.—Optical Phenomena.—The Mechanism of Radiation.—General Phenomena of Radio Activity.—Transmutations of Radio-Active Substances.—Ages of the Sun and Earth.—The Solar Carona, The Aurora, and Comets' Tails.—Radio-Activity in Stars and Nebulæ.—Arrangement and Number of Atoms in a Molecule.—Changes in the Aspect of Fundamental Mechanical Principals.—Gravitation and Cohesion.—The Place of Mind in the Universe.—Mathematical and other Appendices.—INDEX.

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Profusely Illustrated. IN TWO VOLUMES, Each Complete in itself, and SOLD SEPARATELY.

THE DESIGN

AND

CONSTRUCTION OF SHIPS.

BY JOHN HARVARD BILES, M.INST.N.A.,
Professor of Naval Architecture in Glasgow University.

Volume I.—CALCULATIONS AND STRENGTH. With 36 Folding Plates, and 245 other Illustrations. Pp. i-viii+423. Complete in itself, with Index. 25s. net.

CONTENTS.—PART I.—Areas, Volumes, and Centres of Gravity. PART II.—Ship Calculations. PART III.—Strength of Ships.

"No teacher of naval architecture nor scientifically-equipped student of the same subject can afford to be without it . . . A work with up-to-date information whcih will doubtless remain the standard for many years."—*Times' Engineering Supplement.*

Volume II., dealing with Stability, Waves, Oscillations, Resistance and Propulsion, Design and Construction, is in active preparation, and will be ready very shortly.

BY PROFESSOR BILES.

LECTURES ON THE MARINE STEAM TURBINE.

With 131 Illustrations. Price 6s. net.

See page 19.

Royal 8vo, Handsome Cloth. With numerous Illustrations and Tables. 25s.

THE STABILITY OF SHIPS.

BY SIR EDWARD J. REED, K.C.B., F.R.S., M.P.,

KNIGHT OF THE IMPERIAL ORDERS OF ST. STANILAUS OF RUSSIA; FRANCIS JOSEPH OF AUSTRIA; MEDJIDIE OF TURKEY; AND RISING SUN OF JAPAN; VICE-PRESIDENT OF THE INSTITUTION OF NAVAL ARCHITECTS.

"Sir EDWARD REED'S 'STABILITY OF SHIPS' is INVALUABLE. The NAVAL ARCHITECT will find brought together and ready to his hand, a mass of information which he would otherwise have to seek in an almost endless variety of publications, and some of which he would possibly not be able to obtain at all elsewhere."—*Steamship.*

AERONAUTICAL ENGINEERING.

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Large 8vo. Cloth. With many Illustrations. 10s. 6d. net.

THE PROBLEM OF FLIGHT.

A TEXT-BOOK OF AERIAL ENGINEERING.

BY HERBERT CHATLEY, B.SC.(ENG.), LONDON,
Professor of Civil Engineering, Tong Shan Engineering College, N. China.

CONTENTS.—The Problem of Flight.—The Helix.—The Aëroplane.—The Aviplane.—Dirigible Balloons.—Form and Fittings of the Airship.—APPENDICES (*The Possibility of Flight, Weight, A Flexible Wing, Theory of Balance, Bibliography*).—INDEX.

"An epitome of the knowledge available on the subject."—*Scotsman.*

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

WORKS BY THOMAS WALTON, NAVAL ARCHITECT.

FOURTH EDITION. Pp. i-xvi + 332. With 18 Plates and 237 other Illustrations, including 59 Folding Diagrams. 18s. net.

STEEL SHIPS:

THEIR CONSTRUCTION AND MAINTENANCE.

A Manual for Shipbuilders, Ship Superintendents, Students, and Marine Engineers.

BY THOMAS WALTON, NAVAL ARCHITECT,
AUTHOR OF "KNOW YOUR OWN SHIP."

CONTENTS.—I. Manufacture of Cast Iron, Wrought Iron, and Steel.—Composition of Iron and Steel, Quality, Strength, Tests, &c. II. Classification of Steel Ships. III. Considerations in making choice of Type of Vessel.—Framing of Ships. IV. Strains experienced by Ships.—Methods of Computing and Comparing Strengths of Ships. V. Construction of Ships.—Alternative Modes of Construction.—Types of Vessels.—Turret, Self Trimming, and Trunk Steamers, &c.—Rivets and Rivetting, Workmanship. VI. Pumping Arrangements. VII. Maintenance.—Prevention of Deterioration in the Hulls of Ships.—Cement, Paint, &c.—INDEX.

"So thorough and well written is every chapter in the book that it is difficult to select any of them as being worthy of exceptional praise. Altogether, the work is excellent, and will prove of great value to those for whom it is intended."—*The Engineer.*

In Cloth. Pp. i.-xii. + 224. With 9 Plates and 163 other Illustrations, including 40 Folding Diagrams. 7s. 6d. net.

PRESENT-DAY SHIPBUILDING.

For Shipyard Students, Ships' Officers, and Engineers.

BY THOS. WALTON.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Classification.—Materials used in Shipbuilding.—Alternative Modes of Construction.—Details of Construction.—Framing, Plating, Rivetting, Stem Frames, Twin-Screw Arrangements, Water Ballast Arrangements, Loading and Discharging Gear, &c.—Types of Vessels, including Atlantic Liners, Cargo Steamers, Oil carrying Steamers, Turret and other Self Trimming Steamers, &c.—INDEX.

"Simple language . . . clear and easily followed illustrations."—*Times Engineering Supplement.*

"We heartily recommend it to all who have to do with ships."—*Steamship.*

ELEVENTH EDITION. In Crown 8vo. Cloth. Pp. i-xvi + 363. With 142 Illustrations, including 2 Folding Diagrams. 7s. 6d.

The Chapters on Tonnage and Freeboard have been brought thoroughly up to date, and embody the latest (1906) Board of Trade Regulations on these subjects.

KNOW YOUR OWN SHIP.

BY THOMAS WALTON, NAVAL ARCHITECT.

Specially arranged to suit the requirements of Ships' Officers, Shipowners, Superintendents, Draughtsmen, Engineers, and Others,

CONTENTS. — Displacement and Deadweight. — Moments. — Buoyancy. — Strain. — Structure. — Stability. — Rolling. — Ballasting. — Loading.—Shifting Cargoes.—Effect of Admission of Water into Ship.—Trim Tonnage.—Freeboard (Load-line).—Calculations.—Set of Calculations from Actual Drawings.—INDEX.

"The work is of the highest value, and all who go down to the sea in ships should make themselves acquainted with it."—*Shipping World* (on the new edition).

GRIFFIN'S NAUTICAL SERIES.

Introductory Volume. Pp. i-xix + 248. Price 3s. 6d.

THE

British Mercantile Marine.

BY EDWARD BLACKMORE,

MASTER MARINER; ASSOCIATE OF THE INSTITUTION OF NAVAL ARCHITECTS; MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF ENGINEERS AND SHIPBUILDERS IN SCOTLAND; EDITOR OF GRIFFIN'S "NAUTICAL SERIES."

GENERAL CONTENTS.—HISTORICAL: From Early Times to 1486—Progress under Henry VIII.—To Death of Mary—During Elizabeth's Reign—Up to the Reign of William III.—The 18th and 19th Centuries—Institution of Examinations—Rise and Progress of Steam Propulsion—Development of Free Trade—Shipping Legislation, 1862 to 1875—"Locksley Hall" Case—Shipmasters' Societies—Loading of Ships—Shipping Legislation, 1884 to 1894—Statistics of Shipping. THE PERSONNEL: Shipowners—Officers—Mariners—Duties and Present Position. EDUCATION: A Seaman's Education: what it should be—Present Means of Education—Hints. DISCIPLINE AND DUTY—Postscript—The Serious Decrease in the Number of British Seamen, a Matter demanding the Attention of the Nation.

"INTERESTING and INSTRUCTIVE . . . may be read WITH PROFIT and ENJOYMENT."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"EVERY BRANCH of the subject is dealt with in a way which shows that the writer 'knows the ropes' familiarly."—*Scotsman.*

"This ADMIRABLE book . . . TEEMS with useful information—Should be in the hands of every Sailor."—*Western Morning News.*

FIFTH EDITION, *Thoroughly Revised. Pp. i-xvi + 250. With Frontispiece, 24 Plates (3 Coloured), and 63 Illustrations in the Text and new Chapter on Clouds. Price 6s.*

A MANUAL OF

ELEMENTARY SEAMANSHIP.

BY

D. WILSON-BARKER, MASTER MARINER; F.R.S.E., F.R.G.S., &c., &c.
YOUNGER BROTHER OF THE TRINITY HOUSE.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—The Building of a Ship; Parts of Hull, Masts, &c.—Ropes, Knots, Splicing, &c.—Gear, Lead and Log, &c.—Rigging, Anchors—Sailmaking—The Sails, &c.—Handling of Boats under Sail—Signals and Signalling—Rule of the Road—Keeping and Relieving Watch—Points of Etiquette—Glossary of Sea Terms and Phrases—Index.

*** The volume contains the NEW RULES OF THE ROAD.

"This ADMIRABLE MANUAL, by CAPT. WILSON-BARKER of the 'Worcester,' seems to us PERFECTLY DESIGNED, and holds its place excellently in 'GRIFFIN'S NAUTICAL SERIES.' . . . Although intended for those who are to become Officers of the Merchant Navy, it will be found useful by ALL YACHTSMEN."—*Athenæum.*

GRIFFIN'S NAUTICAL SERIES.

SECOND EDITION, *Revised.* *Pp. i-xii + 156.* *With 61 Illustrations.* *Price 3s. 6d.*

NAVIGATION:

PRACTICAL AND THEORETICAL.

BY DAVID WILSON-BARKER, R.N.R., F.R.S.E., &c., &c.,

AND

WILLIAM ALLINGHAM,

FIRST-CLASS HONOURS, NAVIGATION, SCIENCE AND ART DEPARTMENT.

With Numerous Illustrations and Examination Questions.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Definitions—Latitude and Longitude—Instruments of Navigation—Correction of Courses—Plane Sailing—Traverse Sailing—Day's Work — Parallel Sailing — Middle Latitude Sailing — Mercator's Chart—Mercator Sailing—Current Sailing—Position by Bearings—Great Circle Sailing—The Tides—Questions—Appendix: Compass Error—Numerous Useful Hints. &c.—Index.

"PRECISELY the kind of work required for the New Certificates of competency in grades from Second Mate to extra Master. . . . Candidates will find it INVALUABLE."—*Dundee Advertiser.*

"A CAPITAL LITTLE BOOK . . . specially adapted to the New Examinations. The Authors are CAPT. WILSON-BARKER (Captain-Superintendent of the Nautical College, H.M.S. 'Worcester,' who has had great experience in the highest problems of Navigation), and MR. ALLINGHAM, a well-known writer on the Science of Navigation and Nautical Astronomy." —*Shipping World.*

Handsome Cloth. *Pp. i-xvi + 182.* *With 10 Plates and 34 other Illustrations.* *Price 7s. 6d.*

MARINE METEOROLOGY,

FOR OFFICERS OF THE MERCHANT NAVY.

BY WILLIAM ALLINGHAM,

Joint Author of "Navigation, Theoretical and Practical."

With numerous Plates, Maps, Diagrams, and Illustrations, and a facsimile Reproduction of a Page from an actual Meteorological Log-Book.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTORY.—Instruments Used at Sea for Meteorological Purposes.—Meteorological Log-Books.—Atmospheric Pressure.—Air Temperatures.—Sea Temperatures.—Winds.—Wind Force Scales.—History of the Law of Storms.—Hurricanes, Seasons, and Storm Tracks.—Solution of the Cyclone Problem.—Ocean Currents.—Icebergs.—Synchronous Charts.—Dew, Mists, Fogs, and Haze.—Clouds.—Rain, Snow, and Hail.—Mirage, Rainbows, Coronas, Halos, and Meteors.—Lightning, Corposants, and Auroras.—QUESTIONS.—APPENDIX.—INDEX.

"Quite the BEST publication, AND certainly the MOST INTERESTING, on this subject ever presented to Nautical men."—*Shipping Gazette.*

GRIFFIN'S NAUTICAL SERIES.

THIRD EDITION, REVISED. Pp. i-xii + 175. With 54 Illustrations. Price 3s. 6d.

PRACTICAL MECHANICS:

Applied to the Requirements of the Sailor.

BY THOS. MACKENZIE, *Master Mariner, F.R.A.S.*

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Resolution and Composition of Forces—Work done by Machines and Living Agents—The Mechanical Powers: The Lever; Derricks as Bent Levers—The Wheel and Axle: Windlass; Ship's Capstan; Crab Winch—Tackles: the "Old Man"—The Inclined Plane; the Screw—The Centre of Gravity of a Ship and Cargo — Relative Strength of Rope: Steel Wire, Manilla, Hemp, Coir—Derricks and Shears—Calculation of the Cross-breaking Strain of Fir Spar—Centre of Effort of Sails—Hydrostatics: the Diving-bell; Stability of Floating Bodies; the Ship's Pump, &c.

"WELL WORTH the money . . . will be found EXCEEDINGLY HELPFUL."—*Shipping World.*

"NO SHIPS' OFFICERS' BOOKCASE will henceforth be complete without CAPTAIN MACKENZIE'S 'PRACTICAL MECHANICS.' Notwithstanding my many years' experience at sea, it has told me *how much more there is to acquire.*"—(Letter to the Publishers from a Master Mariner).

WORKS BY RICHARD C. BUCK,

of the Thames Nautical Training College, H.M.S. 'Worcester.'

THIRD EDITION, Revised and Corrected. Pp. i-viii + 113. With 38 Illustrations. Price 3s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF TRIGONOMETRY:

With Diagrams, Examples, and Exercises.

*** Mr. Buck's Text-Book has been SPECIALLY PREPARED with a view to the Examinations of the Board of Trade, in which Trigonometry is an obligatory subject.

"This EMINENTLY PRACTICAL and RELIABLE VOLUME."—*Schoolmaster.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. Pp. i-viii + 158. Price 3s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF ALGEBRA.

Designed to meet the Requirements of Sailors and others.

*** These elementary works on ALGEBRA and TRIGONOMETRY are written specially for those who will have little opportunity of consulting a Teacher. They are books for "SELF-HELP." All but the simplest explanations have, therefore, been avoided, and ANSWERS to the Exercises are given. Any person may readily, by careful study, become master of their contents, and thus lay the foundation for a further mathematical course, if desired. It is hoped that to the younger Officers of our Mercantile Marine they will be found decidedly serviceable. The Examples and Exercises are taken from the Examination Papers set for the Cadets of the "Worcester."

"Clearly arranged, and well got up. . . . A first-rate Elementary Algebra."—*Nautical Magazine.*

GRIFFIN'S NAUTICAL SERIES.

SECOND EDITION, Revised. With Diagrams. Price 2s.

LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE: How to Find them.

BY W. J. MILLAR, C.E.,

Late Secretary to the Inst. of Engineers and Shipbuilders in Scotland.

"CONCISELY and CLEARLY WRITTEN . . . cannot but prove an acquisition to those studying Navigation."—*Marine Engineer.*

"Young Seamen will find it HANDY and USEFUL, SIMPLE and CLEAR."—*The Engineer.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Crown 8vo. Pp. i-xvii+230. Price 4s. 6d.

THE LEGAL DUTIES OF SHIPMASTERS.

BY BENEDICT WM. GINSBURG, M.A., LL.D. (CANTAB.),

Of the Inner Temple and Northern Circuit; Barrister-at-Law.

General Contents.—Qualification for Position of Shipmaster.—Contract with Shipowner.—Duty in respect of the Crew: Engagement; Apprentices; Discipline; Provisions, Accommodation, and Medical Comforts; Payment of Wages and Discharge.—Passengers.—Financial Responsibilities.—Cargo.—Casualty.—Duty to certain Public Authorities.—Pilots, Signals, Flags, and Light Dues.—Arrival at the Port of Discharge.—Appendices on Legal Matters: B.O.T. Certificates, Dietary Scales, Stowage of Grain Cargoes, Load Line Regulations, Life-saving Appliances, Carriage of Cattle.—INDEX.

"No intelligent Master should fail to add this to his list of necessary books. A few lines of it may SAVE A LAWYER'S FEE, BESIDES ENDLESS WORRY."—*Liverpool Journal of Commerce.*

FIRST AID AT SEA.

THIRD EDITION, Revised. Pp. i-xviii+349. With 82 Illustrations and the latest Regulations on the Carriage of Medical Stores. 6s.

A MEDICAL AND SURGICAL HELP

For Shipmasters and Officers in the Merchant Navy.

BY WM. JOHNSON SMITH, F.R.C.S.,

Principal Medical Officer, Seamen's Hospital, Greenwich.

*** The attention of all interested in our Merchant Navy is requested to this exceedingly useful and valuable work. It is needless to say that it is the outcome of many years PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE amongst Seamen.

"SOUND, JUDICIOUS, REALLY HELPFUL."—*The Lancet.*

ELEVENTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. Price 7s. 6d.

KNOW YOUR OWN SHIP.

BY THOMAS WALTON, NAVAL ARCHITECT.

Specially arranged to suit the requirements of Ships' Officers, Shipowners, Superintendents, Draughtsmen, Engineers, and Others.

For Contents and further particulars of this work, and other works by the same author, see p. 32.

OTHER WORKS OF INTEREST TO SAILORS.

In Pocket Size. With 368 Pages. 3s. 6d. net.

ENGLISH-SPANISH AND SPANISH-ENGLISH SEA TERMS AND PHRASES.

By Fleet-Paymaster GRAHAM-HEWLETT.

"Most complete . . . useful . . we can heartily recommend it."—*Steamship.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Many Diagrams. 2s. 6d. net.

DEFINITIONS IN NAVIGATION & NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY.

By P GROVES-SHOWELL,

Head of the Navigation Department, L.C.C. School, Poplar.

Contents.—**Definitions.**—General.—Navigation.—Nautical Astronomy.—Time.—Miscellaneous.—Notes. **Measurements.**—Mariner's Compass.—Chronometer.—Azimuth Compass.—Pelorus.—Sextant.—Vernier.—Artificial Horizon.—Sounding Machine.—Log.—Station Pointer.—Barometer.—Thermometer.—Hygrometer.—Hydrometer. **Miscellaneous.**—Star Nomenclature.—Greek Alphabet.—Planetary Symbols.—Weights and Measures.—Areas.—Volumes.—Useful Notes.—Index.

"Mr. Groves-Showell writes with a full knowledge of his subject, and with admirable clearness."—*Shipbuilder.*

Attention is also drawn to the following:—

HYDROGRAPHIC SURVEYING. By Commander S. Messum, R.N. [*See page* 16.

THEODOLITE SURVEYING. By Professor James Park. [*See page* 41.

THE FORCE OF THE WIND. By Herbert Chatley, B.Sc. [*See page* 23.

THE EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE. By Dr. T. L. Phipson. [*See page* 46.

WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY. By Gustave Eichhorn, Ph.D. [*See page* 29.

MINING WORKS.

Pages 39-45.

WORKS BY

SIR CLEMENT LE NEVE FOSTER, D.Sc., F.R.S.

SIXTH EDITION. With Frontispiece and 712 Illustrations. Price 28s. net.

ORE & STONE MINING.

BY SIR C. LE NEVE FOSTER, D.Sc., F.R.S.,
LATE PROFESSOR OF MINING, ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE.

REVISED, AND BROUGHT UP-TO-DATE

BY PROF. S. H. COX, ASSOC.R.S.M.,
PROFESSOR OF MINING, ROYAL COLLEGE OF SCIENCE.

GENERAL CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION. Mode of Occurrence of Minerals.—Prospecting.—Boring.—Breaking Ground.—Supporting Excavations.—Exploitation.—Haulage or Transport.—Hoisting or Winding.—Drainage.—Ventilation.—Lighting.—Descent and Ascent.—Dressing—Principles of Employment of Mining Labour.—Legislation affecting Mines and Quarries.—Condition of the Miner.—Accidents.—Index

"We have seldom had the pleasure to review a work so thorough and complete as the present one. Both in manner and in matter it is FAR SUPERIOR TO ANYTHING ON ITS SPECIAL SUBJECT HITHERTO PUBLISHED IN ENGLAND."—*Athenæum.*

"Not only is this work the acknowledged text-book on metal mining in Great Britain and the Colonies, but that it is so regarded in the United States of America is evidenced by the fact that it is the book on that subject recommended to the students in most of the mining schools of that country."—*The Times.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth.
With nearly 300 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. net.

THE ELEMENTS OF MINING AND QUARRYING.

An Introductory Text-Book for Mining Students.

BY SIR C. LE NEVE FOSTER, D.Sc., F.R.S.,
Late Professor of Mining at the Royal College of Science.

Revised by Prof. S. H. Cox, A.R.S.M., &c.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—INTRODUCTION.—Occurrence of Minerals.—Prospecting.—Boring.—Breaking Ground.—Supporting Excavations.—Exploitation.—Haulage or Transport.—Hoisting or Winding.—Drainage.—Ventilation.—Lighting.—Descent and Ascent.—Dressing, &c.—INDEX.

"A remarkably clear survey of the whole field of mining operations."—*Engineer.*

"Rarely does it fall to the lot of a reviewer to have to accord such unqualified praise as this book deserves. . . . The profession generally have every reason to be grateful to Sir C. Le Neve Foster for having enriched educational literature with so admirable an elementary Text-book."—*Mining Journal.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 6s. net.

THE INVESTIGATION OF MINE AIR:

An Account by Several Authors of the Nature, Significance, and Practical Methods of Measurement of the Impurities met with in the Air of Collieries and Metalliferous Mines.

EDITED BY

SIR CLEMENT LE NEVE FOSTER, D.Sc., F.R.S.,
AND J. S. HALDANE, M.D., F.R.S.

We know of nothing essential that has been omitted. The book is liberally supplied with illustrations of apparatus."—*Colliery Guardian.*

WORKS ON COAL-MINING.

FIFTH EDITION, Revised and Greatly Enlarged. With 4 Plates and 690 Illustrations. Price 24s. net.

A TEXT-BOOK OF COAL-MINING:

FOR THE USE OF COLLIERY MANAGERS AND OTHERS ENGAGED IN COAL-MINING.

BY HERBERT WILLIAM HUGHES, F.G.S.,

Assoc. Royal School of Mines, General Manager of Sandwell Park Colliery.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Geology.—Search for Coal.—Breaking Ground.—Sinking.—Preliminary Operations.—Methods of Working.—Haulage.—Winding.—Pumping.—Ventilation.—Lighting.—Works at Surface.—Preparation of Coal for Market.—INDEX.

"Quite THE BEST BOOK of its kind . . . as PRACTICAL in aim as a book can be . . . The illustrations are EXCELLENT."—*Athenæum.*

"We cordially recommend the work."—*Colliery Guardian.*

"Will soon come to be regarded as the STANDARD WORK of its kind."—*Birmingham Daily Gazette.*

FOURTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised and Greatly Enlarged. Re-set throughout Large Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 12s. 6d.

PRACTICAL COAL-MINING:

A MANUAL FOR MANAGERS, UNDER-MANAGERS, COLLIERY ENGINEERS, AND OTHERS.

With Worked-out Problems on Haulage, Pumping, Ventilation, &c.

BY GEORGE L. KERR, M.E., M.INST.M.E.

CONTENTS.—The Sources and Nature of Coal.—The Search for Coal.—Sinking.—Explosives.—Mechanical Wedges.—Rock Drills and Coal-cutting Machines.—Coal-cutting by Machinery.—Transmission of Power.—Modes of Working.—Timbers.—Roadways.—Winding Coal.—Haulage.—Pumping.—Ventilation.—Safety Lamps.—Surface Arrangements, Surveying, Levelling, &c.

"AN ESSENTIALLY PRACTICAL WORK, and can be confidently recommended. No department of Coal-Mining has been overlooked."—*Engineers' Gazette.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 200 Illustrations. 3s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY COAL-MINING:

FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS, MINERS, AND OTHERS PREPARING FOR EXAMINATIONS.

BY GEORGE L. KERR, M.E., M.INST.M.E.

CONTENTS.—Sources and Nature of Coal.—Exploration and Boring for Coal.—Breaking Ground.—Explosives, Blasting, &c.—Sinking and Fitting of Shafts.—Modes of Working.—Timbering Roadways.—Winding and Drawing.—Haulage.—Pumping and Drainage.—Ventilation.—Cleaning and Sorting Coal.—Surveying, &c.

"An abundance of information conveyed in a popular and attractive form. . . . Will be of great use to all who are in any way interested in coal mining."—*Scottish Critic.*

FOURTEENTH EDITION, Revised. With Numerous Diagrams.
Cloth, 7s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON MINE-SURVEYING:

For the use of Managers of Mines and Collieries, Students at the Royal School of Mines, &c.

BY BENNETT H. BROUGH, ASSOC.R.S.M., F.G.S.

REVISED BY L. H. COOKE,
Instructor of Mine-Surveying, Royal School of Mines.

CONTENTS. — General Explanations. — Measurement of Distances. — Miners Dial.—Variation of the Magnetic Needle.—Surveying with the Magnetic Needle in the Presence of Iron.—Surveying with the Fixed Needle.—The German Dial.—The Theodolite.—Traversing Underground.—Surface Surveys with the Theodolite.—Plotting the Survey.—Calculation of Areas.—Levelling.—Connection of the Underground and Surface Surveys.—Measuring Distances by Telescope.—Setting-out.—Mine-Surveying Problems.—Mine Plans.—Application of the Magnetic Needle in Mining.—Photographic Surveys.—APPENDICES.—INDEX.

"Its CLEARNESS of STYLE, LUCIDITY of DESCRIPTION, and FULNESS of DETAIL have long ago won for it a place unique in the literature of this branch of mining engineering, and the present edition fully maintains the high standard of its predecessors. To the student, and to the mining engineer alike, ITS VALUE is inestimable. The illustrations are excellent."—*The Mining Journal.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 6s. net.

A HANDBOOK ON

THEODOLITE SURVEYING AND LEVELLING.

For the use of Students in Land and Mine Surveying.

BY PROFESSOR JAMES PARK, F.G.S.

CONTENTS.—The Scope and Object of Surveying.—Land Surveying.—The Theodolite.—Chains and Steel Bands.—Obstacles to Allignment.—Meridian and Bearings.—The Theodolite Traverse.—Co-ordinates of a Station.—Calculation of Omitted or Connecting Line in a Traverse.—Calculation of Areas.—Subdivision of Land.—Triangulation.—Determination of True Meridian, Latitude and Time.—Levelling.—Railway Curves.—Mine Surveying.—Surveying Boreholes.—INDEX.

"A book which should prove as useful to the professional surveyor as to the student."—*Nature.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Illustrated. 6s.

MINING GEOLOGY.

A TEXT-BOOK FOR MINING STUDENTS AND MINERS.

BY PROF. JAMES PARK, F.G.S., M.Inst.M.M.,

Professor of Mining and Director of the Otago University School of Mines; late Director Thames School of Mines, and Geological Surveyor and Mining Geologist to the Government or New Zealand

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Introduction.—Classification of Mineral Deposits.—Ore Veins, their Filling, Age, and Structure.—The Dynamics of Lodes and Beds.—Ore Deposits Genetically Considered—Ores and Minerals Considered Economically.—Mine Sampling and Ore Valuation.—The Examination and Valuation of Mines.—INDEX.

"A work which should find a place in the library of every mining engineer."—*Mining World.*

WORKS FOR MINERS AND STUDENTS.

THIRD EDITION. *In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 30 New Illustrations. 7s. 6d. net.*

ELECTRICAL PRACTICE IN COLLIERIES.

BY PROF. D. BURNS, M.E., M.INST.M.E.,

Professor of Mining and Geology to the Glasgow and West of Scotland Technical College.

Units of Measurement, Conductors, &c.—The Theory of the Dynamo.—The Dynamo, Details of Construction and Working.—Motors.—Lighting Installations in Collieries.—Pumping by Electricity.—Electrical Haulage.—Coal Cutting.—Miscellaneous Applications of Electricity in Mines.—Coal Mines Regulation Act (Electricity).—INDEX.

"A clear and concise introduction to electrical practice in collieries."—*Mining Journal.*

In Crown 8vo, Handsome Cloth. 8s. 6d. net.

MINING LAW OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

BY CHARLES J. ALFORD, F.G.S., M.Inst.M.M.

CONTENTS.—The Principles of Mining Law.—The Mining Law of Great Britain.—British India.—Ceylon.—Burma.—The Malay Peninsula.—British North Borneo.—Egypt.—Cyprus.—The Dominion of Canada.—British Guiana.—The Gold Coast Colony and Ashanti.—Cape of Good Hope.—Natal.—Orange River Colony.—Transvaal Colony.—Rhodesia.—The Commonwealth of Australia.—New Zealand, &c.—INDEX.

"Cannot fail to be useful . . . we cordially recommend the book."—*Mining World.*

FIFTH IMPRESSION. *In Large 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.*

MINE ACCOUNTS AND MINING BOOK-KEEPING.

For Students, Managers, Secretaries, and others.

With Examples taken from Actual Practice of Leading Companies.

BY JAMES GUNSON LAWN, A.R.S.M., A.M.Inst.C.E., F.G.S.,

Head of the Mining Department, Camborne School of Mines.

EDITED BY SIR C. LE NEVE FOSTER, D.Sc., F.R.S.

"It seems IMPOSSIBLE to suggest how Mr. LAWN'S book could be made more COMPLETE or more VALUABLE, careful, and exhaustive."—*Accountants' Magazine.*

THIRD EDITION. In Pocket Size, Strongly Bound in Leather, 3s. 6d.
Provided with Detachable Blank Pages for MS.

THE MINING ENGINEERS' REPORT BOOK

AND DIRECTORS' AND SHAREHOLDERS' GUIDE TO MINING REPORTS.

BY EDWIN R. FIELD, M.INST.M.M.

With Notes on the Valuation of Property, and Tabulating Reports, Useful Tables, and Examples of Calculations, &c.

"An ADMIRABLY compiled book which Mining Engineers and Managers will find EXTREMELY USEFUL."—*Mining Journal.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Illustrated. 10s. 6d. net.

A DICTIONARY OF

SPANISH-ENGLISH AND SPANISH-AMERICAN MINING,

METALLURGICAL, AND ALLIED TERMS.

To which some Portuguese and Portuguese-American (Brazilian) Terms are added.

BY EDWARD HALSE, A.R.S.M.,

Mem. Inst. Ming. and Metall., of the Eng. Inst. of Ming. and Metall. Engrs., &c., &c.

"Will be found of the greatest service to the mining profession."—*Mining Journal.*

WORKS ON SINKING, EXPLOSIVES, &c.

In Medium 8vo, Handsome Cloth. With 18 Figures in the Text, and 19 Folding Plates. 10s. 6d. net.

SHAFT-SINKING IN DIFFICULT CASES.

By J. RIEMER,

Translated by J. W. BROUGH, A.M.Inst.C.E.

Contents.—Shaft Sinking by Hand.—Shaft Sinking by Boring.—The Freezing Method.—The Sinking Drum Process.—Bibliography.—Index.

"The translator deserves the thanks of the mining community for placing this valuable work before them. . . . The work is one which every mining engineer should include in his library."—*Mining World.*

Second Edition, Revised. In Large 8vo, with Numerous Illustrations and Folding Plates. 10s. 6d.

BLASTING: AND THE USE OF EXPLOSIVES.

By OSCAR GUTTMANN, M.Inst.C.E., F.I.C., F.C.S.

Contents. — Historical Sketch. — Blasting Materials. — Qualities and Handling of Explosives.—The Choice of Blasting Materials.—Preparation of Blasts.—Chamber Mines.—Charging of Boreholes.—Determination of Charge.—Blasting in Borehcles.—Firing.—Results of Working.—Various Blasting Operations.—Index.

"Should prove a *vade-mecum* to Mining Engineers and all engaged in practical work."—*Iron and Coal Trades Review.*

In Medium 8vo, Cloth. With many Illustrations in the Text. Four Full Page Plates and Four Folding Tables. 6s. net.

NEW METHODS OF

TESTING EXPLOSIVES.

By C. E. BICHEL.

Translated and Edited by ALEX. LARSEN, M.Inst.C.E.

Contents. — Introductory. — Historical. — Testing Stations. — Power Gauges. — Products of Combustion. — Rate of Detonation. — Length and Duration of Flame.—After-Flame Ratio.—Transmission of Explosion.—Conclusions.—Efficiency.

"Its pages bristle with suggestions and actual experimental results to an extent seldom found in a volume of five times its size."—*Arms and Explosives.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated.

A MANUAL ON

ELECTRICAL SIGNALLING IN MINES.

By GERALD J. HOOGHWINKEL, M.Inst.E.E., M.I.Min.E.

Contents.—Section I.—Electric Haulage Signals—(*a*) Acoustic Signals.—(*b*) Optical Signals.—(*c*) Acoustic Optical Signals.—Cnrrent Supply.—Batteries.—Accumulators.—Main Supply.—Design and Construction of Signalling Installations.—Maintenance of Signalling Installations. Section II.—Electric Shaft Signals—(*a*) Acoustic Signals.—(*b*) Electro-Mechanical Signals.—(*c*) Optical Acoustic Signals.—Signals for Winding Minerals.—For Winding Men.—Signalling from the Cage.—Emergency Signals.—Bells.—Mine Telegraphs.—Mine Telephones. Section III.—Special Applications in Mines.

SECOND EDITION, *Revised Throughout. In Medium 8vo. With Numerous Plates, Maps, and Illustrations.* 21*s. net.*

CYANIDING GOLD & SILVER ORES.

A Practical Treatise on the Cyanide Process; its Application, Methods of Working, Design and Construction of Plant, and Costs.

BY H. FORBES JULIAN,

Mining and Metallurgical Engineer; Specialist in Gold; Late Technical Adviser of the Deutsche Gold und Silber Scheide Anstalt, Frankfort-on-Maine.

AND EDGAR SMART, A.M.I.C.E.,

Civil and Metallurgical Engineer.

"A handsome volume of 400 pages which will be a valuable book of reference for associated with the process."—*Mining Journal.*

"The authors are to be congratulated upon the production of what should prove to be a standard work."—*Page's Magazine.*

In Large Crown 8vo. With 13 Plates and many Illustrations in the Text. Handsome Cloth. 7*s.* 6*d. net.*

THE CYANIDE PROCESS OF GOLD EXTRACTION.

A Text-Book for the Use of Metallurgists and Students at Schools of Mines, &c.

BY JAMES PARK, F.G.S., M.INST.M.M.,

Professor of Mining and Director of the Otago University School of Mines; late Director Thames School of Mines, and Geological Surveyor and Mining Geologist to the Government of New Zealand.

FOURTH ENGLISH EDITION. Thoroughly Revised and Greatly Enlarged. With additional details concerning the Siemens-Halske and other recent processes.

"Deserves to be ranked as amongst the BEST OF EXISTING TREATISES."—*Mining Journal.*

THIRD EDITION, Revised. *With Plates and Illustrations. Cloth,* 3*s.* 6*d.*

GETTING GOLD:

A GOLD-MINING HANDBOOK FOR PRACTICAL MEN.

BY J. C. F. JOHNSON, F.G.S., A.I.M.E.,

Life Member Australasian Mine-Managers' Association.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Introductory: Prospecting (Alluvial and General)—Lode or Reef Prospecting—Genesiology of Gold—Auriferous Lodes—Drifts—Gold Extraction—Lixiviation—Calcination—Motor Power and its Transmission—Company Formation—Mining Appliances and Methods—Australasian Mining Regulations.

"PRACTICAL from beginning to end . . . deals thoroughly with the Prospecting, Sinking, Crushing, and Extraction of gold."—*Brit. Australasian.*

In Crown 8vo. Illustrated. Fancy Cloth Boards. 4*s.* 6*d.*

GOLD SEEKING IN SOUTH AFRICA:

A Handbook of Hints for intending Explorers, Prospectors. and Settlers.

BY THEO KASSNER,

Mine Manager, Author of the Geological Sketch Map of the De Kaap Gold Fields.

With a Chapter on the Agricultural Prospects of South Africa.

"As fascinating as anything ever penned by Jules Verne."—*African Commerce.*

GRIFFIN'S "NEW LAND" SERIES.

Practical Hand-Books for the Use of Prospectors, Explorers, Settlers, Colonists, and all Interested in the opening up and Development of New Lands.

EDITED BY GRENVILLE A. J. COLE, M.R.I.A., F.G.S.,

Professor of Geology in the Royal College of Science for Ireland, and Examiner in the University of London.

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 5s.
With Numerous Maps Specially Drawn and Executed for this Work.

NEW LANDS:

THEIR RESOURCES AND PROSPECTIVE ADVANTAGES.

BY HUGH ROBERT MILL, D.Sc., LL.D., F.R.S.E.,

"A want admirably supplied. . . . Has the advantage of being written by a professed Geographer."—*Geographical Journal.*

With many Engravings and Photographs. Handsome Cloth, 4s. 6d.

FOOD SUPPLY.

BY ROBERT BRUCE,

Agricultural Superintendent to the Royal Dublin Society.

With Appendix on Preserved Foods by C. A. MITCHELL, B.A., F.I.C.

"The work is one which will appeal to those intending to become farmers at home or in the Colonies, and who desire to obtain a general idea of the true principles of farming in ALL ITS BRANCHES."—*Journal of the Royal Colonial Inst.*

FIFTH EDITION. *With Illustrations. Handsome Cloth, 5s.*

PROSPECTING FOR MINERALS.

A Practical Handbook for Prospectors, Explorers, Settlers, and all interested in the Opening up and Development of New Lands.

BY S. HERBERT COX, Assoc.R.S.M., M.Inst.M.M., F.G.S.,

Professor of Mining at the Royal School of Mines.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Introduction and Hints on Geology—The Determination of Minerals: Use of the Blow-pipe, &c.—Rock-forming Minerals and Non-Metallic Minerals of Commercial Value: Rock Salt, Borax, Marbles, Lithographic Stone, Quartz and Opal, &c., &c.—Precious Stones and Gems—Stratified Deposits: Coal and Ores—Mineral Veins and Lodes—Irregular Deposits—Dynamics of Lodes: Faults, &c.—Alluvial Deposits—Noble Metals: Gold, Platinum, Silver, &c.—Lead—Mercury—Copper—Tin—Zinc—Iron—Nickel, &c.—Sulphur, Antimony, Arsenic, &c.—Combustible Minerals—Petroleum—General Hints on Prospecting—Glossary—Index.

"This ADMIRABLE LITTLE WORK . . . written with SCIENTIFIC ACCURACY in a CLEAR and LUCID style. . . . An IMPORTANT ADDITION to technical literature . . . —*Mining Journal.*

Demy 8vo, Handsome cloth, 34s.

Stratigraphical Geology & Palæontology,

ON THE BASIS OF PHILLIPS.

By ROBERT ETHERIDGE, F.R.S.,

OF THE NATURAL HIST. DEPARTMENT, BRITISH MUSEUM, LATE PALÆONTOLOGIST TO THE GEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF GREAT BRITAIN, PAST PRESIDENT OF THE GEOLOGICAL SOCIETY, ETC.

With Map, Numerous Tables, and Thirty-six Plates.

"No such compendium of geological knowledge has ever been brought together before."—*Westminster Review.*

"If PROF. SEELEY'S volume was remarkable for its originality and the breadth of its views, MR. ETHERIDGE fully justifies the assertion made in his preface that his book differs in construction and detail from any known manual. . . . Must take HIGH RANK AMONG WORKS OF REFERENCE."—*Athenæum.*

SIXTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. With Frontispiece and Illustrations. Cloth. 10s. 6d.

AIDS IN PRACTICAL GEOLOGY:

WITH A SECTION ON PALÆONTOLOGY.

By PROFESSOR GRENVILLE COLE, M.R.I.A., F.G.S.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—

PART I.—SAMPLING OF THE EARTH'S CRUST.
PART II.—EXAMINATION OF MINERALS.
PART III.—EXAMINATION OF ROCKS.
PART IV.—EXAMINATION OF FOSSILS.

"DESERVING OF THE HIGHEST PRAISE. Here indeed are 'Aids' INNUMERABLE and INVALUABLE. All the directions are given with the utmost clearness and precision."—*Athenæum.*

"That the work deserves its title, that it is full of 'AIDS,' and in the highest degree PRACTICAL,' will be the verdict of all who use it."—*Nature.*

OPEN-AIR STUDIES IN GEOLOGY:

An Introduction to Geology Out-of-doors.

By PROFESSOR GRENVILLE COLE, M.R.I.A., F.G.S.

For details, see Griffin's Introductory Science Series, p. 71.

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 2s. 6d.

RESEARCHES ON THE PAST AND PRESENT HISTORY OF THE EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE.

Including the latest Discoveries and their Practical Applications.

By DR. THOMAS LAMB PHIPSON.

PART I.—The Earth's Atmosphere in Remote Geological Periods.
PART II.—The Atmosphere of our present period. Appendices; Index.

"The book should prove of interest to general readers, as well as to meteorologists and other students of science."—*Nature.*

Griffin's Metallurgical Series.

STANDARD WORKS OF REFERENCE

FOR

Metallurgists, Mine-Owners, Assayers, Manufacturers, and all interested in the development of the Metallurgical Industries.

EDITED BY

Sir W. ROBERTS-AUSTEN, K.C.B., D.C.L., F.R.S.

In Large 8vo, Handsome Cloth. With Illustrations.

INTRODUCTION to the STUDY of METALLURGY. By the EDITOR. SIXTH EDITION. (See p. 48.)

GOLD (The Metallurgy of). By THOS. KIRKE ROSE, D.Sc., Assoc. R.S.M., F.C.S., Chemist and Assayer of the Royal Mint. FIFTH EDITION. 21s. (See p. 48.)

LEAD (The Metallurgy of). By H. F. COLLINS, Assoc. R.S.M., M.Inst.M.M. SECOND EDITION. (See p. 49.)

SILVER (The Metallurgy of). By H. F. COLLINS, A.R.S.M., M.Inst.M.M. SECOND EDITION. (See p. 49.)

IRON (The Metallurgy of). By T. TURNER, A.R.S.M., F.I.C., F.C.S. THIRD EDITION, Revised. 16s. net. (See p. 50.)

STEEL (The Metallurgy of). By F. W. HARBORD, Assoc.R.S.M., F.I.C., with a Section on Mechanical Treatment by J. W. HALL, A.M.Inst.C.E. THIRD EDITION. 25s. net. (See p. 50.)

ALLOYS. By EDWARD F. LAW, Assoc.R.S.M. With Frontispiece in Colours, and Fine Series of Micro-photographs. 12s. 6d. net. (See p. 49).

ANTIMONY. By C. Y. WANG, M.A., B.Sc. Fully Illustrated. 12s. 6d. net. (See p. 50).

Will be Published at Short Intervals.

METALLURGICAL MACHINERY: the Application of Engineering to Metallurgical Problems. By HENRY CHARLES JENKINS, Wh.Sc., Assoc.R.S.M.

COPPER (The Metallurgy of). By THOS. C. CLOUD, Assoc. R.S.M.

*** Other Volumes in Preparation.

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

GRIFFIN'S METALLURGICAL SERIES.

SIXTH EDITION, thoroughly Revised and considerably Enlarged. Large 8vo, with numerous Illustrations and Micro-Photographic Plates of different varieties of Steel.

An Introduction to the Study of

METALLURGY.

BY

Sir W. ROBERTS-AUSTEN, K.C.B., D.C.L., F.R.S., A.R.S.M.,

Late Chemist and Assayer of the Royal Mint, and Professor of Metallurgy in the Royal College of Science.

Revised throughout by F. W. HARBORD, A.R.S.M., F.I.C.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—The Relation of Metallurgy to Chemistry.—Physical Properties of Metals.—Alloys. The Thermal Treatment of Metals.—Fuel and Thermal Measurements.—Materials and Products of Metallurgical Processes.—Furnaces.—Means of Supplying Air to Furnaces.—Thermo-Chemistry.—Typical Metallurgical Processes.—The Micro-Structure of Metals and Alloys.—Economic Considerations.

"No English text-book at all approaches this in the COMPLETENESS with which the most modern views on the subject are dealt with. Professor Austen's volume will be INVALUABLE, not only to the student, but also to those whose knowledge of the art is far advanced."—*Chemical News.*

FIFTH EDITION, Revised, Considerably Enlarged, and in part Re-written. With Frontispiece and numerous Illustrations. 21s.

THE METALLURGY OF GOLD.

BY

T. KIRKE ROSE, D.Sc.Lond., ASSOC.R.S.M.,

Chemist and Assayer of the Royal Mint.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—The Properties of Gold and its Alloys.—Chemistry of the Compounds of Gold.—Mode of Occurrence and Distribution of Gold.—Shallow Placer Deposits.—Deep Placer Deposits.—Quartz Crushing in the Stamp Battery.—Amalgamation in the Stamp Battery.—Other Forms of Crushing and Amalgamating Machinery.—Concentration in Gold Mills.—Dry Crushing.—Re-grinding.—Roasting.—Chlorination: The Plattner Process, The Barrel Process, The Vat-Solution Process.—The Cyanide Process.—Chemistry of the Cyanide Process.—Refining and Parting of Gold Bullion.—Assay of Gold Ores.—Assay of Gold Bullion.—Statistics of Gold Production.—Bibliography.—INDEX.

"A COMPREHENSIVE PRACTICAL TREATISE on this important subject."—*The Times.*

"The MOST COMPLETE description of the CHLORINATION PROCESS which has yet been published."—*Mining Journal.*

"Adapted for all who are interested in the Gold Mining Industry, being free from technicalities as far as possible, but is more particularly of value to those engaged in the industry."—*Cape Times.*

GRIFFIN'S METALLURGICAL SERIES.

EDITED BY SIR W. ROBERTS-AUSTEN, K.C.B., F.R.S., D.C.L.

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With Illustrations.

SECOND EDITION, Revised Throughout and Enlarged. Illustrated.

THE METALLURGY OF LEAD.

BY H. F. COLLINS, ASSOC.R.S.M., M.INST.M.M.

A Complete and Exhaustive Treatise on the Manufacture of Lead, with Sections on Smelting and Desilverisation, and Chapters on the Assay and Analysis of the Materials involved.

"A THOROUGHLY SOUND and useful digest. May with EVERY CONFIDENCE be recommended."—*Mining Journal.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised Throughout and Enlarged. Illustrated.

THE METALLURGY OF SILVER.

BY H. F. COLLINS, ASSOC.R.S.M., M.INST.M.M.

Comprising Details regarding the Sources and Treatment of Silver Ores, together with Descriptions of Plant, Machinery, and Processes of Manufacture, Refining of Bullion, Cost of Working, &c.

"The author has focussed A LARGE AMOUNT OF VALUABLE INFORMATION into a convenient form. . . . The author has evidently considerable practical experience, and describes the various processes clearly and well."—*Mining Journal.*

JUST PUBLISHED. Frontispiece in Colours, and Beautiful Series of Photo-micrographs. 12s. 6d. net.

ALLOYS

AND THEIR INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS.

BY EDWARD F. LAW, A.R.S.M.

CONTENTS.—Introduction.—Properties of Alloys.—Methods of Investigation.—Constitution.—Influence of Temperature on Properties.—Corrosion of Alloys.—Copper Alloys, Brass, Bronzes.—Special Brasses and Bronzes.—German Silver and Miscellaneous Copper Alloys.—White Metal Alloys.—Anti-Friction Alloys.—Aluminium Alloys.—Silver and Gold Alloys.—Iron Alloys.—Miscellaneous Alloys (Amalgams, &c.).—INDEX.

"Concise and practical . . . a valuable amount of information that will be appreciated by student and manufacturer alike."—*Foundry Trades' Journal.*

GRIFFIN'S METALLURGICAL SERIES.

THIRD EDITION, Revised. With Numerous Illustrations. Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 25s. net.

With Additional Chapter on The Electric Smelting of Steel.

THE METALLURGY OF STEEL.

BY F. W. HARBORD, Assoc.R.S.M., F.I.C.

With 37 Plates, 280 Illustrations in the Text, and nearly 100 Micro-Sections of Steel, and a Section on

THE MECHANICAL TREATMENT OF STEEL.

BY J. W. HALL, A.M.INST.C.E.

ABRIDGED CONTENTS.—The Plant, Machinery, Methods and Chemistry of the Bessemer and of the Open Hearth Processes (Acid and Basic).—The Mechanical Treatment of Steel comprising Mill Practice, Plant and Machinery.—The Influence of Metalloids, Heat Treatment, Special Steels, Microstructure, Testing, and Specifications.

The *Engineer* says, at the conclusion of a review of this book:—"We cannot conclude without earnestly recommending all who may be interested as makers or users of steel, which practically means the whole of the engineering profession, to make themselves acquainted with it as speedily as possible, and this may be the more easily done as the published price, considering the size of the book, is extremely moderate."

THIRD EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. With many new Plates. 16s. net.

THE METALLURGY OF IRON.

BY THOMAS TURNER, Assoc.R.S.M., F.I.C.,

Professor of Metallurgy in the University of Birmingham.

General Contents.—Early History of Iron.—Modern History of Iron.—The Age of Steel.—Chief Iron Ores.—Preparation of Iron Ores.—The Blast Furnace.—The Air used in the Blast Furnace.—Reactions of the Blast Furnace.—The Gaseous Products of the Blast Furnace.—The Fuel used in the Blast Furnace.—Slags and Fuxes of Iron Smelting.—Properties of Cast Iron.—Foundry Practice.—Wrought Iron.—Indirect Production of Wrought Iron.—The Puddling Process.—Further Treatment of Wrought Iron.—Corrosion of Iron and Steel.

"A THOROUGHLY USEFUL BOOK, which brings the subject UP TO DATE. OF GREAT VALUE to those engaged in the iron industry."—*Mining Journal.*

*** For Professor Turner's *Lectures on Iron-Founding*, see page 53.

JUST PUBLISHED. In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 12s. 6d. net.

ANTIMONY:

Its History, Chemistry, Mineralogy, Geology, Metallurgy, Uses and Preparation, Analysis, Production and Valuation.

BY C. Y. WANG, M.A., B.Sc.,

Mem. Am. Inst. Mining Eng.; Mem. Iron and Steel Institute; Mining Engineer to the Chung Lou General Mining Company; Geologist for the Hunan Province, China, &c., &c.

"A book which stands alone, inasmuch as there is not, to our knowledge, any other complete treatise on antimony among all the English text-books."—*Iron [and Coal Trades' Review.*

TENTH EDITION. With Tables and Illustrations. Cloth, 10s. 6d.

A TEXT-BOOK OF ASSAYING:

For the use of Students, Mine Managers, Assayers, &c.

BY J. J. BERINGER, F.I.C., F.C.S.,

Public Analyst for, and Lecturer to the Mining Association of, Cornwall.

AND C. BERINGER, F.C.S.,

Late Chief Assayer to the Rio Tinto Copper Company, London,

GENERAL CONTENTS. — PART I. — INTRODUCTORY; MANIPULATION: Sampling; Drying; Calculation of Results—Laboratory-books and Reports. METHODS: Dry Gravimetric; Wet Gravimetric—Volumetric Assays: Titrometric, Colorimetric, Gasometric—Weighing and Measuring—Reagents—Formulæ, Equations, &c.—Specific Gravity.

PART II.—METALS: Detection and Assay of Silver, Gold, Platinum, Mercury, Copper, Lead, Thallium, Bismuth, Antimony, Iron, Nickel, Cobalt, Zinc, Cadmium, Tin, Tungsten, Titanium, Manganese, Chromium, &c.—Earths, Alkalies.

PART III.—NON-METALS: Oxygen and Oxides; The Halogens—Sulphur and Sulphates—Arsenic, Phosphorus, Nitrogen—Silicon, Carbon, Boron—Useful Tables.

"A REALLY MERITORIOUS WORK, that may be safely depended upon either for systematic instruction or for reference."—*Nature.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 3s. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO

PRACTICAL METALLURGY.

BY PROF. THOMAS TURNER, A.R.S.M., F.I.C.

"It is an excellent and handy book for its purpose, and will have a far wider range of usefulness than for class work alone."—*Practical Engineer.*

FOURTH EDITION, *Revised. With Numerous Illustrations.* 6s.

A TEXT-BOOK OF

ELEMENTARY METALLURGY.

Including the Author's PRACTICAL LABORATORY COURSE.

BY A. HUMBOLDT SEXTON, F.I.C., F.C.S.

"Just the kind of work for Students COMMENCING the study of Metallurgy, or for ENGINEERING Students."—*Practical Engineer.*

Large 8vo. Cloth. With Illustrations. 12s. 6d. net.

METALLURGICAL ANALYSIS & ASSAYING:

A THREE YEARS' COURSE FOR STUDENTS OF SCHOOLS OF MINES.

BY W. A. MACLEOD, B.A., B.Sc., AND CHAS. WALKER, F.C.S.

"The publication of this volume tends to prove that the teaching of metallurgical analysis and assaying in Australia rests in competent hands."—*Nature.*

THIRD EDITION. With Folding Plates and Many Illustrations. 36s.

ELEMENTS OF METALLURGY.

A Practical Treatise on the Art of Extracting Metals from their Ores.

BY J. ARTHUR PHILLIPS, M.INST.C.E., F.G.S., &c., AND H. BAUERMAN, V.P.G.S.

In Crown 8vo. Handsome cloth. With 102 Illustrations. 6s. net.

A HANDBOOK ON

METALLIC ALLOYS:

Their Structure and Constitution.

By GILBERT H. GULLIVER, B.Sc., F.R.S.E.

"A valuable addition to existing literature on alloys."—*Foundry Trades' Journal.*

In Crown 8vo. Beautifully Illustrated with nearly 100 Microphotographs of Steel, &c. 7s. 6d. net.

Microscopic Analysis of Metals.

By FLORIS OSMOND & J. E. STEAD, F.R.S., F.I.C.

"There has been no work previously published in English calculated to be so useful to the student in metallographic research."—*Iron and Steel Trades' Journal.*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Price 4s.

QUANTITATIVE METALLURGICAL ANALYSIS.

TABLES FOR LABORATORY USE.

ON THE PRINCIPLE OF "GROUP" SEPARATIONS.

By J. JAMES MORGAN, F.C.S., M.S.C.I.

"The Author may be CONGRATULATED on the way his work has been carried out."—*The Engineer.*

THIRD EDITION, Revised, Enlarged, and Re-written.

A TREATISE ON

ELECTRO-METALLURGY:

Embracing the Application of Electrolysis to the Plating, Depositing, Smelting, and Refining of various Metals, and to the Reproduction of Printing Surfaces and Art-Work, &c.

By W. G. McMILLAN, F.I.C., AND W. R. COOPER.

"Excellent, . . . one of the BEST and MOST COMPLETE manuals hitherto published on Electro-Metallurgy."—*Electrical Review* (on the Second Edition).

SECOND EDITION, Thoroughly Revised and Enlarged. In large 8vo. With Numerous Illustrations and Three Folding-Plates. 21s. *net.*

ELECTRIC SMELTING & REFINING:

A Practical Manual of the Extraction and Treatment of Metals by Electrical Methods.

Being the "ELEKTRO-METALLURGIE" of DR. W. BORCHERS.

Translated from the Latest German Edition by WALTER G. McMILLAN, F.I.C., F.C.S.

"COMPREHENSIVE and AUTHORITATIVE . . . not only FULL of VALUABLE INFORMATION, but gives evidence of a THOROUGH INSIGHT into the technical VALUE and POSSIBILITIES of all the methods discussed."—*The Electrician.*

In Medium 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 15s. net.

GENERAL FOUNDRY PRACTICE:

A Practical Handbook for Iron, Steel and Brass Founders, Metallurgists, and Students of Metallurgy.

By A. McWILLIAM, A.R.S.M., and PERCY LONGMUIR.

"The student of foundry work . . . needs no other text-book. . . . The book contains a tremendous amount of information, and is well written."—*Engineering Times.*

Second Edition. *Extra Crown 8vo. With many Illustrations.* 3*s.* 6*d. net.*

LECTURES ON IRON-FOUNDING.

By THOMAS TURNER, M.Sc., A.R.S.M., F.I.C.,

Professor of Metallurgy in the University of Birmingham.

Contents.—Varieties of Iron and Steel.—Application of Cast Iron.—History.—Production.—Iron Ores.—Composition.—The Blast Furnace.—Materials.—Reactions.—Grading Pig Iron.—Carbon, Silicon, Sulphur, Phosphorus, Manganese, Aluminium, Arsenic, Copper, and Titanium.—The Foundry.—General Arrangement.—Re-melting Cast Iron.—The Cupola.—Fuel Used.—Changes due to Re-melting.—Moulds and Moulding.—Foundry Ladles.—Pouring and Pouring Temperature.—Common Troubles.—Influence of Shape and Size on Strength of Castings.—Tests.

"Ironfounders will find much information in the book."—*Iron Trade Circular Ryland's).*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 1s. 6d. net.

BLAST FURNACE PRACTICE.

By J. JAMES MORGAN, F.C.S., M.S.C.I.,

Author of "Quantitative Metallurgical Tables," &c.

Contents.—Requirements.—Iron Ores.—Fuel.—Flux.—Slags.—Quantity of Slag.—Burden, Charge, Round.—The Blast.—Ore Mixing.—Amount and Composition of the Iron.—Calculation of Flux.—Heating the Blast; Stoves—Drying, Changing, and Cleaning.—Drying the Furnace.—Filling the Furnace, and Lighting.—Charging the Furnace.—Descent of the Charge.—Flushing.—Tapping.—Hard Tapping Hole.—Running down the Beds (Casting).—Judging the Temperature.—Controlling the Temperature.—Temperature and the Reduction of Silicon.—The Pig Iron.—Fuel Consumption.—Economy in Fuel Consumption.—Tuyeres: Leaky, Changing.—Cooler or "Jumbo."—Obstructions.—Pillaring.—Breakouts.—Hot Spots.—Scaffolds (Hanging).—Slips.—Damping Down.—Blowing Out.—Index.

Second Edition, *Revised. In Large Crown 8vo. With Numerous Illustrations. 7s. 6d. net.*

THE ART OF THE GOLDSMITH AND JEWELLER.

A Manual on the Manipulation of Gold and the Manufacture of Personal Ornaments.

By THOS. B. WIGLEY,

Headmaster of the Jewellers and Silversmiths' Assoc. Tech. School, Birmingham.

Assisted by J. H. STANSBIE, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C.,

Lecturer at the Birmingham Municipal Technical School.

SECOND EDITION, *Revised, Enlarged, and Re-set Throughout on Larger Page. With Valuable Bibliography, New Maps, Illustrations, &c.* 45*s. net.*

IN TWO VOLUMES.

A TREATISE ON

PETROLEUM.

BY SIR BOVERTON REDWOOD,
D.Sc., F.R.S.E., Assoc.Inst.C.E., F.I.C.

CONTENTS.—SECTION I.: Historical Account of the Petroleum Industry.—SECTION II.: Geological and Geographical Distribution of Petroleum and Natural Gas.—SECTION III.: The Chemical and Physical Properties of Petroleum and Natural Gas.—SECTION IV.: The Origin of Petroleum and Natural Gas.—SECTION V.: The Production of Petroleum, Natural Gas, and Ozokerite.—SECTION VI.: The Refining of Petroleum.—SECTION VII.: The Shale Oil and Allied Industries.—SECTION VIII.: The Transport, Storage, and Distribution of Petroleum.—SECTION IX.: The Testing of Crude Petroleum, Petroleum and Shale Oil Products, Ozokerite, and Asphalt.—SECTION X.: The Uses of Petroleum and its Products.—SECTION XI.: Statutory, Municipal, and other Regulations relating to the Testing, Storage, Transport, and Use of Petroleum and its Products.—APPENDICES.—BIBLIOGRAPHY.—INDEX.

"It is indisputably the most comprehensive and complete treatise on petroleum, and this statement is true, no matter on what branch of the industry a test of its merits is made. It is the only book in existence which gives the oil man a clear and reliable outline of the growth and present-day condition of the entire petroleum world. . . . There is a wonderfully complete collection of plates and illustrations."—*Petroleum World.*

SECOND EDITION, *Revised. With Illustrations. Price* 8*s.* 6*d. net.*

A HANDBOOK ON PETROLEUM.

FOR INSPECTORS UNDER THE PETROLEUM ACTS,

And for those engaged in the Storage, Transport, Distribution, and Industrial Use of Petroleum and its Products, and of Calcium Carbide. With suggestions on the Construction and Use of Mineral Oil Lamps.

BY CAPTAIN J. H. THOMSON,
H.M. Chief Inspector of Explosives,
AND SIR BOVERTON REDWOOD,
Author of "A Treatise on Petroleum."

"A volume that will enrich the world's petroleum literature, and render a service to the British branch of the industry. . . . Reliable, indispensable, a brilliant contribution."—*Petroleum.*

In Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 2s. 6d. net.

THE LABORATORY BOOK OF MINERAL OIL TESTING.

BY J. A. HICKS,
Chemist to Sir Boverton Redwood.

Should be on the shelves of every analytical chemist in practice."—*Chemical Trade Journal.*

In Large Crown 8vo, Cloth. Fully Illustrated 5s. net.

OIL FUEL:

ITS SUPPLY, COMPOSITION, AND APPLICATION.

BY SIDNEY H. NORTH,
LATE EDITOR OF THE "PETROLEUM REVIEW."

CONTENTS.—The Sources of Supply.—Economic Aspect of Liquid Fuel.—Chemical Composition of Fuel Oils.—Conditions of Combustion in Oil Fuel Furnaces.—Early Methods and Experiments.—Modern Burners and Methods.—Oil Fuel for Marine Purposes.—For Naval Purposes.—On Locomotives.—For Metallurgical and other Purposes.—Appendices.—INDEX.

"Everyone interested in this important question will welcome Mr. North's excellent text-book."—*Nature.*

THE PETROLEUM LAMP: Its Choice and Use. A Guide to the Safe Employment of the Paraffin Lamp. By CAPT. J. H. THOMSON and Sir BOVERTON REDWOOD. Illustrated. 1s. net.

"A work which will meet every purpose for which it has been written."—*Petroleum.*

In Two Vols., Large 8vo. With Illustrations. Sold Separately.

CHEMISTRY FOR ENGINEERS AND MANUFACTURERS.

BY

BERTRAM BLOUNT, F.I.C., & A. G. BLOXAM, F.I.C.

VOLUME I.—Chemistry of Engineering, Building, and Metallurgy.—*General Contents.*—INTRODUCTION.—Chemistry of the Chief Materials of Construction.—Sources of Energy.—Chemistry of Steam-raising.—Chemistry of Lubrication and Lubricants.—Metallurgical Processes used in the Winning and Manufacture of Metals. Price 10s. 6d.

VOLUME II.—The Chemistry of Manufacturing Processes.—*General Contents.*—Sulphuric Acid Manufacture.—Alkali, &c.—Destructive Distillation.—Artificial Manure.—Petroleum.—Lime and Cement—Clay and Glass.—Sugar and Starch.—Brewing and Distilling.—Oils, Resins, and Varnishes.—Soap and Candles.—Textiles and Bleaching.—Colouring Matters, Dyeing and Printing.—Paper and Pasteboard.—Pigments and Paints.—Leather, Glue, and Size.—Explosives and Matches.—Minor Manufactures. THIRD EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. Illustrated.

SECOND EDITION. In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 800 pages and 154 Illustrations. 25s. net.

OILS, FATS, BUTTERS, AND WAXES:

THEIR PREPARATION AND PROPERTIES, AND MANUFACTURE THEREFROM OF CANDLES, SOAPS, AND OTHER PRODUCTS.

BY C. R. ALDER WRIGHT, D.Sc., F.R.S.,

Late Lecturer on Chemistry, St. Mary's Hospital Medical School; Examiner in "Soap" to the City and Guilds of London Institute.

Thoroughly Revised, Enlarged, and in Part Rewritten

BY C. AINSWORTH MITCHELL, B.A., F.I.C., F.C.S.

"Will be found ABSOLUTELY INDISPENSABLE."—*The Analyst.*

"Will rank as the STANDARD ENGLISH AUTHORITY on OILS and FATS for many years to come."—*Industries and Iron.*

In Two Volumes, Half Morocco, each complete in itself.

PHYSICO-CHEMICAL TABLES

For the Use of Analysts, Physicists, Chemical Manufacturers and Scientific Chemists.

Volume I.—Chemical Engineering, Physical Chemistry. 24s. net.

Volume II.—Chemical Physics, Pure and Analytical Chemistry. [*Shortly.*

BY JOHN CASTELL-EVANS, F.I.C., F.C.S.,

Lecturer on Inorganic Chemistry and Metallurgy at the Finsbury Technical College.

The Work comprehends as far as possible ALL RULES AND TABLES required by the Analyst, Brewer, Distiller, Acid- and Alkali-Manufacturer, &c., &c.; and also the principal data in THERMO-CHEMISTRY, ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY, and the various branches of CHEMICAL PHYSICS. Every possible care has been taken to ensure perfect accuracy, and to include the results of the most recent investigations.

SIXTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. Fully Illustrated. 21s.

FOODS: THEIR COMPOSITION AND ANALYSIS.

BY A. WYNTER BLYTH, M.R.C.S., F.I.C., F.C.S.,

Barrister-at-Law, Public Analyst for the County of Devon, and Medical Officer of Health for St. Marylebone.

AND M. WYNTER BLYTH, B.A., B.Sc., F.C.S.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—History of Adulteration.—Legislation.—Apparatus.—"Ash."—Sugar.—Confectionery.—Honey.—Treacle.—Jams and Preserved Fruits.—Starches.—Wheaten-Flour.—Bread.—Oats.—Barley.—Rye.—Rice.—Maize.—Millet.—Potatoes.—Peas.—Lentils.—Beans—Milk.—Cream.—Butter.—Oleo-Margarine.—Cheese.—Lard.—Tea.—Coffee.—Cocoa and Chocolate.—**Alcohol.**—Brandy.—Rum.—Whisky.—Gin.—Arrack.—Liqueurs.—Absinthe.—Yeast.—Beer.—Wine.—Vinegar.—Lemon and Lime Juice.—Mustard.—Pepper.—Sweet and Bitter Almonds.—Annatto.—Oilve Oil.—**Water Analysis.**—**Appendix:** Adulteration Acts, &c.

"A new edition of Mr. Wynter Blyth's Standard work, ENRICHED WITH ALL THE RECENT DISCOVERIES AND IMPROVEMENTS, will be accepted as a boon."—*Chemical News.*

FOURTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. In Large 8vo, Cloth, with Tables and Illustrations. 21s. net.

POISONS: THEIR EFFECTS AND DETECTION.

BY A. WYNTER BLYTH, M.R.C.S., F.I.C., F.C.S.,

Barrister-at-Law, Public Analyst for the County of Devon, and Medical Officer of Health for St. Marylebone.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—I.—Historical Introduction. II.—Classification—Statistics—Connection between Toxic Action and Chemical Composition—Life Tests—General Method of Procedure—The Spectroscope—Examination of Blood and Blood Stains. III.—Poisonous Gases. IV.—Acids and Alkalies. V.—More or less Volatile Poisonous Substances. VI.—Alkaloids and Poisonous Vegetable Principles. VII.—Poisons derived from Living or Dead Animal Substances. VIII.—The Oxalic Acid Group. IX.—Inorganic Poisons. *Appendix:* Treatment, by Antidotes or otherwise, of Cases of Poisoning.

"Undoubtedly THE MOST COMPLETE WORK on Toxicology in our language."—*The Analyst.*
"As a PRACTICAL GUIDE, we KNOW NO BETTER work."—*The Lancet (on the Third Edition).*

Crown 8vo, Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 10s. 6d.

FLESH FOODS:

With Methods for their Chemical, Microscopical, and Bacteriological Examination.

A Practical Handbook for Medical Men, Analysts, Inspectors and others.

BY C. AINSWORTH MITCHELL, B.A., F.I.C., F.C.S.

"A compilation which will be most useful for the class for whom it is intended."—*Athenæum.*

SECOND EDITION. With Numerous Tables, Fully Illustrated.

DAIRY CHEMISTRY

FOR DAIRY MANAGERS, CHEMISTS, AND ANALYSTS

A Practical Handbook for Dairy Chemists and others having Control of Dairies.

BY H. DROOP RICHMOND, F.I.C.,

CHEMIST TO THE AYLESBURY DAIRY COMPANY.

Contents.—I. Introductory.—The Constituents of Milk. II. The Analysis of Milk. III. Normal Milk: its Adulterations and Alterations, and their Detection. IV The Chemical Control of the Dairy. V, Biological and Sanitary Matters. VI. Butter. VII. Other Milk Products. VIII. The Milk of Mammals other than the Cow.—Appendices.—Tables.—Index.

". . . In our opinion the book is the BEST CONTRIBUTION ON THE SUBJECT THAT HAS YET APPEARED in the English language."—*Lancet* (on the First Edition).

Fully Illustrated. With Photographs of Various Breeds of Cattle, &c. 6s. *net.*

MILK: ITS PRODUCTION & USES.

With Chapters on Dairy Farming, The Diseases of Cattle, and on the Hygiene and Control of Supplies.

BY EDWARD F. WILLOUGHBY,

M.D. (Lond.), D.P.H. (Lond. and Camb.).

"We cordially recommend it to everyone who has anything at all to do with milk."—*Dairy World.*

In Crown 8vo, Fully Illustrated. 2s. 6d. net.

THE LABORATORY BOOK OF

DAIRY ANALYSIS.

BY H. DROOP RICHMOND, F.I.C.,

Analyst to the Aylesbury Dairy Co., Ltd.

"Without doubt the best contribution to the literature of its subject that has ever been written."—*Medical Times.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 4s. 6d. net.

ELEMENTARY AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY.

BY HERBERT INGLE, B.Sc., F.I.C., F.C.S.

CONTENTS.—Introduction.—The Atmosphere.—The Soil.—Natural Waters.—The Plant.—Manures.—Crops.—The Animal.—Foods and Feeding.—The Dairy.—Miscellaneous.—INDEX.

AT PRESS. In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Illustrated.

SOIL BACTERIA.

BY JAMES CLARK, M.A., D.Sc., A.R.C.S.,

Principal of the Academy, Kilmarnock.

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

THIRD EDITION. In Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 21s. net.

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF BREWING.

FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS AND PRACTICAL MEN.

BY WALTER J. SYKES.

REVISED BY ARTHUR R. LING, F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Editor of the Journal of the Institute of Brewing.

CONTENTS.—Physical Principles Involved.—The Chemistry of Brewing.—The Microscope.—Vegetable Biology.—Fermentation.—Water.—Barley and Malting.—Arrangement of Brewery Plant.—Quantities of Materials.—Fermentation.—Antiseptics.—Finings.—Characteristics of Beer.—Diseases of Beer.—INDEX.

"A thorough and comprehensive text-book . . . up-to-date . . . a standard text-book."—*Brewers' Journal.*

In Large 8vo. Complete in Two Volumes.

Each Volume Complete in Itself, and Sold Separately.

TECHNICAL MYCOLOGY:

The Utilisation of Micro-organisms in the Arts and Manufactures.

BY DR. FRANZ LAFAR,
Prof. of Fermentation-Physiology and Bacteriology in the Technical High School, Vienna.
TRANSLATED BY CHARLES T. C. SALTER.

Vol. I.—SCHIZOMYCETIC FERMENTATION.
Vol. II.—EUMYCETIC FERMENTATION.

NOTE.—Part I. of Vol. II. was issued separately at 7s. 6d. Copies of Part II., Vol. II., have, therefore, been bound up to enable those possessing Part I. to complete their copies.

"The first work of the kind which can lay claim to completeness in the treatment of a fascinating subject. The plan is admirable, the classification simple, the style is good, and the tendency of the whole volume is to convey sure information to the reader."—*Lancet.*

Crown 8vo, Handsome Cloth. With Diagrams. 7s. 6d. net.

[*Companion Volume to "FERMENTS," by the same Author.*]

TOXINES AND ANTITOXINES.

BY CARL OPPENHEIMER, PH.D., M.D.,
Of the Physiological Institute at Erlangen.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN BY

C. AINSWORTH MITCHELL, B.A., F.I.C., F.C.S.

With Notes, and Additions by the Author, since the publication of the German Edition.

"For wealth of detail, we have no small work on Toxines which equals the one under review."—*Medical Times*

In Crown 8vo, Handsome Cloth. Price 7s. 6d. net.

FERMENTS: AND THEIR ACTIONS.

A Text-book on the Chemistry and Physics of Fermentative Changes.

BY CARL OPPENHEIMER, PH.D., M.D.

TRANSLATED BY C. AINSWORTH MITCHELL, B.A., F.I.C., F.C.S.

"Such a veritable *multum in parvo* has never yet appeared."—*Brewers' Journal.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 6s. net.

PEAT: Its Use and Manufacture.

By PHILIP R. BJÖRLING And FREDERICK T. GISSING.

General Contents.—Introduction.—The Formation of Peat.—Area and Depth of Bogs in Principal Countries.—Manufacture of Peat Fuel, &c.—Cut Peat, Dredged Peat, and Manufactured Peat.—Machinery employed in the Manufacture of Peat Fuel.—Peat Moss Litter, and the Machinery employed in its Manufacture.—Peat Charcoal and its Manufacture.—Cost of making Peat Fuel and Charcoal.—Other Productions derived from Peat, such as Tar, Manure, Candles, Dyes, Paper, &c. —Bibliography.—Index.

"The treatment throughout is clear and interesting . . . excellent plates."—*Engineering.*

Companion Volume to the above. In Crown 8vo. Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 6s. net.

COMMERCIAL PEAT:

Its Uses and Its Possibilities.

By F. T. GISSING.

"A useful and instructive epitome of the development of the industry."—*Mechanical Engineer.*

Second Edition, Revised. In Medium 8vo, Cloth. Illustrated. 12s. 6d. net.

PAPER TECHNOLOGY:

AN ELEMENTARY MANUAL ON THE MANUFACTURE, PHYSICAL QUALITIES, AND CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF PAPER AND OF PAPERMAKING FIBRES.

With Selected Tables for Stationers, Publishers, and Others.

By R. W. SINDALL, F.C.S.

"Exceedingly instructive and particularly useful."—*Paper Makers' Monthly Journal.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 30 Illustrations. 6s. net.

THE CLAYWORKER'S HANDBOOK.

An Epitome of the Materials and Methods employed in Brickmaking and Pottery.

By the Author of "THE CHEMISTRY OF CLAYWORKING," &c.

General Contents.—Materials used in Clayworking; Clays, Engobes, Glazes, Colours, Water, Fuel, Oils, and Lubricants.—The Preparation of the Clay, Mining and Quarrying, Weathering, Washing, Grinding, Tempering, and Pugging.—Machinery; Boilers, Engines, General Machinery, Sieves, Mixing Machinery, Presses, &c.—Dryers and Drying.—Engobing and Glazing. —Setting or Charging, Transport.—Kilns.—Firing.—Discharging, Sorting, and Packing.—Defects and Waste.—Tests, Analysis and Control.—Bibliography.—Tables.—Index.

"We can thoroughly recommend this handy little book to all our readers."—*Brick and Pottery Trades' Journal.*

In Imperial 8vo. Strongly and Elegantly Bound.
With over 1,000 Pages.

CERAMIC LITERATURE.

Compiled, Classified, and Described by M. L. SOLON,
President of the English Ceramic Society.

An Analytical Index to the Works Published in all Languages on the History and the Technology of the Ceramic Art; also to the Catalogues of Public Museums, Private Collections, and of Auction Sales in which the Description of Ceramic Objects occupy an important place; and to the most important Price Lists of the Ancient and Modern Manufactories of Pottery and Porcelain.

In Large 8vo. Cloth. With 147 Illustrations. 15s. net.

A MANUAL OF

THE PRINCIPLES OF SEWAGE TREATMENT.

By Prof. DUNBAR,

Director of the Institute of State Hygiene, Hamburg.

English Edition by HARRY T. CALVERT, M.Sc., Ph.D., F.I.C.,

Chief Chemical Assistant, West Riding of Yorkshire Rivers Board.

Contents.—Growth of River Pollution.—Legal Measures taken by Central and Local Authorities.—Rise and Development of Methods of Sewage Treatment.—Earlier Views on Methods of Treatment.—Characteristics of Sewage.—Objects of Purification Works.—Methods for the Removal of Suspended Matters.—For the Removal of Putrescibility.—Disinfection.—Supervision and Inspection of Works.—Utility and Cost.—Index.

"We heartily commend the book as a peculiarly fair and impartial statement of the present position of the sewage problem."—*Lancet.*

Beautifully Illustrated, with Numerous Plates, Diagrams, and Figures in the Text. 21s. net.

TRADES' WASTE:

ITS TREATMENT AND UTILISATION.

Handbook for Borough Engineers, Surveyors, Architects, and Analysts.

By W. NAYLOR, F.C.S., A.M.Inst.C.E.,

Chief Inspector of Rivers, Ribble Joint Committee.

"There is probably no person in England to-day better fitted to deal rationally with such a subject."—*British Sanitarian.*

In Handsome Cloth. With 59 Illustrations. 6s. net.

SMOKE ABATEMENT.

A Manual for the Use of Manufacturers, Inspectors, Medical Officers of Health, Engineers, and Others.

By WILLIAM NICHOLSON,

Chief Smoke Inspector to the Sheffield Corporation.

"We welcome such an adequate statement on an important subject."—*British Medical Journal.*

Second Edition. In Medium 8vo. Thoroughly Revised and Re-Written. 15s. net.

CALCAREOUS CEMENTS:

THEIR NATURE, PREPARATION, AND USES.

With some Remarks upon Cement Testing.

By GILBERT R. REDGRAVE, Assoc. Inst. C.E.,

Assistant Secretary for Technology, Board of Education, South Kensington,

And CHARLES SPACKMAN, F.C.S.

"We can thoroughly recommend it as a first-class investment."—*Practical Engineer.*

In Handsome Cloth. 5s. net.

A HANDBOOK FOR CEMENT WORKS' CHEMISTS.

By FRANK B. GATEHOUSE, F.C.S.

General Contents.—Introduction.—Chemicals and Apparatus.—Books.—Analysis and Calculations of Raw Materials.—Analysis of Fuel, Kiln Gases, Lubricants and Water.—Cement Analysis.—Gypsum, Plaster, &c., Burnt Lime.—Appendices.—Index.

"Concise . . . excellent . . . a useful addition to Cement Literature."—*Concrete.*

With Four Folding Plates and Numerous Illustrations. Large 8vo. 8s. 6d. net.

WATER SUPPLY:

A Practical Treatise on the Selection of Sources and the Distribution of Water.

By REGINALD E. MIDDLETON, M.Inst.C.E., M.Inst.Mech.E., F.S.I.

ABRIDGED CONTENTS.—Introductory.—Requirements as to Quality.—Requirements as to Quantity.—Storage Reservoirs.—Purification.—Service Reservoirs.—The Flow of Water through Pipes. — Distributing Systems. — Pumping Machines. — Special Requirements.

"As a companion for the student, and a constant reference for the technical man, we anticipate it will take an important position on the bookshelf."—*Practical Engineer.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated. In Two Volumes.

VOLUME I. FOURTH EDITION. Price 7s. 6d. net.
,, II. THIRD EDITION. READY SHORTLY.

THE CHEMISTRY OF

GAS MANUFACTURE:

A Hand-Book on the Production, Purification, and Testing of Illuminating Gas, and the Assay of the Bye-Products of Gas Manufacture.

By W. J. ATKINSON BUTTERFIELD, M.A., F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Formerly Head Chemist, Gas Works, Beckton, London, E.

"The BEST WORK of its kind which we have ever had the pleasure of reviewing."—*Journal of Gas Lighting.*

SECOND EDITION, Rewritten. Illustrated. 8s. 6d. net.

ACETYLENE:

THE PRINCIPLES OF ITS GENERATION AND USE.

By F. H. LEEDS, F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Member of the Society of Public Analysts and of the Acetylene Association;

AND W. J. ATKINSON BUTTERFIELD, M.A., F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Consulting Chemist, Author of "The Chemistry of Gas Manufacture."

"Brimful of information."—*Chem. Trade Journal.*

"We can thoroughly recommend the book to the manufacturer as a reliable work of reference, to the user as supplying valuable hints on apparatus and methods of procedure, and to the student as a safe and certain guide."—*Acetylene.*

Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Price 16s. net.

FIRE AND EXPLOSION RISKS:

A Handbook of the Detection, Investigation, and Prevention of Fires and Explosions.

By Dr. VON SCHWARTZ.

Translated from the Revised German Edition

By C. T. C. SALTER.

ABBRIDGED GENERAL CONTENTS.—Fires and Explosions of a General Character — Dangers arising from Sources of Light and Heat.—Dangerous Gases.—Risks Attending Special Industries. — Materials Employed. — Agricultural Products. — Fats, Oils, and Resins.—Mineral Oils and Tar.—Alcohol, &c.—Metals, Oxides, Acids, &c.—Lightning Ignition Appliances, Fireworks.

"The work affords a wealth of information on the chemistry of fire and kindred topics."—*Fire and Water.*

"A complete and useful survey of a subject of wide interest and vital importance."—*Oil and Colourman's Journal.*

FIFTEENTH EDITION, Thoroughly Revised. Price 6s.

PRACTICAL SANITATION:

A HAND-BOOK FOR SANITARY INSPECTORS AND OTHERS INTERESTED IN SANITATION.

By GEORGE REID, M.D., D.P.H.,

Fellow, Mem. Council, and Examiner, Sanitary Institute of Great Britain, and Medical Officer to the Staffordshire County Council.

With an Appendix on Sanitary Law.

By HERBERT MANLEY, M.A., M.B., D.P.H.,

Barrister-at-Law.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Introduction.—Water Supply: Drinking Water, Pollution of Water.—Ventilation and Warming.—Principles of Sewage Removal.—Details of Drainage; Refuse Removal and Disposal.—Sanitary and Insanitary Work and Appliances.—Details of Plumbers' Work.—House Construction.—Infection and Disinfection.—Food, Inspection of; Characteristics of Good Meat; Meat, Milk, Fish, &c., unfit for Human Food.—Appendix: Sanitary Law; Model Bye-Laws, &c.

"A VERY USEFUL HANDBOOK, with a very useful Appendix. We recommend it not only to SANITARY INSPECTORS, but to HOUSEHOLDERS and ALL interested in Sanitary Matters."—*Sanitary Record.*

In Handsome Cloth. With 53 Illustrations. 3s. 6d. net.

LESSONS ON SANITATION.

By JOHN WM. HARRISON, M.R.SAN.I.,

Mem. Incor. Assoc. Mun. and County Engineers; Surveyor, Wombwell, Yorks.

CONTENTS.—Water Supply.—Ventilation.—Drainage.—Sanitary Building Construction.—Infectious Diseases.—Food Inspection.—Duties of an Inspector of Nuisances and Common Lodging-Houses.—Infectious Diseases Acts.—Factory and Workshop Acts.—Housing of the Working-Classes Act.—Shop Hours Acts.—Sale of Food and Drugs Acts. The Margarine Acts.—Sale of Horseflesh, &c., Rivers Pollution.—Canal Boats Act.—Diseases of Animals.—Dairies, Cowsheds and Milkshops Order.—Model Bye-Laws.—Miscellaneous.—INDEX.

"Accurate, reliable, and compiled with conciseness and care."—*Sanitary Record.*

SECOND EDITION, Revised. In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Profusely Illustrated. 8s. 6d. net.

SANITARY ENGINEERING:

A Practical Manual of Town Drainage and Sewage and Refuse Disposal.

For Sanitary Authorities, Engineers, Inspectors, Architects, Contractors, and Students.

By FRANCIS WOOD, A.M.INST.C.E., F.G.S.,

Borough Engineer and Surveyor, Fulham; late Borough Engineer, Bacup, Lancs.

GENERAL CONTENTS.

Introduction.—Hydraulics.—Velocity of Water in Pipes.—Earth Pressures and Retaining Walls.—Powers.—House Drainage.—Land Drainage.—Sewers.—Separate System.—Sewage Pumping.—Sewer Ventilation.—Drainage Areas.—Sewers, Manholes, &c.—Trade Refuse.—Sewage Disposal Works.—Bacterial Treatment.—Sludge Disposal.—Construction and Cleansing of Sewers.—Refuse Disposal.—Chimneys and Foundations.

"The volume bristles with information which will be greedily read by those in need of assistance. The book is one that ought to be on the bookshelves of EVERY PRACTICAL ENGINEER."—*Sanitary Journal.*

"A VERITABLE POCKET COMPENDIUM of Sanitary Engineering. . . . A work which may, in many respects, be considered as COMPLETE . . . COMMENDABLY CAUTIOUS . . . INTERESTING . . . SUGGESTIVE."—*Public Health Engineer*

SECOND EDITION. *In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Beautifully Illustrated. With Plates and Figures in the Text. 21s. net.*

ROAD MAKING AND MAINTENANCE:

A Practical Treatise for Engineers, Surveyors, and Others.

WITH AN HISTORICAL SKETCH OF ANCIENT AND MODERN PRACTICE.

BY THOS. AITKEN, ASSOC.M.INST.C.E.,

Member of the Association of Municipal and County Engineers; Member of the Sanitary Inst.; Surveyor to the County Council of Fife Cupar Division.

WITH NUMEROUS PLATES, DIAGRAMS, AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

CONTENTS.—Historical Sketch.—Resistance of Traction.—Laying out New Roads. — Earthworks, Drainage, and Retaining Walls. — Road Materials, or Metal.—Quarrying.—Stone Breaking and Haulage.—Road-Rolling and Scarifying.—The Construction of New, and the Maintenance of existing Roads.—Carriage Ways and Foot Ways.

"The Literary style is EXCELLENT. . . . A COMPREHENSIVE and EXCELLENT Modern Book, an UP-TO-DATE work. . . . Should be on the reference shelf of every Municipal and County Engineer or Surveyor in the United Kingdom, and of every Colonial Engineer."—*The Surveyor.*

In Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 10*s.* 6*d. net.*

DUSTLESS ROADS.

TAR MACADAM.

BY J. WALKER SMITH,

Borough Engineer and Master of Works, Edinburgh.

CONTENTS.—Necessity for Improved and Standard Road Construction.—Tar.—Standardisation of Matrix.—Aggregate for Macadam – Different Modes of Preparing and Laying.– Mechanical Mixing.—Effects of Wear, Density, Porosity, Distribution of Weight.—Scavenging; Watering and Maintenance. – Camber; Gradient, Noiselessness, Hygienic Advantages. — Rolling. — Tractive Effort.—Statistics.—Tar Spraying on Ordinary Macadam Surfaces.—APPENDICES.—INDEX.

"The book is in every respect up-to-date and very suggestive. It is written by one who has had unique opportunities for studying the subject, who has made himself master of all its details, and who is not afraid to express his opinions thereon. It is, therefore, practical in the best sense of the term."—*County and Municipal Record.*

In Demy 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With Many Tables. 6*s. net.*

THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF

ENAMELLING ON IRON AND STEEL.

BY JULES GRÜNWALD,

Technical Chemist and Works' Manager.

CONTENTS.—Introduction.—The Raw Materials.—The Mixing, Dissolving, and Application of Enamel.—Heating and Pickling Goods in the Rough.—Correct laying on.—Baking Enamelled Ware.—Decoration of Enamelled Objects.—Photo-Ceramics in their Application to Enamels.—General and Statistical Chapter.—The History of Enamels and their Uses.—INDEX.

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Profusely Illustrated. 30s. net.

A TREATISE ON

COLOUR MANUFACTURE.

A Guide to the Preparation, Examination, and Application of all the Pigment Colours in Practical Use.

BY GEORGE ZERR AND DR. R. RÜBENCAMP.

AUTHORISED ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY DR. C. MAYER, OF BURGDORF.

"This comprehensive guide . . . useful and interesting."—*Oil and Colour Trades Journal.*

FOURTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. With Illustrations. 12s. 6d.

PAINTERS' COLOURS, OILS, AND VARNISHES:

A PRACTICAL MANUAL.

BY GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Introductory—THE COMPOSITION, MANUFACTURE, ASSAY, and ANALYSIS of PIGMENTS, White, Red, Yellow and Orange, Green, Blue, Brown, and Black—LAKES—Colour and Paint Machinery—Paint Vehicles (Oils, Turpentine, &c., &c.)—Driers—VARNISHES.

"A THOROUGHLY PRACTICAL book. . . . Satisfactorily treats of the manufacture of oils, colours, and pigments."—*Chemical Trades' Journal.*

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With Illustrations. 5s.

THE PAINTER'S LABORATORY GUIDE.

A Student's Handbook of Paints, Colours, and Varnishes.

BY GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S.

ABSTRACT OF CONTENTS.—Preparation of Pigment Colours.—Chemical Principles Involved.—Oils and Varnishes.—Properties of Oils and Varnishes.—Tests and Experiments.—Plants, Methods, and Machinery of the Paint and Varnish Manufactures.

"This excellent handbook, . . . the model of what a handbook should be."—*Oils, Colours, and Drysalteries.*

THIRD EDITION, Revised. In Crown 8vo. extra. With Numerous Illustrations and Plates (some in Colours), including Original Designs. 12s. 6d.

Painting and Decorating:

A Complete Practical Manual for House Painters and Decorators.

BY WALTER JOHN PEARCE,

LECTURER AT THE MANCHESTER TECHNICAL SCHOOL FOR HOUSE-PAINTING AND DECORATING.

"A THOROUGHLY USEFUL BOOK . . . GOOD, SOUND, PRACTICAL INFORMATION in a CLEAR and CONCISE FORM."—*Plumber and Decorator.*

"A THOROUGHLY GOOD AND RELIABLE TEXT-BOOK. . . . So FULL and COMPLETE that it would be difficult to imagine how anything further could be added about the Painter's craft."—*Builders' Journal.*

THIRD EDITION. In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 4 Plates and Several Illustrations. 16s. net.

THE CHEMISTRY OF INDIA RUBBER.

Treatise on the Nature of India Rubber, its Chemical and Physical Examination, and the Determination and Valuation of India Rubber Substitutes.

Including the Outlines of a Theory on Vulcanisation.

BY CARL OTTO WEBER, PH.D.

"Replete with scientific and also with technical interest. . . . The section on physical properties is a complete *résumé* of every thing known on the subject."—*India-rubber Journal.*

In Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 10s. 6d. net.

THE MANUFACTURE OF RUBBER GOODS.

BY ADOLF HEIL AND DR. W. ESCH.

TRANSLATED BY EDWARD W. LEWIS, A.C.G.I., F.C.S.,

Chemist to Messrs. J. G. INGRAM & SON, London.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Raw Material and its Preparation.—Vulcanisation.—Rubber Mixings.—Manufacture of Soft Rubber Goods.—Manufacture of Hard Rubber Goods.—Regeneration of Waste Rubber.—Specific Gravity of Rubber Goods.—INDEX.

"Can be recommended as a very practical and useful work."—*Nature.*

In Large Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 5s. net.

GLUE, GELATINE,

AND THEIR ALLIED PRODUCTS,

A Practical Handbook for the Manufacturer, Agriculturist, and Student of Technology.

BY THOMAS LAMBERT,

Analytical and Technical Chemist.

CONTENTS.—Historical.—GLUE.—GELATINE.—Size and Isinglass.—Treatment of Effluents produced in Glue and Gelatine Making.—Liquid and other Glues, Cements, &c.—Uses of Glue and Gelatine.—Residual Products.—Analysis of Raw and Finished Products.—APPENDIX.—INDEX.

"A sufficient account of modern methods of working, chiefly from a practical standpoint. A book . . . of real value."—*Chemical News.*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Fully Illustrated. 15s. net.

LEATHER TRADES' CHEMISTRY.

A Practical Manual on the Analysis of Materials and Finished Products.

BY S. R. TROTMAN, M.A., F.I.C.,

Public Analyst for the City of Nottingham, Member of the International Association of Leather Trades' Chemists.

SYNOPSIS OF CONTENTS.—Standard Solutions.—Acids, Alkalies, &c.—Water.—Depilation and Deliming.—Fleshings, &c.—Glue.—Spent Liquors.—Mineral and Vegetable Tanning Agents.—Oils.—Soaps.—Varnishes.—Skin.—Leather.—Dyestuffs.—Degreasing Agents.—Effluents.—GLOSSARY.—INDEX.

"Mr. Trotman has admirably succeeded in his aim. . . . Practically every section of the leather trade chemistry is gone into."—*Leather Trades' Review.*

In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With Plates and Illustrations. 7s. 6d. net.

THE MANUFACTURE OF INK.

A Handbook of the Production and Properties of Printing, Writing, and Copying Inks.

BY C. A. MITCHELL, B.A., F.I.C., F.C.S., & T. C. HEPWORTH.

"Thoroughly well arranged . . . and of a genuinely practical order."—*British Printer.*

THE TEXTILE INDUSTRIES.

SECOND EDITION, *Thoroughly Revised Throughout. In Two Large Volumes. Handsome Cloth.* 45*s.*

A MANUAL OF DYEING:

FOR THE USE OF PRACTICAL DYERS, MANUFACTURERS, STUDENTS, AND ALL INTERESTED IN THE ART OF DYEING.

BY

E. KNECHT, Ph.D., F.I.C.,
Head of the Chemistry and Dyeing Department of the Technical School, Manchester; Editor of "The Journal of the Society of Dyers and Colourists;"

CHR. RAWSON, F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Late Head of the Chemistry and Dyeing Department of the Technical College, Bradford; Member Council of the Society of Dyers and Colourists;

And RICHARD LOEWENTHAL, Ph.D.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Chemical Technology of the Textile Fabrics—Water—Washing and Bleaching—Acids, Alkalies, Mordants—Natural Colouring Matters—Artificial Organic Colouring Matters—Mineral Colours—Machinery used in Dyeing—Tinctorial Properties of Colouring Matters—Analysis and Valuation of Materials used in Dyeing, &c., &c.

"This authoritative and exhaustive work . . . the MOST COMPLETE we have yet seen on the subject."—*Textile Manufacturer.*

In Large 8vo, Handsome Cloth. Pp. i-xv + 405. 16s. net.

THE SYNTHETIC DYESTUFFS,

AND

THE INTERMEDIATE PRODUCTS FROM WHICH THEY ARE DERIVED.

BY JOHN CANNELL CAIN, D.SC. (MANCHESTER AND TÜBINGEN),
Technical Chemist,

AND JOCELYN FIELD THORPE, PH.D. (HEIDELBERG), F.R.S.,
Lecturer on Colouring Matters in the Victoria University of Manchester.

Part I. Theoretical. Part II. Practical. Part III. Analytical.

"We have no hesitation in describing this treatise as one of the most valuable books that has appeared. . . . Will give an impetus to the study of Organic Chemistry generally."—*Chemical Trade Journal.*

Companion Volume to Knecht & Rawson's "Dyeing." In Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth, Library Style. 16s. net.

A DICTIONARY OF

DYES, MORDANTS, & OTHER COMPOUNDS

USED IN DYEING AND CALICO PRINTING.

With Formulæ, Properties, and Applications of the various substances described and concise directions for their Commercial Valuation, and for the Detection of Adulterants.

BY CHRISTOPHER RAWSON, F.I.C., F.C.S.,
Consulting Chemist to the Behar Indigo Planters' Association; Co-Author of "A Manual of Dyeing;"

WALTER M. GARDNER, F.C.S.,
Head of the Department of Chemistry and Dyeing, Bradford Municipal Technical College; Editor of the "Journ. Soc. Dyers and Colourists;"

AND W. F. LAYCOCK, Ph.D., F.C.S.,
Analytical and Consulting Chemist.

"Turn to the book as one may on any subject, or any substance in connection with the trade, and a reference is sure to be found. The authors have apparently left nothing out."
—*Textile Mercury.*

In Crown 8vo. Cloth. With Numerous Illustrations. 6s. net.

THE COTTON WEAVERS' HANDBOOK.

A Practical Guide to the Construction and Costing of Cotton Fabrics, with Studies in Design.

By HENRY B. HEYLIN,

Of the Royal Technical Institute, Salford.

CONTENTS.—Weaving.—Designing.—Weaves.—The Power Loom and its Accessories.—Analysing or Dissection of the Cloth.—Cloth Quoting or Costing.—Division of the Cotton Industry in England.—Yarns for Manufacturing Purposes.—The Selection of Warp Yarns and Yarn Testing.—Read and Heald Counting and Calculations.—Important Labour Units in a Weaving Mill.—Miscellany.—Illustrations of Machinery.—Examination Questions.—INDEX.

"Mr. Heylin's text-book is a very reliable one. It is difficult to mark out any special points among so much excellent matter."—*Dyer and Calico Printer.*

Large 8vo. Profusely Illustrated with Plates and Figures in the Text. 16s. net.

THE SPINNING AND TWISTING OF LONG VEGETABLE FIBRES

(FLAX, HEMP, JUTE, TOW, & RAMIE).

A Practical Manual of the most Modern Methods as applied to the Hackling, Carding Preparing, Spinning, and Twisting of the Long Vegetable Fibres of Commerce.

By HERBERT R. CARTER, Belfast and Lille.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Long Vegetable Fibres of Commerce.—Rise and Growth of the Spinning Industry.—Raw Fibre Markets.—Purchasing Raw Material.—Storing and Preliminary Operations.—Hackling.—Sorting.—Preparing.—Tow Carding and Mixing.—Tow Combing.—Gill Spinning.—The Roving Frame.—Dry and Demi-sec Spinning.—Wet Spinning.—Spinning Waste.—Yarn Reeling.—Manufacture of Threads, Twines, and Cords.—Rope Making.—The Mechanical Department.—Modern Mill Construction.—Steam and Water Power.—Power Transmission.

"Meets the requirements of the Mill Manager or Advanced Student in a manner perhaps more than satisfactory. . . . We must highly commend the work as representing up-to-date practice."—*Nature.*

In Large 8vo, Handsome Cloth, with Numerous Illustrations. 9s. *net.*

TEXTILE FIBRES OF COMMERCE.

A HANDBOOK OF

The Occurrence, Distribution, Preparation, and Industrial Uses of the Animal, Vegetable, and Mineral Products used in Spinning and Weaving.

By WILLIAM 1. HANNAN,

Lecturer on Botany at the Ashton Municipal Technical School, Lecturer on Cotton Spinning at the Chorley Science and Art School, &c.

"USEFUL INFORMATION. . . . ADMIRABLE ILLUSTRATIONS. . . ."—*Textile Recorder.*

In Large 8vo, with Illustrations and Printed Patterns. Price 21s.

TEXTILE PRINTING:

A PRACTICAL MANUAL.

Including the Processes Used in the Printing of

COTTON, WOOLLEN, SILK, and HALF-SILK FABRICS.

By C. F. SEYMOUR ROTHWELL, F.C.S.,

Mem. Soc. of Chem. Ind.; late Lecturer at the Munic. Tech. School, Manchester.

"BY FAR THE BEST and MOST PRACTICAL BOOK ON TEXTILE PRINTING which has yet been brought out, and will long remain the standard work on the subject."—*Textile Mercury.*

Large 8vo. Handsome Cloth. 12s. 6d.

BLEACHING & CALICO-PRINTING.

A Short Manual for Students and Practical Men.

By GEORGE DUERR,

Director of the Bleaching, Dyeing, and Printing Department at the Accrington and Bacup Technical Schools; Chemist and Colourist at the Irwell Print Works.

Assisted by WILLIAM TURNBULL
(of Turnbull & Stockdale, Limited).

With Illustrations and upwards of One Hundred Dyed and Printed Patterns designed specially to show various Stages of the Processes described.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—Cotton, Composition of; Bleaching, New Processes; Printing, Hand-Block; Flat-Press Work; Machine Printing—Mordants—Styles of Calico-Printing: The Dyed or Madder Style, Resist Padded Style, Discharge and Extract Style, Chromed or Raised Colours, Insoluble Colours, &c. — Thickeners — Natural Organic Colouring Matters —Tannin Matters — Oils, Soaps, Solvents — Organic Acids—Salts—Mineral Colours—Coal Tar Colours—Dyeing—Water, Softening of—Theory of Colours —Weights and Measures, &c.

"When a ready way out of a difficulty is wanted, it is in books like this that it is found."—*Textile Recorder.*

"Mr. Duerr's work will be found most useful. . . . The information given is of great value. . . . The Recipes are thoroughly practical."—*Textile Manufacturer.*

Second Edition, with New Appendix. In Handsome Cloth.
With 76 Illustrations. 5s. net.

DYEING AND CLEANING.

By FRANK J. FARRELL, M.Sc., &c.

General Contents.—Technology of the Textile Fibres. — Dry Cleaning. — Wet Cleaning. — Dyeing.—Dry Dyeing. — Special Methods, Cleaning and Dyeing Skin Rugs, Feathers, and Hats.—Finishing.—Appendices.—Index.

"A timely and valuable contribution . . . well got up in every way."—*Dyer and Calico Printer.*

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

THIRD EDITION, Revised, Enlarged, and Re-issued. Price 6s. net.

A SHORT MANUAL OF

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY.

BY A. DUPRÉ, Ph.D., F.R.S.,

AND WILSON HAKE, Ph.D., F.I.C., F.C.S.,

Of the Westminster Hospital Medical School.

"AN EXAMPLE OF THE ADVANTAGES OF THE SYSTEMATIC TREATMENT of a Science over the fragmentary style so generally followed. BY A LONG WAY THE BEST of the small Manuals for Students."—*Analyst.*

In Handsome Cloth. With nearly 50 Illustrations. 3s. 6d. net.

THE ELEMENTS OF CHEMICAL ENGINEERING.

BY J. GROSSMANN, M.A., PH.D., F.I.C.

WITH A PREFACE BY

SIR WILLIAM RAMSAY, K.C.B., F.R.S.

CONTENTS.—The Beaker and its Technical Equivalents.—Distilling Flasks, Liebig's Condensers.—Fractionating Tubes and their Technical Equivalents.—The Air-Bath and its Technical Equivalents.—The Blowpipe and Crucible and their Technical Equivalents.—The Steam Boiler and other Sources of Power.—General Remarks on the Application of Heat in Chemical Engineering.—The Funnel and its Technical Equivalents.—The Mortar and its Technical Equivalents.—Measuring Instruments and their Technical Equivalents.—Materials Used in Chemical Engineering and their Mode of Application.—Technical Research and the Designing of Plant.—Conclusion.—Chemicals and Materials.—INDEX.

"Excellent. . . . Every student of chemistry attending a technical course should obtain a copy."—*Chemical News.*

LABORATORY HANDBOOKS BY A. HUMBOLDT SEXTON,

Professor of Metallurgy in the Glasgow and West of Scotland Technical College.

OUTLINES OF QUANTITATIVE ANALYSIS.

FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS.

With Illustrations. FIFTH EDITION. Crown 8vo, Cloth, 3s.

"A COMPACT LABORATORY GUIDE for beginners was wanted, and the want has been WELL SUPPLIED. . . . A good and useful book."—*Lancet.*

OUTLINES OF QUALITATIVE ANALYSIS.

FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS.

With Illustrations. FOURTH EDITION, Revised. Crown 8vo, Cloth, 3s. 6d.

"The work of a thoroughly practical chemist."—*British Medical Journal.*

"Compiled with great care, and will supply a want."—*Journal of Education.*

ELEMENTARY METALLURGY:

Including the Author's Practical Laboratory Course.

[See p. 51.

THIRD EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. Large Crown 8vo, with numerous Illustrations. 3s. 6d.

THE FLOWERING PLANT,

WITH A SUPPLEMENTARY CHAPTER ON FERNS AND MOSSES,

As Illustrating the First Principles of Botany.

BY J. R. AINSWORTH DAVIS, M.A., F.Z.S.,

Prof. of Biology, University College, Aberystwyth; Examiner in Zoology, University of Aberdeen.

"It would be hard to find a Text-book which would better guide the student to an accurate knowledge of modern discoveries in Botany. . . . The SCIENTIFIC ACCURACY of statement, and the concise exposition of FIRST PRINCIPLES make it valuable for educational purposes. In the chapter on the Physiology of Flowers, an *admirable résumé*, drawn from Darwin, Hermann Müller, Kerner, and Lubbock, of what is known of the Fertilization of Flowers, is given." *Journal of Botany.*

POPULAR WORKS ON BOTANY BY MRS. HUGHES-GIBB.

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Cloth. 2s. 6d

HOW PLANTS LIVE AND WORK:

A Simple Introduction to Real Life in the Plant-world, Based on Lessons originally given to Country Children.

BY ELEANOR HUGHES-GIBB.

*** The attention of all interested in the Scientific Training of the Young is requested to this DELIGHTFULLY FRESH and CHARMING LITTLE BOOK. It ought to be in the hands of every Mother and Teacher throughout the land.

"The child's attention is first secured, and then, in language SIMPLE, YET SCIENTIFICALLY ACCURATE, the first lessons in plant-life are set before it."—*Natural Science.*

"In every way well calculated to make the study of Botany ATTRACTIVE to the young."—*Scotsman.*

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Gilt, 2s. 6d.

THE MAKING OF A DAISY;

"WHEAT OUT OF LILIES;"

And other Studies from the Plant World.

A Popular Introduction to Botany.

BY ELEANOR HUGHES-GIBB,

Author of *How Plants Live and Work.*

"A BRIGHT little introduction to the study of Flowers."—*Journal of Botany.*

"The book will afford real assistance to those who can derive pleasure from the study of Nature in the open. . . . The literary style is commendable."—*Knowledge.*

"Boys COULD NOT HAVE A MORE ALLURING INTRODUCTION to scientific pursuits than these charming-looking volumes."—Letter to the Publishers from the Headmaster of one of our great Public Schools.

SECOND EDITION, Revised. Handsome Cloth. 6s. net.

OPEN-AIR STUDIES IN BOTANY:

SKETCHES OF BRITISH WILD FLOWERS IN THEIR HOMES.

BY R. LLOYD PRAEGER, B.A., M.R.I.A.

Illustrated by Drawings from Nature by S. Rosamond Praeger, and Photographs by R. Welch.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—A Daisy-Starred Pasture—Under the Hawthorns—By the River—Along the Shingle—A Fragrant Hedgerow—A Connemara Bog—Where the Samphire grows—A Flowery Meadow—Among the Corn (a Study in Weeds)—In the Home of the Alpines—A City Rubbish-Heap—Glossary.

"A FRESH AND STIMULATING book . . . should take a high place . . . The Illustrations are drawn with much skill."—*The Times.*

"BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED. . . . One of the MOST ACCURATE as well as INTERESTING books of the kind we have seen."—*Athenæum.*

"Redolent with the scent of woodland and meadow."—*The Standard.*

With 12 Full-Page Illustrations from Photographs. Cloth. Second Edition, Revised. 8s. 6d.

OPEN-AIR STUDIES IN GEOLOGY:

An Introduction to Geology Out-of-doors.

BY GRENVILLE A. J. COLE, F.G.S., M.R.I.A.,

Professor of Geology in the Royal College of Science for Ireland, and Examiner in the University of London.

GENERAL CONTENTS.—The Materials of the Earth—A Mountain Hollow—Down the Valley—Along the Shore—Across the Plains—Dead Volcanoes—A Granite Highland—The Annals of the Earth—The Surrey Hills—The Folds of the Mountains.

"The FASCINATING 'OPEN-AIR STUDIES' of PROF. COLE give the subject a GLOW OF ANIMATION . . . cannot fail to arouse keen interest in geology."—*Geological Magazine.*

"A CHARMING BOOK, beautifully illustrated."—*Athenæum.*

Beautifully Illustrated. With a Frontispiece in Colours, and Numerous Specially Drawn Plates by Charles Whymper. 7s. 6d.

OPEN-AIR STUDIES IN BIRD-LIFE:

SKETCHES OF BRITISH BIRDS IN THEIR HAUNTS.

BY CHARLES DIXON.

The Spacious Air.—The Open Fields and Downs.—In the Hedgerows.—On Open Heath and Moor.—On the Mountains.—Amongst the Evergreens.—Copse and Woodland.—By Stream and Pool.—The Sandy Wastes and Mud-flats.—Sea-laved Rocks.—Birds of the Cities.—INDEX.

"Enriched with excellent illustrations. A welcome addition to all libraries."—*Westminster Review.*

AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSICS.

By R. WALLACE STEWART, D.Sc. (Lond.)

In Four Volumes. Crown 8vo. Cloth. Each Fully Illustrated. Sold Separately.

Vol. I. Uniform with Vols. II. to IV. and Fully Illustrated.

GENERAL PHYSICS.

Now in the Press. Will be ready very shortly.

Vol. II. Just Published. Profusely Illustrated. 2s. 6d. net.

SOUND.

Contents. — Simple Harmonic Vibration. — Production of Sound. — Wave Motion.—Propagation of Sound.—Characteristics of Sound.—Reflection and Refraction of Sound.—Velocity of Sound in Air and Water.—Transverse Vibration of Strings.—Longitudinal Vibration of Rods and Columns of Air.—Index.

"Should supply the much-felt need of an elementary treatment of this subject . . distinctly good."—*Nature.*

Vol. III. Just Published. With 142 Illustrations. 3s. 6d.

LIGHT.

Contents. — Introductory. — Rectilinear Propagation of Light. — Photometry. — Reflection at Plane Surfaces. — Reflection at Spherical Surfaces.—Refraction.—Refraction through Lenses.—Dispersion.—Index.

"This elementary treatise resembles Part II. (*Sound*) in its attractiveness . . . the treatment is good . . . excellent diagrams . . . very clear."—*Journ. of Inst. of Teachers in Technical Institutes.*

Vol. IV. Just Published. With 84 Illustrations. 3s. 6d. net.

HEAT.

Contents. — Introductory. — Thermometry. — Expansion of Solids. — Expansion of Liquids. — Expansion of Gases. — Calorimetry. — Specific Heat. —Liquefaction and Solidification. —Vaporisation and Condensation. —Conduction of Heat.—Convection.—Mechanical Equivalent of Heat.—Radiation.—Index.

In Large 8vo. With Bibliography, Illustrations in the Text, and Seven Plates. 12s. 6d.

THE MEAN DENSITY OF THE EARTH.

An Essay to which the Adams Prize was Adjudged in 1893 in the University of Cambridge.

By J. H. POYNTING, Sc.D., F.R.S.

"Cannot fail to be of great and general interest."—*Athenæum.*

In Five Volumes. Large 8vo. Sold Separately.

A TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSICS.

By J. H. POYNTING, Sc.D., F.R.S.,
Professor of Physics, Birmingham University,

And Sir J. J. THOMSON, M.A., F.R.S.,
Professor of Experimental Physics in the University of Cambridge.

INTRODUCTORY VOLUME. FIFTH EDITION, Revised. Fully Illustrated. 10s. 6d.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER.

CONTENTS. — Gravitation. — The Acceleration of Gravity. — Elasticity. — Stresses and Strains.—Torsion.—Bending of Rods.—Spiral Springs.—Collision.—Compressibility of Liquids.—Pressures and Volumes of Gases.—Thermal Effects Accompanying Strain.—Capillarity.—Surface Tension.—Laplace's Theory of Capillarity.—Diffusion of Liquids—Diffusion of Gases.—Viscosity of Liquids.—INDEX.

"We regard this book as quite indispensable not merely to teachers but to physicists of every grade above the lowest."—*University Correspondent.*

VOLUME II. FIFTH EDITION. Fully Illustrated. Price 8s. 6d.

SOUND.

CONTENTS.—The Nature of Sound and its chief Characteristics.—The Velocity of Sound in Air and other Media.—Reflection and Refraction of Sound.—Frequency and Pitch of Notes.—Resonance and Forced Oscillations.—Analysis of Vibrations.—The Transverse Vibrations of Stretched Strings or Wires.—Pipes and other Air Cavities.—Rods.—Plates.—Membranes.—Vibrations maintained by Heat.—Sensitive Flames and Jets.—Musical Sand.—The Superposition of Waves.—INDEX.

"The work . . . may be recommended to anyone desirous of possessing an EASY UP-TO-DATE STANDARD TREATISE on Acoustics."—*Literature.*

VOLUME III. THIRD EDITION, Revised. Fully Illustrated. Price 15s.

HEAT.

CONTENTS.—Temperature.—Expansion of Solids.—Liquids.—Gases.—Circulation and Convection.—Quantity of Heat; Specific Heat.—Conductivity.—Forms of Energy; Conservation; Mechanical Equivalent of Heat.—The Kinetic Theory.—Change of State; Liquid, Vapour.—Critical Points.—Solids and Liquids.—Atmospheric Conditions.—Radiation.—Theory of Exchanges.—Radiation and Temperature.—Thermodynamics.—Isothermal and Adiabatic Changes.—Thermodynamics of Changes of State, and Solutions.—Thermodynamics of Radiation.—INDEX.

"Well up-to-date, and extremely clear and exact throughout. . . . As clear as it would be possible to make such a text-book"—*Nature.*

Remaining Volumes in Preparation—

LIGHT; MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY.

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

Twenty-sixth Annual Issue. Handsome cloth, 7s. 6d.

(To Subscribers, 6s.).

THE OFFICIAL YEAR-BOOK

OF THE

SCIENTIFIC AND LEARNED SOCIETIES OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

COMPILED FROM OFFICIAL SOURCES.

Comprising (together with other Official Information) LISTS of the PAPERS read during the Session 1908-1909 before all the LEADING SOCIETIES throughout the Kingdom engaged in the following Departments of Research:—

§ 1. Science Generally: *i.e.*, Societies occupying themselves with several Branches of Science, or with Science and Literature jointly.
§ 2. Mathematics and Physics.
§ 3. Chemistry and Photography.
§ 4. Geology, Geography, and Mineralogy.
§ 5. Biology, including Microscopy and Anthropology.
§ 6. Economic Science and Statistics.
§ 7. Mechanical Science, Engineering, and Architecture.
§ 8. Naval and Military Science.
§ 9. Agriculture and Horticulture.
§ 10. Law.
§ 11. Literature
§ 12. Psychology.
§ 13. Archæology.
§ 14. MEDICINE.

"FILLS A VERY REAL WANT."—*Engineering.*

"INDISPENSABLE to any one who may wish to keep himself abreast of the scientific work of the day."—*Edinburgh Medical Journal.*

"The YEAR-BOOK OF SOCIETIES is a Record which ought to be of the greatest use for the progress of Science."—*Lord Playfair, F.R.S., K.C.B., M.P., Past-President of the British Association.*

"It goes almost without saying that a Handbook of this subject will be in time one of the most generally useful works for the library or the desk."—*The Times.*

"British Societies are now well represented in the 'Year-Book of the Scientific and Learned Societies of Great Britain and Ireland.'"—(Art. "Societies" in New Edition of "Encyclopædia Britannica," vol. xxii.)

Copies of the FIRST ISSUE, giving an Account of the History, Organization, and Conditions of Membership of the various Societies, and forming the groundwork of the Series, may still be had, price 7/6. *Also Copies of the Issues following.*

The YEAR-BOOK OF SOCIETIES forms a complete INDEX TO THE SCIENTIFIC WORK of the sessional year in the various Departments. It is used as a HANDBOOK in all our great SCIENTIFIC CENTRES, MUSEUMS, and LIBRARIES throughout the Kingdom, and has become an INDISPENSABLE BOOK OF REFERENCE to every one engaged in Scientific Work.

ELEMENTARY ENGINEERING WORKS.

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. With 105 Illustrations. 5s. net.

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING FOR BEGINNERS.

By R. S. M'LAREN.

CONTENTS.—Materials.—Bolts and Nuts, Studs, Set Screws.—Boilers.—Steam Raising Accessories.—Steam Pipes and Valves.—The Steam Engine.—Power Transmission.—Condensing Plant.—The Steam Turbine.—Electricity.—Hydraulic Machinery.—Gas and Oil Engines.—Strength of Beams, and Useful Information.—INDEX.

"The best of its kind we have seen, and should be in the hands of every apprentice."—*Steamship.*

PROFESSOR JAMIESON'S INTRODUCTORY MANUALS.

Crown 8vo. With Illustrations and Examination Papers.

STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE (Elementary Manual of). For First-Year Students, forming an Introduction to the Author's larger Work. TWELFTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. 3s. 6d.

"Should be in the hands of EVERY engineering apprentice."—*Practical Engineer.*

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY (Practical Elementary Manual of). For First-Year Students. With Stud. Inst.C.E. and B. of E. Exam. Questions. EIGHTH EDITION, Revised and Enlarged. 3s. 6d.

"A THOROUGHLY TRUSTWORTHY Text-book. PRACTICAL and clear."—*Nature.*

APPLIED MECHANICS (Elementary Manual of). For First-Year Students. With B. of E., C. and G., and Stud. Inst.C.E. Questions. EIGHTH EDITION, Revised and Greatly Enlarged. 3s. 6d.

"The work has VERY HIGH QUALITIES, which may be condensed into the one word 'CLEAR.'"—*Science and Art.*

TEXT-BOOK OF ENGINEERING DRAWING AND DESIGN. By SIDNEY H. WELLS, WH.SC. FIFTH EDITION. VOL. I.—Practical Geometry, Plane and Solid, 4s. 6d. VOL. II.—Machine and Engine Drawing and Design, 4s. 6d. The volumes sold separately.

AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK OF MECHANICAL DRAWING. By JOHN E. JAGGER, M.SC., WH.SC. Profusely Illustrated.

HINTS ON STEAM ENGINE DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION. By CHARLES HURST. SECOND EDITION. With 32 Illustrations. 1s. 6d. net.

THERMO-DYNAMIC PRINCIPLES OF ENGINE DESIGN. By LIONEL HOBBS, R.N., Instructor in Applied Mechanics and Engine Design at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. 4s. 6d. net.

PRACTICAL CALCULATIONS FOR ENGINEERS. By C. E. LARARD, A.M.Inst.C.E., and H.A. GOLDING, A.M.I Mech.E. SECOND EDITION. 6s. net.

TELEGRAPH SYSTEMS, and Other Notes. By ARTHUR CROTCH, of the Engineer-in-Chief's Dept., G.P.O. With 222 Illustrations. 5s. net.

THEODOLITE SURVEYING AND LEVELLING. By Prof. JAMES PARK, F.G.S. In Crown 8vo. Cloth. Illustrated. 6s. net.

SCIENTIFIC ROMANCES.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING has most graciously condescended to accept a copy of each of these books.

BY JOHN MASTIN, F.S.A.SCOT., F.L.S., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., F.R.M.S., F.B.A.

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Gilt Lettering. Price 6s.

THROUGH THE SUN IN AN AIRSHIP.

A THRILLING SCIENTIFIC ROMANCE.

"An immense display of resource and knowledge on the part of the author . . . the adventures and discoveries are well worth following."—*Times Literary Supplement.*

"Mr. Mastin manages to make his tale absorbing at all points, the interest never slackens, his imagination never fails. The suggestions opened out are numerous and appaling. Some of the discussions are on very deep subjects, and though they do not lead us far, and are hardly as illuminating as the utterances of poets, they are put down soberly and in a convincing manner, which shows that the author takes his work seriously. His scientific knowiedge aids him well in his task, and has enabled him produce a fine novel as attractive to boys as to grown up people."—*Daily Telegraph.*

COMPANION VOLUME TO THE ABOVE.

In Crown 8vo. Uniform with the above. Price 3s. 6d.

THE STOLEN PLANET.

SOME PRESS OPINIONS OF THIS.

"Certain it is that the reading of this capital story will prove exciting, for compared with the adventures therein written, the books of Jules Verne and H. G. Wells read like the placid pages of Miss Austen's novels.'—*Daily Telegraph.*

"Mr. Mastin's ingenious and engaging fantasy . . . he is to be commended for resource, ingenuity, and persistent vigour of narrative."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"It is a graphic and exciting tale."—*Times.*

THE ADVENTURES OF A SOUTH POLAR EXPEDITION

In Crown 8vo. Handsome Cloth. Price 6s.

THE IMMORTAL LIGHT.

PRESS OPINIONS.

"More daring than Poe's 'Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym of Nantucket' is Mr. Mastin's romance of Antarctic adventure; for Poe, having introduced a giant 'of the perfect whiteness of the snow,' regrets the loss of his crowning chapters. Certainly, if the matter which they contained 'relative to the Pole itself, or at least to regions in its very near proximity,' was as sensational as 'The Immortal Light,' the loss is deplorable. . . . The story is wildly improbable, but confronts incredulity with a considerable display of scientific detail. A strong religious feeling animates the last part of the book."—*Athenæum.*

These three volumes are uniform in size and binding.

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., LIMITED, EXETER STREET, STRAND.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

400 mlx

YC 34065